



## Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

## Linee guide per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

## Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>



Тем, что эта книга дошла до Вас, мы обязаны в первую очередь библиотекарям, которые долгие годы бережно хранили её. Сотрудники Google оцифровали её в рамках проекта, цель которого – сделать книги со всего мира доступными через Интернет.

Эта книга находится в общественном достоянии. В общих чертах, юридически, книга передаётся в общественное достояние, когда истекает срок действия имущественных авторских прав на неё, а также если правообладатель сам передал её в общественное достояние или не заявил на неё авторских прав. Такие книги – это ключ к прошлому, к сокровищам нашей истории и культуры, и к знаниям, которые зачастую нигде больше не найдёшь.

В этой цифровой копии мы оставили без изменений все рукописные пометки, которые были в оригинальном издании. Пускай они будут напоминанием о всех тех руках, через которые прошла эта книга – автора, издателя, библиотекаря и предыдущих читателей – чтобы наконец попасть в Ваши.

#### **Правила пользования**

Мы гордимся нашим сотрудничеством с библиотеками, в рамках которого мы оцифровываем книги в общественном достоянии и делаем их доступными для всех. Эти книги принадлежат всему человечеству, а мы – лишь их хранители. Тем не менее, оцифровка книг и поддержка этого проекта стоят немало, и поэтому, чтобы и в дальнейшем предоставлять этот ресурс, мы предприняли некоторые меры, чтобы предотвратить коммерческое использование этих книг. Одна из них – это технические ограничения на автоматические запросы.

Мы также просим Вас:

- **Не использовать файлы в коммерческих целях.** Мы разработали программу Поиска по книгам Google для всех пользователей, поэтому, пожалуйста, используйте эти файлы только в личных, некоммерческих целях.
- **Не отправлять автоматические запросы.** Не отправляйте в систему Google автоматические запросы любого рода. Если Вам требуется доступ к большим объёмам текстов для исследований в области машинного перевода, оптического распознавания текста, или в других похожих целях, свяжитесь с нами. Для этих целей мы настоятельно рекомендуем использовать исключительно материалы в общественном достоянии.
- **Не удалять логотипы и другие атрибуты Google из файлов.** Изображения в каждом файле помечены логотипами Google для того, чтобы рассказать читателям о нашем проекте и помочь им найти дополнительные материалы. Не удаляйте их.
- **Соблюдать законы Вашей и других стран.** В конечном итоге, именно Вы несёте полную ответственность за Ваши действия – поэтому, пожалуйста, убедитесь, что Вы не нарушаете соответствующие законы Вашей или других стран. Имейте в виду, что даже если книга более не находится под защитой авторских прав в США, то это ещё совсем не значит, что её можно распространять в других странах. К сожалению, законодательство в сфере интеллектуальной собственности очень разнообразно, и не существует универсального способа определить, как разрешено использовать книгу в конкретной стране. Не рассчитывайте на то, что если книга появилась в поиске по книгам Google, то её можно использовать где и как угодно. Наказание за нарушение авторских прав может оказаться очень серьёзным.

#### **О программе**

Наша миссия – организовать информацию во всём мире и сделать её доступной и полезной для всех. Поиск по книгам Google помогает пользователям найти книги со всего света, а авторам и издателям – новых читателей. Чтобы произвести поиск по этой книге в полнотекстовом режиме, откройте страницу <http://books.google.com>.



THE LIBRARY  
OF THE



CLASS      491.75  
BOOK      H 35





Dukane Potash  
(brnd) Nov 1871



---

---

**A PRACTICAL**  
**RUSSIAN GRAMMAR.**

---

---



A

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

BY

JAMES HEARD.

---

St. PETERSBURG.

PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR, AND SOLD BY SLEUNINE,  
AND BY BOOSEY AND SONS LONDON.

1827.

**ПЕЧАТАТЬ ПОЗВОЛЕНО**

съ шѣмъ, чтобы по напечатаніи, до выпуска  
изъ Типографіи, представлены были сель эк-  
земпляровъ сей книги въ Цензурный Коми-  
шепъ, для препровождениія, куда слѣдуешъ, на  
основаніи узаконеній. С. Петербургъ, Іюня  
30 дня, 1826 года.

*Цензоръ Александръ Красовскій.*

---

**Въ типографіи Департамента народнаго  
просвѣщенія.**

Ю. В. ТИПОГРАФІЯ  
ДЛЯ ПРОСВѢЩЕНІЯ

4673

1135

To Her Majesty  
Alexandra Feodorowna.  
Empress of Russia

The following attempt  
to facilitate the acquirement of the  
Russian language to a nation whose  
friendly and mutually advantageous  
intercourse with this Empire has been  
uninterruptedly maintained since the  
sixteenth century, is by permission and  
with the deepest reverence dedicated  
by.

Her Imperial  
Majestys.

most humble  
and most devoted Servant.  
James Hearo.

382085



## P R E F A C E.

---

*The English, whose political, commercial, or other intercourse with Russia, may have rendered a knowledge of the language desirable, have hitherto had no other means of acquiring it, but through the medium of grammars, written in French or German. It is for the public to decide how far this defect has been supplied by the present work, in the composition of which the author has been most ably assisted by Mr. Charles Svenske, and*

*has made an unreserved use of all the works hitherto published in other languages upon Russian grammar.\**

*The simplicity of the plan adopted will greatly facilitate the labour of the student, while the ideas contained in the exercises will tend to relieve his mind from the irksome dryness of grammatical rules. The road to some sciences lies through delightful scenery, but the path, that leads to the knowledge of a language, is dreary and uninviting, and requires to be strewed with flowers. The themes, which are given in the following pages, upon the most important rules, consist of select sentences,*

(\*) Especially of the following: *Российская Грамматика, сочиненная Императорскою Россійскою Академіею. Опытъ о Русскихъ спряженіяхъ Н. Греча. Grammaire Russe à l'usage des étrangers par Reiff. Practische Grammatik der Russischen Sprache von Vater. Teoretisch-practische Grammatik der Russischen Sprache von Tappe.*

▼

*gradually increasing in difficulty as the scholar proceeds; and followed by promiscuous exercises (at the end of each principal part of speech) extracted from the works of the most celebrated Russian authors. It is necessary to observe, that no rules are anticipated in these themes, which run chiefly upon the remarks immediately preceding, and occasionally upon parts previously explained. Whenever the construction of the Russian phrase differs from the construction of the English, the arrangement of the words in the columns below will point out the order to be adopted in the translation.*

*Most of the apparent irregularities of the Russian Etymology being founded upon the mutability of the letters, the scholar is advised to pay particular attention to that part of the grammar, which treats of their changes and reciprocal effect upon each*

*other in the formation of derivatives, and in the declension and modification of words. These changes will explain the omission of some rules, that are to be found in other grammars, but which are rendered superfluous by a knowledge of the more fundamental rules relating to the letters.*

*Although an endeavour has been made to explain the pronunciation of the Russian letters, it must be confessed, that all attempts to express the sounds of one language, by the characters of another are imperfect, oral instruction being the only sure means of acquiring a correct pronunciation. To prevent a false accentuation the Russian words, which occur in the following work, are all accented.*



## INTRODUCTION.

---

The origin and early history of the Slavonian, as of other primitive languages, are lost in obscurity. In the IX century two Greek missionaries were sent into Moravia by the Emperor Michael III, to translate the Bible, and other theological works, into that tongue, and finding letters unknown to the inhabitants, they composed an alphabet after the model of the Greek, with a few additional characters, to express the sounds peculiar to the Slavonian language. Thus the benign light of christianity brought with it the first dawn of civilization and science.

From this epoch until the subjugation of Russia by the Tartars, may be called the first period of the literature. The

oppressive dominion of those barbarians for more than two centuries effectually checked the rising spirit of improvement, that had been introduced from the Eastern Empire, and first caused the language of the people to differ from the ecclesiastical dialect, by the introduction of many Tartar and Mogul words into common use.

The civil reform effected by Peter the Great, forms the third remarkable epoch in the history of the language, which was then enriched by the adoption of many words relating to the arts and sciences introduced in Russia by that Monarch. Since that period, many writers have arisen, both in prose and verse, who have cultivated and improved their language, and done honour to the literature of their country.

The dialect of the Bible and other theological works has remained invariably the same, uninfluenced, either by the

dominion of the Tartars, or the intercourse of Russia with the other nations of Europe. Hence the difference that at present exists between the Slavonian or church dialect, and the modern Russian language.

From the gigantic strides, which this mighty Empire is making in literature, science and the arts, we may reasonably anticipate the period, when its rich, harmonious and energetic language will be studied by the other nations of Europe for the sake of its original productions. As yet, we have seen only a few rays of the literary sun, which is dawning upon the North, but their brightness sufficiently bespeaks the glory of its meridian splendour.



## A B B R E V I A T I O N S

*made use of in the following grammar.*

Nom.	nominative case.
Gen.	genitive case.
Dat.	dative case.
Acc.	accusative case.
Ins.	instrumental case.
Prep.	prepositional case.
Sing.	singular.
Plu.	plural.
Mas.	masculine.
Fem.	feminine.
Neut.	neuter.
Com.	common.
Inf.	infinitive.
Ind.	indefinite.
Def.	definite.
Perf.	perfect.
Per.	person.



## CONTENTS.

---

### P A R T I.

	PAGE.
PRONUNCIATION.....	I

### P A R T II.

ETYMOLOGY .....	9
-----------------	---

### C H A P. I.

#### S U B S T A N T I V E S.

<i>Sect</i> 1. General remarks . . . . .	10
2. Declension of masculine substantives . . . . .	12
3. Declension of feminine substantives. . . . .	23
4. Declension of neuter substantives . . . . .	42
5. Formation of feminine substantives from masculine . . . . .	59
6. National appellations . . . . .	61
7. Patronymick appellations. . . . .	63
8. Augmentatives and diminutives. . . . .	65

## XII

## C H A P. II.

## ADJECTIVES.

	PAGE.
<i>Sect</i> 1. General remarks . . . . .	70
2. Declension of adjectives . . . . .	72
3. Degrees of signification . . . . .	79
4. Possessive adjectives . . . . .	87
5. Apocopated adjectives . . . . .	91
6. Augmentative and diminutive adjectives . . . . .	94

## C H A P. III.

## NUMERALS.

<i>Sect</i> 1. Cardinal numbers . . . . .	101
2. Ordinal numbers . . . . .	110

## C H A P. IV.

## PRONOUNS.

<i>Sect</i> 1. General remarks . . . . .	117
2. Personal pronouns . . . . .	118
3. Relative pronouns . . . . .	123
4. Possessive pronouns . . . . .	128
5. Demonstrative pronouns . . . . .	131
6. Indefinite pronouns . . . . .	135

## C H A P. V.

## VERBS.

<i>Sect</i> 1. General remarks . . . . .	140
2. Conjugation of the auxiliary verb . . . . .	144
3. Conjugation of active and neuter verbs . . . . .	150
4. Formation of the branches, moods, tenses and persons . . . . .	156
5. Conjugation of passive verbs . . . . .	176
6. Reflective, reciprocal and common verbs . . . . .	186

### XIII

	PAGE.
7. Compound verbs . . . . .	194
8. Impersonal verbs . . . . .	210
9. Irregular verbs . . . . .	212
10. Remarks on the use of the tenses and moods . . . . .	232

### C H A P. VI.

#### P A R T I C I P L E S.

Declension of participles . . . . .	247
-------------------------------------	-----

### C H A P. VII.

#### A D V E R B S.

Different kinds of adverbs . . . . .	253
--------------------------------------	-----

### C H A P. VIII.

#### P R E P O S I T I O N S.

List of prepositions . . . . .	264
--------------------------------	-----

### C H A P. IX.

#### C O N J U N C T I O N S.

Different kinds of conjunctions . . . . .	270
---	-----

### C H A P. X.

#### I N T E R J E C T I O N S.

Different kinds of interjections . . . . .	275
--	-----

### C H A P. XI.

#### D E R I V A T I O N A N D C O M P O S I T I O N .

Sect 1. Derivation . . . . .	277
2. Composition . . . . .	284

XIV.

P A R T III.

S Y N T A X.

C H A P. I.

C O N C O R D A N C E.

	PAGE.
<i>Sect</i> 1. Concordance of nouns in general . . . . .	287
2. Concordance of verbs . . . . .	290

C H A P. II.

G O V E R N M E N T.

<i>Sect</i> 1. Government of substantives . . . . .	292
2. Government of adjectives . . . . .	293
3. Government of numerals . . . . .	295
4. Government of verbs . . . . .	296
5. Government of adverbs . . . . .	304
6. Government of prepositions . . . . .	306

C H A P. III.

C O N S T R U C T I O N . . . . .	309
-----------------------------------	-----

P A R T IV.

O R T H O G R A P H Y . . . . .	314
---------------------------------	-----

-----



## The Russian Alphabet as used in Writing.

A a	M m	W w
F f	H h	Y y
B b	O o	
T t	N n	
D g	P p	
E e	C c	B b
H h	M M	Q q
Z z	Y y	K k
H u	ø ø	R r
I i	X x	O o
K k	U u	
A a	Y y	

Народу членія трудно;   
 по консультантою пріятель.

J. Gauthier, Sc., St. Petersburg.

---

## PART I.

### PRONUNCIATION.

---

§ 1. The first principles, or elements of pronunciation are letters.

In the Russian alphabet there are thirty-four letters, which bear the following sounds.\*

А	а	ah,	ех бáба, an old woman, <i>baba</i> .
Б	б	bā,	бáбóчка, a butterfly, <i>babotchka</i> .
В	в	vā,	водá, water, <i>voda</i> .
Г	г	gā,	годъ, a year, <i>goad</i> .
Д	д	dā,	домъ, a house, <i>dōm</i> .
Е	е	ā,	ведró, a pail, <i>védrō</i> .
Ж	ж	jā,	женá, a woman, <i>jéna</i> .

---

\* The English letters, made use of in explaining the sound of the Russian characters, are to be pronounced as follows:

á	as in fate.	u	as in pure.
a	as in far.	g	as in game.
ě	as in me.	j	as the french j.
é	as in met.	z	as in zephyr.
e	as e mute.	ch	as the Scotch pronunciation of ch in loch, och! &c.
ö	as in no.		
o	as in not.		
oo	as in mood	tch	as in fetch.
		sh	as in shame.

З з	zā,	зóлото, gold, <i>zolotō</i> .
И и	ē,	видъ, a view, <i>veedd</i> .
І і	ě,	used before a vowel only, ex. мнѣніе, opinion, <i>mnâneā</i> .
К к	ka ,	Король, a king, <i>Korole</i> .
Л л	él,	мáло, little, <i>malō</i> .
М м	ém,	мráморъ, marble, <i>mramor</i> .
Н н	én ,	нашъ, our, <i>nash</i> .
О о	o ,	окнó, a window, <i>oknō</i> .
П п	pā,	пépelъ, ashes, <i>pépell</i> .
Р р	r ,	rá, early, <i>ranō</i> .
С с	s ,	спасéніе, salvation, <i>spasâneā</i> .
Т т	tā ,	твéрдость, hardness, <i>twérdoste</i> .
У у	oo ,	ùшро, morning, <i>ootrō</i> .
Ф ф	éf ,	флагъ, a flag, <i>flagg</i> .
Х х	kha ,	a guttural sound, resembling the Scotch pronunciation of ch, in loch,etc.ex,хишрость,cunning, <i>chéetroste</i> .
Ц ц	tsā ,	(a combination of т and с) ex. Царь, a king, <i>tsar</i> .
Ч ч	tcha ,	человéкъ, a man, <i>tchélovayk</i> .
Ш ш	sha ,	шерсть, wool, <i>schárste</i> .
Щ щ	sh-tcha ,	(a combination of ш and ч) ex. щéдрость,bounty, <i>sh-tchédroste</i> .
ъ	yerr ,	used at the end of words ter- minating in a consonant, to which it gives a hard sound, ex. ешоль, a table, <i>stoll</i> .

ы      uē,      guttural, ex. рыбá, a fish, *rueba*.

ъ      yāre,      used at the end of words terminating in a consonant, to which it gives a soft sound, nearly corresponding to the English e mute, ex. rádošь, joy, *radoste*.

Ђ    ъ      yā,      рѣкá, a river, *rayká*.

Э    э      ē,      эконо́мъ, a land-steward, *ékonom*.

Ю    ю      you,      юноша, a youth, *younosha*.

Я    я      ya,      јрость, fury, *yaroste*.

Ө    ө      fā,      ариемéтика, arithmetic, *aréf-météka*.

Most of the above letters invariably retain their proper sound, the following however are subject to slight variations.

Г,    gā.

§ 2. In some instances bears the sound of a strongly aspirated h: герóй, a hero, *héroy*; генерálъ, a general, *héneral*; Госпóдъ, Lord, Hospod, and in the terminations of adjectives and pronouns, in the genitive case, may be pronounced either as v or. h, егó, yāho or yāvo; что нóваго? what news, tchtō nōvahō, or nōvavō?

Е,    ā.

§ 3. At the commencement of words bears

\* \*

the sound of yā, ex: есть, it is, *yaste*; едва, scarcely, *yāva*. When it precedes two consonants, or a consonant followed by the hard sign, z, it generally bears the sound of yeo, as in yeoman, the accent-falling upon o, ex. мēдъ, honey, *meodd*; лēнъ, flax, *leonn*; орēлъ, an eagle, *oreoll*.

### Ѣ, yā.

§ 4. Is pronounced like yā at the commencement of a word, and like ā in the middle or at the end, ex. ъхать, to ride, *yāchat*; лъношь, idleness, *lānoste*; на столѣ, on the table, *na stollāy*.

§ 5. There are eleven vowels in the Russian alphabet, which are divided into hard and soft.

hard. *a, o, y, ы*.

soft. *я, е, ю, и, ı, ə, ı̄*.

In the combination of vowels with consonants they are subject to the following variations:

the letter ы following r, k, x, ж, ч, ш or щ changes into u

— — — я — — — г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ, or ң — а

— — — ю — — — г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ, or ң — у

— — — о — — — ж, ч, ш, ң, or ң — ө

— — — е — — — г, к, х, — ө

— — — и before another vowel. — ı

The only diphthongs in the Russian Language

are those formed by the combination of *n* with the other vowels; *аń*, *eń'*, *iń*, *oń*, *жń*, *ыń*, *лń*. When *n* occurs without the ~ it must be pronounced separately from the vowel, which precedes it, ex. *вóинъ*, a warrior, *vó-een*. Whenever two vowels occur together in a word, (excepting the above-mentioned diphthongs) each bears its full and separate sound, ex. *во-ображéниe*, imagination, *vó-ob-ra-já-né-á*.

§ 6. The 21 Consonants of the Russian alphabet are divided according to the organ, which principally contributes to their pronunciation into,

	hard	soft	hard	soft	
labials	п	б	ф	в	invariable
dentals	т (ө)	д	с	з	ц, variable
palatals	ш	ж	ч		ш, invariable
gutturals	к	г	х		variable

The remaining four consonants: *л*, *м*, *н*, *р*, are neither hard, nor soft, and are called liquids.

In the modifications of the variable parts of speech, in compound substantives and derivatives, the variable consonants are frequently

changed into their corresponding palatals, hard into hard, and soft into soft.

The soft consonants *z*, *ts*, and *zh*, change into the soft palatal *ж*, ex. Богъ, God, божескій, divine; видѣшь, to see, вижу, I see; Князъ, prince, княжескій, princely.

The hard Consonants, *k*, *m*, and *u* change into the hard palatal *ч*, ex. скака́сь, to jump. скачу, I jump; плаши́сь, to pay, плачу, I pay.

The hard consonants *c* and *x* change into the hard palatal *ш*, ex. паха́сь, to plough, пашу, I plough; проси́сь, to ask, прошу, I ask.

*Cm* and *m* change into *щ*, ex. свиста́сь to whistle свищу, I whistle; свяшо́й, holy, священnoй, sacred.

A knowledge of the above rules will greatly facilitate the acquisition of the Language and explain its apparent irregularities.

~~~~~  
EXERCISE ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF  
THE LETTERES.

*Exer. I.* .

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| день (déne) day.        | громъ, (gromm) thun-   |
| свѣшь, (svāitt) light.  | дер.                   |
| храмъ(chram) a temple.  | дождь, (dojd) rain.    |
| снѣгъ, (snāygg) snow.   | пыль, (puēl) dust.     |
| часъ, (tchass) an hour. | хлѣбъ, (chlāyb) bread. |
| ночь, (notch) night.    | вода, (voda) water.    |
|                         | рукѣ, (rooka) a hand.  |

|                        |                  |                                    |                     |
|------------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------|
| землѧ , (zemlia)       | the earth.       | корóва, (kōrōva)                   | a cow.              |
| у́тро, (ootrō)         | the mor-         | кóмната, (komnata)                 | a room.             |
| вéчеръ , (vátchéér)    | the evening.     | дѣвьца, (dāyvētsa)                 | girl.               |
| ногá , (nōga)          | a foot.          | жéншина, (jénshtchée-na)           | a woman.            |
| лицё, (lēetsō)         | the face.        | безвѣшrie, (bāzvāytréā)            | a calm              |
| гóродъ, (gōrod)        | a town.          | госпинница , (gostén-nétsa)        | a tavern.           |
| чайникъ , (tchainick)  | a tea-pot.       | строéниe, (strō-ānēā)              | a building.         |
| войско , (voiskō)      | V. § 5. an army. | селéниe, (sälänēā)                 | a village.          |
| головá , (golōva)      | the head.        | мостовáя , (mostovaya)             | pavement.           |
| у́лица, (ooléetsa)     | a street.        | чернильница , (tcher-nélñétsa)     | an ink-stand.       |
| яблоко , (yabloko)     | an apple.        | живóтное , (jévotnō-ā)             |                     |
| дорóга, (döröga)       | a road.          | скотовóдство, (skotō-vodstvō)      | breeding of cattle. |
| карéма, (karéttä)      | a carriage.      | щеслávie, (tshtchásla-véā)         | vanity.             |
| шелъга, (télayga)      | a cart.          | хлебопáшество , chlāy-böpashéstvō) | agriculture.        |
| юноша , (younōsha )    | a youth.         | мореплáванie , (mōrā-              |                     |
| госудáрь, (gossoodar)  | sir.             |                                    |                     |
| господинъ , (gospodin) | master.          |                                    |                     |
| жéшина, (ésteenna )    | truth.           |                                    |                     |

plavanēā) navigation. народонаселénię (на-  
уединénię, (oo-ādēnā- rōdōnasälānēā) popu-  
neā) solitude. лation.  
мъстоположénię, (may-  
stōpolōjānēā) situation.



*Exer 2.*

Дорóга, ошь Дùвра  
до Лóндона подобна  
большóй улицé много-  
людного города.

Что ёжели бы я прý-  
мо изъ Россíи прїехаљ-  
въ Англію , не видáвъ  
ни Эльбскихъ, ни Рейн-  
скихъ, ни Сéнскихъ бе-  
регóвъ, не бывъ ни въ  
Германíи, ни въ Швей-  
цáрии, ни во Фráнциí?  
Дùмаю , что картина  
Англіи ещé болѣе по-  
разылабъ мой чùвствz;  
она была бы для менѧ  
новъе.

Какоé многолюдство ! какая дѣятель-  
ность! и пришомъ ка-

The road from Do-  
ver to London is like  
the high street of a  
populous city.

What if I had come  
straight from Russia to  
England, and had not  
seen the banks of the  
Elb , the Rhine or the  
Seine; had neither been  
in Germany , Switzer-  
land nor France! I think  
the picture of England  
would have astonished  
me still more ; its no-  
vety would have been  
still greater.

What populousness !  
what activity and what  
order! Every thing pre-

кой порядокъ! Все представляешь видъ довольства; хотя не роскоши, но изобилия. Ни одинъ предметъ ошь Дювра до Лондона не напомнилъ мнъ о бѣдности человѣческой.

sents an appearance of content; not profusion, but abundance. From Dover to London not one object reminded me of human misery.

*Karamzin.*

*Letters of a Russian traveller.*

### *Карамзинъ.*

*Изъ писемъ Русского путешественника.*

---

## P A R T II.

### E T Y M O L O G Y.

Etymology properly signifies the derivation of words; but its meaning has been extended by Grammarians to their properties and modifications, in which more extensive sense it is here used.

*Parts of speech.*

§ 7. All the words of the Russian Language are divided into ten classes, or parts of speech.

- |                                                   |                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>1. Substantives,</b> Имя су-<br>ществительное. | <b>6. Participles ,</b> Прича-<br>сіє.      |
| <b>2. Adjectives,</b> имя при-<br>лагательное.    | <b>7. Adverbs, </b> Нарвчіе.                |
| <b>3. Numerals ,</b> Имя чи-<br>слительное.       | <b>8. Prepositions, </b> Пред-<br>лóгъ.     |
| <b>4. Pronouns ,</b> мъстои-<br>мéніе.            | <b>9. Conjunctions, Союзъ.</b>              |
| <b>5. Verbs, глаголъ.</b>                         | <b>10. Interjections, Меж-<br/>думéшіе.</b> |

The first six parts of speech are called variable, their terminations being subject to changes; the four last are invariable, excepting the adverb, which has degrees of comparison like the adjective.

Rem. There are no articles in the Russian Language.

---



---

## C H A P. I.

### S U B S T A N T I V E S.

#### S E C T. I.

##### G E N E R A L R E M A R K S.

§ 8. Substantives in the Russian Language are subject to modifications according to their number, gender and case.

*Number.* There are two numbers, the singular and the plural.

*Gender.* The masculine and feminine genders of substantives are founded on the distinction of the two sexes, and properly can only find place in the names of living creatures; all other substantives ought to belong to the neuter gender; but in all the European Languages, except the English, inanimate objects are also ranked under the distinction of masculine and feminine. In the Russian Language there are four genders: the masculine, feminine, neuter and common. The last includes such names as may be applied alike to either sex, ex. пьяница, a drunkard, ханжá, a bigot &c.

*Case.* The declension of substantives by Cases is nothing but an expression of the relation, which one object bears to another, marked by some variation of the final letters of the word itself.

§ 9. There are six cases in the Russian Language, which are called,

- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. the Nominative, име- | 4. the Accusative, винъ- |
| нительный падéжъ.       | тельный падежъ.          |
| 2. the Genitive, родъ-  | 5. the Instrumental,     |
| щельный.                | творищельный.            |
| 3. the Dative, дáшель-  | 6. the Prepositional,    |
| ный.                    | предлóжный.              |

*Rem.* The vocative case is omitted because it is like the nominative.

§ 10. The accusative singular of mas. substantives is like the genitive, when the substantive denotes an animate object, and like the nominative, when an inanimate. The same rule applies to the accusative case of both masculine and feminine substantives in the plural number.

§ 11. The prepositional case is only employed after the following prepositions :

*о*, *объ*, of.      *при*, by (near).

*во*, *въ*, in.      *по*, after.

*на*,      on.

§ 12. Russian substantives have eight terminations: *а*, *е*, *и*, *о*, *ъ*, *ь*, *я*, and *мя*, by which final letters the gender is determined.

Those ending in *з* and *и* are masculine \*

Those ending in *а*, *е*, *ь*, are feminine

Those ending in *о*, *и*, and *мя*, are neuter.



## S E C T. II.

### DECLINATION OF MASCULINE SUBSTANTIVES.

Including the terminations *ъ* and *и*.

#### I. DECLINATION OF THE MAS TERMINATION *ъ*.

##### *S i n g.*

*Animate.*      *Inanimate.*

Nom. **вóинъ**, a warrior.    **сполъ**, a table.

Gen. **вóин-a** of a warrior.    **спол-á**, of — — —

\* The exceptions are noticed in each declension.

Dat. вóин-у, to a warrior. спол-ý, to —————

Acc. вóин-а, a warrior. споль. —————

Ins. вóин-омъ, by or спол-ómъ, by or with.  
with a warrior.

Prep. о вóин-ѣ, \* of or о спол-ѣ, of —————  
about a warrior, V. § 11.

### P l u.

Nom. вóин-ы, warriors. спол-ы, tables.

Gen. вóин-овъ, of ————— спол-овъ, of —————

Dat. вóин-амъ, to ————— спол-амъ, to —————

Acc. вóин-овъ, ————— спол-ы, —————

Ins. вóин-ами, by or спол-ами, by or with.  
with.

Prepo вóин-ахъ, of. о спол-ахъ, of —————

§ 13. Substantives ending in *и*, *ж*, *к*,  
*х*, *ч*, *ш*, and *щ* form the nom. plu. by  
changing the *и* of the sing. into *и*, instead of *ы*,  
ex. недùгъ, a disease, недùги; ножъ, a knife,  
ножѝ, полкъ, a regiment, полкѝ; духъ, a  
spirit, дùхи; мечъ, a sword; мечѝ; ершъ, a  
stone-peach, ершѝ; лещъ, fallow, лещѝ. V. § 5.

§ 14. Substantives ending in *ецъ*, *екъ*, and  
*окъ*, preceded by a consonant, retrench *e* or

\* The prepositional case has no signification without a preposition; *о*, of, is therefore affixed as being most commonly used with it, but *въ*, in; *на*, on; *при*, at or by, *по* after, are also employed.

*o* in the oblique cases, ex. отéцъ, a father, gen. отца́, pl. отца́ы, отца́въ etc. the following however are exceptions to this rule :

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| кузнéцъ, a black-smith. | бокъ, a side.           |
| жрецъ, a priest.        | бѣглéцъ, a deserter.    |
| порóкъ, vice.           | жнецъ, a reaper.        |
| рокъ, fate.             | льстецъ, a flatterer.   |
| урбóкъ, a lesson.       | мудрéцъ, a philosopher. |
| óтрокъ, a youth.        | подмéцъ, a rascal.      |
| игрóкъ, a gambler.      | пришлéцъ, a stranger.   |
| чернéцъ, a monk.        | чтецъ, a reader.        |
| потóкъ, a stream.       | срокъ, a term.          |
| ходóкъ, a pedestrian.   | ездóкъ, a rider.        |

§ 15. Substantives ending in *ekъ* and *eуъ*, preceded by a vowel, change *e* into *и* in the oblique cases, ex.

раёкъ, paradise (the highest seats in the theatre) райка́ etc.

боéцъ, a wrestler, бойца́, бойцù etc.

But when *ekъ*, or *eуъ* is preceded by *и*, *e* is changed into *и*, ex.  
кулёкъ, a sack, кулька́.

спрълецъ, an archer, спръльца́ etc.

§ 16. The names of nations and conditions, ending in *инъ*, are declined irregularly in the plur: number. V. § 58.

§ 17. The following substantives end in *а*, instead of *и* in the nom. plu. and the accent

falls upon the last syllable, to distinguish the nom. plu. from the gen. sing.

|                      |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| бéрегъ, a coast.     | берегá, coasts.   |
| бокъ, a side.        | бокá, sides.      |
| гóродъ, a city.      | городá, cities.   |
| гóлосъ, a voice.     | голосá, voices.   |
| кóлоколъ, a bell.    | колоколá, bells.  |
| лугъ, a meadow.      | лугá, meadows.    |
| лѣсъ, a wood.        | лѣсá, woods.      |
| мѣхъ, a fur.         | мѣхá, furs.       |
| о́стровъ, an island. | Островá, islands. |
| рогъ, a horn.        | рогá, horns.      |
| рукáвъ, a sleeve.    | рукавá, sleeves.  |
| снѣгъ, snow.         | снѣгá, snows.     |
| стругъ, a plane.     | стругá, planes.   |

§ 18. The following substantives are irregular in the nom. gen. and dat. plu. having in these cases the terminations *ъя*, *ъевъ* and *ъямъ*, ex. братъ, brother, nom. plu., бráтъя, gen. братъевъ, dat. братъямъ.

|                  |              |
|------------------|--------------|
| брусъ, a rafter. | брùсья, etc. |
| лоскутъ, a rag.  | лоскутъя.    |
| мужъ, a husband. | мужъя.       |
| стулъ, a chair.  | стулъя.      |
| колъ, a pile.    | кóлья.       |
| лубъ, bark.      | лùбъя.       |
| листь, a leaf.   | листья.      |
| прущъ, a rod.    | прущъя.      |

§ 19. The following substantives are irregular in the cases marked :

Богъ, God, vocative case, Бóже !

Христóсь, Christ, gen. Христá вос. Христé !

господинъ, master, nom. plu. господá gen  
господь.

другъ, a friend, nom. plu. другъя, gen.  
друзéй.

глазъ, an eye, nom. plu. глазá, gen. глазъ.

сынъ, son, nom. plu. сыновъя, gen. сыновéй.

хозяинъ, host, nom. plu. хозяева, gen. хозяевъ.

шуринъ, brother-in-law, nom. plu. шуръя,  
gen. шурьевъ.



### T H E M E I.

#### ON THE MAS. TERMINATION *B.*

God is the creator of the world. The soul of man is immortal. Reason was given to man to control his passions. Happy is that youth,

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| God, Богъ.              | reason, разумъ.         |
| is, ешь.                | was given, дань.        |
| the creator, создатель. | to control, для обуз-   |
| the world, миръ.        | данія.                  |
| the soul, душа.         | his passions, спрасшéй. |
| man, человѣкъ.          | happy is, счастливъ.    |
| is immortal, безсмерти- | that youth, юно-        |
| на.                     | ша.                     |

who has found *a true friend*. Drunkenness impairs *the understanding*. Iron rubbed *with the magnet* always points to the North. Theology is a science, which treats *of God*. The peasant speaks *of the plough* and *of sowing*. Petersburg is one of the finest towns in Europe; in this

---

|                           |                             |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| who, котóрый.             | of, o, gov. the prep. case. |
| has found, нашéль.*       | the peasant, поселя-        |
| a true, върнаго.          | нинь.                       |
| friend, другъ.            | speaks, говоришь.           |
| drunkenness, пьян-        | of, o, gov. the prep. case. |
| ство.                     | plough, плугъ.              |
| impairs, ослабляешь.      | and, и.                     |
| the understanding, раз-   | sowing, посевъ.             |
| сјдокъ.                   | Sj. Petersburg, С. Пе-      |
| iron, желѣзо.             | тербургъ.                   |
| rubbed, напершое.         | one, одињъ.                 |
| the magnet, магнитъ.      | of, изъ, gov. the gen-      |
| always, всегдá.           | case.                       |
| points, покáзываешь.      | the finest, красицт-        |
| to the north, на съверь.  | шихъ.                       |
| Theology, Богословія.     | town, градъ.                |
| is a science, есть наука: | in Europe, въ Европѣ.       |
| which treats, котóрая     | in this, въ семъ, gov. the  |
| разсуждаешь.              | prep.                       |

---

\* All active verbs govern the accusative case.

*City there are many magnificent houses. Experience is the teacher of fools. Curiosity attracts the human mind to new objects. Friendship is the mutual attraction of virtuous minds; wicked people have their accomplices of crime, libertines their companions of licentiousness, misers their associates of avarice,*

---

|                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| city , <i>городъ.</i>            | attraction , <i>влечéніе.</i>  |
| there are , <i>есть.</i>         | of virtuous minds, <i>доб-</i> |
| many , <i>много.</i>             | <i>родѣтельныхъ</i>            |
| magnificent , <i>велико-</i>     | <i>сердцъ.</i>                 |
|                                  | <i>лѣпныхъ.</i>                |
| house , <i>домъ.</i>             | wicked people , <i>люди</i>    |
| experience , <i>опытъ.</i>       | <i>злые.</i>                   |
| the teacher , <i>настáв-</i>     | have , <i>имѣютъ.</i>          |
|                                  | (their, not expressed)         |
| a fool, <i>глупéцъ.</i> V. § 14. | accomplice, <i>сообщникъ.</i>  |
| curiosity , <i>любопыт-</i>      | V. § 13.                       |
|                                  | <i>ство.</i>                   |
| attracts , <i>влечéшь.</i>       | crime , <i>порокъ.</i>         |
| the mind , <i>разумъ.</i>        | libertines , <i>распутные.</i> |
| human , <i>человѣческій.</i>     | companion , <i>соугаст-</i>    |
| to, <i>къ,</i> gov. the dat.     | <i>никъ.</i>                   |
| new , <i>новымъ.</i>             | licentiousness , <i>раз-</i>   |
| object , <i>предмѣтъ.</i>        | <i>вратъ.</i>                  |
| friendship , <i>дружба.</i>      | miser , <i>сребролюбецъ.</i>   |
| the mutual , <i>взаимное.</i>    | V. § 14.                       |
|                                  | associates, <i>товарищей.</i>  |
|                                  | of avarice , <i>корыстши.</i>  |

the vain their *partners* of ambition, the virtuous alone have *friends*. In Spring the earth is adorned *with flowers*. Jurisprudence treats of the laws. Luxury reigns *in cities* and simplicity in villages.

|                |                  |                 |                |
|----------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| the vain ,     | сùешные.         | jurisprudence , | право-         |
| partners ,     | состязáще-       |                 | вèдьніе.       |
|                | лей.             | treats ,        | разсуждáещъ.   |
| of ambition,   | птичеславія.     | of , o ,        | gov. the prep. |
| alone ,        | однì тóлько.     | the law ,       | законъ.        |
| the virtuous , | добродѣ-         | in , въ ,       | gov. the prep. |
|                | шельные.         | city ,          | гóродъ.        |
| have ,         | имѣющъ.          | reigns ,        | цáрствующъ ,   |
| friend ,       | другъ , V. § 19. |                 | ор обитáещъ.   |
| in spring ,    | весною .         | luxury ,        | рóскошь.       |
| the earth ,    | землѧ.           | and , a.        |                |
| is adorned ,   | украшáещ-        | in villages ,   | въ сéлахъ.     |
|                | ся.              |                 | simplicity ,   |
| flower ,       | цветъ.           |                 | просоща.       |



## II. DECLENSION OF THE MAS. TERMINATION Ъ.

|       |                       |                         |
|-------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Nom.  | змѣ-й , a serpent.    | обыча-й , a custom.     |
| Gen.  | змѣ-я of ———          | обыча-я , of ———        |
| Dat.  | змѣ-ю , to ———        | обыча-ю , to ———        |
| Accu. | змѣ-я. ———            | обыча-й. ———            |
| Ins.  | змѣ-емъ , by or with. | обыча-емъ , by or with. |
| Prep. | о змѣ-ѣ , of ———      | о обыча-ѣ , of ———      |

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. змѣ-и, serpents.     | обыча-и , customs.     |
| Gen. змѣ-евъ , of — —     | обыча-евъ , of — — —   |
| Dat. змѣ-ямъ , to — —     | обыча-ямъ , to — — —   |
| Acc. змѣ-евъ. — — —       | обыча-и , — — — —      |
| Ins. змѣ-ями, by or with. | обыча-ями, by or with, |
| Prep. о змѣ-яхъ , of —    | о обыча-яхъ , of — —   |

§ 20. The names of all animated objects, ending in *й*, are declined as the first example, змѣй; and of inanimate, as the second, обычай.

§ 21. Some Nouns, terminating in *ей*, change *e* into *я* in the oblique cases ex. соловѣй, a nightingale, соловѣй, соловью etc., муравѣй, an ant, муравѣй, муравью etc.; ўлей, a bee-hive, ўлья; ўлью etc.

§ 22. Monosyllabic nouns of inanimate objects, ending in *й*, which denote quantity, change this final in the genitive and prepositional cases singular into *ю*, ex. рой, a swarm, робю; чай, tea, чайю; край, a border, краю, etc.

§ 23. Some nouns ending in *й* preceded by *о* are declined as adjectives (V. declension of adjectives) портной, a tailor, портнаго, портному etc.



## THEME II.

## ON THE MAS TERMINATION ІІ.

Magnanimity is the characteristic of a true hero. Let us go to the rivulet to bathe. The gardener made a *hive*, in which he keeps a whole *swarm* of bees. Themistocles was banished from his country *by lot*. Marriage was ordained in *Paradise*. In Africa there are venomous

|                                                 |                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| magnanimity , велико-<br>дùше.                  | swarm , рой.<br>of bees , пчель.                       |
| the characteristic, свой-<br>ство, (оптичие).   | Themistocles , Θеми-<br>стокль.                        |
| of a true , ѹспиншаго.<br>hero , герой.         | was banished , изгнанъ<br>быль.                        |
| let us go , пойдемъ.<br>to, къ, gov. the dat.   | lot , жрёбий.<br>from his country , изъ<br>опечеспива. |
| the rivulet , ручей.<br>to bathe , купаться.    | marriage, супружество.                                 |
| the gardener , садов-<br>никъ.                  | was ordained , устаноб-<br>лено было.                  |
| made , построилъ.<br>a hive , ўлей.             | paradise , рай.                                        |
| in which, въ которомъ.<br>he keeps , содержашъ. | in , въ , gov. the prep.                               |
| a whole , цѣлый.                                | Africa , Африкѣ.                                       |
|                                                 | there are , водятся.                                   |
|                                                 | venomous , ядовитыя.                                   |

*serpents.* Never neglect any fit opportunities of acquiring knowledge. Death is terrible to the wicked. The ancient Egyptians worshipped *serpents*. The rain has penetrated the upper *strata* of the earth. The Tempean valley is watered by numerous *rivulets*. The fame of Alexander the Great has resounded in all parts of the world.

---

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| serpent, змѣй.          | has penetrated, напи-      |
| never neglect, не про-  | шаль.                      |
| пускай.                 | the upper, вѣрхніе.        |
| any fit, удобныхъ       | stratum, слой.             |
| opportunity, слѣгай.    | of the earth, землѣ.       |
| of acquiring, къ приоб- | the Tempean valley,        |
| рѣтенію.                | Темпѣская долина.          |
| knowledge, познаній.    | is watered, орошаема.      |
| death, смерть.          | by numerous, многими.      |
| is terrible, ужасна.    | the fame, слава.           |
| a wicked man, злодѣй.   | Alexander, Александъръ.    |
| the ancient, дрѣвніе.   | the Great, великаго.       |
| an Egyptian, Египтя-    | has resounded, гремѣла.    |
| нинъ, V. § 58.          | in all, во всѣхъ, gov. the |
| worshipped, обожали.    | Prep.                      |
| the rain, дождь.        | part, край.                |
|                         | of the world, вселенной.   |



## S E C T III.

DECLINATION OF FEMININE SUBSTANTIVES.  
INCLUDING THE TERMINATIONS *a*, *я* AND *ь*.

I. Declension of the feminine termination *a*.*S i n g.*

|                               |                       |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Ном. корóв-а, a'cow.          | звéзд-á, a star.      |
| Gen. корóв-ы, of — —          | звéзд-ы, of — — —     |
| Dat. корóв-ѣ, to — —          | звéзд-ѣ, to — — —     |
| Acc. корóв-у, — — —           | звéзд-у, — — —        |
| Ins. корóв-ою, by or<br>with. | звéзд-ою, by or with. |
| Prep. о корóв-ѣ, of —         | о звéзд-ѣ, of — — —   |

*P l u.*

|                                |                        |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| Ном. корóв-ы, cows.            | звéзд-ы, stars.        |
| Gen. корóв-ъ, of — —           | звéзд-ъ, of — — —      |
| Dat. корóв-амъ, to —           | звéзд-амъ, to — — —    |
| Acc. корóв-ъ, — — —            | звéзд-ы, — — —         |
| Ins. корóв-ами, by or<br>with. | звéзд-ами, by or with. |

Prep. о корóв-ахъ, of. о звéзд-ахъ, of.

§ 24. By the above examples it will be seen, that the only difference in the declension of the animate and inanimate nouns ending in *a* is, that the acc. plu. of animated objects is like the genitive, and the acc. plu. of inanimate objects is like the nom.

§ 25. All nouns terminating in *га*, *жа*, *ка*,  
*ха*, *та*, *ша* and *ща*, end in the gen. sing.  
and nom. plu. in *и* instead of *ы*. V. § 5.

§ 26. Those, which end in *жа*, *та*, *ша*,  
or *ща*, form the ins. sing. by the termination  
*ю* instead of *ою*, (V. § 5.) ex. спùжа, severe  
cold, спùжею; Царѝца, a queen, Царѝцею;  
пùча, a dark cloud, шùчею; душá, the soul,  
душéю; рóща, a grove, рóщею.

§ 27. Those, which end in *жжа*, *кша*, *рта*, *рша*  
and *ща*, form the gen. plu. by the termination  
*ей*, ex. вóжжа, a rein, вожжéй; вéкша, a squirrel,  
вéкшей; парчá, gold-cloth, парчéй; вершá,  
a basket, (used in catching fish) вершéй; рó-  
ща, a grove, рóщей.

§ 28. Those ending in *ка*, preceded by *н*,  
*т*, or *ш*, take *e* in the gen. plu. ex. лóжка,  
a spoon, лóжекъ; бóчка, a cask, бóчекъ;  
пùшка, a cannon, пùшекъ. But when the ter-  
mination *ка* is preceded by any other Con-  
sonant, *о* is substituted in the place of *e*, ex

*Nom. sign.**Gen. plu.*

шрùбка, a pipe.

шрùбокъ.

дёвка, a girl.

дёвокъ.

скáзка, a tale.

скáзокъ.

пáлка, a stick.

пáлокъ.

јмка, a ditch.

јмокъ.

|                  |         |
|------------------|---------|
| шáпка , a cap.   | шáпокъ. |
| бárка , a barge. | бáрокъ. |
| доскá , a board. | досóкъ. |
| ùшка , a duck.   | ùшокъ.  |

§ 29. When the termination *xa* is preceded by *ь* or *й*, the gen. plu. is formed by the ejection of those letters, and the insertion of *e* in their place , ex.

|                         |         |
|-------------------------|---------|
| люлька , a cradle.      | люлекъ. |
| иàнька , a nurse.       | иàнекъ. |
| бáйка , baize.          | бáекъ.  |
| шáйка , a band (troop). | шáекъ.  |

§ 30. The nouns, which end in *ba*, *ga*, *ma*, *na*, *ra*, and *ya*, preceded by *й*, *ь*, or any consonant except the gutturals *г*, *к* and *х*, take *e*, in the gen. plu. ex.

|                        |         |
|------------------------|---------|
| судьбá , fate.         | судéбъ. |
| сéрга , an ear - ring. | сéрегъ. |
| шюрьмá , a prison.     | шюрémъ. |
| каймá , a selvage.     | каéмъ.  |

If the preceding consonant be one of the gutturals *г*, *к*, or *х*, the gen. plu. takes *о* instead of *e*, ex.

|                  |          |
|------------------|----------|
| иглá , a needle. | íголь.   |
| ку́кла , a doll. | ку́коль. |

§ 31. Those substantives ending in *а*, which by their signification belong to the male sex, *аз*, *вельмόжа*, a Lord; *воевóда*, a military

chief, etc. are of the mas gen. but declined as the examples given for the fem.



### T H E M E III.

#### O N T H E F E M. T E R M I N A T I O N a.

There is no *rose* without thorns. Who does not admire the works of *Nature*? The Mont-Rosa is scarcely inferior *in height* to the Mont-blanc. Labour preserves the *strength* and health. The ancient Romans despised ~~riches~~ and luxury. The Volga

|                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| there is no, нѣшъ. *     | Mont-blanc, Мон-бланъ. |
| rose, рóза.              | in, въ, gov. the prep. |
| without, безъ, gov. the  | height, вышинá.        |
| gen.                     | labour, рабóша.        |
| thorn, шипъ.             | preserves, укрéпляешъ. |
| who does not, кто не.    | the strength, сíла.    |
| admire, удивляешся.      | health, здорóвие.      |
| the works, дѣйствія.     | the ancient, дрéвніе.  |
| nature, прирóда.         | Roman, Римлянинъ,      |
| the Mont-Rosa, горá Розá | V. § 58.               |
| is scarcely, едвá ли.    | despised, презирáли.   |
| inferior, уступаешъ      | riches, нѣга.          |
| gov. the dat.            | luxury, рóскошь.       |
| mountain, горá.          | the Volga, Волга.      |

\* Negations govern the gen. case.

abounds with fish. Every thing in Nature proclaims the wisdom of the Creator. The Alpian mountains are the highest in Europe. The Egyptians believed in the transmigration of souls. Before the invention of the compass, mariners steered their course by the stars. Hope supports the minds of the unfortunate. Switzerland

---

|                          |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| abounds, изобільуєть,    | in the transmigration            |
| gov. the ins.            | переселенію                      |
| fish, риба.              | soul, душа.                      |
| every thing, все.        | before the invention,            |
| in, въ, gov. the prep.   | до изобрѣтенія.                  |
| nature, природа.         | the compass, компасъ.            |
| proclaims, возвѣщаєть.   | mariner, мореходецъ.             |
| the wisdom, премудрость. | steered, направлялъ.             |
|                          | their course, своє плаваніе.     |
| the Creator, Творецъ.    | by, по, gov. the dat.            |
| the Alpian, Алпійскія.   | star, звѣзды.                    |
| mountain, гора.          | hope, надежда.                   |
| are, суть.               | supports, підтримаєть.           |
| the highest, высочайшая. | the mind, душа.                  |
| Europe, Европа.          | of the unfortunate, несчастныхъ. |
| an Egyptian, Египтянинъ. | Switzerland, Швейцарія.          |
| believed, вѣрили.        |                                  |

\*\*

abounds *in mountains and valleys.* At the Olympic games the Greeks crowned the conquerors with wreaths of laurel.

|                                        |                                   |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| abounds, изобилуешь.                   | the Greeks, Греки.                |
| valley, долина.                        | crowned, венчали.                 |
| at the Olympic, при Олимпийскихъ, gov. | the conquerors, победители.       |
|                                        | the prep. with laurel, лавровыми. |
| game, игрá.                            | wreath, венокъ, V. § 14.          |



## II. DECLENSION OF THE FEMININE TERMINATION Α PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

*S i n g.*

Nom. Богин-я, a God-dess. Пùл-я, a bullet.

Gen. богин-и, of — пùл-и, of ——————

Dat. богин-ѣ, to —— пùл-ѣ, to ——————

Acc. богин-ю. ———— пùл-ю.—————

Ins. богин-ею, by or with. пùл-ею, by or with.—

Prep. о богин-ѣ, of — о пùл-ѣ, of ——————

*P l u.*

Nom. богин-и Goddesses. пùл-и, bullets.

Gen. богин-ь, of —— пùл-ь, or пùл-ей, of.

Dat. богин-ямъ, to — пùл-ямъ, to ——————

Acc. богин-Ь. — — — пùл-и. — — — — —

Ins. богин-ями , by or пùл-ями , by or with.  
with.

Prep. о богин-яхъ , of. о пùл-яхъ , of — — —

§ 32. The substantives ending in *ль* and *ня*, preceded by *ъ*, *й* or any consonant form the gen. plu. by the insertion of *e* between the two consonants , or changing *ъ* and *й* into that letter , ex.

земля, the earth. земель.

башня , a tower. башень.

водопойня , a water- trough. водопоенъ.

§ 33. The substantives ending in *ль* and *ря*, terminate in the gen. plu. in *ей* , ex.

бùря , a storm. бùрей.

заря , the dawn. зарéй.

Declension of the fem. termination *я* preceeded by a vowel.

### *S i n g.*

Nom. лìлі-я, a lily. шé-я, the neck.

Gen. лìлі-и , of — — шé-и , of — — — — —

Dat. лìлі-и , to — — шé-ѣ, to — — — — —

Acc. лìлі-ю. — — — шé-ю. — — — — —

Ins. лìлі-ею, by or with. шé-ею , by or with.

Prep. о лìлі-и , of — о шé-ѣ, of — — — —

*P l u.*

|                |                |         |                      |
|----------------|----------------|---------|----------------------|
| Nom. лілі-и,   | lilies.        | шé-и,   | necks.               |
| Gen. лілі-й,   | of — —         | шé-й,   | of — — — —           |
| Dat. лілі-ямъ, | to — —         | шé-ямъ, | to — — — —           |
| Acc. лілі-и.   | — — — —        | шé-и.   | — — — —              |
| Ins. лілі-ями, | by or<br>with. | шé-ями, | by or with.<br>with. |

Prep. о лілі-яхъ, of. о шé-яхъ, of — —

The substantives ending in *иа* are declined according to the first example, (*лилія*) and those ending in *я* preceded by any other vowel according to the second, (*шéя*).

§ 34. Some substantives ending in *ај*, as : *вселенная*, the universe, are declined as fem. adjectives.

§ 35. The following are of the mas. gender.

Дядя, uncle.

судья, a judge.

вишій, an orator.

---

## T H E M E IV.

### ON THE FEM. TERMINATION *я*.

Hospitality, which among the nations of

---

|                       |             |                          |
|-----------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| hospitality ,         | страно-     | among, y , gov. the gen. |
|                       | пріймство.  | nation , нарóдъ.         |
| which proceded , про- |             | of antiquity , дрéвнихъ. |
|                       | испекáвшее. |                          |

antiquity, proceeded from pure humanity, is now founded on the advantages of trade. Soldiers should be blindly obedient to the will of their Commander. Franklin invented a means of averting lightning by a conductor. One moment rolls away after another, as wave after wave in the ocean of eternity. People accustomed' to the luxuries of town find no pleasure in a village.

|                                           |                              |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| from , изъ.                               | lightning , молния.          |
| pure humanity, чиста-                     | by a conductor, громо-       |
| го человѣколюбія.                         | вымъ ошвѣдомъ.               |
| now , нынѣ.                               | one moment , одноб-          |
| is founded , основы-                      | мгновеніе.                   |
| <sup>настое</sup> on , на, gov. the prep. | rolls away , ушекаешь.       |
| advantage , выгода.                       | after another , за другимъ.  |
| trade , торговля.                         | wave , струйн.               |
| a soldier , воинъ.                        | after , за , gov. the ins.   |
| should , должны.                          | the ocean , море.            |
| blindly , слѣпо.                          | of eternity , вѣчноши.       |
| be obedient , повино-                     | people , люди.               |
| <sup>вашься</sup>                         | accustomed, привыкшіе        |
| will , воля.                              | to the luxuries, къ роскоши. |
| of their commander ,                      |                              |
| своего предводителя.                      |                              |
| Franklin , Франклинъ.                     | of town , городской.         |
| invented , изобрѣлъ.                      | find no , не находить        |
| a means , средство.                       | никакого.                    |
| of averting, ошвращать.                   | pleasure, удовольствія.      |
|                                           | village , деревня.           |

A military commander should preserve presence of mind amidst the whistling of *balls* and the thunder of cannon. The establishment of schools in the *villages* has contributed to the prosperity of *Scotland*. Africa includes many extensive deserts. Among the Russian poets Krilloff, Dmitrieff and Chemnitzer are celebrated for their

a military Commander,

Africa , Африка.

should preserve , доля-

includes , заключаешь

въ себѣ.

женъ сохраняшь.

many , многія.

presence of mind , при-

extensive , проспраи-

нныя.

amidst , среди , gov. the

desert , пустыни.

ball , пулл. (gen.

among , изъ , gov. the

gen.

the thunder , громъ.

the Russian , Россійс-

кихъ.

cannon , пушка.

the establishment , у-

чреждѣніе.

V. § 14.

school , школа.

poet , стихопѣрецъ ,

in , по , gov. the dat.

Krilloff , Крыловоъ.

village , деревня.

Dmitrieff , Дмитріевъ ,

has contributed , содѣй-

Chemnitzer , Хемни-

церь.

ствовало.

are celebrated , просла-

to the prosperity , къ

вились , gov. the ins.

благосостоянію.

for their , своими.

Scotland , Шотландин.

*fables.* In different *countries*, different manners.

|                                |                                        |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| fable, бáсня.                  | country, земля.                        |
| in different, въ раз-<br>ныхъ. | different, разные.<br>manners, обычай. |



### III. DECLENSION OF THE FEM. TERMINATION ь.

#### S i n g.

|                                       |                       |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Nom. Свекróв-ь, a moth-<br>er-in-law. | rádost-ь, joy.        |
| Gen. свекróв-и, of —                  | rádost-и, of — — —    |
| Dat. свекróв-и, to —                  | rádost-и, to — — —    |
| Acc. свекróв-ь. — —                   | rádostь. — — —        |
| Ins. свекróвь-ю, by or<br>with.       | rádost-ю, by or with. |

Prep. о свекróв-и, of. о rádost-и, of — —

#### P l u.

|                                      |                            |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Nom. свекróв-и, moth-<br>ers-in-law. | rádost-и, joys.            |
| Gen. свекróв-ей, of.                 | rádost-ей, of — — —        |
| Dat. свекróв-ямъ, to.                | rádost-ямъ, to — — —       |
| Acc. свекróв-ей. — —                 | rádost-и. — — —            |
| Ins. свекróв-ями, by or<br>with.     | rádost-ями, by or<br>with. |

Prep. о свекróв-яхъ. of. о rádost-яхъ, of —

§ 36. Some of the substantives ending in  
ь, which have either е or о in the last syll-

table, eject these vowels in all the oblique cases except the ins. ex.

ложь, a falsehood, gen. лжи ins. лóжью  
любóвь, love. — — — любви — — любóвю.

§ 37. When the final *ъ* is preceded by one of the palatals *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, or *щ*, *ъ* is changed in the plu. into *a*, in the dat. ins. and prep. cases, ex.

ночь, night, dat. pl. ночáмъ, ins. plu. ночáми, &c.

§ 38. The letter *ъ*, is frequently retained in the ins. sing. instead of being changed into *i*, ex.  
лесшь flattery, лéсшию or лéстию  
честшь honour, чéстшию.

§ 39. The words *мать*, mother, and *дочь*, daughter are augmented in the oblique cases by the syllable *ер*, ex.

мáнъ, mother, gen. мáтери &c.



### T H E M E V.

#### O N T H E F E M. T E R M I N A T I O N *b.*

|            |                                     |
|------------|-------------------------------------|
| Health     | is the fruit of <i>temperance</i> . |
| health     | the happiest, <i>счастли-</i>       |
| the fruit  | <i>выйшее.</i>                      |
| temperance | period, <i>врёмя.</i>               |
| noстъ      | <i>life, жизнъ.</i>                 |
| childhood  | virtue, <i>добродѣтель.</i>         |
| сіль.      |                                     |

is preferable to riches , friendship to flattery and utility to pleasure. An indolent man is a *burden* to himself. Liberality should be tempered by *prudence*. Asia was the *cradle* of the human race. If thou wouldest be virtuous , reflect often upon *death*. Justice is the first of *virtues*. It is dangerous to give ourselves

---

is preferable , предпо-  
чтишельна.  
riches , бога́щество.  
friendship , дру́жество.  
flattery , ле́сть.  
and utility , а польза.  
pleasure , удо́воль-  
ствie.  
a man , человéкъ.  
indolent , лéнивый.  
to himself , самъ себé.  
is , бытáещъ.  
въ , gov. the acc.  
burden , тягостъ.  
liberality , щéдрость.  
should be , должна  
быть  
tempered , умѣряема.  
prudence , бережлý-  
вость.

Asia , Азія.  
was , былá , gov. the ins.  
the cradle , колыбéль.  
race , родъ.  
human , человéческаго.  
if , естьли.  
thou wouldest , хóчешь.  
be virtuous , бытъ до-  
бродъшельнымъ.  
reflect , размышлай.  
often , ча́сто.  
upon , о , gov. the ins.  
death , смерть.  
justice , правосудіе.  
is , есть.  
the first , пéрвая.  
of , изъ , gov. the gen.  
it is dangerous , опасно.  
to give ourselves up ,  
предавáться.

up to unbounded *passions*. The contemplation of nature inspires grand *ideas*. Reason is very often obscured by the *passions*. There are some extraordinary geniuses, who have distinguished themselves in all *branches* of human knowledge.

---

|                                     |                                                             |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| to unbounded, неумѣ-<br>реннымъ.    | extraordinary, необык-<br>новенными.                        |
| passion, страсть.                   | genius, умъ.                                                |
| the contemplation, со-<br>зерцаніе. | who have distinguish-<br>ed themselves, про-<br>славившися. |
| inspires, внушаешьъ.                |                                                             |
| grand, величествен-<br>ныя.         | in all, во всѣхъ, gov.<br>the prep.                         |
| idea, мысль.                        |                                                             |
| very often, чѣсто.                  | branch, вѣтвь.                                              |
| reason, разумъ.                     | of human knowledge,                                         |
| is obscured, помра-<br>чается.      | человѣческихъ поз-<br>наній.                                |
| there are, есть.                    |                                                             |

§ 40. Although *я* be a fem. termination, the number of mas. Substantives ending in this sign is considerable. To the following list must be added all the nouns, which terminate in *тель*, except, добродѣтель, virtue; обиходель, abode; аршель, a company (of work-

men); and **мешéль**, a whirlwind (snow - storm) which are feminine.

List of words ending in **ъ**, which are of the masculine gender.

|                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Алтарь</b> , an altar.         | <b>Куль</b> , a bag. (sack).       |
| <b>Букварь</b> , a spelling-book. | <b>Лáгеръ</b> , a camp.            |
| <b>Вихрь</b> , a whirlwind.       | <b>Лáпопь</b> , a sandal.          |
| <b>Воинъ</b> , a groan.           | (made of the bark of the birch)    |
| <b>Гвоздь</b> , a nail.           | <b>Лóкоть</b> , the elbow.         |
| <b>Гréбень</b> , a comb.          | <b>Миндáль</b> , an almond.        |
| <b>Груздь</b> , a mushroom.       | <b>Мишкáль</b> , muslin.           |
| <b>Дéгошь</b> , tar.              | <b>Монастырь</b> , a mona-         |
| <b>День</b> , day.                | stery.                             |
| <b>Жéлудь</b> , a gland.          | <b>Нашатырь</b> , sal ammoniac.    |
| <b>Звéрь</b> , an animal.         | <b>Огóнь</b> , fire.               |
| <b>Инби́рь</b> , ginger.          | <b>Пень</b> , a trunk (of a tree). |
| <b>Календáрь</b> , an almanack.   | <b>Пéречень</b> , recapitulation.  |
| <b>Кáмень</b> , a stone.          |                                    |
| <b>Кáшель</b> , a cough.          | <b>Пéрсшень</b> , a ring.          |
| <b>Кисéль</b> , jelly.            | <b>Плáмень</b> , a flame.          |
| <b>Кóзырь</b> , a trump.          | <b>Пузырь</b> , a bladder.         |
| <b>Конь</b> , a courser.          | <b>Илéшень</b> , a hurdle.         |
| <b>Корáбль</b> , a ship.          | <b>Путь</b> , a way.               |
| <b>Кóрень</b> , a root.           | <b>Ревéнь</b> , rhubarb.           |
| <b>Косáрь</b> , a cutlass.        | <b>Ремéнь</b> , a strap.           |
| <b>Крéмень</b> , a flint.         | <b>Рубль</b> , a rouble.           |
| <b>Крéндель</b> , a cakle.        | <b>Руль</b> , a rudder.            |

|          |                          |           |               |
|----------|--------------------------|-----------|---------------|
| Сбýтень, | hydromel.                | Фонáрь,   | a lantern.    |
| Словáрь, | a dictionary.            | Хмélъ,    | hops.         |
| Стéбель, | stubble.                 | Хрустáлъ, | chrystral.    |
| Сухáрь,  | a rusk.                  | Щавéль,   | sorrel.       |
| Уголь,   | coal.                    | Щебéнь,   | rubbish.      |
| Угорь,   | an eel..                 | Якорь,    | an anchor.    |
| Фитíль,  | the wick of<br>a candle. | Янтарь,   | yellow amber. |
|          |                          | Ячмéнь,   | barley.       |

§ 41. The names of the months, which end in *ь* are also masculine, as well as the names of dignities, occupations &c. belonging exclusively to the male sex. as: Корóль, a King; вождь, a guide; учíтель, a school-master &c.

Declension of substantives terminating in *ь*, which are of the masculine gender.

S i n g.

|                              |         |             |             |
|------------------------------|---------|-------------|-------------|
| Nom. Цар-ь,                  | a King. | корáбл-ь,   | a ship.     |
| Gen. Цар-à of — — —          |         | корабл-à,   | of — — —    |
| Dat. Цар-ю, to — — —         |         | корабл-ю,   | to — — —    |
| Acc. Цар-à.                  | — — —   | корáбл-ь.   | — — —       |
| Ins. Цар-éмь, by or<br>with. |         | корабл-éмь, | by or with. |
| Prep. о Цар-è, of — —        |         | о корабл-è, | of — — —    |

P l u.

|                       |        |              |          |
|-----------------------|--------|--------------|----------|
| Nom. Цар-и,           | Kings. | корабл-и,    | ships.   |
| Gen. Цар-éй, of — —   |        | корабл-éй,   | of — — — |
| Dat. Цар-я́мъ, to — — |        | корабл-я́мъ, | to — — — |

Acc. Цар-éй. — — — корабл-íй. — — —

Ins. Цар-àми; by or корабл-àми, by or with.  
with.

Prep. о Цар-àхъ, of— о корабл-àхъ, of—



### Т Н Е М Е VI.

#### ON THE SUBSTANTIVES ENDING IN ь, WHICH ARE MASCULINE.

Vain is the endeavour of an *author* to please the taste of all his *readers*. The scholar should be obedient to his *teacher*. The south of Russia produces in great abundance ~~barley~~<sup>б</sup> buck-wheat, oats and every kind of grain.

|                                          |                            |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| vain, пшёшное.                           | to his, своему.            |
| endeavour, усиліе.                       | teacher, учителъ.          |
| author, сознатель.                       | the south of Russia,       |
| to please, угодывать,                    | южная Россія.              |
| gov. the dat.                            | produces, производить      |
| taste, вкусъ.                            | in great. въ великомъ.     |
| of all his, всѣхъ сво-                   | abundance, изобиліи.       |
| ихъ.                                     | barley, ячмень.            |
| reader, читатель.                        | buck-wheat, просо.         |
| the scholar, ученикъ.                    | oats, овесь.               |
| should, долженъ.                         | every kind, всѣ категоріи. |
| be obedient, повиноватъся, gov. the dat. | grain, хлѣбная распѣнія.   |

Rurick was the *founder* of the Russian Empire. The *enemy* devastated all the towns and villages with *fire* and *sword*. Chancellor, an Englishman, having sailed (in a *ship*) to the shores of the White Sea established the first commercial intercourse with Russia. Conquerors overthrow in one year, what it required ages to establish. In England

|                                        |                          |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Rurick, Рюрикъ.                        | a ship, корáбль.         |
| was, былъ, gov. the ins.               | to, къ, gov. the dat.    |
| the founder, основа-                   | shore, бéрегъ.           |
| <i>of the White Sea</i> , Белого моря. | established, завéль.     |
| of the Russian Empire,                 | the first, пéрвыя.       |
| Российского Госудár-                   | commercial, торгóвый.    |
| ства.                                  | intercourse, связь.      |
| the enemy, непрíятель.                 | with Russia, съ Россieю. |
| devastated, опусто-                    | Conqueror, завоеевá-     |
| шиль.                                  | тель.                    |
| all, всѣ.                              | in one year, въ оди́нъ.  |
| town, горо́дъ.                         | годъ.                    |
| V. § 17.                               |                          |
| villages, сéла.                        | overthrow, испровер-     |
| fire, огóнь.                           | гáюшъ.                   |
| sword, мечъ.                           | what, то что.            |
| an Englishman, Англи-                  | required to establish,   |
| чáининъ.                               | учреждае́тся gov. the    |
| Chancellor, Чáнселиоръ.                | inst.                    |
| having sailed, пріѣхавъ.               | age, вѣкъ.               |
| in, на, gov. the prep.                 | England, Англія.         |

there are many distinguished *writers*. Russian peasants wear *sandals*, made of the bark of the birch, instead of shoes. A child shews gratitude to its *parents* by obedience and respect. The Egyptians were the *teachers* of the Greeks in arts and sciences. In the middle ages, learning flourished only in the *monasteries*.

---

|                         |              |                      |               |
|-------------------------|--------------|----------------------|---------------|
| there are many,         | мнóго        | obedience ,          | покóр-        |
| gov. the gen.           |              |                      | гостъ.        |
| distinguished ,         | отлич-       | respect ,            | почéніе.      |
|                         | ныхъ.        | Egyptian ,           | Египтянинъ    |
| writers ,               | писáтель.    |                      | V. § 58.      |
| Russian ,               | Российские.  | were ,               | bыли ,        |
| peasant ,               | крестьянинъ  | gov. the             | Ins.          |
|                         |              |                      |               |
| V. § 58.                | teacher ,    | учитель.             |               |
| wear ,                  | носять.      | a Greek ,            | Грецъ.        |
| instead of shoes ,      | вместо       | in ,                 | въ ,          |
|                         | обуви.       | gov. the prep.       |               |
| sandal ,                | лáпоть       | science ,            | наука.        |
| made ,                  | плéшеныe.    | arts ,               | искусствахъ.  |
| of ,                    | изъ.         | learning ,           | учéніе.       |
| the bark of the birch , |              | in the middle ages , | въ            |
| берéзовой коры .        |              |                      | срéдніе вěки. |
| a child ,               | дитя .       | flourished ,         | процвѣшá-     |
| shews ,                 | оказываешь . |                      | ла.           |
| to its ,                | своймъ ,     | only in ,            | въ однихъ     |
| gov. the                |              |                      | шόлько.       |
| dat.                    |              | monastery ,          | монастырь.    |
| parent ,                | родítель.    |                      |               |

## S E C T IV.

## DECLENSION OF NEUTER SUBSTANTIVES.

INCLUDING THE TERMINATIONS *o*, *e*, AND *иа*.

§ 42. The accusative case of all neuter substantives, both sing. and plu. is like the nominative.

I. DECLENSION OF THE NEUTER TERMINATION *o*.

|                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>S i n g.</i> | <i>P l u.</i> |
|-----------------|---------------|

|                                 |                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Nom. зéркал-о, aloo-            | зеркал-à, looking-glas- |
| king - glass.                   | ses.                    |
| Gen. зéркал-а, of —             | зеркал-ъ, of — — —      |
| Dat. зéркал-у, to —             | зеркал-амъ, to — — —    |
| Acc. зéркал-о. — — —            | зеркал-á, — — —         |
| Ins. зéркал-омъ, by or<br>with. | зепкал-амъ by or — — —  |
| Prep. о зéркал-е, of —          | о зеркал-ахъ, of — —    |

§ 43. Substantives ending in *o* preceded by two consonants, take the letter *e* or *o* between the two consonants in the gen. plu. ex.

|                |         |
|----------------|---------|
| ведро, a pail. | ведéрь, |
| пяшнó, a spot. | пàтень. |
| сукнó, cloth.  | сùконъ. |

*Exception.*

|                    |          |
|--------------------|----------|
| гнëздó, a nest.    | гнëздъ.  |
| góрло, the throat. | горль.   |
| мáсло, oil.        | масль.   |
| ремеслó, a trade.  | ремéслъ. |

§ 44. Перо , a pen ; полно , a log ; крыло , a wing ; and дерево , a tree , terminate in ья , ьевъ and ьямъ , in the nom. gen. and dat. plural.

§ 45. The following are irregular in the cases marked :

Зло , an evil , gen. plu. золъ .

Небо , heaven , nom. plu. небеса , gen. небесь &c.

Око , the eye , nom. plu. очи , gen. очей &c.

Плечо , the shoulder , nom. plu. плечи ; gen. плечъ &c.

Судно , a vessel , (ship) nom. plu. суда , gen.

судовъ : but when it denotes an urn , vase , or other vessel made to contain liquids , it is declined regularly .

Тело , a body (celestial) nom. plu. тела and телеса , gen. тель and телесъ &c. But when it denotes the body of a living creature , it is declined regularly .

Ухо , the ear , nom plu. уши , gen. ушей &c.

Чудо , a miracle , nom. plu. чудеса gen. чудесъ &c.

Яблоко , an apple , nom. plu. яблоки , gen. яблоковъ &c.



## T H E M E VII.

## ON THE NEUTER TERMINATION O.

Much *iron* is exported from Russia. It is healthy to rise early in *the morning*. Labour and exercise strengthen the *body*. A truly great man unites modesty with *merit*. The Mexican mines abound in *gold* and *silver*. Order requires, that every thing should be kept

---

|                                                 |                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| from , изъ.                                     | great , великий .                                  |
| Russia , Россія .                               | unites , соединяетъ .                              |
| is exported , вывозится .                       | modesty , скромность .                             |
| much , мнoго , gov. the<br>gen. .               | with , съ , gov. the ins.<br>merit , достоинство . |
| iron , жeльзо .                                 | the Mexican , Мекси-<br>канские .                  |
| to rise , вставаешь .                           | mine , рудникъ .                                   |
| early , рано .                                  | abound , изобилуютъ .                              |
| in , по , gov. the dat.<br>the morning , ютро . | in , expressed by the<br>ins. case .               |
| is healthy , здорово .                          | gold , золото .                                    |
| Labour , прудъ .                                | silver , серебро .                                 |
| and , и .                                       | order , порядокъ .                                 |
| exercise , pl. упражнé-<br>нія .                | requires , требуетъ .                              |
| strengthen , укрепля-<br>юшь .                  | that , чтобы .                                     |
| the body , тѣло .                               | every thing , всякая вещь .                        |
| a truly , ѹспинно .                             | should be kept , хра-<br>нилась .                  |

in its proper *place*. The most simple *means* are frequently the best. Sometimes important *events* proceed from insignificant *causes*. Modesty belongs to the most attractive *qualities* of the female sex. Socrates excelled all his fellow citizens in the *qualities* of his understanding and heart. Eloquence does not consist in high-flown *expressions*, but in strong *feelings*.

|                                                 |                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| in , на , gov. the prep.                        | quality , <i>свойство</i> .                |
| its proper , своéмъ.                            | of the female, <i>жéнского</i> .           |
| place , <i>место</i> .                          | sex , <i>поль</i> .                        |
| mean , <i>средство</i> .                        | Socrates , <i>Сократъ</i> .                |
| the most simple , сá-<br>мая простыя.           | excelled, <i>превосходилъ</i> .            |
| are frequently , суть<br>чáсто.                 | all his , <i>всехъ</i> <i>свойхъ</i> .     |
|                                                 | fellow-citizens, <i>сограж-<br/>данъ</i> . |
| the best, сáмая лùчшá.                          | quality , <i>качество</i> .                |
| sometimes , <i>иногда</i> .                     | understanding , <i>умъ</i> .               |
| from, отъ, gov. the gen.                        | heart , <i>сердце</i> .                    |
| insignificant , мáлыхъ.                         | eloquence, <i>краснорéчие</i>              |
| cause , <i>нагáло</i> .                         | does not consist , не<br><i>состойшъ</i> . |
| proceed , рождáюся.                             | high-flown , <i>высоко-<br/>парныхъ</i> .  |
| important , велиkíя.                            |                                            |
| event , <i>дѣло</i> .                           |                                            |
| belongs, принадлежíшъ.                          | expressions , <i>слово</i> .               |
| to , къ , gov. the dat.                         | but in, <i>новъ</i> , gov. the pr.         |
| the most attractive, при-<br>влекáтельныишиимъ. | strong , <i>сильныхъ</i> .                 |
|                                                 | feeling , <i>чувство</i> .                 |

II. DECLENSION OF THE NEUTER TERMINATION *e*.*S i n g.*

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. лиц-é, the face.     | мнѣніе, an opinion.    |
| Gen. лиц-á of — — —       | мнѣні-я, of — — —      |
| Dat. лиц-ù, to — — —      | мнѣні-ю, to — — —      |
| Acc. лиц-é. — — —         | мнѣн-ie. — — —         |
| Ins. лиц-éмъ, by or with. | мнѣні-емъ, by or with. |

Prep. о лиц-ѣ, of — — о мнѣні-и, of — — —

*Plur.*

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. лиц-а, faces.        | мнѣні-я, opinions.     |
| Gen. лиц-ъ, of — — —      | мнѣні-й, of — — —      |
| Dat. лиц-амъ, to — — —    | мнѣні-ямъ, to.         |
| Acc. лиц-а. — — —         | мнѣні-я. — — —         |
| Ins. лиц-ами, by or with. | мнѣні-ями, by or with. |
| Prep. о лиц-ахъ, of —     | о мнѣні-яхъ, of — — —  |

§ 46. Substantives ending in *e* preceded by a consonant are declined according to the first example, as: солнце, the sun; сердце, the heart &c, and those ending in the same letter preceded by a vowel, according to the second, as: зданіе, a building &c.

§ 47. Substantives ending in *pe*, *le*, and *ye* change *a* into *я* in the genitive, and *y* into *ю* in the dative, ex.

| <i>Nom.</i>   | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Plu.</i> |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| мóре the sea, | мóря        | мóрю        | моря.       |

пóле a field, пóля пóлю пóлъ.

жильé an abode, жиль́я жилью жилья.

§ 48. Those ending in *уe*, preceded by a consonant, take the letter *e* in the genitive plural, between the consonant and *у*, ex.

сéрдце, the heart сердéцъ.

The soft sign, *ь* is also changed into *e*, in the plu. when it precedes the *уe* of the nominative sing.

кольцé, a ring. кóлецъ.

§ 49. Substantives ending in *ъe*, terminate in the gen. plu. either in *ъевъ*, or *ей*, ex.

копъé, a lance. кóпьевъ or кóпей.

ружъé, a musket. ружьевъ or ружей.

§ 50. Those ending in *oe* are declined as neuter adjectives (V. declension of adjectives).



## Т Н Е М Е VIII.

### ON THE NEUTER TERMINATION *e*.

Man's fate depends in a great measure on

fate, судьбá. depends, зависишъ.

man, человéкъ. upon, ошъ, gov. the

in a great measure, gen.

большею чáстью.

his own *conduct*. A man destitute of a grateful *heart* is incapable of a virtuous action, To praise a man to his *face*, is to accuse him of *vanity*. The path of virtue is the road to *peace*. Habit destroys *imagination*. The consolation of religion is our surest *refuge* in *misfortune*. It is glorious to die on the *field*

---

|                                         |                                         |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| his own, <i>сóбственного</i>            | the path, <i>спезя.</i>                 |
| егó.                                    | is the road, <i>есть путь.</i>          |
| conduct, <i>поведéніе</i>               | peace, <i>спокойствіе.</i>              |
| destitute, <i>неимѣющíй</i>             | habit, <i>привычка.</i>                 |
| a grateful, <i>благодáр-</i>            | destroys, <i>подавляєть.</i>            |
| наго.                                   | imagination, <i>вообра-<br/>жéніе.</i>  |
| heart, <i>сéрдце.</i>                   | the consolation, <i>утѣ-<br/>шénіе.</i> |
| is incapable, <i>неспосó-<br/>бенъ.</i> | religion, <i>вѣра.</i>                  |
| of a virtuous, <i>къ доб-</i>           | is, <i>бываешь,</i> gov. the            |
| родѣтельному.                           | ins.                                    |
| action, <i>поступокъ.</i>               | surest, <i>вѣрнѣйшимъ.</i>              |
| to praise, <i>хвалишь.</i>              | refuge, <i>прибѣжище.</i>               |
| to, въ, gov. the acc.                   | in, въ, gov. the prep.                  |
| face, <i>лицé.</i>                      | misfortune, <i>несгáстie.</i>           |
| is, <i>значишь.</i>                     | it is glorious, <i>славно.</i>          |
| to accuse, <i>упрекáшь.</i>             | to die, <i>умерéшь.</i>                 |
| him, <i>егó.</i>                        | on, на, gov. the prep.                  |
| of, въ, gov. the prep.                  | field, <i>поле.</i>                     |
| vanity, <i>тщеславіе.</i>               |                                         |

of battle , fighting in defence of our native country. In *prosperity* we should display moderation , in misfortune patience. *The minds* of youth are open equally to good or bad *impressions*. The rising *of the sun at sea* is one of the most majestic *spectacles* in nature. Prejudice blinds the eyes with unsubstantial *visions*.

---

|                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| battle , би́тва.          | and bad , и для ху-        |
| fighting , сражáсь.       | дыхъ.                      |
| in defence of , за , gov. | impression , впечат-       |
| the acc.                  | лъніе.                     |
| our native country ,      | the rising, восхождéніе.   |
| отечество.                | the sun , солнце.          |
| prosperity , сráсtie.     | at, на , gov. the prep.    |
| we should , должно.       | sea , мóре.                |
| display , хранíшь.        | is one , есть однó.        |
| moderation , воздержá-    | of , изъ , gov. the gen.   |
| nіe.                      | the most majestic , ве-    |
| misfortune , нестá-       | лъчественнѣйшихъ.          |
| ctie.                     | spectacle , зрѣлище.       |
| patience , терпѣніе.      | prejudice , предразсù-     |
| the mind , сérдце.        | докъ.                      |
| of youth , юношей.        | blinds , ослѣплѣешь.       |
| equally , равнó.          | the eye , глазъ (V. § 19.) |
| are open , отвѣрсты.      | unsubstantial , пусты-     |
| to , для , gov. the gen.  | ми.                        |
| good , добрыхъ.           | vision , привидѣніе.       |

A virtuous man finds in his own *sentiments*  
a recompense for all the changes of the world.

---

|                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| virtuous, добродѣтель-   | a recompense, удо-            |
|                          | влѣшвореніе.                  |
| finds, находишь.         | for all, за всѣ.              |
| in, въ, gov. the prep.   | change, преврѣт-              |
| his own, сѫбствен-       | носить.                       |
|                          | ныхъ свойхъ. the world, міръ. |
| sentiment, чувствованіе. |                               |

---

### III. DECLENSION OF THE NEUTER TERMINATIONS *мѧ* AND *тѧ*.

| <i>S i n g.</i>                 | <i>P l u.</i>           |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Nom. врѣм-я, time.              | врем-енá, times.        |
| Gen. врѣм-ени, of —             | врем-éнь, of — — —      |
| Dat. врѣм-ени, to —             | врем-енамъ, to — — —    |
| Acc. врѣм-я. — — —              | врем-енá. — — — — —     |
| Ins. врѣм-енемъ, by or<br>with. | врем-енáми, by or with. |
| Prep. о врѣм-ени, of —          | о врем-енахъ, of — — —  |

§ 51. The substantive *дѣти*, a child is neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural, and is declined as follows.

| <i>S i n g.</i>       | <i>P l u.</i>        |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Nom. дѣти-я, a child. | дѣти-и, children.    |
| Gen. дѣти-ши, of —    | дѣти-éй, of — — — —  |
| Dat. дѣти-ши, to —    | дѣти-ямъ, to — — — — |

Acc. диш-à. — — — дыш-éй. — — —

Ins. диш-àшемъ и ди- дыш-ьмъ, by or with.

ти-àшею, by or with.

Prep. о диш-àши, of— дыш-àхъ, of— — —



### Т Н Е М Е IX.

#### ON THE NEUTER TERMINATION *МЯ.*

But few people know to estimate the value of *time*. The greater part of the inhabitants of Russia belong to the Slavonian *race*. The Crusaders after surmounting great obstacles, succeeded in planting their *banner* on the walls

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| but few, немнóгие.      | race, племя.           |
| people, люди.           | after surmounting, по- |
| know, умъюшъ.           | слѣ, gov. the gen.     |
| to estimate, цѣнить.    | great, великихъ.       |
| the value, вáжность,    | obstacle, препятст-    |
| the greater part, бóль- | вие.                   |
| шая часть.              | a Crusader, кресто-    |
| inhabitant, жицель.     | носецъ.                |
| of Russia, населяю-     | succeeded, успѣли.     |
| щихъ Россію.            | in planting, водру-    |
| belong, принадлежитъ.   | зить.                  |
| to, къ, gov. the dat.   | banner, знамя.         |
| the Slavonian, Славян-  | on, на, gov. the prep. |
| скому.                  | wall, стѣна.           |

\* \*

of Jerusalem. We should not despair even under the *burden* of misfortunes. *O times!* O manners! Each of the *seasons* of the year has its charms. History hands to posterity the *names* of great men. The enemy entered the town with unfurled *banners*. We have but little knowledge of the *tribes* inhabiting the interior of Africa.

---

|                         |                                         |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Jerusalem, Иерусалимъ.  | name, и́мя.                             |
| we should not despair,  | of great men, вели-<br>кихъ мужей.      |
| не должно уныва́ть.     | the enemy, непрія́тель.                 |
| even, да́же.            | entered, вступи́ль въ<br>town, го́родъ. |
| under, подъ, gov. the   | unfurled, распùщен-<br>ными.            |
| inst.                   | banner, знáмл.                          |
| burden, брéмл.          | we have, мы имъе́мъ.                    |
| misfortune, несча́стие. | but little, ма́ло. gov.                 |
| time, врéмл.            | the gen.                                |
| manner, нравъ.          | knowledge, извѣ́стие.                   |
| each, вся́кое.          | of, о, gov. the prep.                   |
| of, изъ, gov. the gen.  | tribe, пле́мл.                          |
| season, врéмл.          | inhabiting, насе́ляю-<br>щихъ.          |
| the year, годъ.         | the interior, внùтрен-<br>носипь.       |
| has, имъе́шь.           | Africa, Африка.                         |
| its, свой.              |                                         |
| charm, прéлеспь.        |                                         |
| history, истóрія.       |                                         |
| hands, предаéть.        |                                         |
| posterity, по́томство.  |                                         |

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE ON THE  
declension of substantives.

*F i n l a n d.*

Here is the reign of winter. — In the beginning of October every thing is covered with snow. — The neighbouring hill scarcely shews its sterile summit, and the hoar-frost falls like a thick cloud. On the first frosty morning the trees glitter like a rainbow, reflecting the solar rays

|                  |              |                  |                  |                |
|------------------|--------------|------------------|------------------|----------------|
| here ,           | здесь.       | like ,           | въ вѣдѣ ,        | gov. the       |
| the reign ,      | царство.     |                  |                  | gen.           |
| winter ,         | зима.        | thick ,          | густаго.         |                |
| the beginning ,  | напѣло.      | cloud ,          | облако.          |                |
| October ,        | Октябрь.     | on ,             | при ,            | gov. the prѣp. |
| every thing ,    | все.         | first ,          | пѣрвомъ.         |                |
| is covered ,     | покрышо.     | frosty morning , | ѣтрен-           |                |
| snow ,           | снѣгъ.       |                  | немъ морозъ.     |                |
| scarcely ,       | едва.        | a tree ,         | дерево.          |                |
| neighbouring ,   | сосѣдняя     | glitter ,        | блестающъ.       |                |
| hill ,           | скилѣ.       | like ,           | expressed by the |                |
| shews ,          | выкаѣываешъ. |                  | ins. case.       |                |
| sterile ,        | безплодную.  | a rainbow ,      | радуга.          |                |
| summit ,         | вершина.     | reflecting ,     | отражая.         |                |
| the hoar-frost , | йней.        | solar ,          | солнечные.       |                |
| falls ,          | падаешъ.     | a ray ,          | лучъ.            |                |

in a thousand beautiful *colours*. But the sun seems to look upon the *desolation of winter with horror*, he scarcely makes his appearance and is again buried in the dark *fog*, the *fore-runner* of severe *cold*. The moon continues all night long to spread her silver *beams*, and traces her *circle* in the azure vault of *heaven*, along which from time to time dart

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| in a thousand , <i>ты-</i>     | cold , <i>стужа.</i>           |
| <i>сияю</i> , gov. the gen.    | the moon , <i>мъсяцъ.</i>      |
| beautiful , пріѧшныхъ.         | continues all night long,      |
| colour , <i>цвѣтъ.</i>         | въ печеніе всей нόчи.          |
| seems , кажется.               | to spread , изливáешъ.         |
| horror , <i>жасъ.</i>          | silver , серебренныe,          |
| to look , взираешъ.            | a ray , <i>лучъ.</i>           |
| upon , на.                     | her , <i>свой.</i>             |
| the desolation, <i>опусто-</i> | traces , образуешьъ.           |
| <i>шёніе.</i>                  | circle , <i>кругъ</i> , (to be |
| makes his appearance,          | put in the plu.)               |
| явишся.                        | in , на.                       |
| and again , и ужé.             | azure vault, чистой ла-        |
| is buried , погруженó.         | зюри.                          |
| dark , багровый.               | of heaven , небесной.          |
| fog , <i>туманъ.</i>           | along , по.                    |
| the fore-runner , пред-        | which , кошбóй.                |
| <i>вѣшникъ</i>                 | from time to time , ёз-        |
| severe , сильной.              | рѣдка.                         |
|                                | dart , пролетающъ.             |

glaring meteors. Not the least breath of wind agitates the trees , white with the hoar - frost: a melancholy, but a pleasing scene ! What unusual stillness ! the timorous deer hies fearfully to the thicket , shaking the icicles from his antlers , the pheasants doze securely in the deep silence of the forest , and every step of the traveller is heard in the snowy wilderness.

|                                         |                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| glaring , блескящие.                    | the thicket, тáща.                  |
| a meteor, метеоръ.                      | shaking , отрясая.                  |
| not , ни.                               | from , съ , gov. the gen.           |
| the least , малъйшее.                   | antler , рогъ.                      |
| a breath , дуновéніе.                   | his , свойхъ.                       |
| wind , вѣтръ.                           | the icicles, оледенѣлый<br>иней.    |
| agitates , не колéблешь.                | the pheasants , спáдо<br>шешеревéй. |
| a tree , дéрево.                        | doze , дрéмлешь.                    |
| white , обѣмленныхъ.                    | securely , безопасно.               |
| hoar - frost , иней.                    | deep , глубокой.                    |
| melancholy, печáльное.                  | silence., тишинá.                   |
| pleasing, прíятное.                     | the forest , лесъ.                  |
| scene , зрѣлище.                        | every , всякой.                     |
| what unusual , какáя<br>необыкновéнная. | step , шагъ.                        |
| stillness , шишина.                     | traveller , странникъ.              |
| timorous , рóбкая.                      | is heard слышенъ.                   |
| deer , лань.                            | snowy снѣжной.                      |
| fearfully , шóропко.                    | wilderness , пустыня.               |
| hies , пробирáешся.                     |                                     |

Yet even here nature smiles with a cheerful, though transitory *smile*. When the snow is dissolved by the warm summer *breeze* and the bright *rays of the sun*; when the *waters* have run their noisy course *to the sea*, and formed thousands of *rivulets* and thousands of *cascades*, then nature arises from her heavy and protracted *slumber*; suddenly the wintry *fields* are clothed

|                      |                                             |               |                        |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| yet even here ,      | но и                                        | have run ,    | упеклъ.                |
|                      | здесь.                                      | to , въ ,     | gov. the acc.          |
| nature ,             | природа.                                    | the sea ,     | мόре.                  |
| smiles ,             | улыбается.                                  | and formed,   | образовáвъ             |
| cheerful ,           | весёлою.                                    | въ течéніи    | своéмъ.                |
| though ,             | но.                                         | a thousand ,  | тысята.                |
| transitory ,         | кráшкою.                                    | a rivulet ,   | рүгэй.                 |
| a smile ,            | улыбка.                                     | a cascade ,   | водопáдъ.              |
| when ,               | когда.                                      | arises ,      | выходишь.              |
| snow ,               | снегъ , (to be<br>put in the plu.) V. § 17. | from ,        | изъ, gov. the gen.     |
| is dissolved ,       | растаяли.                                   | heavy ,       | тягостнаго.            |
| by ,                 | отъ , gov. the gen.                         | protracted ,  | продолжи-<br>тельнаго. |
| warm ,               | теплаго.                                    | slumber ,     | усыплéніе.             |
| summer ,             | лѣтиаго.                                    | suddenly ,    | вдругъ.                |
| breeze ,             | вѣтръ.                                      | wintry ,      | озимыя.                |
| bright ,             | яркихъ.                                     | a field ,     | пóле.                  |
| water ,              | вода.                                       | are clothed , | одѣваюш-<br>ся.        |
| their noisy course , | съ<br>шумомъ                                |               |                        |

*in green , the meadows with aromatick flowers.  
Yesterday all was dead , — to day every thing  
blossoms and sends forth grateful odours.*

*Batushkov's letters.*

---

|                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| in green, зелéнымъ бáр-  | all , все.             |
| хапомъ.                  | was dead, было мёршво. |
| a meadow, лугъ. V. § 17. | to day , сего́дня.     |
| aromatick, душистыми.    | blossoms , цвѣшéшь.    |
| a flower , цветъ.        | sends forth grateful   |
| yesterday , вчера.       | odours, благоухáешь.   |



TABLE FOR THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES ACCORDING TO THEIR TERMINATIONS.

| M a s c u l i n e . |                 | F e m i n i n e . |         | N e u t r e l l e . |     |
|---------------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------|---------------------|-----|
|                     |                 | S i n g u l a r . |         |                     |     |
| Nom.                | ъ               | а                 | я       | о                   | е   |
| Gen.                | я               | ы                 | и       | а                   | и   |
| Dat.                | ю               | ѣ                 | и       | у                   | ю   |
| Acc.                | ъ (а)           | у                 | ю       | о                   | е   |
| Ins.                | емъ             | ю                 | ено     | омъ                 | емъ |
| Prep.               | ѣ               | ѣ                 | и       | ѣ                   | и   |
| P l u r a l .       |                 |                   |         |                     |     |
| Nom.                | ы and и         | ы                 | и       | и                   | и   |
| Gen.                | овъ             | евъ               | ѣй      | ѣй                  | и   |
| Dat.                | амъ             | имъ               | ямъ     | амъ                 | и   |
| Acc.                | ы (овъ) и (евъ) | амъ (ы)           | имъ (и) | и (еи)              | и   |
| Ins.                | ами             | ими               | ими     | ами                 | ими |
| Prep.               | ахъ             | яхъ               | яхъ     | ахъ                 | яхъ |

\* For the Declension of the substantives ending in *и*, which are of the masculine gender V. § 41.

## S E C T. V.

FORMATION OF FEMININE SUBSTANTIVES  
FROM MASCULINE.

§ 51. There are two ways of distinguishing the sex of creatures of the same species: first by giving them different names; as *мужъ*, a man; *женá*, a woman; *сынъ*, a son; *дочь*, a daughter; *барáнь* a ram; *овцá* a ewe &c. and secondly by varying the termination of the masculine appellation.

§ 52. The polysyllable mas. appellations, ending in *бъ*, *въ*, *гъ*, *ль*, *ль*, *ръ*, *ть*, and *хъ*, form the feminine by changing *ъ* into *ка*, and the guttural *х* into *ш*; ex.

*сосъдъ*, a neighbour, fem. *сосъдка*.

*солдáшъ*, a soldier, — — *солдáшка*.

*настùхъ*, a shepherd, — — *настùшка*.

*Exceptions to this rule.*

*орéль*, an eagle, fem. *орлíца*.

*козéль*, a goat, — — *козá*.

*пóваръ*, a cook, — — *поварíха*.

*осéль*, an ass, — — *ослíца*.

§ 53. The monosyllable mas. appellations ending in *ъ*, change this termination into *овка* in the feminine; ex.

|                      |          |
|----------------------|----------|
| чижъ , a canary-bird | чижóвка. |
| мошъ , a spendthrift | мошóвка. |

*Exceptions to this rule.*

|                        |            |
|------------------------|------------|
| Графъ , a Count , fem. | Графиня.   |
| волкъ , a wolf ,       | — волчýца. |
| внукъ , grand-son.     | — внùка.   |
| жнецъ , a reaper,      | — жни́ца.  |
| жрецъ , a priest,      | — жрìца.   |
| левъ , a lion ,        | — льви́ца. |
| лгунъ , a liar ,       | — лгùнья.  |
| рабъ , a slave ,       | — рабы́ня. |
| слонъ , an elephant ,  | — слонíха. |
| шрусъ , a coward ,     | — шрусíха. |
| шушъ , a jester ,      | — шушíха.  |

§ 54. Foreign appellations of ranks , titles , professions &c. adopted in the Russian language , and which end in *о* or *ь* change these terminations into *ша*; ex.

|                             |              |
|-----------------------------|--------------|
| Генерáль , a General , fem. | Генерáльша.  |
| Мaióръ , a Major ,          | — Maiórsha.  |
| апшéкаръ , an apothecary ,  | — апшéкарша. |

*Exceptions to this rule.*

|                                |               |
|--------------------------------|---------------|
| Имперáторъ , an Emperor , fem. | Императрýца , |
| Гéрцогъ , a Duke ,             | — Герцогиня.  |
| Барóнъ , a Baron ,             | — Баронéсса.  |
| монахъ , a monk ,              | — монахина.   |

§ 55. Those ending in *тель* form the feminine by the addition of *ница*; ex.

*благодѣтель*, a benefactor, —— *благодѣтельница*.

*предѣтель*, a traitor, —— *предѣтельница*.

§ 56. Those ending in *й* form the feminine by the addition of *ка*; ex.

*злодѣй*, a malefactor, fem. *злодѣйка*.

*негодѣй*, a rascal, —— *негодѣйка*.

*Exceptions to this rule.*

*героѣй*, a hero, fem. *героїня*.

*казначеѣй*, a treasurer, —— *казначея*.



## S E C T. VI.

### NATIONAL APPELLATIONS.

§ 57. National appellations are formed from the names of countries, provinces and cities, and terminate in the mas. in *ецъ* or *инъ* and in the fem. in *ка*, *анка*, *тка*, *оганка*, ex. Шотландія, Scotland, Шотланецъ, a Scotchman, Шотландка, a Scotchwoman.

#### *Mas.*

#### *Fem.*

|                   |            |             |
|-------------------|------------|-------------|
| Европа, Europe,   | Европеецъ, | Европейка.  |
| Австрія, Austria, | Австріецъ, | Австріянка. |
| Іспанія, Spain,   | Іспанецъ,  | Іспанка.    |

**Швейцáрія, Switzerland, Швейцáрецъ, Швейцáрка.**

**Амéрика, America, Америкáнецъ, Америкáнка.**  
**Итáлія, Italy, Италіáнецъ, Италіáнка.**  
**Россíя, Russia, Россíянинъ, Россíянка.**  
**Áнглія, England, Англичáнинъ, Англичáнка.**  
**Дáнія, Denmark, Дáшчанинь, Дашчáнка.**  
**Пéрсія, Persia, Персіянинъ, Персіянка.**  
**Римъ, Rome, Римлянинъ, Римлянка.**  
**Аráсія, Arabia, Аравійшанинъ, Аравійшáнка.**  
**Ташáрія, Tartary, Ташáринъ, Ташáрка.**

*The following have irregular terminations.*

**Франція, France, Францùзъ, Францùженка.**  
**Грéція, Greece, Грекъ, Гречáнка.**  
**Гермáнія, Germany, Германецъ, Германка.**  
**Пóльша, Poland, Полякъ, Полька.**  
**Тùрція, Turkey, Тùрокъ, Турчáнка.**  
**Камчáтка, Kamtchatka, Камчадáль, Камчадáлка.**

§ 58. National appellations ending in **инъ**.  
are declined regularly in the singular, and as  
follows in the plural.

**Nom. Англичáне, Englishmen.**

**Gen. Англичáнъ, of— — —**

**Dat. Англичáнамъ, to — — —**

**Acc. Англичáнъ. — — —**

**Ins.** *Англичанами*, by, or with.

**Prep.** *о Англичанахъ*, of — — —



## S E C T VII.

### PATRONYMICK APPELLATIONS.

§ 59. Patronymick appellations are derived from the paternal name, and added to that of the son or daughter. The Greeks and the Romans had their patronymicks, and it is probable, that the English, and other Northern nations also made use of them before every family had its own peculiar name. Whence many such appellations, as : Peterson, Johnson, Thomson &c. have passed down to posterity as family names from the last person, who bore them as patronymicks, and whose father's name must have been Peter, John or Thomas. At present, among the Russian peasantry the common method of distinguishing persons of similar christian names is by adding that of the father; as *Петръ Ивáновичъ*, or *Ивáновъ*; Peter John'son or the son of John; *Иванъ Θомѝчъ*, or *Θомѝнъ*, John Thomas'son or the son of Thomas. It must not however, be inferred from this

that patronymick appellations are confined to the lower orders or such, as have no family name, on the contrary it is the usual manner of addressing persons of all classes.

§ 60. Russian patronymick appellations are formed from proper names by the addition of *овицъ*, *евицъ* and *ицъ* for the Mas. and *овна*, *евна* and *ишина*, for the feminine; ex. Алекса́ндръ Ивáновичъ, Alexander the son of Iohn, from Ивáнь, Iohn; Дмíшрій Алексéевичъ, Dmitrius the son of Alexis, from, Алексéй, Alexis; Яковъ Θомицъ, James the son of Thomas, from Θомá, Thomas. Анна Алекса́ндровна, Ann the daughter of Alexander from Алекса́ндръ; Марія Алексéевна, Mary the daughter of Alexis, from Алексéй; Екатерíна Θоми́шна, Catherine the daughter of Thomas, from Θома. &c.

§ 61. In familiar conversation the terminations *овицъ* and *евицъ* are generally contracted into *ыцъ* and *ицъ*, as Алекса́ндрычъ, Алексéичъ &c.



## S E C T VIII.

## AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES.

§ 62. Augmentatives are derivative substantives, which by some addition made to their termination express the object, as of greater than ordinary size; as *домище*, a mansion, from *домъ*, a house.

§ 63. Augmentatives in the Russian language terminate in *ище* and *ища*.

§ 64. Substantives ending in *о*, *а* and *и* form their augmentatives by changing these terminations into *ище*; ex. *домъ*, a house, *домище*, a great house; *гвоздь*, a nail, *гвоздище*, a great nail; *сарай*, a shed, *сарайще*, a great shed.

§ 65. The neuter substantives ending in *о* change *о* into *ище*; ex. *окно*, a window, *окнище*.

§ 66. The feminine substantives, ending in *а*, *я* and *и* change these terminations into *ище*, when the substantive expresses an animate object, and into *ища*, when an inanimate; ex. *баба*, an old woman, *бабище*; *лапа*, a paw, *лапища*; *баня*, a bath, *банища*.

§ 67. Those substantives which are only employed in the plural number form their augmentatives in *ищи*, ex. *сáни*, a sledge, *сáнищи*; *часы*, a clock, *часыщи*.

*Rem.* When the gutturals, *г*, *к* or *х* happen to be the final consonants, they are changed into the palatals *ж*, *ч* and *ш*; ex. *сапóгъ*, a boot, *сапожище*; *старикъ*, an old man, *старичище*; *брюхо*, the belly, *брюшище*.

§ 68. Diminutives are derivative substantives, which by some variation in their termination express the object as of less than ordinary size; as *ягнéнокъ*, a lambkin; *человéчикъ*, a manikin, or little man.

§ 69. Russian diminutives are of two kinds: caressive and contemptuous; ex. *домъ*. a house, *дóмикъ*, a pretty little house, and *доми́шко* a miserable hut.

§ 70. Diminutives are of the same gender as their primitives, with a few exceptions.

#### *Masculine Diminutives.*

§ 71. Substantives ending in *ь*, preceded by *б*, *в*, *м*, *н*, or *с*, form their diminutives by changing *ь* into *окъ*; ex. *грибъ*, a mushroom, *грибóкъ*, a little mushroom; *островъ*, an island, *острово́къ*, a little island.

### *Exceptions.*

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| ровъ, a ravine, рóвикъ.   | черносливъ, a prune,   |
|                           | черносливецъ.          |
| левъ, a lion, лéвикъ.     | кафшáнь, a coat, каф-  |
|                           | шáнецъ.                |
| залíвъ, a gulf, залíвецъ. | домъ, a house, дóмикъ. |

§ 72. Substantives ending in *ъ*, preceded by *ж*, *т*, *ш*, *щ*, *л*, *п*, or *м*, change, *ъ* into *икъ*: ex.

|                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ножъ , a knife , нόжикъ.        | столъ, a table, стόλικъ.         |
| мячъ , a ball , мячикъ.         | снопъ , an ear (of corn)         |
| шалашъ , a hut , шалá-<br>шикъ. | снопикъ.                         |
| плащъ , a mantle, плá-<br>щики. | шаръ , a ball, шáрикъ.           |
|                                 | крестъ , a cross , крé-<br>шикъ. |

### *Exceptions.*

|                           |                                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Цвѣтъ, a flower, цвѣтъ.   | лисъ, a leaf, листъ.            |
| шокъ.                     | шокъ.                           |
| моловъ, a hammer, молотъ. | колоколь, a bell, колокольчикъ. |
| лотокъ.                   | лотокъ.                         |

§ 73. Substantives ending in *z*, preceded by the gutturals *z*, *k* and *x*, change *z* into *ekz* and the gutturals into the palatals *x*, *t*, *w*; ex.

лугъ, a meadow, лужéкъ. пѣшùхъ, a cock, пѣ-  
сукъ, a branch, сучéкъ. тушéкъ.

§ 74. Substantives ending in ь, preceded by  
д, or з, change ь into ецъ; ex. завóдъ a manu-  
factory завóдецъ; арбùзъ, a water - melon ,  
арбùзецъ, and арбùзикъ.

*Exc eptions.*

годъ, a year, гóдикъ. садъ, a garden, сáдикъ.  
гóродъ, a city, горо- глазъ, an eye , гла-  
дóкъ. зóкъ.

§ 75. Mas. Sub. ending in ь and ѹ change  
these terminations into екъ; ex.

у́голь, coal, у́голéкъ. ручéй,a rivulet, ручеéкъ.

*Exc eptions.*

гвóздъ, a nail, гвóз- покóй, a room , по-  
дикъ. кóециъ.  
гóлубъ , a dove , голу- сарáй, a shed , сарá-  
бóкъ. епъ.  
корáбль , a ship , ко-  
рабликъ.

*Feminine Diminutives.*

§ 76. Fem. Sub. ending in а preceded by  
a consonant , or in ь change а, and ь into  
ка ex.

рыба , fish , рыбка. лóшадь , a horse , ло-  
шáдка.

§ 77. When *a* or *я* is preceded by two consonants, the diminutives take *o* or *e* between these consonants; ex. *игла*, a needle, *иголка*; *вервь*, a line, *веревка*. Exceptions: *сестра*, sister, *сестрица*; *мать*, mother, *машка*; *вѣшвь*, a branch, *вѣшка*.

§ 78. When the final letter *a* is preceded by one of the gutturals *г*, *к*, or *х*, *a* is changed into *ка*, and the gutturals into palatals; ex. *книга*, a book, *книжка*, *рѣка*, a river, *рѣчка*; *крохá*, a crumb, *крошка*. In the same manner the dental *ч* is changed into *ч*; ex. *птица*, a bird, *птичка*; except, *тёшка*, aunt, *шёпушка*.

§ 79. Those ending in *жа*, *ща* and *щъ*, change *a* and *я* into *ица*; ex. *кожа*, a skin, *кожица*; *роща*, a grove, *рощица*; *вещь*, a thing, *вещица*. except, *рогожа*, a mat, *рогожка*.

§ 80. Those ending in *я* add *ка* to the gen. pl.; ex. *гиря*, a weight gen. pl. *гиры*, diminutive *гирька*; *дыня*, a melon, *дынька*.

#### *Neuter Diminutives.*

§ 81. Neuter substantives ending in *о*, preceded by the consonants *в*, *д*, *н*, *с* and *т*, change *о*, into *ю* or *це*, ex. *дерево*, a tree, *деревцó*; *сено*, hay, *сѣнцó*; *колесо*, a wheel *колесцó*. When *о* is preceded by two consonants *о* or *е* is taken between them, ex. *гумно*, a barn, *гу-*

мénце; сукнó, cloth, сукónце. except, зернó, a grain, зérнышко; бревнó, a log, бревéшко, мѣсто, a place, мѣшчéшко.

§ 82. Those ending in *ло*, preceded by a vowel, change *o* into *ыце*; ex. жáло, a sting, жálъце; одѣя́ло, a bed - cover, одѣя́льце.

§ 83. Those ending in *ье*, take the addition of *це* or *цо*; ex. копьé, a lance, копьецó; плáтье, a garment, плáтьеце.

§ 84. Those ending in *о*, preceded by one of the gutturals *г*, *к*, or *х*, change *о* into *ко* and the gutturals into palatals, ex. лы́ко, rind, лы́чко; ухó, an ear, ушкó, *ц* is also changed into *ч*, ex. яицé, an egg, яичко; сéрдце, the heart, сердéчко.

## C H A P. II.

### A D J E C T I V E S.

#### S E C T I.

##### G E N E R A L R E M A R K S.

§ 85. An adjective is a word, added to the substantive to express its quality; as, прилѣжный человѣкъ, an industrious man; добродѣтельная жѣнщина, a virtuous woman. Russian ad-

jectives admit, besides the degrees of signification, all the variations of the substantive: number, gender and case.

§ 86. There are three kinds of adjectives in the Russian language: qualificative, possessive, and apocopated. The qualificative corresponds to the adjectives of other languages, the possessive and apocopated are peculiar to the Russian.

§ 87. Possessive adjectives express a possessory quality, and may be rendered in English by a substantive in the genitive or possessive case; as, Цáрскíй дворéцъ, the Tsar's palace; народное право, the people's right. Or by a substantive used adjectively; as, медвéжья кóжа, a bear-skin; рýбья чешуя, fish-scales.

§ 88. Adjectives are apocopated (усъчённыя) when the last letter or syllable is omitted, and are only used when the adjective is separated from its substantive by the auxiliary verb бышъ, to be, which is not expressed, but understood to intervene; as счáстie непосто́йнно, fortune is fickle; учéниe полéзно, learning is useful.

§ 89. Qualificative adjectives have three degrees of signification, which are called the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

§ 90. *The positive* expresses simply the quality of an object, without increase or di-

minution; as, прилѣжный, industrious; добродѣтельный, virtuous.

§ 91. *The comparative degree increases or lessens the positive signification; as, прилѣжнѣе, more industrious; добродѣтельнѣе, more virtuous, and is the only degree, that is not subject to the modifications of number, gender, and case.*

§ 92. *The superlative expresses the quality in the highest or lowest degree; as, прилѣжнѣйшій, the most industrious, добродѣтельнѣйшій, the most virtuous.*

§ 93. Adjectives of the positive and superlative degrees must agree with their substantives in number, gender and case.

§ 94. Adjectives of the mas. gen. terminate in the nom. sing. in ый or ий, which terminations are changed into ая or яя for the fem. and ое or ее for the neuter.



## S E C T II.

### DECLEMNION OF ADJECTIVES.

#### Declension of adjectives ending in ый.

| Mas.               | Fem.   | Neu.     |
|--------------------|--------|----------|
| Nom. мѣдрий, wise. | мѣдрай | мѣдрое   |
| Gen. мѣдраго, of — | мѣдрой | мѣдраго. |
| Dat. мѣдрому, to — | мѣдрой | мѣдрому. |

Acc. мùдрый, аго, мùдрую;      мùдрое.  
 Ins. мùдрымъ, by.      мùдрою,      мùдрымъ.  
 Prep. о мùдромъ, of. о мùдрай,      о мùдромъ.

*P l u r a l.*

Nom. мùдрые,      мùдрыя,      мùдрыя.  
 Gen. мùдрыхъ,      мùдрыхъ,      мùдрыхъ.  
 Dat. мùдрымъ,      мùдрымъ,      мùдрымъ.  
 Acc. мùдр{ые,      мùдр{ыя,      мùдрыя.  
       ыхъ,           ыхъ,           .  
 Ins. мùдрыми,      мùдрыми,      мùдрыми.  
 Prep. о мùдрыхъ,      о мùдрыхъ,      о мùдрыхъ.

§ 95. According to the above example are declined all adjectives, ordinal numbers and the participles of passive verbs ending in *ий*, as well as adjectives used substantively, and family names, ending in *ой*. When the last consonant of the adjective is a guttural, *ы* is changed into *i*; as, *великій*; great; *стрóгій*, severe; *вéтхій* ancient.

DECLINATION OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *ий*, PRECEDED BY ONE OF THE GUTTURALS *г*, *к* OR *х*.*S i n g u l a r.*

| <i>Mas.</i>          | <i>Fem.</i>           | <i>Neut.</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| Nom. великий, great. | великая,              | великое.     |
| Gen. великаго,       | великой ( <i>иј</i> ) | великаго.    |
| Dat. великому,       | великой,              | великому.    |
| Acc. велик{ий,       | великую,              | великое.     |
| аго,                 |                       |              |
| Ins. великимъ,       | великою,              | великимъ.    |
| Prep. о великомъ     | о великой,            | о великомъ.  |

*P l u r a l.*

|                           |                      |               |
|---------------------------|----------------------|---------------|
| Nom. вели́кіе,            | вели́кія,            | вели́кія      |
| Gen. вели́кихъ,           | вели́кихъ,           | вели́кихъ.    |
| Dat. вели́кимъ,           | вели́кимъ,           | вели́кимъ     |
| Acc. вели́к {ie,<br>ихъ , | вели́к {ia,<br>ихъ , | вели́кія.     |
| Ins. вели́кими,           | вели́кими,           | вели́кими.    |
| Prep. о вели́кихъ ,       | о вели́кихъ ,        | о вели́кихъ . |

§ 96. According to this example are declined all adjectives, ending in *ий*, *ий* and *ий*; all family names, ending in *скій* and *цкій*, and names of places ending in *ое*.

DECLINATION OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *iĭ*,  
PRECEDED BY *ж*, *з*, *ш*, OR *щ*.

пригóжíй , handsome.

*S i n g u l a r.*

| <i>Mas.</i>                | <i>Fem.</i>           | <i>Neut.</i> |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| Nom. пригóжíй ,            | пригóжая ,            | пригóжее,    |
| Gen. пригóжаго ,           | пригóжей ( <i>и</i> ) | пригóжаго.   |
| Dat. пригóжему ,           | пригóжей ,            | пригóжему.   |
| Acc. пригóж {íй ,<br>аго , | пригóжую ,            | пригóжее.    |
| Ins. пригóжимъ ,           | пригóжею              | пригóжимъ.   |
| Prep. о пригóжемъ ,        | о пригóжей ,          | о пригóжемъ. |

*P l u r a l.*

Nom. пригóжie, пригóжia, пригóжia.

Gen. пригóжихъ, пригóжихъ, пригóжихъ.

Dat. пригóжимъ, пригóжимъ, пригóжимъ.

Acc. пригóж}ie, пригóж}ia, пригóжia.  
ихъ, ихъ, ихъ,

Ins. пригóжими, пригóжими, пригóжими.

Prep. о пригóжихъ, о пригóжихъ, о пригóжихъ.

§ 97. According to the above example are declined all qualificative adjectives, ending in *жий*, *зий*, *ший* and *щий*; the participles of active and neuter verbs, of the past and present tense, ending in *ший* and *щий*; the superlative of adjectives, ending in *ший*, and adjectives used substantively, ending in *зий*, *ший*, and *щий*.

§ 98. In familiar language the terminations *ый* and *ий* are frequently changed into *ой*; as *слѣпой*, blind, instead of *слѣпый*; *дорогой*, dear, instead of *дорогій* &c.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *ний* AND *ней*.*S i n g u l a r.*

Nom. дрéвній, ancient. дрéвняя, дрéвнее.

Gen. дрéвняго, дрéвней(иа) дрéвняго.

Dat. дрéвнему, дрéвней, дрéвнему.

Acc. дрéвн{ий яго дрéвнюю, дрéвнее.

Ins. дрéвнимъ, дрéвнею, дрéвнимъ.

Prep. о дрéвнемъ, одрéвней, дрéвнемъ.

\* \*

*P l u r a l.*

|                               |                          |             |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------|
| Nom. дрёвніе,                 | дрёвнія,                 | дрёвнія.    |
| Gen. дрёвнихъ,                | дрёвнихъ,                | дрёвнихъ.   |
| Dat. дрёвнимъ,                | дрёвнимъ,                | дрёвнимъ.   |
| Acc. дрёвн <sup>ie</sup> ихъ, | дрёвн <sup>iа</sup> ихъ, | дрёвнія.    |
| Ins. дрёвними,                | дрёвними,                | дрёвними.   |
| Prep. о дрёвнихъ,             | о дрёвныхъ,              | о дрёвнихъ. |

§ 99. All adjectives ending in the nominative in *ни* and *ней* are declined according to the above example.



## T H E M E X.

## ON THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

There is nothing *perfect* in the world. He who seeks friends, should first make himself *worthy* of friendship. A *grateful* man is like a

---

|                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| in , въ , gov. the prep. | should , долженъ.       |
| the world , свѣтъ.       | first , прѣжде всѣго.   |
| there is nothing , нѣтъ  | make himself , сдѣлать- |
| ничего.                  | ся , gov. the ins.      |
| perfect , совершённый.   | worthy , достойный.     |
| he who , кто.            | friendship , дружба.    |
| seeks , ищешь себѣ.      | grateful , благодарный. |
| friend , другъ.          | is like , подобенъ.     |

*fruitful soil, which liberally rewards the labour of the cultivator. There is no true happiness without virtue. A good intention cannot justify an imprudent action. Modest and cheerful behaviour captivates the heart of man. A man of a benevolent heart endeavours to turn every thing into good, but a vicious man finds evil in good itself. In human life*

---

*fruitful, плодоносный. behaviour, обхождение.*  
*soil, почва. captivates, привлекает.*  
*liberally, щедро. ешь.*

|                                        |                                           |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>which rewards, вознаграждающей.</i> | <i>heart, сердце.</i>                     |
| <i>the labour, труды.</i>              | <i>of man, людей.</i>                     |
| <i>the cultivator, возделываатель.</i> | <i>of, съ, gov. the ins.</i>              |
| <i>there is no, нешь.</i>              | <i>benevolent, добрый.</i>                |
| <i>true, истинный.</i>                 | <i>endeavours, старается.</i>             |
| <i>happiness, благоденствиe.</i>       | <i>every thing, все.</i>                  |
| <i>good, добрый.</i>                   | <i>to turn, обращаться.</i>               |
| <i>intention, намерение.</i>           | <i>into good, въ добро.</i>               |
| <i>cannot, не можетъ.</i>              | <i>vicious, злой.</i>                     |
| <i>justify, оправдаться.</i>           | <i>but, же.</i>                           |
| <i>imprudent, неблагородный.</i>       | <i>finds, находить.</i>                   |
| <i>action, дѣло.</i>                   | <i>in good itself, и въ саmомъ добрѣ.</i> |
| <i>modest, скромный.</i>               | <i>evil, зло.</i>                         |
| <i>cheerful, веселый.</i>              | <i>in, въ, gov. the prep.</i>             |
|                                        | <i>life, жизнь.</i>                       |
|                                        | <i>нишан, геловѣгескій.</i>               |

there is no permanent happiness. Happiness should be sought not in a noisy round of pleasures, but in the peaceful circle of a virtuous family. The ancient poets speak of the golden, the silver, and the iron age. Ancient Rome produced many great men. The Christian religion teaches us to be benevolent and humane. The rein-deer lives only in cold, and

|                         |                |                            |                   |
|-------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| there is no ,           | нѣть.          | Rome ,                     | Римъ.             |
| permanent ,             | прѣтный.       | produced,                  | произвѣль.        |
| happiness ,             | счастье.       | many ,                     | многихъ.          |
| should be sought ,      | дѣл-           | great ,                    | великій.          |
|                         | жно искать.    | man ,                      | мужъ , V. § 18.   |
| not ,                   | не.            | christian ,                | христіан-         |
| noisy ,                 | шумный.        |                            | скій.             |
| round ,                 | кругъ.         | religion ,                 | вѣра.             |
| pleasure, удовольствіе. |                | teaches ,                  | пріучаетъ.        |
| peaceful ,              | мирный.        | us ,                       | насъ.             |
| circle ,                | кругъ.         | to be, быть, gov. the ins. |                   |
| family ,                | семѣйство.     | benevolent ,               | благодѣ-          |
| ancient ,               | дрѣвній.       |                            | тельный.          |
| poet, стихотворецъ.     |                | humane ,                   | человѣколо-       |
| speak ,                 | говоритьъ.     |                            | бѣвый.            |
| of , o ,                | gov. the prep. | the rein - deer ,          | оленъ,            |
| golden ,                | золотый.       |                            | to be in the plu. |
| silver ,                | серебряный.    | live ,                     | вѣдящея.          |
| iron ,                  | желѣзный.      | cold ,                     | холодный.         |
| age ,                   | вѣкъ.          | and ,                      | а.                |

the camel in *hot* countries. Among the Chinese beauty consists in a *broad* face, *narrow* eyes, a *flat* nose, *diminutive* feet and a *corpulent* body.

---

|                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| camel , верблюдъ.        | face , лицé.            |
| hot , тёплый.            | narrow , узенький.      |
| country , странá.        | eye , глазъ.            |
| among , y, gov. the gen. | flat , сплющенный.      |
| Chinese , Китáецъ.       | nose , носъ.            |
| beauty , красота.        | diminutive , маленький. |
| consists , состоится.    | feet (dimin.) нóжки.    |
| in , въ, gov. the prep.  | corpulent , дорóдный.   |
| broad , широкий.         | body , тело.            |



### S E C T. III.

#### DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION.

##### THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

§ 100. The comparative degree is formed from the positive by changing the final letters *ый* and *ий* into *е*, as.

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| слáбый , weak.  | слabъe , weaker.  |
| мùлрый , wise.  | мудръe , wiser.   |
| свѣжій , fresh. | свѣжъe , fresher. |

§ 101. When the above terminations are preceded by *г*, *к* or *х*, these gutturals are chan-

ged into their corresponding palatals, and *e* added instead of *æ*, as,

|                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| крѣпкій, strong. | крѣпче, stronger. |
| дорогій, dear.   | дороже, dearer.   |
| сухій, dry.      | сѫше, dryer.      |

§ 102. In the same manner *a* is changed into *я*; *m* into *ɛ* and *cm* into *ɯ*, as,

|                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| худоій, bad.     | хуже, worse.     |
| молодоій, young. | моложе, younger. |
| шолестый, thick, | шольще, thicker. |
| богаітый, rich.  | богаче, richer.  |

§ 103. The following are however exceptions to these rules :

|                   |                      |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| дольгій, long.    | долѣе, longer.       |
| широкій, wide.    | шире, wider.         |
| далекій, distant. | далѣе, more distant. |
| горькій, bitter.  | горчѣе, bitterer.    |
| высокій, high.    | выше, higher.        |
| глубокій, deep.   | глубже, deeper.      |
| гадкій, horrid.   | гаже, more horrid.   |
| жидкій, liquid.   | жиже, more liquid.   |
| рѣдкій, rare.     | рѣже, more rare.     |
| блїзкій, near.    | блїже, nearer.       |
| ѹзкій, narrow.    | ѹже, narrower.       |
| сладкій, sweet.   | слѣще, sweeter.      |

· § 104. The four following form the comparative irregularly :

|                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| великій, great. | больше, greater. |
| малый, little.  | меньше, less.    |
| хорошій, fine.  | лучше, finer.    |
| красный, fair.  | краснее, fairer, |

§ 105. The connexion between the two objects compared is sometimes expressed, as in English, by the particle *than*, *нежели*; but when the comparison is vague and indefinite, the particle is omitted, and the latter substantive put in the genitive case, as, весна пріятнѣе зимы, spring is more agreeable than winter.

§ 106. The comparison may be modified by adding the preposition *по*, or the adverb *гораздо*; the former diminishing, and the latter augmenting it, as, получше, a little better; гораздо лучше, much better.

§ 107. When the auxiliary verb to be, of the third person, either singular or plural, occurs in English between the substantive and the adjective, it is to be omitted in the Russian translation, as, здоровіе дороже багатства, health is more precious than riches. This rule relates also to adjectives in the positive degree V. § 88.

§ 108. Adjectives of the comparative degree are the same for all genders.



## THEME XI.

## ON THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

The rose is *more beautiful* than the lily. The eagle is stronger than the hawk. The *more simple* food is, the *more healthy* it is. Spring is *more agreeable* than winter. Gold is *more precious* than the other metals, but iron is *more useful* than gold. The works of nature are much *more majestic*, than all the productions

|                    |                                                   |                     |                         |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| the rose ,         | рóза.                                             | winter ,            | зимá.                   |
| beautiful ,        | прекrásный.                                       | gold ,              | зóлошo.                 |
| the lily ,         | лýлiя.                                            | precious,           | драгоцéнныи.            |
| the eagle ,        | орéль.                                            | than other metals , | друг-<br>ихъ мешáлловъ. |
| strong ,           | сíльный.                                          | but ,               | но.                     |
| the hawk ,         | јáстrebъ.                                         | iron ,              | желéзо.                 |
| the more food is , | чëмъ<br>пíща бывáешъ , fol-<br>lowed by the comp. | useful ,            | полéзный.               |
| simple ,           | простый , V.                                      | work ,              | произвéденiе.           |
|                    | § 182.                                            | nature ,            | прирóда.                |
| the more it is ,   | шëмъ<br>она.                                      | much , V. § 106.    |                         |
| healthy ,          | здорóвый.                                         | majestic ,          | вели́тествен-<br>ный.   |
| spring ,           | весná.                                            | all ,               | всé.                    |
| agreeable ,        | приятный.                                         | production ,        | произве-<br>дénie.      |

of art. A mountainous country is much *more attractive* than a dreary plain. The wool of the Saxon sheep is *finer* than the wool of the English. London is *more populous* than Paris. Asia is *more extensive* than Europe; but the Europeans are *more civilized* than the Asiaticks. The French language is *easier* than the Russian; but the Russian is *richer* than the French. Venus is *nearer* to the sun than the earth, and Mercury is *nearer* than Venus.

|                 |                           |              |                    |
|-----------------|---------------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| art ,           | искусство.                | Asia ,       | Áзія.              |
| mountainous ,   | горыс-<br>ший.            | extensive ,  | простран-<br>ный.  |
| country ,       | страна.                   | Europe ,     | Европа.            |
| attractive ,    | привлекатель-<br>тельный. | a European,  | Европеецъ.         |
| dreary ,        | плоский.                  | civilized,   | образованный       |
| plain ,         | равнина.                  | an Asiatick, | Азиатецъ.          |
| the wool ,      | шерсть.                   | French ,     | Француский.        |
| Saxon ,         | Саксонский.               | language ,   | языкъ.             |
| sheep , (sing.) | овца.                     | easy ,       | легкий.            |
| fine ,          | тонкий, V. § 101.         | Russian ,    | Русской.           |
| English ,       | Английский.               | rich ,       | богатый, V. § 102. |
| London ,        | Лондонъ.                  | Venus ,      | Венера.            |
| populous ,      | многолюд-<br>ный.         | near ,       | блíзкий V. § 103   |
| Paris ,         | Парижъ.                   | the sun ,    | солнце.            |
|                 |                           | the earth ,  | земля.             |
|                 |                           | Mercury ,    | Меркурий.          |



## THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

§ 109. The superlative degree is formed from the comparative termination *te*, by changing the final *e* into *йшій*, ex.

свѣшлѣ, lighter, свѣшлѣйшій, the lightest.

§ 110. In those adjectives, in which the gutturals are changed into palatals, (V. § 101.) the *e* of the comparative is changed into *a* in the superlative degree, ex.

блїже, nearer; ближайшій; the nearest.

§ 111. The superlative may also be formed as in English, by prefixing the adverb *самый*, the most, to the positive degree, as: *самый полезный*, the most useful.

§ 112. When the quality of an object is to be expressed in a high degree, without comparison with, or reference to any other object, the adverb *весьма*, or *очень* is prefixed to the positive degree, as,

весьма богатый, very rich.

очень трудный, very difficult,

§ 113. To increase the energy of expression *самый*, *пре*, *все* or *нан* is sometimes prefixed to the superlative.

книга самая полезнейшая, the most useful of books.  
пресвѣшлѣйшій, the brightest of all.

всемилостивейшій, the most gracious of all.

наипрекраснійшій, the most beautiful  
of all.

§ 114. The superlative may also be formed by prefixing the indefinite pronoun *oīceō* to adjectives in the comparative degree, as :

всего́ древнѣе, the most ancient of all.

THEME XII.

## ON THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

Russia is the *most extensive* Empire in the world. Venus is the *brightest* of the planets. Self-love is the *most dangerous* flatterer. Natural history is one of the *most agreeable* sciences. Mercury is the *smallest* planet and the nearest

|                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Russia , Россія.              | flatterer , лъстецъ.          |
| extensive , простран-<br>ный. | natural , есшеспен-<br>ный.   |
| empire , госуда́рство.        | history , исто́рія.           |
| world , свѣтъ.                | one , однá.                   |
| Venus , Венера.               | agreeable , пріятныи.         |
| bright , свѣтлый.             | science , наука.              |
| of , изъ.                     | Mercury , Мерку́рій.          |
| a planet , планéша.           | small , мáленький , V. § 113. |
| self- love , самолюбіе.       | near , близкій.               |
| dangerous , опасный.          | planet , планéша.             |

to the sun. The summits of the *loftiest* mountains are hid in the clouds. The horse is the *most beautiful*, and the sheep the *most useful* of all domestic animals. The ostrich is the *largest* of birds. The elephant is the *most sagacious* of all quadrupeds. It is considered as the *highest* degree of rudeness to interrupt the discourse of another person. A good example is the *strongest* incitement to

---

|                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| summit , вершина.        | quadruped , четвероногий.      |
| lofty , высокий.         |                                |
| mountain , гора.         | high , высокий.                |
| are hid , скрывающиеся.  | degree , степень.              |
| cloud , облако.          | rudeness , неучтивость         |
| the horse , лошадь.      | it is considered , почитается. |
| beautiful , красивый.    |                                |
| and the sheep , овца же. | to interrupt , прерывать.      |
| useful ; полезный.       | of another person , чужую.     |
| of all , изъ всѣхъ.      |                                |
| domestic , домашний.     | the discourse , рѣчь.          |
| animal , живое.          | good , хороший.                |
| the ostrich , страусъ.   | example , пріемъ.              |
| large , великий.         | strong , сильный.              |
| bird , птица.            | incitement , побуждение.       |
| the elephant , слонъ.    |                                |
| sagacious , смышленый.   | to , къ.                       |

virtue. China is the *most populous* country in the world.

---

China, Китай.                      country, страна.  
 populous, *многолюдный*. world, свѣтъ.



## S E C T. IV.

### POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 115. Possessive adjectives are of two kinds : *personal* and *common*. *Personal* possessive adjectives are formed from names, professions &c by changing the mas. terminations into *овъ* and *евъ*, and the feminine into *инъ* and *цинъ*; ex. монаховъ, from монахъ, a monk, Царевъ, or Царскій from Царь a King ; свекропинъ, from свекропъ, mother-in-law, &c.

§ 116. *Common* possessive adjectives are formed from substantives, and terminate in the nom. mas. in *ий*, *скій*, *ній*, and *ій*. Those ending in *ий* are declined according to the first example of qualificative adjectives, *муж-  
чій*, the rest according to the second of the following examples, *рыбій*.

## **DECLINATION OF PERSONAL POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.**

поповъ, а priest's.

|                                                   | <i>S i n g.</i> |              | <i>Plu.<br/>of all gend.</i>     |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Mas.</i>                                       | <i>Fem.</i>     | <i>Neut.</i> |                                  |
| N. поповъ,                                        | попова,         | попово,      | поповы.                          |
| G. попова,                                        | поповой,        | попова,      | поповыхъ.                        |
| D. попову,                                        | поповой,        | попову,      | поповымъ.                        |
| A. поповъ <sup>ь</sup><br>{<br>а                  | попову,         | попово,      | поповъ <sup>ь</sup><br>{<br>ыхъ, |
| I. поповымъ, поповою, поповымъ, поповыми.         |                 |              |                                  |
| P. о поповомъ, о поповой, о поповомъ, о пововыхъ. |                 |              |                                  |

## **DECLINATION OF COMMON POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.**

рыбій , fish (adj.)

|                                           | <i>S i n g.</i> |              | <i>P l u r.</i>                     |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Mas.</i>                               | <i>Fem.</i>     | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>of all gen.</i>                  |
| Nom. рыбій,                               | рыбья,          | рыбье,       | рыбыи.                              |
| Gen. рыбьяго,                             | рыбьей,         | рыбьяго,     | рыбыхъ.                             |
| Dat. рыбьему,                             | рыбьей,         | рыбьему,     | рыбьимъ.                            |
| Acc. рыб{ <sup>ій</sup> <sub>ьяго</sub> } | рыбью,          | рыбье,       | рыбь{ <sup>і</sup> <sub>ихъ</sub> } |
| Ins. рыбьимъ,                             | рыбьею,         | рыбьимъ,     | рыбьими.                            |
| Pr. о рыбьемъ,                            | о рыбьей,       | о рыбьемъ,   | о рыбыхъ.                           |

The following examples will shew the manner of forming possessive adjectives from substantives.

| <i>Substantives.</i> | <i>Poss. adjectives.</i> |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| Илья́ , Ely.         | Ильинъ.                  |
| Монахъ , a monk.     | монаховъ.                |
| Отецъ , father.      | отцевъ.                  |

*Substantives.*

|                          |              |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| Пепръ, Peter.            | Пепрόвъ.     |
| Свекрόвъ, mother-in-law. | свекрóвинъ.  |
| Верблюдъ, a camel.       | верблюжій.   |
| Волкъ, a wolf.           | вóлчій.      |
| Козá, a goat.            | кóзій.       |
| Овцá, a sheep.           | опéчій.      |
| Птица, a bird.           | птичій.      |
| Дерéвня, a village.      | деревéнскій. |
| Звѣрь, an animal.        | звѣрскій.    |
| Зимá, winter.            | зимній.      |

*Poss. adjectives.*

## THEME XIII.

## ON THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

*Cow's, sheep's and goat's milk furnishes very healthy food. Goat's hair is employed in the manufacture of various stuffs. The Laplanders*

---

|                         |                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| milk, молокó.           | is employed, употреб-<br>ляютъ. |
| cow, корóва:            |                                 |
| sheep, овцá.            | in the manufacture of,          |
| goat, козá.             | на.                             |
| furnishes, доставляєтъ. | various, разныя.                |
| very, весьма.           | stuff, ткань.                   |
| healthy, здоровый.      | a Laplander, Лапла-             |
| food, пища.             | нецъ.                           |

live upon *rein-deer* milk, and make themselves tents and clothing of the *rein-deer* skin. Hats, shawls and other articles are made of *camel* hair. *Ox* and *calf* skins are tanned for various uses. The inhabitants of the north clothe themselves in the winter in *sable*, *fox*, *bear*, and *wolf* skins. *Beaver* and *ermine* skins are high-

---

|                        |                    |                    |               |
|------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| live upon,             | пишаюш-            | are tanned,        | выдѣль-       |
|                        | ся.                |                    | ваюшъ.        |
| a rein - deer,         | олéнь.             | for various,       | для раз-      |
| milk,                  | молокó.            |                    | наго.         |
| they make themselves,  | use,               | употреблénie.      |               |
| дѣлающъ себѣ.          | inhabitant,        | жїпель.            |               |
| tent, шалáшь.          | the north,         | сїверъ.            |               |
| clothing, одéжда.      | clothe themselves, | одѣ-               |               |
| of, изъ, gov. the gen. |                    | вáюшся.            |               |
| skin, кóжа.            |                    | in the winter,     | зимою.        |
| a camel, верблюдъ.     |                    | a sable,           | соболь.       |
| hair, шерсть.          |                    | a fox,             | лисица.       |
| a hat, шляпа.          |                    | a bear,            | медведь.      |
| a shawl, плащóкъ.      |                    | a wolf,            | волкъ.        |
| other, другія.         |                    | a beaver,          | бобръ.        |
| article, издѣліе.      |                    | an ermine,         | горно-        |
| an ox, волъ.           |                    |                    | стай.         |
| a calf, телáта.        |                    | are highly valued, | до-           |
| skin, кóжа.            |                    |                    | рого цѣняшся. |

ly valued. *Hare* and *beaver* down is employed in the manufacture of hats.

---

|                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| a hare, заяцъ.        | in, для, gov. the gen. |
| the down, пухъ.       | manufacture, дѣланіе.  |
| is employed, служиши. | a hat, шляпа.          |



### S E C T. V.

#### APOCOPATED ADJECTIVES.

§ 117. Adjectives may either be immediately prefixed to the substantive, as: молодой человекъ, a young man; счастливая жена, a happy wife, or connected by means of the auxiliary verb *быть*, to be. In the latter case, the verb is omitted in the present tense, and the adjective apocopated, ex. онъ молодъ, he is young; она счастлива, she is happy; они здоровы, they are healthy.

§ 118. Adjectives can only be apocopated in the positive degree V. § 88.

§ 119. Apocopated adjectives are formed from complete adjectives in the following manner.

| <i>Comp. adjec.</i> | <i>apocopated adjec.</i>      | <i>Plu.</i> |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|
| <i>Mas.</i>         | <i>Fem. Neut. of all gen.</i> |             |
| дóбрый, good.       | добръ, rá,                    | дóбры.      |
| мáлый, little.      | малъ, là,                     | мáлы.       |
| вéликíй, great.     | вéликъ, ká,                   | вéлики.     |
| хорóшíй, fine.      | хорóшъ, shá,                  | хороши.     |

IRREGULARITIES IN THE FORMATION OF THE  
APOCOPATE.

|                      |                |       |
|----------------------|----------------|-------|
| дóлгíй, long.        | дóлого, лгá,   | лго,  |
| корóшкíй, short.     | корóшокъ, шкá, | шкó,  |
| злыи, evil           | золъ, зла,     | зло,  |
| тýжкíй, heavy.       | тýжекъ, жкá,   | жко,  |
| сíльныи, strong.     | силéнь,        | льна, |
| спокóйныи, tranquil. | спокóенъ,      | йна,  |

§ 120. The plural of apocopated adjectives is formed by changing the final *a* of the fem into *ы* or *и*, ex.

|          |          |           |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| долгá,   | дóлги.   | тýжка,    | тýжки.    |
| корошкá, | корóшки. | сильнá,   | сíльны.   |
| злá,     | злы.     | спокóйна. | спокóйны. |



T H E M E XIV.

ON APOCOPATED ADJECTIVES.

God is merciful. Virtue is modest. Be obedient

---

|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| merciful, милосéрдый, | be, будь.           |
| modest, скрóмный.     | obedient, покóрный. |

in childhood, and thou wilt be *respected* in age. The road to fame is *difficult*. The society of the licentious is *contagious*. Even our enemies are sometimes *useful* to us by pointing out our defects. The tumultuous pleasures of the world are *deceitful*. Indolence is *disgraceful* and *injurious*. Man is *mortal*. The fox is *cunning*, the lion *magnanimous*, and the tiger *ferocious*.

|                   |                  |                  |               |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------|---------------|
| childhood ,       | дѣтство.         | our ,            | наши.         |
| thou wilt be ,    | бѣдешь.          | defect,          | недостаціе.   |
| respected ,       | погтѣнныи.       |                  | V. § 14.      |
| age ,             | старость.        | the tumultuous , | шумный.       |
| the road ,        | путь.            |                  |               |
| difficult ,       | трудныи.         | pleasure ,       | радость.      |
| the society ,     | сообщество.      | deceitful ,      | обмантивыи.   |
|                   |                  | indolence ,      | лѣносТЬ.      |
| licentious ,      | распушныи.       | disgraceful ,    | постыдныи.    |
| people ,          | люди.            |                  |               |
| contagious ,      | заразительныи.   | injurious ,      | вредныи.      |
| sometimes ,       | иногда.          | mortal ,         | смѣртныи.     |
| even ,            | самые.           | the fox ,        | лисица.       |
| enemy ,           | врагъ , V. § 13. | cunning ,        | хитрый.       |
| age ,             | бываюшъ.         | the lion ,       | левъ.         |
| to us ,           | намъ.            | magnanimous ,    | великодушныи. |
| useful ,          | полезныи.        | the tiger ,      | тигръ.        |
| by pointing out , | опровергиваюшъ.  | ferocious ,      | кровожадныи.  |

*Love is blind. Time is precious, and life is short.*

---

|                 |                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| love , любо́вь. | precious, драгоцѣнны́й. |
| blind , слѣпый. | life , жизнъ.           |
| time , врёмя.   | short , короткій.       |



## S E C T. VI.

### AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 121. Augmentative adjectives are only employed in the apocopated form, in the positive degree and nominative case.

§ 122. The augmentative terminations of adjectives are, *ехонекъ* and *ешенекъ*, either of which may be used.

|                 | <i>Mas.</i>   | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|
| бѣлый, white,   | бѣлѣхонекъ,   | њка,        | њко.         |
| зелёный, green, | зеленѣшенекъ, | њка,        | њко.         |

§ 123. Diminutive adjectives are of two kinds; the first terminate in *онькій* and *енькій*, and relate to the diminutiveness of the object; as *бѣленькой* *платочкъ*, a little white handkerchief; the second end in *еватый* and *оватый* and may be rendered in English by an

adjective with the modificative particle, *rather*; Нéбо аловáшо, the sky is *rather* red; онъ слáбовáшъ, he is *rather* weak.

*Formation of diminutive adjectives.*

|               | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| плохóй, bad.  | плохónькíй, | кая,        | кое.         |
| слáбый, weak. | слáбенькíй, | кая,        | кое.         |
| áлый, red.    | аловáшый,   | тая,        | тое.         |

§ 124. The apocopated terminations of these adjectives are *онекъ* or *енскъ*, *a*, *o*, pl. *и*; *овать* or *еватъ*, *a*, *o*, pl. *ы*.



**PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE ON THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.**

The *gentle* and *refreshing* evening had succeeded (already in place of) the *sultry* day, when *young* Uslad, the minstrel, approached the banks

---

|                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| gentle, <i>тýхíй.</i>        | day, день.                    |
| refreshing, <i>прохлáд-</i>  | <i>when</i> , когда.          |
| <i>ный.</i>                  | Uslad, Услáдъ.                |
| the evening, <i>вéчеръ.</i>  | young, молодóй.               |
| had succeeded, <i>засту-</i> | minstrel, пъвéцъ.             |
| <i>пáль.</i>                 | approached, прибли-<br>жился. |
| already, <i>ужé.</i>         |                               |
| place, <i>мéсто.</i>         | bank, бéреgъ.                 |
| sultry, <i>палнíшíй.</i>     |                               |

of the Moscow river, on which he had past the flowery days of his youth. The smooth surface of the water, scarcely ruffled by the gentle zephyr, was covered with the radiant glory of the west. In its mirror were reflected from one side the dark forest and the castle of the terrible Rogdai, surrounded with a high oaken palisade (it was built on a steep hill,

---

|                                         |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Moscow, Москвá.                         | the west, западъ.                     |
| a river, рѣкѣ.                          | mirror, зерцало.                      |
| on which, на кото-<br>рыхъ.             | was reflected, отражá-<br>лисъ.       |
| he had past, провёль.                   | from one side, съ од-<br>ной стороны. |
| flowery, цветущий.                      | dark, дремучий.                       |
| his, своéй.                             | forest, лѣсъ.                         |
| youth, юношь.                           | castle, шёремъ.                       |
| smooth, гладкій.                        | terrible, грозный.                    |
| surface, поверхность.                   | Rogdai, Рогдай.                       |
| water, водá, (to be<br>put in the plu.) | surrounded, окружён-<br>ной.          |
| scarcely, едвá.                         | high, высокій.                        |
| ruffled, лобзаемый.                     | oaken, дубовый.                       |
| gentle, лёгкій.                         | palisade, тынъ.                       |
| zephyr, вѣтерокъ.                       | it was built, онъ быль<br>построенъ.  |
| was covered, покрыта<br>была.           | steep, крутый.                        |
| radiant, розовыи.                       | hill, гора.                           |
| glory, сияніе.                          |                                       |

there , where now we see the *embattled* walls of the Cremel , the *magnificent* halls of the ancient Russian Tsars) from the other the *green* bank, covered with shrubs and scattered with the *lowly* cottages of the peasantry. All around, reigned tranquillity ; the air was impregnated with the fragrance of the *blooming* linden-tree ; at times the voice of the nightingale,

---

|                  |                   |                   |                      |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| there ,          | шамъ.             | scattered ,       | <i>осыпанный</i> .   |
| where ,          | гдѣ.              | lowly ,           | <i>низкий</i> .      |
| now ,            | нынѣ.             | cottage ,         | <i>хижина</i> .      |
| we see ,         | видимъ.           | all around ,      | <i>повсюду</i> .     |
| embattled ,      | <i>зубчатой</i> . | reigned ,         | <i>царствовало</i> . |
| a wall ,         | стѣна.            | tranquillity ,    | <i>спокой-</i>       |
| Cremel ,         | Кремль.           |                   | <i>швіе</i> .        |
| magnificent ,    | <i>велико-</i>    | the air ,         | <i>воздухъ</i> .     |
|                  | <i>лѣпный</i> .   | was impregnated , | <i>быть</i>          |
| hall ,           | чертогъ.          |                   | <i>растворенъ</i> .  |
| ancient ,        | <i>древній</i> .  | fragrance ,       | <i>благоуханіе</i> . |
| Russian ,        | Рускій.           | blooming ,        | <i>цвѣтущій</i> .    |
| Tsar ,           | Царь.             | the linden-tree , | <i>липа</i> .        |
| from the other , | съ друг-          | at times ,        | <i>иногда</i> .      |
|                  | <i>рой</i> .      | the depth ,       | <i>глубина</i> .     |
| green ,          | <i>зеленый</i> .  | forest ,          | <i>лесъ</i> .        |
| bank ,           | берегъ.           | resounded ,       | <i>раздавался</i> .  |
| covered ,        | <i>покрытый</i> . | the voice ,       | <i>голосъ</i> .      |
| shrubs ,         | кустарникъ.       | nightingale ,     | <i>соловей</i> .     |

or the *plaintive* notes of the thrush resounded in the depth of the forest; at others the *fickle* breeze shook the tops of the trees, and the *timid* rabbit, startled by the rustling, skipped into the thicket and rattled among the *withered* branches. Uslad proceeded along the pathway, which wound among the trees; his soul, swelling with recollections of the past, was

|                               |                                                |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| plaintive, <i>пегальныи</i> . | (among, expressed by<br>notes, <i>пѣніе</i> .) |
| the thrush, <i>жвѣлга</i> .   | withered, <i>изсохшій</i> . *                  |
| at others, <i>иногда</i> .    | branch, <i>вѣтвь</i> .                         |
| fickle, <i>непостойнныи</i> , | proceeded, <i>шелъ</i> .                       |
| the breeze, <i>вѣтерокъ</i> . | along, <i>по</i> , gov. the dat.               |
| shook, <i>попрясалъ</i> .     | the path-way, <i>шро-</i>                      |
| the top, <i>вершина</i> .     | <i>пинка</i> .                                 |
| a tree, <i>дѣрево</i> .       | which wound, <i>извивав-</i>                   |
| timid, <i>рѣбкій</i> .        | <i>шейся</i> .                                 |
| a rabbit, <i>кроликъ</i> .    | among, <i>между</i> , gov.                     |
| startled, <i>испуганный</i> . | the ins.                                       |
| the rustling, <i>шорохъ</i> . | a tree, <i>дѣрево</i> .                        |
| skipped, <i>бросался</i> .    | swelling, <i>наполненная</i> .                 |
| the thicket, <i>кустар-</i>   | recollection of the past,                      |
| <i>никъ</i> .                 | <i>воспоминаніе</i> ,                          |
| rattled, <i>шумѣль</i> .      | was, <i>была</i> .                             |

\* The participles are declined as adjectives.

plunged in pensiveness. Where art thou O happiness! exclaimed Uslad, I return to the spot, on which I once exulted in my existence: the *shady* grove, the *bright* river, the *green* banks are still the same, the *fragrant* linden-tree still sends forth its *grateful* odour, and the *plaintive* notes of the nightingale and thrush are still heard in the depth of the

|                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| plunged, <i>погруженный.</i>   | bright, <i>свѣтлый.</i>       |
| pensiveness, <i>задумчи-</i>   | river, <i>рѣка.</i>           |
| <i>воспѣшь.</i>                | <i>green, зелёный.</i>        |
| where art thou, <i>гдѣ ты.</i> | are still the same, <i>не</i> |
| O happiness, <i>моя рѣ-</i>    | <i>измѣнилось.</i>            |
| <i>дость.</i>                  | still, <i>по прѣжнему.</i>    |
| exclaimed, <i>воскликн-</i>    | fragrant, <i>благоуонный.</i> |
| <i>нуль.</i>                   | the linden-tree, <i>липа.</i> |
| I return, <i>прихожу.</i>      | sends forth, <i>разли-</i>    |
| to, <i>на.</i>                 | <i>ваешь.</i>                 |
| the same, <i>тоже.</i>         | grateful, <i>сладостный.</i>  |
| spot, <i>место.</i>            | odour, <i>запахъ.</i>         |
| on which, <i>на кошо-</i>      | still, <i>по прѣжнему.</i>    |
| <i>ромъ.</i>                   | plaintive, <i>унылый.</i>     |
| once, <i>нѣкогда.</i>          | notes, <i>пѣніе.</i>          |
| exulted, <i>восхищался.</i>    | the nightingale, <i>со-</i>   |
| in my existence, <i>бы-</i>    | <i>ловѣй.</i>                 |
| <i>шіѣмъ своймъ.</i>           | the thrush, <i>їволга.</i>    |
| shady, <i>тѣнистый.</i>        | are heard, <i>раздаѣтся.</i>  |
| a grove, <i>роща.</i>          | depth, <i>глубина.</i>        |

\* \*

forest; but he, who once delighted in the fragrance of the blooming linden-tree and the warbling of the nightingale, is now dead to joy.

*Joukofsky.*

|                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| but he , а тошь.                      | fragrânce , благовóніе.              |
| who , кто.                            | blooming , цвѣтущій.                 |
| once , вѣкогда.                       | warbling , пѣніе.                    |
| delighted, усаждался.                 | is now dead to joy ,                 |
| (in , expressed by the<br>Ins. case.) | тошьуже не похόжъ<br>на самаго себѧ. |

TABLE FOR THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

| S i n g u l a r . |           |           |           |           |            |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| M a s .           |           | F e m .   |           | N e u t . |            |
| Nom.              | ый        | ий        | ая        | яя        | ое         |
| Gen.              | аго       | яго       | ой,(ыя)   | ей,(ия)   | аго        |
| Dat.              | ому       | ему       | ой        | ей        | ому        |
| Acc.              | ый<br>аго | ий<br>яго | ую        | юю        | ое         |
| Ins.              | ымъ       | имъ       | ою        | ею        | ымъ        |
| Prep.             | омъ       | емъ       | ой        | ей        | омъ        |
| P l u r u l .     |           |           |           |           |            |
| Nom.              | ые        | ie        | ыя        | iя        | ыя . iя    |
| Gen.              | ыхъ       | ихъ       | ыхъ       | ихъ       | ыхъ . ихъ  |
| Dat.              | ымъ       | имъ       | ымъ       | имъ       | ымъ . имъ  |
| Acc.              | ые<br>ыхъ | ie<br>ихъ | ыя<br>ыхъ | iя<br>ихъ | ыя . iя    |
| Ins.              | ыми       | ими       | ыми       | ими       | ыми . ими  |
| Prep.             | ыхъ       | ихъ       | ыхъ       | ихъ       | ыхъ . ихъ. |

## С Н А Р. III.

## N U M E R A L S.

§ 125. Numbers are of two kinds : cardinal and ordinal ; the former are declined as substantives, the latter have the termination and declension of adjectives.



## S E C T I.

## C A R D I N A L N U M B E R S.

|              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| одинъ,       | one.      |
| два,         | two.      |
| три,         | three.    |
| четыре,      | four.     |
| пять,        | five.     |
| шесть,       | six.      |
| семь,        | seven.    |
| восемь,      | eight.    |
| девять,      | nine.     |
| десять,      | ten.      |
| одиннадцать, | eleven.   |
| двадцать,    | twelve.   |
| тридцать,    | thirteen. |

|                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| четырнадцать ,   | fourteen.             |
| пятнадцать ,     | fifteen.              |
| шеснадцать ,     | sixteen.              |
| семнадцать ,     | seventeen.            |
| восемнадцать ,   | eighteen.             |
| девятнадцать ,   | nineteen.             |
| двадцать ,       | twenty.               |
| двадцать одинъ , | twenty - one.         |
| двадцать два ,   | twenty - two &c.      |
| тридцать ,       | thirty.               |
| сорокъ ,         | forty.                |
| пятьдесятъ ,     | fifty.                |
| шестьдесятъ ,    | sixty.                |
| семьдесятъ ,     | seventy.              |
| восьмидесять ,   | eighty.               |
| девяносто ,      | ninety.               |
| сто ,            | a hundred.            |
| сто одинъ ,      | a hundred and one &c. |
| двести ,         | two hundred.          |
| триста ,         | three hundred.        |
| четыреста ,      | four hundred.         |
| пятьсотъ ,       | five hundred.         |
| шестьсотъ ,      | six hundred &c.       |
| тысяча ,         | a thousand.           |
| две тысячи ,     | two thousand.         |
| пять тысячъ ,    | five thousand.        |
| миллионъ ,       | a million.            |

§ 126. The collective numbers are; *пара*, a pair; *пятеро*, five; *половина*, half a dozen; *десятка*, ten; *дюжина*, a dozen; *две десятки*, a score; *сто*, a hundred.

§ 127. The distributive numbers are: *половина*, half; *треть*, a third; *четверть*, a quarter; *полторы*, one and a half; *полтретьи*, two and a half; *полчетверти*, three and a half, &c.

§ 128. The proportional numbers are: *двойной*, double; *тройной*, treble; *четверной*, quadruple; *стократный*, centuple.

§ 129. The simple cardinal numbers are declined as the substantives, which have similar terminations; and the compound, as: *пятьдесят*, fifty; *шестидесять*, sixty &c. being composed of two numbers, each number is declined according to its own termination.

*E x a m p l e.*

*Simple.*

*Compound.*

|                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| N. шесть, six.         | шестидесять, sixty.            |
| G. шести, of — — —     | шестидесяти, of —              |
| D. шести, to — — —     | шестидесяти, to —              |
| A. шесть. — — —        | шестидесять. — —               |
| I. шестью, by or with. | шестью десятью, by<br>or with. |

P. о шести, of — — о шестидесяти, of.

§ 130. The following are declined as adjectives.

| <i>Mas.</i>                     | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> | <i>Plu.</i>      |
|---------------------------------|-------------|--------------|------------------|
| <b>N.</b> оди́нъ, one.          | одна́,      | одно́.       | одни́.           |
| <b>G.</b> одногó, of —          | однóй,      | одногó,      | однíхъ.          |
| <b>D.</b> ономù, to —           | однóй,      | одномù,      | однíмъ.          |
| <b>A.</b> од{инъ<br>ногó} —     | однù,       | одно́,       | од{ни.<br>нихъ.} |
| <b>I.</b> однíмъ, by or with.   | однóю,      | однíмъ,      | однíми.          |
| <b>P.</b> объ однóмъ, of однóй, | однóмъ,     | однíхъ.      |                  |

| <i>Mas. and Neut.</i>          | <i>Fem.</i>  |
|--------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>Nom.</b> два, two. — — —    | две.         |
| <b>Gen.</b> двухъ, of — — —    | двухъ.       |
| <b>Dat.</b> двумъ, to — — —    | двумъ.       |
| <b>Acc.</b> дв{а<br>ухъ} — — — | дв{в<br>ухъ} |
| <b>Ins.</b> двумя, by or with. | двумя.       |
| <b>Prep.</b> о двухъ, of — —   | о двухъ.     |

| <i>Mas. and Neut.</i>           | <i>Fem.</i>     |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>Nom.</b> оба, both. — — —    | обе.            |
| <b>Gen.</b> обóихъ, of — — —    | обéихъ.         |
| <b>Dat.</b> обóимъ, to — — —    | обéимъ.         |
| <b>Acc.</b> об{а<br>óихъ} — — — | об{е.<br>óихъ.} |
| <b>Ins.</b> обóими, by or with, | обéими.         |
| <b>Prep.</b> о обóихъ, of — —   | о обéихъ.       |

*Of all three genders.*

|                               |                |
|-------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>Nom.</b> три, трóе, three. | четыре, four.  |
| <b>Gen.</b> трехъ, тройхъ — — | четырехъ, of — |

Dat. **тремъ, троймъ** — **четырёмъ, то—**

Acc. **тр{и}, тро{е},** — **четыр{е},** —  
**ехъ, ихъ,** — **ехъ.**

Ins. **трремя, тройми.** — **четырымъ, by or with.**

Prep. **о трехъ, тройхъ.** — **о четырехъ, of.**

§ 131. The numbers, **триста**, three hundred and **четыреста**, four hundred, are declined according to the first of the following examples, and **шестьсотъ**, six hundred; **семьсотъ**, seven hundred; **восемьсотъ**, eight hundred and **девятьсотъ**, nine hundred, according to the second.

N. **двѣсти**, two hundred. **пять сотъ, five hundred.**

G. **двухъ сотъ, of** — **пяти сотъ, of** —

D. **двумъ спамъ, to** — **пятнадцати спамъ, to** —

A. **двѣсти** — — — — **пять сотъ.** — — —

I. **двумъ спами**, by or **пятью спами**, by or with. with.

P. **о двухъ спахъ, of** — **о пятнадцати спахъ, of.** —

§ 132. Each simple number or component part of a compound number (however many there may be) is declined according to its own termination.

Nom. **пять-сотъ шестьдесятъ семь.**

Gen. **пяти - сотъ шестьдесятъ семи.**

Dat. **пяти-стамъ шестьдесятъ семи.**

Acc. **пять - сотъ шестьдесятъ семь.**

Ins. **пятью-стами шестьдесятъю семью.**

Prep. **о пяти-стахъ шестьдесятъ семи.**



## Т Н Е М Е XV.

## ON THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

The universal deluge in the time of Noah, continued *three hundred and seventy - seven days*. The Israelites wandered *forty* years in the wilderness. The solar year consists of *three hundred and sixty - five* days, *five* hours and *forty-five* minutes. Rome was built *seven hundred and fifty - three* years before the birth of Christ. Ptolemy Philadelphus employed *seventy - two* interpreters in the translation of the old tes-

|                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>universal</i> , всеобщій.    | <i>was built</i> , построено.    |
| <i>deluge</i> , пошóль.         | <i>before</i> , до, gov. the     |
| <i>the time</i> , врéмя.        | gen.                             |
| <i>Noah</i> , Ної,              | <i>the birth</i> , рождествó.    |
| <i>continued</i> , продолжал-   | <i>of Christ</i> , Христóво.     |
| ся.                             | Ptolomy Philadelphus,            |
| <i>day</i> , день.              | Птоломéй Филадéльфъ.             |
| <i>wilderness</i> , пустыня.    | <i>employed</i> , употребилъ.    |
| <i>the solar year</i> , солнеч- | <i>interpreter</i> , шолков-     |
| ный годъ.                       | никъ.                            |
| <i>consists</i> , состояшъ.     | <i>in</i> , для, gov. the gen.   |
| <i>of</i> , изъ, gov. the gen.  | <i>the translation</i> , перево- |
| <i>hour</i> , часъ.             | дь.                              |
| <i>minute</i> , минùша.         | <i>old</i> , вéшкій.             |
| <i>Rome</i> , Римъ.             | <i>testament</i> , завéшть.      |

tament into the Greek language. Constantinople was taken by the Turks, *one thousand one hundred and twenty-three* years after the removal thither of the capital by Constantine the Great, and *two thousand, two hundred and six* years after the building of the city of Rome. The Alexandrian library consisted of *three hundred thousand* volumes. Moses left Egypt with *six hundred thousand* Israelites, *four hundred and thirty* years after their first establishment in that country. A circle is divided into *three hundred and sixty*

|                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| into , на , gov. the acc.         | Rome , Римъ.                   |
| Greek , Греческий.                | Alexandrian , Александрийский. |
| language , языкъ.                 |                                |
| Constantinople , Константинополь. | library , библиотека.          |
| was taken , былъ взяшъ.           | consisted , состояла.          |
| Turk , Турокъ.                    | of , изъ , gov. the gen.       |
| after , послѣ.                    | volume , книга.                |
| the removal , переселеніе.        | Moses , Моисей.                |
|                                   | left , оставилъ.               |
| thither , туда.                   | Egypt , Египетъ.               |
| the capital , столица.            | their , ихъ.                   |
| Constantine , Константина.        | establishment , поселеніе.     |
| great , великий ,                 | that , сей.                    |
| the building , построение.        | country , страна.              |
|                                   | a circle , кругъ.              |
|                                   | is divided , раздѣляется.      |

degrees. The light of the solar rays reaches us in about *eight* minutes. Alexander the great ascended the throne at *twenty*, and died at *thirty* years of age. *Thirty thousand* Jewish prisoners of war laboured during *five* years at the erection of the Roman amphitheatre, known under the name of the *Coloseum*. The portico of this building was a *thousand* and *fifty* feet in circumference, and supported by *four* rows of

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| degree , градусъ.        | under, подъ, gov. the inst. |
| the light , свѣтъ.       | name , имя.                 |
| solar , солнечный.       | Coloseum , Колизей.         |
| ray , лучъ.              | laboured , работали.        |
| reaches , достигаешь     | during, въ продолженіе.     |
| to , до.                 | Jewish prisoners of war,    |
| us , нась.               | военнооплѣнныхъ Ев-         |
| about , почти.           | реевъ.                      |
| Alexander, Александъ.    | the portico , портикъ.      |
| ascended , вступилъ.     | of this , серо.             |
| the throne , престоль.   | building , зданіе.          |
| of age , онъ роду.       | was , имѣлъ.                |
| at , при, gov. the prep. | a foot , футъ.              |
| the building, построѣ-   | circumference , окруж-      |
| nie.                     | ность.                      |
| Roman , Римскій.         | was , былъ.                 |
| amphitheatre , амфи-     | supported , поддѣржан-      |
| театръ.                  | ваемъ.                      |
| known , известный.       | a tow , рядъ.               |

pillars, each *two hundred* and *twenty-two* feet high. It was capable of containing a *hundred thousand* spectators, and not unfrequently a choir of *three thousand* singers and as many dancers amused the Roman public in this stupendous edifice. The height of the Mont-blanc is *fourteen thousand, five hundred and fifty-six* feet, and the height of the Chimborazzo *nineteen thousand, six hundred and two* feet. (french.)

---

|                                           |                       |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| a pillar, столбъ.                         | a singer, пѣвѣцъ.     |
| height, вышина.                           | as many, сиѣлько же.  |
| each, каждый.                             | a dancer, танцовщица. |
| it was capable of containing, въ немъ по- | amused, увеселяли.    |
| мѣщалось.                                 | in this, въ семъ.     |
| as many as, до,gov.                       | stupendous, огромный. |
| the gen.                                  | Roman, Римскій.       |
| a spectator, зритель.                     | public, публика.      |
| not, не.                                  | Mont-blanc, Монбланъ. |
| unfrequently, рѣдко.                      | is, соскакаваешь.     |
| choir, хоръ.                              | Chimborazzo, Чимбо-   |
|                                           | рacco.                |

## S E C T. II.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS,

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| пéрвый ,           | first.             |
| вторýй ,           | second.            |
| трéтíй ,           | third.             |
| четвéртýй ,        | fourth.            |
| пíятýй ,           | fifth.             |
| шестýй ,           | sixth.             |
| седьмýй ,          | seventh.           |
| осьмýй ,           | eighth.            |
| девя́шýй ,         | ninth.             |
| деся́тýй ,         | tenth.             |
| оди́ннадцáтýй ,    | eleventh.          |
| две́нáдцáтýй ,     | twelfth.           |
| трина́дцáтýй ,     | thirteenth.        |
| четы́рнадцáтýй ,   | fourteenth.        |
| пя́тина́дцáтýй ,   | fifteenth.         |
| ше́снáдцáтýй ,     | sixteenth.         |
| семи́нáдцáтýй ,    | seventeenth.       |
| восеми́нáдцáтýй ,  | eighteenth.        |
| девя́тина́дцáтýй , | nineteenth.        |
| двадцáтýй ,        | twentieth.         |
| двадцáть пéрвýй ,  | twenty-first.      |
| двадцáть вто́рýй , | twenty-second. &c. |
| тридцáтýй ,        | thirtieth.         |
| сорокóвýй ,        | fortieth.          |
| пя́тидеся́тýй ,    | fiftieth.          |
| ше́сидеся́тýй ,    | sixtieth.          |

|                |                       |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| семидесятый ,  | seventieth.           |
| восмидесятый , | eightieth.            |
| девяностый ,   | ninetieth.            |
| сто́й ,        | hundredth.            |
| сто́ пе́рвый , | hundred and first &c. |
| двухсто́й ,    | two hundredth.        |
| трехсто́й ,    | three hundredth.      |
| четырехсто́й , | four hundredth.       |
| пятисто́й ,    | five hundredth.       |
| шестисто́й ,   | six hundredth.        |
| семисто́й ,    | seven hundredth.      |
| восьмисто́й ,  | eight hundredth.      |
| девятисто́й ,  | nine hundredth.       |
| тысячный ,     | thousandth.           |
| двухтысячный , | two thousandth.       |
| пятитысячный , | five thousandth.      |
| миллионный .   | millionth.            |

§ 133. Ordinal numbers are declined as adjectives.

### Е X A M P L E.

#### *S i n g u l a r.*

| <i>Mas.</i>                 | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|-----------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| Nom. пе́рвый , the first.   | пे́рвая ,   | пे́рвое.     |
| Gen. пе́рваго , of — —      | пे́рвой ,   | пे́рваго.    |
| Dat. пе́рвому , to — —      | пे́рвой ,   | пе́рвому.    |
| Acc. пе́рвый (аго) —        | пе́рвую ,   | пе́рвое.     |
| Inst. пе́рвымъ, by or with. | пе́рвою ,   | пе́рвымъ.    |
| Prep. о пе́рвомъ , of —     | о пе́рвой , | о пе́рвомъ.  |

*P l u r a l.*

|                    |               |            |
|--------------------|---------------|------------|
| Nom. пéрвые,       | пéрвые,       | пéрвый.    |
| Gen. пéрвыхъ,      | пéрвыхъ,      | пéрвыхъ.   |
| Dat. пéрвымъ,      | пéрвымъ,      | пéрвымъ.   |
| Acc. пéрвые (ыхъ), | пéрвая (ыхъ), | пéрвый.    |
| Ins. пéрвыми,      | пéрвыми,      | пéрвыми.   |
| Prep. о пéрвыхъ,   | о пéрвыхъ,    | о пéрвыхъ. |

§ 134. In marking the date from any particular era, the Russians employ ordinal numbers, ex. книгопечáтание изобрѣтено въ ты́сяча четы́реста сороково́мъ году́, printing was invented in the thousand four hundred and fortieth year. (in the year one thousand four hundred and forty.)

§ 135. When the number is compound, or composed of several simple numbers, the ordinal termination is only added to the last, ex. Америка была открыта въ ты́сяча четы́реста девяно́сто второ́мъ году́, America was discovered in the thousand four hundred and ninety-second year (In the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-two.)



## THEME XVI.

## ON THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

On the monument of Peter the Great there is the following inscription : Catherine the second to Peter the first. The names of Peter the first, Fredrick the second and Henry the fourth are immortal in history. Rome had seven kings : the first was Romulus, the second Numa Pompilius, the third Tullus Hostilius, the fourth Ancus Martius, the fifth Tarquin Priscus, the sixth Servius Tullius, and the seventh and last, Tarquin the proud. The first month in

|                              |                                           |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| monument, памятникъ.         | was , былъ.                               |
| Peter , Петръ.               | Romulus , Ромуль.                         |
| there is, изображенá.        | Numa Pompilius , Ну-<br>ма Помпилій.      |
| following , слѣдующій.       | Tullus Hostilius , Тулль<br>Гостилій.     |
| inscription , надпись.       | Ancus Martius , Анкъ<br>Марцій.           |
| Catherine, Екатеріна.        | Tarquin Priscus , Тар-<br>квіній Прискъ.  |
| name , їмя.                  | Servius Tullius , Се-<br>рвій Туллій.     |
| Fredrick, Фридрихъ.          | Tarquin the proud, Тар-<br>квіній гордый. |
| Henry , Генрихъ.             | month , мѣсяцъ.                           |
| immortal , безсмерт-<br>ный. |                                           |
| history , исторія.           |                                           |
| Rome , Римъ.                 |                                           |
| had , имѣлъ.                 |                                           |
| a King , Царь.               |                                           |

the year is January, the second February, the third March, the fourth April, the fifth May, the sixth June, the seventh July, the eighth August, the ninth September, the tenth October, the eleventh November, the twelfth December. The compass was invented in the year one thousand three hundred and three. The Russian company was established in England in the year one thousand five hundred and fifty-five. Peter the Great defeated Charles the twelfth at Poltava in the year one thousand seven hundred and nine. America was discovered in the fifteenth century.

|                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| January, Генварь, V.  | invented, изобрѣшено.       |
| February, Февраль.    | § 41. Russian, Россійскій.  |
| March, Маршъ.         | company, торговое общество. |
| April, Апрель.        | was established, основано.  |
| May, Май.             |                             |
| June, Іюнь.           | England, Англія.            |
| July, Іюль.           | defeated, побѣдилъ.         |
| August, Августъ.      | Charles, Карлъ.             |
| September, Сентябрь.  | at, при, gov. the prep.     |
| October, Октябрь.     | Poltava, Полтава.           |
| November, Ноябрь.     | was discovered, открыта.    |
| December, Декабрь.    |                             |
| the compass, компасъ. | century, вѣкъ.              |
| was, былъ.            |                             |



## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE ON NUMERALS.

Russia extends from East to West *one hundred and sixty-nine degrees and a half*, that is, from the *thirty-ninth* to the two *hundred and eighth* degree of longitude \*; but if we include the most distant isles of the eastern ocean (which reach to the *two hundred and twenty-fifth* degree), it extends *one hundred and thirty-nine degrees*. In its greatest breadth from North to South it extends *thirty-eight*

|                        |             |                        |             |
|------------------------|-------------|------------------------|-------------|
| Russia ,               | Россия.     | distant ,              | отдалённый. |
| extends ,              | проспирáеш- | isle ,                 | островъ.    |
|                        | ся .        | eastern ,              | восточный.  |
| from ,                 | отъ ,       | ocean ,                | океанъ.     |
| the east ,             | востóкъ.    | which ,                | кои.        |
| the west ,             | западъ .    | reach ,                | дохóдяшь.   |
| (here follows the pre- |             | (it extends ,          | not to be   |
| position на.)          |             |                        | repeated.)  |
| and ,                  | съ ,        | its greatest breadth , |             |
| gov. the ins.          |             | a half ,               | половина.   |
|                        |             | cáмое большóе про-     |             |
| a degree ,             | гráдусъ .   |                        | тяжéнie.    |
| that is ,              | то ешь .    | the north ,            | съверъ.     |
| longitude ,            | долготá .   | the south ,            | югъ .       |
| but if we include ,    | a           | it extends ,           | составля-   |
|                        | vключáя .   |                        | ешь .       |

\* Reckoning from the meridian of the isle of Fero.

degrees, that is from the *seventy-eighth* to the *fortieth* degree of Latitude; consequently the greater part of Russia is situated in the temperate, and the smaller part in the frigid zone.

The whole surface of the Empire (exclusive of the isles of the Eastern ocean) covers a space of *three hundred and forty thousand German Geographical square miles*, or *sixteen millions, six hundred and sixty thousand square versts*.

|                                            |                                           |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| latitude , широта.                         | the Empire , Госудáр-<br>ство.            |
| consequently , слъдо-<br>вательно.         | exclusive , выключáя.                     |
| the greater part , вели-<br>чайшая часть.  | covers a space of , про-<br>спирáется на. |
| is situated , находится.                   | Geographical , Геогра-<br>фический.       |
| temperate , умъренный.                     | square , квадráтный.                      |
| the smaller , сáмая ма-<br>лая.            | German , Нéмéцкíй.                        |
| frigid , холóдный.                         | mile , мìлля.                             |
| zone , поясъ.                              | or , или.                                 |
| the whole surface , вся<br>же повéрхность. | a verst , верстá.                         |



## C H A P. IV.

## P R O N O U N S.

## S E C T. I.

## G E N E R A L R E M A R K S.

§ 136. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.

§ 137. Pronouns may be divided into personal, relative, possessive, demonstrative and indefinite.

§ 138. Pronouns are subject to the same modifications of number, gender and case as substantives.

§ 139. Personal pronouns are used instead of names. There are three persons: the first, who speaks, the second, the person spoken to, and the third, the person spoken of. I, thou, he; *я*, *ты*, *онъ*. plural: we, you, they; *мы*, *вы*, *они*.

§ 140. Relative pronouns relate to some preceding word or phrase.

§ 141. Possessive pronouns denote possession, as: *мои*, my; *твой*, thy; *его*, his. &c.

§ 142. Demonstrative pronouns, serve to point out objects, as, *сей*, this; *тотъ*, that &c. Indefinite pronouns are such as belong

to neither of the above kinds, as, *кто-  
тот*, a certain, *както* some one &c.

§ 143. Pronouns become interrogative by the construction of the sentence and the affix of the sign (?).



## S E C T. II.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

#### DECLENSION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

##### 1st. Person.

| <i>Sing.</i>        | <i>Pl.</i>     |
|---------------------|----------------|
| Nom. я, I.          | мы, we.        |
| Gen. меня, of me.   | насъ, of us.   |
| Dat. мнѣ, to me.    | намъ, to us.   |
| Acc. меня, me.      | насъ, us.      |
| Ins. мнѣю, by me.   | нами, by us.   |
| Prep. о мнѣ, of me. | о насъ, of us. |

##### 2nd. Person.

|                        |                 |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| Nom. ты, thou.         | вы, you.        |
| Gen. тебя, of thee.    | васъ, of you.   |
| Dat. тебѣ, to thee.    | вамъ, to you.   |
| Acc. тебя, thee.       | васъ, you.      |
| Ins. тебѣю, by thee.   | вами, by you.   |
| Prep. о тебе, of thee. | о васъ, of you. |

## 3rd. Person Singular.

| <i>Mas.</i>             | <i>Fem.</i>     | <i>Neut.</i>     |
|-------------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| Nom. онъ , he.          | она́ , she.     | онó , it.        |
| Gen. еро́ , of him.     | ея́ , of her.   | еро́ , of it.    |
| Dat. емъ́ , to him.     | ей́ , to her.   | емъ́ , to it.    |
| Acc. еро́ , him.        | её́ , her.      | еро́ , it.       |
| Ins. имъ́ , by him.     | ею́ , by her.   | имъ́ , by it.    |
| Prep. о немъ́ , of him. | оней́ , of her. | о немъ́ , of it. |

*P l u.*

| <i>Mas.</i>              | <i>Fem. and Neut.</i> |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| Nom. они́ , they.        | онѣ́ .                |
| Gen. ихъ́ , of them.     | ихъ́ .                |
| Dat. имъ́ , to them.     | имъ́ .                |
| Acc. ихъ́ ; them.        | ихъ́ .                |
| Ins. ёми́ , by them.     | ёми́ .                |
| Prep. о нихъ́ , of them. | о нихъ́ .             |

§ 144. The reflective personal pronoun *себя*, self, is of all three genders, and of both numbers: самъ себя, himself; сама себя, herself, само себя, itself, сами себя, themselves.

§ 145. *Самъ* is sometimes added to nouns and personal pronouns to mark with greater precision the identity of the person: сáми роди́тели не краси́вы, но дѣти ихъ́ , the parents themselves are not handsome, but their children.

|                    | <i>M.</i> | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i>  | <i>Plu.</i> |
|--------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-------------|
| <b>N.</b>          | самъ,     | сама ,    | само ,     | сами.       |
| <b>G. себя ,</b>   | самаго ,  | самой ,   | самаго ,   | самихъ.     |
| <b>D. себѣ ,</b>   | самому ,  | самой ,   | самому ,   | самимъ.     |
| <b>A. себя ,</b>   | самаго ,  | саму ,    | само ,     | самихъ.     |
| <b>I. собою ,</b>  | самимъ ,  | самою ,   | самимъ ,   | самими.     |
| <b>P. о себѣ ,</b> | о самомъ. | о самой , | о самомъ , | о самихъ.   |



## T H E M E XVII.

### ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Tell *me* with whom *you*\* associate, and *I* will tell *you*\* who *you*\* are. Remember *me*, when *you*\* are fortunate. *He*, who is not for *me*, is against *me*. Aristotle, giving

---

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| tell , скажи.           | are fortunate , бùдешь  |
| with whom , съ кемъ.    | счастливъ.              |
| associate , обходишися. | he who , кто.           |
| will tell , скажу.      | is not , не.            |
| who you are , кто ты    | with, со, gov. the ins. |
|                         | щаковъ.                 |
| remember , помни.       | is against , пропивъ.   |
| when , когда.           | Aristotle, Аристотель.  |
|                         | giving , подавая.       |

---

\* In the above sentences, the second person plural of the English, when marked with an asterisk is to be rendered by the second person singular in Russ.

alms to an unworthy man , said : I do not give this to *him*, but to humanity. A true friend discovers to *us* our faults. Natural history gives (to) *us* an idea of *ourselves* , and of the objects which surround *us*. Reason points out (to *us*) the road to happiness ; but our passions divert *us* from it. Upon a certain Egyptian statue there was the following inscription : I am he, who was, is,

|                 |                    |                                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| alms ,          | мълостыня.         | which surround, окру-<br>жаяющихъ. |
| unworthy ,      | злой.              |                                    |
| said ,          | сказа́ль.          | reason , разсудокъ.                |
| I do not give , | не даю.            | points out, ука́зываешъ.           |
| but , a.        |                    | the road , пушь.                   |
| humanity ,      | человѣче-<br>ство. | to , къ , gov. the dat.            |
| true ,          | вѣрный.            | happiness , благополу-<br>бие.     |
| friend ,        | другъ.             | but , a. чие.                      |
| discoveres,     | ошкываяешъ.        | divert , отвлекаюшъ.               |
| our ,           | наши.              | from it, отъ онаго.                |
| fault ,         | недоспѣшокъ.       | upon, на, gov. the prep.           |
| natural ,       | еспѣшвен-<br>ный.  | a certain , однá.                  |
| history ,       | исшорія.           | Egyptian , Египетскій.             |
| gives ,         | даёшъ.             | statue , стапуя.                   |
| an idea ,       | понѧтие.           | there was, была.                   |
| of , o ,        | gov. the prep.     | following , слѣдующій.             |
| ourselves ,     | сами , V. § 145.   | inscription , на́дпись.            |
| object ,        | предмѣшъ.          | am he , есмъ пушъ.                 |
|                 |                    | who was , кшо быль.                |
|                 |                    | is , есшъ.                         |

and will be for ever; no one has ever taken the veil off me. To be angry is to punish *one's self* for the fault of another. Beware of a fool, if you\* touch *him*; of a wise man, if you\* do (to) *him* an injury, and of a vicious man, if you\* associate with *him*. Many people are like the current coin; not unfrequently we are obliged, to receive *them* according to the rate of *exchange*, and not according to their intrinsick value.

|                        |                    |                    |                |
|------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| will be ,              | будетъ.            | a vicious man ,    | злый.          |
| for ever ,             | въ вѣкъ.           | associate ,        | сведѣшь зна-   |
| no one ,               | никтѡ.             |                    | комшво.        |
| has ever ,             | ещё.               | many ,             | многіе.        |
| taken ,                | не снималъ.        | people ,           | люди.          |
| off ,                  | съ , gov. the gen. | are like ,         | подобны , gov. |
| veil ,                 | завѣса.            |                    | the dat.       |
| to be angry ,          | гнѣвашся.          | current ,          | ходячій.       |
| is ,                   | значить.           | coin ,             | монѣта.        |
| to punish ,            | наказывать.        | not unfrequently , | не             |
| for ,                  | за.                |                    | рѣдко.         |
| the fault of another , | чужую вину.        | we are ,           | бываемъ.       |
| beware ,               | берегись.          | obliged ,          | принуждены.    |
| a fool ,               | глупѣцъ.           | to receive ,       | принимасть.    |
| if ,                   | если.              | according ,        | по , gov. the  |
| touch ,                | тронешь.           |                    | dat.           |
| a wise man ,           | умный.             | the rate ,         | not expressed. |
| do ,                   | причинишь.         | the exchange ,     | курсъ.         |
| an injury ,            | обиды.             | intrinsick ,       | испинный.      |
|                        |                    | value ,            | доспинство.    |



## S E C T III.

## R E L A T I V E P R O N O U N S.

§ 146. The relative pronoun *котóрый*, which, is applied indiscriminately to persons, or things inanimate, and answers to the English personal and impersonal pronouns *who* and *which*.

## DECLEMN SION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

котóрый.

*S i n g.**M.**F.**N.*

|                       |           |             |
|-----------------------|-----------|-------------|
| N. котóрый,           | котóрая,  | котóрое.    |
| G. котóраго,          | котóрой,  | котóраго.   |
| D. котóрому,          | котóрой,  | котóрому.   |
| A. котóр{ый,<br>аго}, | котóрую,  | котóрбе.    |
| I. котóрымъ,          | котóрою,  | котóрымъ.   |
| P. о котóромъ,        | о котóрой | о котóромъ. |

*Pl u.*

|                       |                    |             |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| N. котóрые,           | котóрыя,           | котóрыя.    |
| G. котóрыхъ,          | котóрыхъ,          | котóрыхъ.   |
| D. котóрымъ,          | котóрымъ,          | котóрымъ.   |
| A. котóр{ые,<br>ыхъ}, | котóр{ые,<br>ыхъ}, | котóрыя.    |
| I. котóрыми,          | котóрыми,          | котóрыми.   |
| P. о котóрыхъ,        | о котóрыхъ,        | о котóрыхъ. |

§ 147. When the style approaches the sublime, the relative pronoun *кой*, who, which, is employed instead of *котóрый*; but it is never used in common conversation.

\* \*

DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *кoй*.

| <i>M.</i>                          | <i>F.</i>       | <i>N.</i>        | <i>Plu.</i>                 |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------------------|
| Nom. <i>кoй</i> ,                  | <i>кoя</i> ,    | <i>кoe</i> ,     | <i>кoи</i> .                |
| Gen. <i>кoего</i> ,                | <i>кoяé</i> ,   | <i>кoего</i> ,   | <i>кoихъ</i> .              |
| Dat. <i>кoемù</i> ,                | <i>кoей</i> ,   | <i>кoему</i> ,   | <i>кoимъ</i> ,              |
| Acc. <i>ко{й</i> ,<br><i>его</i> , | <i>кoю</i> ,    | <i>кoe</i> ,     | <i>кo{и</i><br><i>ихъ</i> , |
| Ins. <i>кoимъ</i> ,                | <i>кoею</i> ,   | <i>кoимъ</i> ,   | <i>кoими</i> .              |
| Prep. <i>о кoемъ</i> ,             | <i>о кoей</i> , | <i>о кoемъ</i> , | <i>о кoихъ</i> .            |

§ 148. The relative pronoun *кто*, who, can only relate to persons, and is declined as follows.

|                                     |
|-------------------------------------|
| Nom. <i>кто</i> , who.              |
| Gen. <i>когó</i> , of whom.         |
| Dat. <i>комù</i> , to whom.         |
| Acc. <i>когó</i> , whom.            |
| Ins. <i>къмъ</i> , by or with whom. |
| Prep. <i>о комъ</i> , of whom.      |

§ 149. The relative pronoun *что*, *what*, is impersonal.

|                                     |
|-------------------------------------|
| Nom. <i>что</i> , what.             |
| Gen. <i>чегó</i> , of what.         |
| Dat. <i>чемù</i> , to what.         |
| Acc. <i>что</i> , what.             |
| Ins. <i>чъмъ</i> , by or with what. |
| Prep. <i>о чемъ</i> , of what.      |

| <i>M.</i>                  | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>Pla.</i> |
|----------------------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| Nom. чей , whose.          | чья ,     | чье ,     | чьи.        |
| Gen. чьего , of — —        | чьей,     | чьего ,   | чьихъ.      |
| Dat. чьему , to — —        | чей,      | чему ,    | чимъ.       |
| Acc. ч{ей ,<br>{вого ; — — | чью ,     | че ,      | чи.         |
| Ins. чимъ , by or with.    | чёю ,     | чи мъ ,   | чи ми.      |
| Pr. - о чемъ , of — —      | о чей ,   | о чемъ ,  | о чи хъ.    |



## THEME XVIII.

## ON RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Beware of him , *who* continually praises thee.  
 He is brave , *whom* nothing can disturb,  
 People seldom love him , *whom* they fear.

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| beware , остерегайся  | to disturb , всшрево- |
| of him , тогó. *      | жить.                 |
| continually , безпре- | can , не въ сошно-    |
| спáнно.               | ѧни,                  |
| praises , хвáлитъ.    | people , люди.        |
| is brave , мùжест-    | seldom , рѣдко.       |
| венъ,                 | love , любятъ.        |
| nothing , ничтó.      | they fear , боятся.   |

\* In such phrases, the Russians make use of the demonstrative pronoun *тотъ*, that one, instead of the personal pronoun.

Do not consider it a disgrace to learn in age, *what* you neglected in youth. Defer not until to - morrow, *what* thou canst perform to - day. Philip king of Macedon had an attendant, *who* used to remind him, that he was mortal. Life is like a dream, from *which* we are aroused in the hour of death. He is truly happy, *who* does not give way to his

|                     |                   |                          |                        |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| prudent,            | благоразум-       | had,                     | имѣлъ.                 |
| do not consider it, | не                | нароч-                   | ный.                   |
| age,                | старость.         | почитай.                 | used to remind,        |
| to learn,           | учишься.          |                          | напоминалъ.            |
| neglected,          | не учился.        |                          | was mortal, смѣршный.  |
| youth,              | младость.         |                          | life, жизнь.           |
| defer not,          | не отклады-       |                          | is like, подобна, gov. |
|                     | вай.              |                          | the dat.               |
| until,              | до, gov. the gen. | a dream, сонъ, dat, сну. |                        |
| to - morrow,        | завтре.           | from, опь, gov. the gen. |                        |
| thou canst,         | можешь.           | we are aroused,          | пропыляемся.           |
| perform,            | сдѣлать.          | the hour,                | часъ.                  |
| to - day,           | сегодня.          | death,                   | смерть.                |
| Philip,             | Филиппъ.          | truly,                   | истинно.               |
| King,               | Царь.             | happy,                   | счастливъ.             |
| of Macedon,         | Македон-          | does not give way,       | не даѣшь воли.         |
|                     | скій.             | to his,                  | своймъ.                |

passions. Reflect previously - on *what* you \* intend to say. We are always fond of those *who* admire us, but not always of those, *whom* we ourselves admire. He, *who* justifies himself without being accused, only excites suspicion. It is difficult to love him, *whom* we do not respect. True civilization is that, which teaches us to be useful to the society, in *which* we live.

|                         |                    |                    |                     |
|-------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| passion ,               | страсть.           | accused ,          | обвиняемъ.          |
| reflect ,               | подумай.           | he ,               | тошть.              |
| previously ,            | напередъ.          | only ,             | только.             |
| on , o , gov. the prep. |                    | excites ,          | возбуждаешъ.        |
| intend to say ,         | хочешь             | suspicion ,        | подозрѣніе.         |
|                         | сказашь.           | it is difficult,   | трудно.             |
| always ,                | всегдá.            | to love ,          | любишь.             |
| are fond ,              | любимъ.            | we do not respect, | не почитаемъ.       |
| of those ,              | тѣхъ.              |                    |                     |
| admire us ,             | намъ удивляющи-ся. | true ,             | истинный.           |
| but not ,               | а не.              | civilization ,     | просвѣщеніе.        |
| ourselves ,             | сами.              | is that ,          | есть то.            |
| we admire,              | удивляемся.        | teaches ,          | учишь.              |
| justifies himself ,     | оправдывающи-ся.   | to be ,            | быть, гов. the ins. |
| without being ,         | не бывши.          | useful ,           | полезный.           |
|                         | дучи.              | society ,          | общество.           |
|                         |                    | live ,             | живемъ.             |



## S E C T. IV.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

| <i>M.</i>          | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>Plu. of all gend.</i> |
|--------------------|-----------|-----------|--------------------------|
| Nom. мой, тү.      | моя́,     | моé,      | мой.                     |
| Gen. моегó,        | моéй,     | моегó,    | мойхъ.                   |
| Dat. моемù,        | моéй,     | моемù,    | моймъ.                   |
| Acc. мо́й,<br>его, | мою́,     | моé,      | мо́й.<br>ихъ.            |
| Ins. моймъ,        | моéю,     | моймъ,    | мойми.                   |
| Prep. о моéмъ,     | о моéй,   | о моéмъ,  | о мойхъ.                 |

§ 150. The possessive pronoun *свой*, is used instead of *мой*, when the possession relates to the nominative of the phrase, ex. я беру свою шляпù, I take my hat; онъ мнѣ показалъ свою библіотеку, he shewed me his library. When the possession does not relate to the nominative of the phrase, *мой*, *твой*, *его*, *нашъ*, *вашъ*, are employed, ex. онъ живéть въ моéмъ домѣ, he lives in my house; я читаю твою книгу, I read thy book. Свой and *твой* are declined in the same manner as *мой*.

| <i>M.</i>          | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>Plu. of all gend.</i> |
|--------------------|-----------|-----------|--------------------------|
| Nom. нашъ, our.    | наша,     | наше,     | наши.                    |
| Gen. нашего,       | нашей,    | нашего,   | нашихъ.                  |
| Dat. нашему,       | нашей,    | нашему,   | нашимъ.                  |
| Acc. нашъ,<br>его, | нашу,     | наше,     | нашъ.<br>ихъ.            |
| Ins. нашимъ,       | нашею,    | нашимъ,   | нашими.                  |
| Prep. о нашемъ,    | о нашей,  | о нашемъ, | о нашихъ.                |

§ 151. The possessive pronoun *вашъ*, your, is declined in the same manner as *нашъ*.

§ 152. In the Russian language there are no possessive pronouns for the third person singular or plural; but this defect is supplied by the genitive case of the personal pronouns *онъ*, he, *она*, she and *они*, they; as, *его* his, *ея*, her, and *ихъ*, their. These pronouns being themselves taken from an oblique case are indeclinable, and subject to no variations of gender.



## THEME XIX.

### ON POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

We should consider virtue *as our* best friend, for it is the source of *our* happiness, *our* honour and *our* peace. I honour *my* parents, for to them I am indebted for *my* life and education.

we should, мы должны. peace, спокойствие.

consider, почитать. parent, родитель.

as, (expressed by the ins. case) for, ибо.

best, лучший. I am indebted, обязанъ.

for it is, ибо она есть. for (expressed by the ins. case.)

the source, источникъ. life, жизнь.

happiness, счастье. education, воспитание.

honour, честь.

Avoid anger: it disfigures *thy* face, and still more *thy* mind. Speak not upon a subject, that is above *thy* capacity. Homer and Virgil are famous for *their* works. Be faithful to *thy* sovereign. The eagle, in its rapid flight, soars above the clouds. Endeavour to cultivate *thy* understanding, to ennable *thy* mind and to strengthen *thy* body.

---

|                              |                                    |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| avoid , берегісь , gov.      | be , будь .                        |
| the gen. faithful , вѣренъ . |                                    |
| anger , гнѣвъ .              | Sovereign , Государъ .             |
| disfigures , обезобрѣ-       | the eagle , орэль .                |
| живаешь .                    | rapid , быстрый .                  |
| face , лицѣ .                | flight , полётъ .                  |
| and still , и ещѣ .          | soars , возносишся .               |
| more , болѣе .               | above , превыше .                  |
| mind , душа .                | cloud , облако .                   |
| speak not , не говорї .      | endeavour , стараїся .             |
| upon , o , gov. the prep.    | to cultivate , образо-             |
| is above , превыше ,         | вашъ .                             |
| gov. the gen.                | understanding , умъ .              |
| capacity , понятіе .         | to ennable , облагороди-<br>шишъ . |
| Homer , Омиръ .              |                                    |
| Virgil , Виргилій .          | to strengthen , укрѣ-<br>пишъ .    |
| are famous , славны .        |                                    |
| for , по , gov. the dat.     | body , тѣло .                      |
| work , швореніе .            |                                    |



## S E C T. V.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

## DECLENSION OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

*M.*

N. сей, this.

*F.*

сіј,

*N.*

cié,

*Plu. of all gen.*

сіј, these.

G. сего ,

сей,

сего ,

сихъ.

D. сему ,

сей,

сему ,

симв.

A. се<sup>й</sup>  
го ,

сію ,

cié ,

{ ии .  
сихъ .

I. симъ ,

сéю ,

симъ ,

сими .

P. о семъ ,

о сей ,

о семъ ,

о сихъ .

*M.*

N. шо́ть , that.

*F.*

ша ,

*N.*

шо ,

*Pl. of all gend.*

шѣ , those.

G. шогó ,

шой ,

шогó ,

шѣхъ ,

D. шому ,

шой ,

шому ,

шѣмъ ,

A. шо<sup>шь</sup>  
го ,

шу ,

шо ,

{ є .  
шѣхъ .

I. шѣмъ ,

шою ,

шѣмъ ,

шѣми ,

P. о шомъ ,

о той ,

о шомъ ,

о шѣхъ .

§ 153. In the same manner is declined the demonstrative pronoun эшо́ть , эта , это , this ; excepting the letter *о* , which is changed into *и* in the oblique cases ; ex. эшимъ , эими . &c.

154. Тотъ , may often be rendered in English by a personal pronoun or substantive ; шо́ть , которой , he who , or the man who ; ша , которая , she who ; or the woman who ; шо , которое , that which , or the thing which .

§ 155. The demonstrative pronoun **бный**  
**бная**, **бное**, *that*, is declined like an adjective of similar termination V. Chap. II.  
 Sect. II. It may often be rendered in English by the personal pronoun *it*, or *the said*.



## Т Н Е М Е XX.

### ON DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Emperor Titus considered *that* day as lost, in which he did no good. Do not repeat in one company, (*that*) what you \* have heard in another. *Those* people are unhappy, who are always discontented with their condi-

|                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| the Emperor, Имперá-   | company, бесѣда.      |
| шорь.                  | have heard, слышишь.  |
| Titus, Тишъ.           | another, другой.      |
| considered, считалъ.   | are unhappy, злопо-   |
| day, день.             | лучны.                |
| as lost, потеряннымъ.  | people, люди.         |
| he did, не сдѣлалъ.    | always, всегда.       |
| no good,ничегодобраго. | are discontented, не- |
| do not repeat, не по-  | довольны.             |
| вшоряй.                | condition, состояніе. |

tion. Labour strengthens the body, and idleness debilitates it (V. § 155.) This punishment is proportioned to this crime. This hill, this grove, this field and this humble cottage remind me of my native place. All these statues, these monumental inscriptions, these majestic ruins, this silence, this solitude, these great names attest times of past glory. It is impossible to describe the (that) ecstasy, which labour, труđъ. statue, мраморъ.  
 strengthens, укрепля- monumental, надгроб-  
 ешъ. ный.  
 the body, тѣло. inscription, надпись.  
 idleness, праzdnošć. majestic, величествен-  
 debilitates, разслабля- ный.  
 ешъ. ruin, развáлина.  
 punishment, наказánie. silence, безмолвіе.  
 is proportioned, со- solitude, уединéніе.  
 размѣрио. name, їмя.  
 crime, преступлénіе. attest, свидѣтельству-  
 hill, холмъ. юшъ.  
 grove, роща. time, врёма.  
 field, пóле. past, прошéкшій.  
 humble, скрómный. glory, слáва.  
 cottage, хѝжина. it is impossible, ничтó  
 remind, напоминáюшъ, не мóжешъ.  
     gov. the acc. to describe, изобра-  
 native place, рóдина. зиши.  
 all, всѣ. ecstasy, восшóргъ.

fills the mind, when you enter the church of St. Peter for the first time; when you stand upon *this* vast pavement, between *these* stupendous columns, before *these* brass pillars, at the sight of all *these* paintings, *these* statues, of all *these* mausoleums, of all *these* altars, under *this* cupola.

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| fills , восхищáепъ.     | column , подпóра.        |
| the mind , душá.        | before , предъ.          |
| you enter , вхóдишь.    | brass , бróнзовый.       |
| church of St. Peter ,   | pillar , колónна.        |
| цéрковь Св. Петра.      | at the sight , при вýдѣ. |
| for the first time , въ | painting , картина.      |
| пéрвый разъ.            | statue , сшáпуя.         |
| you stand , стойши.     | mausoleum , мавзолéй.    |
| vast , проспáанный.     | altar , жéртвенникъ.     |
| pavement , помóсшь.     | under , подъ , gov. the  |
| between , мéжду.        | ins.                     |
| stupendous , ужáсный.   | cupola , кùполъ.         |



## S E C T. VI.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 156. The indefinite pronouns are: **нѣкто́й**, a certain; **нѣкто́**, somebody; **нѣчи́то**, **что** **нибѹ́дь**, something; **нѣсколько́**, a few; **и́ной**, **so** **me**; **кто́ либо́**, **кто** **нибудь**, any body; **друго́й**, another; **что́ либо́**, any thing; **всѧкій**, every-one; **кáждый**, each; **никако́й**, not one.

**нѣкто́,**  
**нѣкто́**:  
**нѣчи́то**,  
**ничи́то**,  
**ничи́то**,  
**ничи́то**

§ 157. The above indefinite pronouns are declined as **котóрый**, **кто**, **что** &c. without regard to the indeclinable particle, whether prefixed or added to the pronoun, ex.

|                            |                  |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. <b>кто́ либо́.</b>    | <b>нѣкто́.</b>   | <b>кто́ нибѹ́дь.</b>   |
| Gen. <b>кого́ либо́.</b>   | <b>нѣкто́го.</b> | <b>кого́ нибудь.</b>   |
| Dat. <b>кому́ либо́.</b>   | <b>нѣкому.</b>   | <b>кому́ нибудь.</b>   |
| Acc. <b>кого́ либо́.</b>   | <b>нѣкого.</b>   | <b>кого́ нибудь.</b>   |
| Ins. <b>къмъ либо́.</b>    | <b>нѣкъмъ.</b>   | <b>къмъ нибудь.</b>    |
| Prer. <b>о комъ либо́.</b> | <b>о нѣкомъ.</b> | <b>о комъ нибѹ́дь.</b> |
| <br>                       |                  |                        |
| Nom. <b>что́ либо́.</b>    | <b>нѣчи́то.</b>  | <b>что́ нибѹ́дь.</b>   |
| Gen. <b>чего́ либо́.</b>   | <b>нѣчего.</b>   | <b>чего́ нибѹ́дь.</b>  |
| Dat. <b>чему́ либо́.</b>   | <b>нѣчему.</b>   | <b>чему́ нибѹ́дь.</b>  |
| Acc. <b>что́ либо́.</b>    | <b>нѣчи́то.</b>  | <b>что́ нибѹ́дь.</b>   |
| Ins. <b>чъмъ либо́.</b>    | <b>нѣчъмъ.</b>   | <b>чъмъ нибѹ́дь.</b>   |
| Prer. <b>о чемъ либо́.</b> | <b>о нѣчемъ.</b> | <b>о чемъ нибѹ́дь.</b> |



## THEME XXI.

## ON THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

*All* complain of the weakness of their memory, but *none* complain of the weakness of their understanding. *Every* (each) man must die. *Every* day brings with it *something* new. In this world there is *nothing* permanent. Do good and fear *no one*. Not a minute can be called ours, but the present. *Nothing* corrupts the manners so much, as bad society. Man,

---

|                                             |                             |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| complain, жáлюются.                         | there is, нѣтъ.             |
| of, на, gov. the acc. of, на, gov. the acc. | permanent, постойн-<br>ный. |
| the weakness, слá-<br>бость.                | do good, дѣлай добро.       |
| memory, памянь.                             | fear, бóйся.                |
| complain, не жалу́ется.                     | minute, минута.             |
| understanding, умъ.                         | can, не мóжетъ.             |
| must, долженъ.                              | be called, назвáться.       |
| die, умерéть.                               | but, крómъ, gov. the gen.   |
| day, день.                                  | the present, настóящíй.     |
| brings, принóсишь.                          | corrupts, не побóишь.       |
| new, новаго.                                | manner, нравъ.              |
| in, въ.                                     | bad, худой.                 |
| world, свѣтъ.                               | society, общество.          |

*whatever be his condition , has always a certain kind of vanity.*

---

whatever be his condi- always , всегда.  
tion , какого бы со- kind , родъ.  
стоянія ни быль . vanity , тщеславіе.

~~~~~

### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE ON PRONOUNS.

*Our native country.*

*What is our native country ? the place , where we were born ; the cradle , in which we were rocked ; the nest , in which we were cherished and brought up ; the earth , where lie the ashes of our forefathers and where we ourselves*

---

what is , что такоё.	we were cherished , со-
our native country ,	грѣхи.
отечество. brought up , воспита-	
the place , страна.	ны.
where , гдѣ.	the earth , земля.
were born , родились.	lie , лежать.
the cradle , колыбель.	the ashes , кости.
were rocked , возле-	forefather , отецъ.
лѣяны.	where , кудѣ.
the nest , гнѣздо.	shall lie , лѣжемъ.

shall lie. *What* spirit dares to break asunder *these* sacred ties! *what* heart can be insensible to *this* holy flame! The very birds and beasts are attached to *their* birth - place, and shall man, endowed with a rational soul, estrange *himself* from *his* country and *his* fellow-citizens? *What* wretch is there, *who* has no affection for *his* mother? and is *our* native country less *to us*, than our mother? The antipathy to *this* unnatural feeling

---

spirit, душá.	soul, душá.
dares, дерзнéть.	estrangle, ошдѣлить.
to break asunder, рас-	from, отъ.
тóргнуши.	country, странá.
sacred, крѣпкій.	fellow - citizen, едино-
ties, ўзы.	зéмецъ.
can be insensible, мό-	wretch, йзвергъ.
жешь не чувствовашь.	has no affection, не
holy, свящéнныи.	любишъ.
flame, плáмя.	mother, машь.
a bird, птица.	and, но.
a beast, звѣрь.	less, мéныше.
are attached, любяши.	than, чѣмъ.
birth-place, мѣсто рож-	the antipathy, отвра-
дѣнія.	щеніе.
and shall man, чело-	to, отъ, (from).
вѣкъ ли.	unnatural, противу-
endowed, одаренныи.	еспѣственный.
rational, разумныи.	feeling, мысль.

is so great, that whatever immorality and vileness we may suppose in a man, even if we were to imagine to ourselves, that such a one may be found, who actually harbours in his corrupt soul hatred towards his native country, still; even he would be ashamed to confess it publicly. All ages, all nations, heaven and earth would cry out against him: hell alone would applaud him. *Shishkoff.*

great ,	великій.	harbours ,	пимпаетъ .
whatever we may sup-		hatred ,	ненависть .
pose ,	какою бы ни	still even ,	однако же .
	положили мы .	would be ashamed ,	по-
a man ,	человекъ .		стыдился бы .
immorality ,	худая нрав-	publicly ,	всеноародно
	ственность .		и громогласно .
vileness ,	безстыд-	to confess ,	признался .
	ство .	an age ,	векъ .
even if ,	хотя бы и .	a nation ,	народъ .
we were to imagine ,		the earth ,	земля .
	представили .	heaven ,	небеса .
may be found ,	можетъ	would cry out ,	возопиј-
	найтися .		ли бы .
such a one ,	такой .	against ,	пропивъ .
corrupt ,	развращен-	hell alone ,	одинъ адъ .
soul ,	душа .	would applaud ,	сталь
actually ,	ный .		бы руко克莱кашь .
		но .	



## C H A P. V.

## V E R B S.

## S E C T. I.

## G E N E R A L R E M A R K S.

§ 158. The verb is a part of speech, which expresses the action, state of being, or suffering of an object. Verbs may be divided into *active*, *passive*, *neuter*, *reflective*, *reciprocal*, and *common*.

§ 159. All verbs are either *transitive* or *intransitive*. A *transitive* verb expresses that sort of action, which passes over to an object; \*as, if we say; онъ любитъ, he loves; the question *whom?* naturally arises, and the phrase is not complete, until we add: своé дитя, his child, своегó отца, his father, or some other object. *Intransitive* verbs express existence in a particular state, or an action, which does not pass over from one object to another; as, онъ спитъ, he sleeps; я хожу, I walk.

---

\* It is the more necessary to pay attention to this distinction, as in the Russian language the accusative case is frequently different from the nominative V. § 10.

§ 160. Russian verbs are subject to modifications according to their *branch, mood, tense, number, person and gender.*

§ 161. The branches, being peculiar to the Russian language, require a more explicit definition. If we consider the duration of an action from the commencement to the end, we shall find, that it is subject to a great variety of modifications, that have no relation to time. These variations of the meaning of the original verb are commonly marked in English by the prefix of some explanatory verb or adverb; but four of the principal are expressed in the Russian language, by varying some of the letters of the verb itself. As the explanatory word used in English may be prefixed to the verb in its different tenses, so in the Russian language, each of these principal modifications has its own tenses and moods, which taken collectively form, what is called a branch of the verb. There are four branches: the *indefinite* \*, the *perfect*, the *semelfactive* and the *iterative*.

*The indefinite* expresses the action indeterminately with regard to its completion; as, онъ трóгалъ, he moved.

\* A few verbs have a fifth branch called the *definite* V. table V of the irregular verbs.

*The perfect* marks the thorough accomplishment of the action; as, онъ расстрóгаль, he moved thoroughly, or has moved.

*The semelfactive* expresses the sudden and single occurrence of an action; as, спръльнушь, to shoot (once).

*The iterative* marks the frequent repetition of the action; as, спрѣливашь, to fire away, or to fire repeatedly.

*Rem.* Not every verb has all the four branches, as the nature of the action sometimes precludes the use of one or the other of them. This will be better understood by the following examples: шагáть, to stride, may be used in the semelfactive, as it is possible to say шагнùшь, to take *one* stride; but the verb бѣгать, to run has no semelfactive, because the signification of a repeated motion is inseparable from the nature of the action.

§ 162. *Mood.* There are three moods in the Russian language: the infinitive, the indicative and the imperative. \*

§ 163. *Tense.* There are three principal tenses, the present, the past and the future.

\* The conditional and subjunctive are formed by the addition of the particle *бес* to the past tense of the indicative.

§ 164. *Number and Person.* Russian verbs have two numbers and three persons.

§ 165. *Gender.* The gender of the person affects the verb only in the singular number of the past tense, by varying its termination; as, онъ сказа́ль, he said; она́ сказа́ла, she said; оно́ сказа́ло, it said. In passive verbs however the distinction of gender is carried through all the tenses.

§ 166. The *Participle* may be considered as a verbal adjective; for its declension see Chap. VI.

§ 167. The *Gerund* present is employed to express an action, that is commenced and still continues, or is supposed to continue; the past denotes, that the action was just completed, when another began: добродѣтель связуе́шь людѣй внуша́я имъ взаимную довѣренность, virtue unites mankind by *inspiring* them with mutual confidence; запечатавъ письмо, having sealed the letter; прочиша́вши книгу, having read the book &c.



## S E C T. II.

**CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *быть*, to be.**

**§ 168.** The auxiliary verb *быть*, has two branches, the definite and the indefinite.

**D E F I N I T E   B R A N C H.**

**I N F I N I T I V E   M O O D**, *быть*, to be.

**I N D I C A T I V E   M O O D.**

*P r e s e n t.*

*S i n g.*

я (есмь), I am.

ты (еси), thou art.

онъ } есмь, { he,

она } есмь, { she,

оно } есмь, { it,

*P l u.*

мы (есмы), we are.

вы (есте), you are.

они } сушь, they are.

онъ } сушь, they are.

*P a s t.*

я былъ, a, o, I was.

ты былъ, a, o, thou wast.

онъ былъ, he was.

она была, she was.

оно было, it was.

мы были, we were.

вы были, you were.

они } были, they were.

онъ } были, they were.

*F u t u r e.*

я бываю, I shall be.

ты будешь, thou wilt be.

онъ } будешь, { he,

она } будешь, { she,

оно } будешь, { it,

мы будемъ, we shall be.

вы будете, you will be.

они } будутъ, they

онъ } будутъ, they

она } будутъ, they

оно } будутъ, they

*Imperative mood.**Sing.*

будь ты, be thou.

пушь  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{оно} \end{array} \right\}$  бùдеть, let  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{him} \\ \text{her} \\ \text{it} \end{array} \right\}$  be.

*Plu.*

бùдьте вы, be ye.

пушь  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{они} \\ \text{онѣ} \end{array} \right\}$  бùдущь, let them be.

*Participle.*

Pres. сùщій, being.

Past. бывшій, been, which was.

Fut. бùдущій, which is to be.

*Gerund.*

Pres. бùдучи, being.

Past. бывши, ог бывъ, having been.

## INDEFINITE BRANCH.

*Infinitive mood.*

бывáть, to be.

*Indicative.*

## Present.

*Sing.**Plu.*

я бывáю, I am.

мы бывáемъ, we are.

ты бывáешь, thou art.

вы бывáеше, you are.

онъ { бывáешь, he, she,

они { бывáюшъ, they

она } it is.

онѣ } are.

## P a s t.

## S i n g.

## P l u.

я бывáль , а, о , I was. мы бывáли , we were.  
 ты бывáль , а, о , thou wast. вы бывáли , you were.  
 онъ бывáль , he was , они бывáли } they were.  
 она бывáла , she was. онъ бывáли } they were.  
 оно бывáло , it was.

## P a r t i c i p l e.

Past. бывáвшíй , who has been.

## G e r u n d.

Past. бывáвшíй , having been.

§ 169. The first and second persons singular and plural of the definite branch of the auxiliary verb are almost always omitted in the present tense , and the adjective , which follows apocopated. V. § 88. *as*, я довóленъ , I am content; ты ленивъ , thou art lazy ; онъ учéнъ , he is learned ; вы смѣлы , you are bold &c.

## T H E M E XXII.

## O N T H E A U X I L I A R Y V E R B.

Day is the time for labour , and night for repose. Idleness is a vice. Virtue is its own

day , день .	repose , покóй .
the time , врёмя ,	idleness , прáзднoсть .
for, expressed by the gen. a vice ,	шорóкъ .
labour , трудъ .	its own (to herself) са-
night , ночь .	на тебѣ .

reward. The end of wrath *is* the beginning of repentance. A man without fixed principles *is* the victim of his own passions. There are good and bad people in every nation. Roubles and copecks *are* coins used in Russia. Boasting and haughtiness *are* the offspring of ignorance. Our desires *are* often insatiable. The eyes *are* often the interpreters of the heart. People *are* not so liberal of any thing

reward, нагráда.  
the end, конéцъ.  
wrath, гнéвъ.  
the beginning, начáло,  
repentance, раскáяниe,  
without, безъ, gov. the  
fixed, шvéрдый.  
principle, прáвило.  
the victim, (sport) и-  
гралище.  
passion, страшь.  
every, всякий.  
nation, нароdъ.  
good, добrый.  
bad, злый.  
people, люди.  
a rouble, рубль.  
a copeck, копéйка.

a coin, монéша.  
used, употребляемая.  
Russia, Россíя.  
boasting, хвастовствó,  
haughtiness, надмéн-  
носцъ.  
the offspring, дéщи.  
ignorance, невéжес-  
шво.  
desire, желаниe.  
insatiable, ненасыт-  
ный.  
the eye, глазъ.  
the interpreter, истол-  
ковáшель.  
the heart, сéрдце.  
of any thing, ни начицо.  
so, такъ.  
liberal, щéдрый.

\* \*

as of advice. Pythagoras was the first of the Greek philosophers. The olive branch was a sign of peace among the ancients. The Romans were the greatest conquerors of antiquity. Alexander the great said: if I were not Alexander, I should wish to be Diogenes. Agriculture was in high esteem among the Romans. But few Europeans have been in the interior of Africa. God is, was, and will be for ever. Be temperate, and you will be healthy. Be not as of, какъ.

advice, совѣтъ.

Pythagoras, Пиѳагоръ.

of, изъ, gov. the gen.

Greek, Греческій.

philosopher, мудрецъ.

olive, масличный.

branch, вѣтвь.

among the ancients, у

древнихъ.

a sign, знакъ.

peace, миръ.

a Roman, Римлянинъ.

great, великий.

conqueror, побѣдитель.

of antiquity, древнихъ

временъ.

Alexander, Александръ

said, сказаль.

if, если, V. § 162. note.

should wish, хотѣть бы

Diogenes, Диогенъ.

agriculture, хлѣбопа-

шество.

among, у, gov. the gen.

esteem, почтѣніе.

but few, не многіе.

European, Европеецъ.

in, во, gov. the prep.

the interior, внѣшн-

ность.

Africa, Африка.

for ever, вѣвѣкъ.

temperate, воздѣржный.

healthy, здоровый.

not, не, (to precede the

verb.)

envious. *To be content* is *to be rich*. Every one is capable of *being* an enemy, but not every one of *being* a friend. It is possible *to be happy* in every condition. The *future* is hid from us by an impenetrable veil. *Being* in health, we laugh at sickness. Mozart, *being* still a boy, enchanted every body with his skill in music. The commerce of the Genoese, which was once the first in the world, is now in complete decay.

---

<b>envious</b> , завистливый.	<b>veil</b> , завѣса.
<b>content</b> , довольный.	<b>in health</b> , здоровы.
<b>is</b> , значитъ.	<b>laugh</b> , смѣяся.
<b>rich</b> , богатый.	<b>at</b> , надъ, gov. the ins.
<b>capable</b> , способный.	<b>sickness</b> , болѣзнь.
<b>of being, (to be render-</b>	<b>Mozart</b> , Моцартъ.
<b>ed by the infinitive.)</b>	<b>still</b> , ещѣ.
<b>friend</b> , другъ.	<b>a boy</b> , малолѣтнимъ.
<b>condition</b> , званіе.	<b>transported</b> , восхищалъ.
<b>it is possible</b> , можно.	<b>his</b> , V. § 150.
<b>happy</b> , благополѣчный.	<b>skill in music</b> , игра.
<b>the future, (to be render-</b>	<b>the commerce</b> , тор-
<b>ed by the participle</b>	<b>говля.</b>
<b>future of the indef.)</b>	<b>a Genoese</b> , Генуэзецъ.
<b>is hid</b> , скрыто,	<b>once</b> , нѣкогда.
<b>from, отъ, gov. the gen.</b>	<b>now</b> , нынѣ.
<b>impenetrable</b> , непро-	<b>complete</b> , великий.
<b>ницаемый.</b>	<b>decay</b> , упадокъ.

There *was* a time, when all Europe *was* plunged in ignorance. *Let thy heart be a stranger to all falsehood.*

there was ,	было.	ignorance, невѣжество
a time ,	врѣмѧ.	let, да.
when ,	когда.	thy heart, сѣрдце твоѣ.
Europe ,	Европа.	a stranger, чуждо.
was plunged ,	была по- гружена.	all, всякий. falsehood, неправда.



### S E C T. III.

#### CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE AND NEUTER VERBS.

#### INDEFINITE BRANCH.

INFINITIVE mood, *прогать*, to touch.

*Indicative mood.*

#### P R E S E N T.

*S i n g.*

я *прогаю*, I touch.

ты *прогаешь*, thou touchest.

онъ	{ <i>прогаешъ</i> ,	{ he она	} touches.
она			
оно			

*P l u.*

мы *прогаемъ*, we touch.

вы *прогаете*, you touch.

они, они *прогаютъ*, they touch.

*P a s t.*

S i n g.

я трóгаль, а, о, I touched.

ты трогаль, а, о, thou touchedst.

онъ прѣгаль ; he touched.

она трогала, she touched.

оно трогало, it touched.

P. l. u.

мы трогали, we touched.

вы трогали , you touched.

они , онъ трогали , they touched.

*F u t u r e.*

S i n g.

я бùду трóгать , I shall touch.

ты будешь прогать, thou wilt touch.

P l u.

мы будемъ прогать, we shall touch.

вы будете трогать, you will touch.

они } будущий прогать, they will touch.  
онъ }

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### S i n g.

трогай ты , touch thou.

пусть **{ онъ } { она } { оно }** трогаешь, let **{ him } { her } { it }** touch.

*P l u.*

шрòгайше вы , touch ye.

пушь они, онъ шрòгаюшъ, let them touch.

*Participle.**Pres.* шрòгающій, ая, ее , who or which touches*Past.* шрòгавшій, ая, ее , who or which touched.*G e r u n d.**Pres.* шрòгая , or шрогающи , touching.*Past.* шрòгавши , or шрогавъ , having touched.

## P E R F E C T B R A N C H.

## I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

расшрòгать , to touch (thoroughly).

## I N D I C A T I V E M O O D.

*P a s t \***S i n g.*

я расшрòгалъ, а, о, I touched or have touched,

ши расшрòгалъ, а, о, thou hast touched.

онъ расшрòгалъ, he has touched.

она расшрòгала , she has touched.

оно расшрòгало , it has touched.

*P l u.*

мы расшрòгали , we have touched.

вы расшрòгали , you have touched.

они , онъ расшрòгали , they have touched.

\* The perfect branch expressing the thorough completion of the action has no present tense in the active or neuter form.

( 153 )

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я распрòгаю, I shall touch.

ты распрòгаешь, thou wilt touch.

онъ }  
она }распрòгаешь, { he  
оно } { she }will touch.  
            { it }

*P l u.*

мы распрòгаемъ, we shall touch.

вы распрòгаеше, you will touch.

они, онѣ распрòгаюшь, they will touch.

**I M P E R A T I V E   M O O D.**

*S i n g.*

распрòгай ты, touch thou.

пусть }онъ }распрòгаешь, let { him  
       }она } { her }touch.  
       }оно } { it }

*P l u.*

распрòгаемъ мы, let us touch.

распрòгайте вы, touch ye.

пусть они, онѣ распрòгаюшь, let them touch.

*Participle.*

Past. распрòгавшй, ая, ee, who, or which touched.

*Gerund.*

Past. распрòгавши, or распрòгавъ, having  
touched.

## SEMELFACTIVE BRANCH.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

тронуть , to touch (once).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*P a s t.* \*

*S i n g.*

я трону́лъ , а , о , I touched (once).

ты трону́лъ , а , о , thou touchedst.

онъ трону́лъ , he touched.

она тронула , she touched.

оно тронуло , it touched.

*P l u.*

мы тронули , we touched.

вы тронули , you touched.

они , онѣ тронули , they touched.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я трону , I shall touch.

ты тронешь , thou wilt touch.

онъ }  
она } тронешъ , {  
оно } онѣ } will touch.  
                    { he  
                    { she  
                    { it

\* The semelfactive branch has no present tense , as it expresses the single and sudden occurrence of an action , the performance of which is not supposed to allow time for description.

*P l u.*

мы трóнемъ, we shall touch.

вы трóнеше, you will touch.

они, онъ трóнушъ, they will touch.

## I M P E R A T I V E M O O D.

*S i n g.*

шронь ты, touch thou.

пусть { онъ { трóнешъ, let { him {  
она { трóнешъ, let { her {  
оно { трóнешъ, let { it { touch.

трóнемъ, let us touch.

трóныше, touch ye.

пусть они, онъ трóнушъ, let them touch.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Past. трóнувшій, ая, ee, who or which touched.

*G e r u n d.*

Past. трóнувши, or тронувъ, having touched.

## I T E R A T I V E B R A N C H.

## I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

трóгивашъ, to touch (repeatedly.)

## I N D I C A T I V E M O O D.

*P a s t \***S i n g.*

я трóгиваль, I touched.

ты трóгиваль, thou touchedst.

онъ трóгиваль, he touched.

она трóгивала, she touched.

оно трóгивало, it touched.

\* The iterative branch is never employed in the present tense.

*P l u.*

мы трогивали, we touched.

вы трогивали, you touched.

они, онъ трогивали, they touched.

*Participle.*

Past. трогивавшій, ая, ее, who or which touched.

*G e r u n d.*

Past. трогивавши, having touched.

§ 170. The above may be considered as a model for the conjugation of regular verbs both active and neuter, but as the final letters *ть* of the infinitive are not always preceded by the same consonant and vowel as in the verb *трогать*, it is necessary to know, what changes are caused in the conjugation by the variation of those letters. V. § 172.



## S E C T. IV.

## FORMATION OF THE BRANCHES, MOODS, TENSES AND PERSONS.

§ 171. The infinitive of the indefinite branch is the root of the verb, and (in all regular verbs) ends in *ть*, preceded by *a, и, т, о, у, е, ы* or *я*.

*Examples.*

желать, to wish.	вянуть, to fade.
говорить, to speak.	тереть, to rub.
владеть, to possess.	мыть, to wash.
молоть, to grind.	мѣрять, to measure.

§ 172. The first person singular of the present indicative is formed from the infinitive, by varying the final letters *ть* according to the consonant and vowel which precede that termination.

*Formation of the 1st. per. sing. indicative.*

THE TERMINATION *ать.*

<i>Preceded by</i>	<i>1 per. ind.</i>	<i>Example.</i>
с	шу .	{ пишáть , to write , пишù.
х	шу .	{ паха́шь , to plough , пашù.
ск	щу .	искáшь , to seek , ищù.
б	лю .	{ колебáшь , to shake , колéблю.
п	лю .	{ сыпáшь , to strew , сыплю.
м	лю .	{ дремáшь , to doze , дремлю.
д	жу .	{ гладáшь , to gulp , глажу.
з	жу .	{ ма́зать , to smear , ма́жу.
ш	чу .	{ мешáшь , to cast , / мечù.
к	чу .	{ кликать , to call , кличу.
ев	юю .	воевáшь , to combat , воюю.
ов	ую .	трéбовать , to demand , трéбую

THE TERMINATION *итъ.*

<i>Preceded by</i>	<i>1 per. ind.</i>	<i>Example.</i>
a vowel	ю .	строить , to build , стрóю.
я	ю .	моли́шь , to pray , молю.
и	ю .	{ звони́шь , to ring , звоню. { говори́шь , to speak , говорю.

*Preceded 1. per.  
by. ind.*

*Example.*

б	лю	любить, to love, люблю.
в		ловить, to catch, ловлю.
м		ломить, to break, ломлю.
ф		топить, to heat, топлю.
п	у	трапить, to hit off, траплю.
ж		служить, to serve, служу.
ч	ш	учить, to teach, учю.
ш		решить, to decide, решу.
щ	жу	тащить, to drag, тащу.
д		ходить, to walk, хожу.
з	шу	возить, to carry, вожу.
с		просить, to ask, прошу.
п	чу	плакать, to pay, плачу.
ст		чищить, to clean, чищу.

#### THE TERMINATION *ть*.

*Preceded 1 per.  
by ind.*

*Example.*

дѣ	. жу	видѣть, to see, вижу.
лѣ	ю	велѣть, to order, велю.
нѣ		звенѣть, to sound, звеню.
рѣ	лю	горѣть, to burn, горю..
бѣ		скорбѣть, to mourn, скорблю.
мѣ	шумѣти	шумѣти, to make a noise, шумлю.
пѣ		терпѣти, to suffer, терплю.
сѣ	. шу	висѣть, to hang, вишю.
шѣ	. чу	вертѣти, to turn, вѣрчю.

*Rem.* 1. Almost all the Russian verbs are comprehended in the above three terminations, *атъ*, *итъ* and *тъ* preceded by *т*; the other vowels, which occur before the *тъ* of the infinitive, are: *е* *о*, *у*, and *я*.

колóнь, to pierce, колю.

тянùнь, to draw, тянù.

мѣряшь, to measure, мѣряю.

терéшь, to rub, трю.

*Rem.* 2. The verbs which terminate in *атъ* and *тъ* preceded by *т* are not all subject to the above mentioned variations, some of them forming the first per. sing. without changing the consonant, ex.

кусáшь, to bite.	кусáю.
------------------	--------

копáшь, to dig.	копáю.
-----------------	--------

пускáшь, to let.	пускáю.
------------------	---------

слабѣшь, to weaken,	слабѣю.
---------------------	---------

твёрдѣшь, to harden.	твёрдѣю.
----------------------	----------

умѣшь, to be able,	умѣю.
--------------------	-------

#### *Formation of the 2<sup>nd</sup>. per. sing. indicative.*

§ 173. The second person singular ends either in *ешъ* or *иши*, and is formed by changing the final letter of the first person into one or the other of these terminations; as,

1 <sup>st.</sup> per.	2 <sup>nd.</sup> per.
-----------------------	-----------------------

желáю, I wish.	желáешъ, thou wishest.
----------------	------------------------

говорю, I speak.	говориши, thou speakest.
------------------	--------------------------

§ 174. The changes, to which the final consonant of the first person is subject in the verbs ending in *и́ть*, do not extend to the second, which resumes the final consonant of the infinitive.

<i>inf.</i>	<i>1st. per.</i>	<i>2nd. per.</i>
ходи́ть, to walk.	хожу́, I walk.	ходи́шь.
проси́ть, to ask.	прошу́, I ask.	проси́шь.
плати́ти, to pay.	плату́, I pay.	плати́шь.
чи́стить, to clean.	чи́щу, I clean.	чи́стишь.

§ 175. The verbs, which have the termination *еши́* in the second person sing. are :

1<sup>st</sup>. All the regular verbs, which terminate in *ати́* in the infinitive; *жела́ти*, to wish, *жела́ешь*, thou wishest, &c.

2<sup>ly</sup>. All the regular verbs, that end in *яти́* in the infinitive (unless this termination be preceded by *о*) as, *мѣряти*, to measure, *мѣряеши́*, thou measurest.

3<sup>ly</sup>. All the verbs, ending in *ти́* preceded by *т* that have the termination *ти́шь* in first the per. sing. as, *владѣти*, to possess, *владѣю*, I possess, *владѣеши́*, thou possessest.

4<sup>ly</sup>. All the verbs ending in *ути́* in the infinitive; as,

*тяну́ти*, to drag. *тяну́*, I drag, *тянеши́*, thou draggest.

5<sup>ly</sup>. Those ending in the infinitive in *ть* preceded by *e*, *терéть*, to rub; *тру*, I rub; *трешь*, thou rubbest.

§ 176. The verbs, which have the termination *ишь* in the second person singular indicative are:

1<sup>st</sup>. All the regular verbs, that end in *ить* in the infinitive; as,

*говоришь*, to speak; *говоришь*, thou speakest.

2<sup>ly</sup>. Those of the verbs, ending in *ть* preceded by *t* in the infinitive, which do not form the first person in *тю*; as, *вертеть*, to turn, *верчу*, I turn, *вёртишь*, thou turnest.

3<sup>ly</sup>. The verbs that end in the infinitive in *ять*, preceded by *o*; as,

*стоять*, to stand; *стойшь*, thou standest.

*Formation of the 3rd. per. plu. indicative.*

§ 177. The third person plural indicative is formed from the second person singular, and terminates in *ютъ*, *утъ*, *яутъ* or *атъ*.

1<sup>st</sup>. In *ютъ*, when the termination *ешь* of the 2<sup>nd</sup>. person singular is preceded by a vowel or by *b*; as,

*лаeшь*, thou barkest; *лаютъ*, they bark.

*дùешь*, thou blowest; *дùютъ*, they blow.

2<sup>ly</sup>. In *утъ*, when the termination *ешь* of the 2<sup>nd</sup>. per. sing. is preceded by a consonant; as,

несéшь, thou carriest; несúтъ, they carry.

пишéшь, thou writest; пишутъ, they write.

4ly. In *ятъ*. when the termination *ишъ* of the 2<sup>nd</sup>. per. sing. is preceded by any vowel or consonant, except a palatal; as,  
*стои́шь*, thou standest. *стоятъ*, they stand.  
*гляди́шь*, thou lookest. *глядятъ*, they look.

5ly. In *атъ* when the termination *иши* of the 2<sup>nd</sup>. per. sing. is preceded by a palatal; as,  
*учи́шь*, thou teachest, *учатъ*, they teach.

§ 178. By the above rules, the first person indicative singular may be formed from the infinitive, the second person singular from the first, and the third person plural from the second person singular. These are the only persons of the verb, which present the least difficulty, the others being formed invariably according to the given example, by changing the termination *шъ* of the second person singular into *ть* for the third; into *мъ* for the first person plural, and into *те* for the second person plural; as, *любишь*, thou lovest; *любятъ*, he loves; *любимъ*, we love; *любите*, you love.

#### *Formation of the past tense.*

§ 179. The past tense of the indicative mood is formed from the infinitive by changing *ть* into *лъ*, *ла*, *ло*; *чишáть*, to read.

онъ чиша́ль, he read.

она чиша́ла, she read.

оно чиша́ло, it read.

*Formation of the future tense.*

§ 180. The future indefinite is formed by adding the future tense of the auxiliary verb to the infinitive of the principal verb, as,  
пишáть, to write. я буду писáть, I shall write.

*Formation of the imperative mood.*

§ 181. The second person singular of the imperative mood is formed from the second person singular of the indicative present by changing *ешь* and *ишь* into *й*, *и* or *ь*.

1. When *ешь* is preceded by a vowel, into *й*: гуля́ешь, thou walkest, гуля́й, walk.

2. When it is preceded by a consonant into *и* or *ь*:

шóнешь, thou sinkest. шонí, sink.

вя́нешь, thou witherest. вянь, wither.

By changing *ишь* into *и* or *ь*:

кричíши́, thou cryest. кричí, cry.

спóриши́, thou disputest. спорь, dispute.

§ 182. The imperative terminates in *и*, when the accent falls upon the last syllable of the 1<sup>st</sup>. per. present, and in *ь*, when on any preceding syllable:

говорю , I speak. говори , speak.

плáчу , I weep. плачь , weep.

§ 183. The third person singular and plural of the imperative is formed from the same persons of the indicative present , by adding *пúсть* ; *пускáй* or *да*.

*пúсть онъ говори́тъ* , let him speak.

*пускáй они пíтутъ* , let them write.

*да благослови́тъ егó Богъ* , may God bless him.

§ 184. The second person plural is formed from the second person singular of the imperative by adding *те* :

*дélай* , do thou. *дélайте* , do ye.

*любíй* , love thou. *любíйте* , love ye.

*плачь* , weep thou. *плачьте* , weep ye.

#### *Formation of the participle and gerund.*

§ 185. The participle present is formed from the third person plural of the indicative present by changing *тъ* into *щíй* , *щал* , *щее*.

*вѣруютъ* , they believe, *вѣрующíй* , he who believes.

*тéрпятъ* , they suffer, *тéрпящíй* , he who suffers.

§ 186. The participle past is formed from the past tense of the indicative by changing *ль* into *вшíй* , *вшал* , *вшее*.

*бѣгалъ* , he ran , *бѣгавшíй* , he who ran.

*спрóилъ* , he built , *спрóившíй* , he who built.

§ 187. The gerund present is formed from the third person plural of the indicative present by changing the three final letters into *a* or *я*, ex.

*слѣдуютъ*, they follow. *слѣдуя*, following.

*слѣжатъ*, they serve. *служа*, serving.

In common language the gerund frequently terminates in *ути* or *юти*, ex.

*тонутъ*, to drown. *тонучи*, drowning.

*гулятъ*, to walk, *гуляючи*, walking.

### *Formation of the perfect branch.*

§ 188. The infinitive of the perfect branch is formed from the indefinite by the prefix of a preposition or particle; but as it is impossible to give determinate rules for the employment of these prepositions with the different verbs, the following list of those, which most frequently occur, is given with the subjoined particle in italics. V. § 161.

### *O.*

*ограбить*, to pillage. *оклеветашь*, to calum-  
*озлить*, to irritate. *оклеветать*, to calum-  
*ознобишь*, to congeal. *окрестить*, to christen,  
*озябнуть*, to freeze. *опяготишь*, to burden,  
*окаменѣть*, to petrify. *обвенчаться*, to espouse.

## по.

<i>поборóть</i> , to wrestle.	<i>помиловать</i> , to spare.
<i>повалить</i> , to upset.	<i>посадить</i> , to plant.
<i>погасить</i> , to extinguish	<i>поставить</i> , to place.
<i>погибнуть</i> , to perish.	<i>пожелтеть</i> , to turn yellow.
<i>погубить</i> , to ruin.	
<i>покрыть</i> , to cover.	<i>построить</i> , to build.

## изъ.

<i>изгадить</i> , to defile.	<i>истолочь</i> , to pound.
<i>изжарить</i> , to roast.	<i>истопить</i> , to heat.
<i>испортить</i> , to spoil.	<i>истратить</i> , to spend.
<i>испугать</i> , to frighten.	<i>изорвать</i> , to tear.

## съ.

<i>сварить</i> , to boil.	<i>созреть</i> , to ripen.
<i>сводишь</i> , to lead.	<i>сыскать</i> , to find.
<i>свозить</i> , to transport.	<i>скушать</i> , to eat.
<i>сгореть</i> , to burn, (neut).	<i>спечь</i> , to bake.
<i>сдвинуть</i> , to move.	<i>стереть</i> , to rub.
<i>сделать</i> , to do.	<i>сходить</i> , to go.

## соз.

<i>взбесить</i> , to exasperate.	<i>взлезть</i> , to climb.
<i>взволновать</i> , to agitate.	<i>вспотеть</i> , to perspire.
<i>вспахать</i> , to plough.	<i>вспухнуть</i> , to swell.

## у.

<i>увянуть</i> , to fade.	<i>упасть</i> , to fall.
<i>ужалишь</i> , to sting.	<i>уронить</i> , to let fall.
<i>украсть</i> , to steal.	<i>услышать</i> , to hear.

## за.

задави́ть , to strangle.	замёрзну́шь , to freeze,
завинти́ть , to screw.	(neut.)
задуши́ть , to smother.	заморози́шь , to congeal
заколо́ишь , to pierce.	(act.)

## раз.

разбогати́ть , to enrich.	разлома́ть , to break.
разбуди́ть , to awake.	растая́ть , to melt.
раздели́ть , to divide.	распрóгашь , to touch.

## на.

накорми́ть , to feed.	написа́ть , to write.
нали́ешь , to water.	нарисовáть , to draw.

## вы.

выбели́ть , to whiten.	вырости , to grow up.
выглади́ть , to efface.	выспрели́ть , to fire (a musket.)
выкраси́ть , to paint.	
вылуди́ть , to tin.	высушить , to drain.
вылечи́ть , to heal.	выучи́ть , to teach.
вымы́ть , to wash.	вычёрни́ть , to blacken.
выпали́ть , to fire (a cannon.)	вычисли́ть , to clean. выгеса́ть , to conib.

§ 189. The perfect branch of several verbs ending in *ать* and *ять*, is formed by changing some of the final letters of the verb itself instead of prefixing a preposition or particle. — The following is a selection of such as are most commonly used :

<i>Indef.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
бросáшь , to throw.	брóсить.
встрéчáшь , to meet.	встрéтишь.
кончáшь , to end.	кónчить.
лишáшь , to deprive.	лишíть.
обижáшь , to offend.	обидéть.
ощущáшь , to feel.	ощутíть.
понимáшь , to understand.	поня́ть.
пособлáшь , to assist.	пособíть.
посъщáшь , to visit.	посъстишь.
прощáшь , to pardon.	простíть.
пускáшь , to allow.	пустíть.
плéнýшь , to charm.	плéнить.
рождáшь , to bear.	родíть.
рѣшáшь , to decide.	рѣши́ть.
снабжáшь , to furnish.	снабдíть.
совершáшь , to complete.	соверши́ть.
ступáшь , to tread.	ступíть.
увольнáшь , to dismiss.	увóлишь.
уничтожáшь , to abolish.	уничтожíть.
уподоблáшь , to compare.	уподоби́шь.
учреждáшь , to establish.	учредíть.
хвашáшь , to catch.	хватíть.
являшь , to shew.	явíть.

§ 190. The future perfect is formed by the prefix of a preposition or particle to the present tense of the Indefinite, ex.

я пишù, I write. я напишù, I shall write.

But the future tense of those verbs, which have no preposition prefixed, is formed from the infinitive in the same manner as the present of the indefinite branch, see § 172, ex.

брóсить, to throw. бróшу, I shall throw.

All the other moods and tenses of the perfect branch are formed in the same manner as the indefinite.

*Formation of the semelfactive branch.*

§ 191. Those verbs, which have the semelfactive branch, form the infinitive by changing the termination of the indefinite into *нуть* ex. пугáть, to frighten; пугнúть, to frighten (once). мелькать, to sparkle, мелькнúть, &c.

In some instances the consonant, which precedes the final termination of the infinitive is omitted, and in others changed, ex.

двигáть, to move,      двинúть.

кричáть, to cry,      крикнúть.

When the letter *л* occurs before the termination *нуть*, the soft sign *ь* is inserted, ex.

колóть, to pierce,      колынúть.

спрэлять, to fire,      спрэльнúть.

§ 192. The future tense of the semelfactive branch is formed by omitting the final letters *ть* of the infinitive, ex.

шагнúть, to stride. я шагнù, I shall stride.

§ 193. The other modifications of this

**branch are the same as those of the indefinite.**

*Formation of the Iterative branch.*

§ 194. The infinitive of the iterative branch is formed from the infinitive indefinite by changing the final letters into *ывать* or *иовать* ex.

спрѣляшь, to fire,      спрѣливашь.

рѣзать, to cut,      рѣзывашь.

When *o* occurs in the last syllable but one of the infinitive indefinite it is changed in the iterative into *a*, ex.

говорить, to speak,      говоривашь.

In the formation of the iterative branch the consonants are subject to the variations, marked in § 5, ex.

ходи́ть, to walk.      хажива́шь.

проси́ть, to ask.      пра́шивашь.

лови́шь, to catch.      лавлива́шь.



## THEME XXIII.

## ON THE CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE AND NEUTER VERBS.

People *have* very different ideas of beauty. Without friendship life *has* no \* charms. We *love* the place of our nativity. The moon *borrow*s its light from the sun. The end *crown*s the work. Pure air *helps* much towards the

people, люди.	to borrow, <i>займство-</i>
to have, <i>иметь.</i>	<i>вать.</i>
very, <i>весьма.</i>	light, <i>свѣтъ.</i>
different, <i>разлѣчный.</i>	from, <i>оѣть, gov. the gen.</i>
idea, <i>понѧтие.</i>	the end, <i>конѣцъ.</i>
beauty, <i>красота.</i>	to crown, <i>вѣнгатъ.</i>
friendship, <i>дружба.</i>	the work, <i>дѣло.</i>
no, <i>никакой.</i>	pure, <i>чистый.</i>
charm, <i>прѣлесть.</i>	air, <i>воздухъ.</i>
to love, <i>любить.</i>	to help, <i>спосѣбство-</i>
place, <i>место.</i>	<i>вать.</i>
nativity, <i>рождѣніе.</i>	towards, <i>къ, gov. the</i>
the moon, <i>лунѣ.</i>	<i>dat.</i>

\* The Russians employ a double negation, which has the same signification as the single negation in English; as, to have no charms, *не имѣть никакой прѣлести.*



curing of disease. Thou *thirstest* after glory, and he *seeks* riches. But few *do* good merely for the sake of good. You *like* foreign countries, and I *love* my native country. If thou *buyest*, what is superfluous, thou *wilt* soon *sell* what is necessary. The improvement of the telescope *has* greatly *contributed* to the modern discoveries in astronomy. The ancient Egyptians *did* not

the curing, излѣченіе.	to buy, покупать.
disease, болѣзнь.	what is superfluous,
to thirst, жаждать.	лишнее.
(after, expressed by the gen.)	soon, то скоро.
glory, слава.	to sell, продавать.
to seek,искать.	what is necessary, нуж- ное.
riches, богатство.	the improvement, усо- вершенствование.
but few, немногие.	the telescope, телес- копъ.
to do good, творить добро.	merely for the sake of good, по одной толькю люб- ви къ добру.
foreign, чужой.	greatly, много.
a country, край.	to contribute, способ- ствовать.
native country, оте- чество.	modern, новый.
if, если.	in astronomy, астрономи- ческий.
	discovery, открытие.
	ancient, древний.
	Egyptian, Египтянинъ.

*know* the use of paper, but *wrote* upon the leaves of a plant, called papyrus. To *lie* is to *forget* God, and to *fear* man. To *gamble* is to *throw* our fortune into the sea, in hopes, that we may *pick* it up again upon the shore. *Trust* in God. *Observe* the principles of honesty on all occasions. *Judge* not of things by their external appearance alone. *He who keeps*

---

to know, знать.	again, сно́ва.
the use, употреблénie.	to pick up, собráть.
paper, бумáга.	it, óное.
to write, писáть.	shore, бéрегъ.
a leaf, листъ.	to trust, упováть.
a plant, распъніе.	in, на, gov. the gen.
to call, именовáть.	to observe, хранíть.
papyrus, папýрусъ.	on, во, gov. the prep.
to lie, лгать.	all, всéкíй.
is, значить.	occasion, слùчай.
to forget, забыvать.	principle, прáвило.
to fear, боиться.	honesty, чéспношь.
to gamble, игрáть.	to judge, судíть.
to throw, бросáть.	a thing, вещь.
our fortune, своé имъ- nie.	by, по, gov. the dat.
the sea, мóре.	alone, одио́й.
in hopes, съ шóю на- дéждою.	external appearance, нарùжношь.
that we may, чтóбы.	he, человéкъ.
	to keep, хранíть.

silence, may observe the follies of others without *discovering* his own. Pliny *wishing* to explore the cause of the eruption of Mount-Vesuvius, *sacrificed* his life to his curiosity. Cicero in his oration against Catilina, *said*: it is impossible that thou shouldst remain with ~~us~~ any longer; I will not *allow* it, I *will* not *bear* it, I *will* not *suffer* it. *I came, I saw, I conquered.* Many of the works of the an-

**silence**, молчánie.

Cicero, Цицеронъ.

**can**, можеšть.

oration, рѣчь.

**to observe**, примѣтать.

against, пропшишь.

**of others**, чужія.

Catilina, Катилина.

**a folly**, глупость.

to say, сказать.

**to discover**, покáзы-

вать.

with us, съ нами.

**his own**, свойхъ.

the dat.

Pliny, Пліній.

any longer, больше.

**to wish**, желáть.

it is impossible, не-

**to explore**, извѣдать.

возмóжно.

**the cause**, причина.

to allow, носить.

**eruption**, извержéніе.

to bear, терпѣть.

**mount**, гора.

to suffer, пускать.

Vesuvius, Везувій.

to come, прїйти, irr.

**to sacrifice**, пожéртво-

past tense, пришёлъ.

вать.

to see, видасть.

**curiosity**, любопытство.

to conquer, побѣдить.

**life**, жизнь.

work, сочинéніе.

cients are lost. The autumn set in and the leaves faded. A favourable wind filled our sails, and the ship flew rapidly through the waves. An apple, which fell from a tree, discovered to Newton the law of gravitation. The huntsman hallooed and the hounds started. The lightning flashed, and the thunder roared. Virgil has drawn many ideas from Homer. The past is irrecoverable.

---

the ancients, дре́вние.	Newton, Невшо́нь.
to lose, погибáть.	gravitation, шаготъ-
to set in, наступить.	nie.
the autumn, осень.	the huntsman, охопи-
a leaf, листъ.	никъ.
to fade, желтѣть.	to halloo, крикнуть.
favourable, благопрі-	to start, вспрѣнуть.
яшний.	the hounds, гончие.
wind, вѣтръ.	to flash, блеснуть.
to fill, надѣть.	lightning, молнія.
a sail, парусъ.	to roar, грѣнуть.
the ship, корабль.	Virgil, Виргилій.
to fly, летѣть.	to draw, погерпнуть.
through, по, gov. the	idea, мысль.
dat.	from, изъ.
a wave, волна.	Homer, Гоме́ръ.
to fall, упасть.	to pass, миновать.
from, съ, gov. the gen.	is irrecoverable, невоз-
to discover, открыть.	вратимо.

Some saltpetre *which exploded* in a mortar suggested the idea of inventing gunpowder. At the Olympic games poets *used to read* their verses, and orators *to pronounce* their orations.

---

to explode, <i>вспыхнуть</i> .	Olympic, Олімпійський.
a mortar, <i>стùпка</i> .	game, игрá.
saltpetre, <i>селяптра</i> .	a poet, поэпъ.
to suggest, <i>подáть</i> .	verses, стихошворéніе.
the idea, <i>пóводъ</i> .	to read, читáть.
of, къ, gov. the dat.	an orator, Ораторъ.
inventing, изобрéтеніе	to pronounce, говорýть.
gun-powder, <i>пóрохъ</i> .	an oration, речь.



## S E C T. V.

### CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

§ 195. The mode of expression, called by grammarians a passive verb, is formed in the Russian language (as in English) by prefixing the auxiliary verb *быть*, *to be*, in its different tenses to the participle passive; as, онъ всъми любимъ, he is beloved by all, онъ былъ всъми почитаемъ, he was respected by all; Гомéръ будешъ читанъ всъми вѣками. Homer will be read in all ages.

§ 196. The distinction of gender is carried through all the tenses of passive verbs ; as,  
 онъ посыпалъ, he is sent.  
 она была посыпана, she was sent.  
 оно будешь посыпано, it will be sent.

§ 197. In the infinitive mood, the participle is apocopated, and put in the dative case ; as, быть любиму, to be loved.

§ 198. The participle passive of the present tense is formed from the first person plural indicative present, by changing *ъ* into *ый*, *ая*, *ое*, *ас*,  
 мы любимъ, we love, любимый, ая, ое, beloved.  
 мы терзаемъ, we tear, терзаемый, ая, ое, torn.

§ 199. The participle past is formed from the past tense of the indicative, by changing *ъ* into *иный*, *иная*, *иное*, for the perfect, indefinite and iterative branches.

онъ дѣмалъ, he did. дѣланный, done.

онъ написаль, hewrote. написанный, written.

онъ двѣгаль, he moved. двѣгиванный, moved.

§ 200. The participle passive of the semelfactive is formed from the past tense of the same branch, by changing *ъ* into *тый*, *тия*, *тое*; as,

онъ кинулъ, he threw. кинутый, thrown.

онъ тронулъ, he moved, тронутый, moved.



## CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB.

## INDEFINITE BRANCH.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* бы́ть тро́гаему́, to be touched.

*Past.* бы́ть тро́гану́, to have been touched.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.**Sing.*

я тро́гаемъ , а , о .	I am touched.
ты тро́гаемъ , а , о ,	thou art touched.
онъ тро́гаемъ ,	he is touched.
она тро́гаема ,	she is touched.
оно тро́гаемо ,	it is touched.

*Pl.*

мы	шро́гаемы ,	{ we you } are touched.
вы		
они , онѣ		

*Past.**Sing.*

я бы́лъ , а , о , тро́ганъ , а , о ,	I was touched.
ты бы́лъ , а , о , тро́ганъ , а , о ,	thou wast touched.
онъ бы́лъ тро́ганъ ,	he was touched.
она бы́ла тро́гана ,	she was touched.
оно бы́ло тро́гано ,	it was touched.

мы	были тро́ганы ,	{ we you } were touched.
вы		
они , онѣ		

( 179 )

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я бùду трóганъ, а, о. I shall be touched.  
ты бùдешь трóганъ, а, о, thou wilt be touched.  
онъ будешь трóганъ, he will be touched.  
она бùдешь трóгана, she will be touched.  
оно бùдешь трóгано, it will be touched.

*P l u.*

мы бùдемъ трóганны, we shall be touched.  
вы бùдете трóганны, you will be touched.  
они, онъ бùдущь трóганны, they will be touched.

**I M P E R A T I V E M O D.**

*S i n g.*

будь трóгаемъ, а, о, be thou touched.  
пусть  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{оно} \end{array} \right\}$  бùдешь трó- let  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{him} \\ \text{her} \\ \text{it} \end{array} \right\}$  be touched.  
гаемъ, а, о,

*P l u.*

пусть  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{они} \\ \text{онѣ} \end{array} \right\}$  бùдущь трóгаемы, let them be tou-  
ched.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Pres. трóгаемый, ая, ое, who or which is touched.

Past. трóганный, ая, ое, who or which was touched.

*G e r u n d.*

Pres. бùдучи трóгаемъ, а, о, being touched.

Past. бывъ ог бывши трóганъ, а, о, having  
been touched.

## PERFECT BRANCH.

## INFINITE MOOD.

быть распróгану, to be touched (thoroughly).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*P r e s e n t.*

S i n g.

я распróганъ, а, о, . I am touched.

ты распрóганъ, а, о, thou art touched.

онъ распróганъ, he is touched.

она распróгана, she is touched.

оно распróгано , it is touched.

P l u.

*P a s t.*

S i n g.

я быль , а , о , расстрóганъ, и, о, I was touched.

ты быль, а, о, расстрóганъ, а, о, thou wast touched.

онъ быль расстрóганъ, he was touched.

она была распróгана, she was touched.

оно было расстрóгано, it was touched.

P l u.

( 181 )

I M P E R A T I V E M O O D.

будь распрóганъ, а, о, be thou touched.

пусть { онъ } { она } { бùдеть рас- } let. { him } { her } be touched.  
{ оно } { шрóганъ, а, о, } { it }

P l u.

будьше распрóганаы, be ye touched.

пусть { они } { онъ } будушъ распрóганаы, let them be  
touched.

P a r t i c i p l e.

Past. распрóганный, ая, ае, which was touched.

G e r u n d.

Past. бывъ or бывши распрóганъ, а, о, having  
been touched.

S E M E L F A C T I V E B R A N C H.

I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

быть шрónуту, to be touched, (once.)

I N D I C A T I V E M O O D.

P a s t.

S i n g.

я быль, а, о, трóнущъ, а, о, I was touched.

ты быль, а, о, трóнущъ, а, о, thou wast touched.

онъ быль трóнущъ, he was touched.

она была трóнуша, she was touched.

оно было трóнушо, it was touched.

( 182 )

*P l u.*

мы	}	были тро́нущы,	}	we	
вы				}	you
они, онѣ					

were touched.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я бùду трóнушъ, а, о, I shall be touched.  
 ты бùдешъ трóнушъ, а, о, thou wilt be touched.  
 онъ бùдешъ трóнушъ, he will be touched.  
 она бùдешъ трóнуша, she will be touched.  
 оно бùдешъ трóнушо, it will be touched.

**I M P E R A T I V E M O O D.**

*S i n g.*

будь трóнушъ, а, о, be thou touched.

пушь	}	она	}	будепъ трó-	let	him						
							онъ	на	нушъ	а, о,	her	be touched.

*Participle.*

*Past.* трóнущый, ая, ое, who or which was  
touched.

*G e r u n d.*

*Past.* бывъ or бывши трóнушъ, а, о, having  
been touched.

**I T E R A T I V E B R A N C H.**

**I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.**

быть трóгивану, to be touched (repeatedly).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*P a s t.**S i n g.*

я былъ трóгиванъ, а, о, I was touched.

ты былъ, а, о, трóгиванъ, a, o, thou wast touched.

онъ былъ трóгиванъ, he was touched.

она была трóгивана, she was touched.

оно было трóгивано, it was touched.

*P l a u.*

мы	{	были трóгиваны	{	we	
вы				you	were
они, они				they	touched.

*Participle.*

Past. трóгиванный, ая, oe, which was touched.

*Gerund.*Past. бывъ or бывши трóгиванъ, а, о, having  
been touched.

## THEME XXIV.

## ON THE CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

Egotism is frequently *punished* with contempt.  
 Sicily is *subject* to frequent earthquakes. It is

egotism, самолюбие.	Sicily, Сицилія.
frequently, часпо.	to subject, подвергáть.
to punish, накáзывать.	earthquake, землетря- сение.
contempt, презрèніе.	

related, that Romulus and Remus *were* suckled by a she-wolf. Man *is created* with faculties, which distinguish him from all other creatures. At the sight of Achilles' tomb Alexander *was moved* to tears. The greater part of our knowledge *is drawn* from the works of the ancients. Hypocrisy is a tribute, *paid* by vice to virtue. The good,

they relate, скáзывають.	Alexander, Алекса́ндръ.
Romulus, Рóмуль.	to move, трóгать.
Remus, Ремъ.	to, до, gov. the gen.
to suckle, воскормýть.	a tear, слезá.
a she-wolf, волчица.	the greater part, бóльшая часть.
to create; створýть.	knowledge, знánie (to be put in the plu.)
a faculty, даровánie.	to draw, погерпнýть.
to distinguish, отли- чáть.	from, изъ, gov. the gen.
from, отъ, gov. the gen.	work, творéниe.
other, прóчíй.	the ancients, дрéвнíе.
creature, тварь, gen. plu. твáрей.	hypocrisy, лицемéріе.
at, при, gov. the prep.	tribute, дань.
the sight, видъ.	to pay, платýть.
Achilles', Ахиллéсо- вой.	vice, порóкъ.
tomb, гробни́ца.	virtue, добродéтель.
	to do, соде́лать.
	the good, добро.

*done by us*, should be forgotten, but that *received* kept in perpetual remembrance. A man, whose mind *is illumined* by the light of truth, observing all around him traces of the power and goodness of the Creator is lost in astonishment; but minds, *plunged* in ignorance or infidelity, amidst the innumerable wonders of the universe see nothing but chance: like those unfortunate beings, whose eyes *are*

---

should be forgotten, a mind, умъ.

должно забывáшь. to plunge, погружáть.

but, a. ignorance, невѣжество

(that, not expressed.) infidelity, безвѣріе.

to receive, полгйтъ. amidst, средй.

kept in perpetual remembrance, вѣчно innumerable, безчѣ-  
сленный.

помнишь. a wonder, чудо.

to illumine, озарятъ. the universe, міръ.

truth, вѣра, (faith). to see, видашь.

to observe, усматри-  
вать.

all around him, везде. but, кромѣ, (except.)

a trace, слѣдъ. chance, слуچай.

power, всемогущество. like, они подобны.

goodness, благость. those, тѣ.

the Creator, Создатель. an unfortunate being,  
несчастный.

is lost in astonishment. whose, кого.

дивящія имъ. eye, очко, pl. очи.

*deprived* of sight; although they may turn towards the light of the sun, yet they discover nothing, but gloomy darkness.

---

to deprive, <i>лишить.</i>	light, <i>свѣть.</i>
sight, <i>зрѣніе.</i>	yet, <i>но.</i>
although, <i>хотѣ.</i>	but, <i>кромѣ.</i>
to turn, <i>обращающа.</i>	gloomy, <i>мрачный.</i>
of the sun, <i>солнечный.</i>	darkness, <i>тѣмнота.</i>
(solar.)	to discover, <i>вспрѣчашь.</i>



## S E C T. VI.

### REFLECTIVE, RECIPROCAL AND COMMON VERBS.

§ 201. Those verbs are called reflective, which denote an action, that recoils upon the agent; онъ мѣется, he washes himself; онъ бросается, he throws himself &c.

§ 202. Reciprocal verbs denote the action of two or more agents upon each other; as, они бьются, they beat each other.

§ 203. Reflective and reciprocal verbs are formed by adding *ся* or *сь* (the abbreviation of the pronoun *себѧ*, self) to all the tenses and persons of transitive verbs; as,

я м<sup>о</sup>ю , I wash. я м<sup>о</sup>юсь , I wash myself.  
она мыла, she washed. она мылась, she washed  
herself.

§ 204. Common verbs have the signification of neuter verbs; as, бояться to be afraid; стараться to endeavour &c; and generally express things that happen of themselves, or some internal action of the mind. Common verbs always end in ся, without which particle they have no signification.

§ 205. There are many verbs used as reflective in the Russian language, which are not so in English; some may be rendered by a passive and others by a neuter verb; as,

*вѣчность означается кругомъ.*      *Eternity is represented by a circle.*

По мѣрѣ какъ мы отда- In proportion as we  
ляемся отъ предметовъ, recede from objects  
они кѣжутся намъ менѣе. they appear less.



## CONGUGATION OF A REFLECTIVE VERB.

## INDEFINITE BRANCH.

*Infinitive mood*, грѣться, to warm one's self.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

P r e s e n t.

S i n g.

я грѣюсь, I warm myself.

ты грѣешься, thou warmest thyself.

онъ грѣется, he warms himself.

она грѣется, she warms herself.

оно грѣется, it warms itself.

P l u.

мы грѣемся, we warm ourselves.

вы грѣетесь, you warm yourselves

они, онъ грѣются, they warm themselves.

P a s t.

S i n g.

я грѣлся, I warmed myself.

ты грѣлся, thou warmedst thyself.

онъ грѣлся, he warmed himself.

она грѣлась, she warmed herself.

оно грѣлось, it warmed itself.

P l u.

мы грѣлись, we warmed ourselves.

вы грѣлись, you warmed yourselves.

они, онъ грѣлись, they warmed themselves.

**F u t u r e.***S i n g.*

я бùду грѣться, I shall warm myself.

ты бùдешь грѣться, thou wilt warm thyself.

онъ бùдешъ грѣться, he will warm himself.

она бùдешь грѣться, she will warm herself.

оно бùдешъ грѣться, it will warm itself.

*P l u.*

мы будемъ грѣться, we shall warm ourselves.

вы будете грѣться, you will warm yourselves.

они, онъ будутъ грѣться, they will warm themselves.

## I M P E R A T I V E M O O D.

*S i n g.*

грѣйся, warm thyself.

пушь	{	онъ грѣется,	{	him	warm	himself.	
пусть	{	она грѣется,	{	let	her	warm	herself.
оно грѣется,	{			it	warm	itself.	

*P l u.*

грѣйшесь, warm yourselves.

пусть они, онъ грѣюшся, let them warm themselves.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Present	{	Mas. грѣюшійся, who warms himself.
	{	Fem. грѣюшаяся, who warms herself.
	{	Neut. грѣющееся, which warms itself.
Past.	{	Mas. грѣвшійся, who warmed himself,
	{	Fem. грѣвшаяся, who warmed herself.
	{	Neut. грѣвшеееся, which warmed itself.

*G e r u n d.*

Pres. грѣясь, warming one's self.

Past. грѣвшись, having warmed one's self.

## P E R F E C T B R A N C H.

*Infinitive mood*, согрѣться, to warm one's self.

## I N D I C A T I V E M O O D.

*P a s t.**S i n g.*

я согрѣлся, I warmed, or have warmed myself.

ты согрѣлся, thou hast warmed thyself.

онъ согрѣлся, he has warmed himself.

она согрѣлась, she has warmed herself.

оно согрѣлось, it has warmed itself.

*P l u.*

мы согрѣлись, we have warmed ourselves.

вы согрѣлись, you have warmed yourselves.

они, онѣ согрѣлись, they have warmed themselves.

*F u t u r e.**S i n g.*

я согрѣюсь, I shall warm myself.

ты согрѣешься, thou wilt warm thyself.

онъ согрѣется, he will warm himself.

она согрѣется, she will warm herself.

оно согрѣется, it will warm itself.

*P l u.*

мы согрѣемся, we shall warm ourselves.

вы согрѣетесь, you will warm yourselves.

они, онѣ согрѣются, they will warm themselves.

## I M P E R A T I V E M O O D.

согрѣйся, warm thyself.

онъ согрѣется,	{	him	warm	himself.	
пусть она согрѣется,	{	let	her	warn	herself.
оно согрѣется,	{	it	warm	itself.	

*P l u.*

согрѣйтесь, warm yourselves.

пусть они, онѣ согрѣются, let them warm  
themselves.*Participle past.*

Mas. согрѣвшійся, who warmed himself.

Fem. согрѣвшаяся, who warmed herself.

Neut. согрѣвшееся, which warmed itself.

*G e r u n d.*

Past. согрѣвшись, having warmed one's self.



## THEME. XXV.

ON REFLECTIVE, RECIPROCAL AND COMMON  
VERBS.

Our faculties *develop themselves* with age. Ivy *intwines itself* round the oak (tree). Curtius *threw himself* from a precipice for the sake of his country. The English and the Portuguese have *distinguished themselves* by their frequent voyages round the world. The Chinese *consider themselves* the wisest people in the world. Hippocrates

faculty , способность.	country , отчество.
to develop, развивáть.	an Englishman, Англи-
with , съ.	чанинъ.
age , вóзрастъ.	a Portuguese, Порту-
ivy , плющъ.	гáлецъ.
to intwine , обвивáть.	to distinguish, прослá-
round , óколо, gov. the	вить.
gen.	frequent , чáстый.
oak , дубóвый,	voyage , путешéствiе.
a tree , дéрево.	the world , свéтъ.
Curtius , Кýрций.	a Chinese , Китáецъ.
to throw down, низвер-	to consider, почитáть.
гáть.	wise , мùдрый.
from , въ , gov. the acc.	people , нарóдъ.
a precipice, прóпасшь.	Hippocrates , Гипо-
sake , спасéніе.	кráшъ.

and Galen are considered as the fathers of the healing art. Gibraltar is considered one of the strongest fortresses in Europe. Gold is tried by fire, and a friend by adversity. Criminals are punished according to the measure of their crimes. In Kamtchatka dogs are harnessed instead of horses. Diana was represented with a bow, and a quiver full of arrows. Every thing in nature changes. Through all the course

---

Galen , Галéнь.	Kamtchatka, Камчáпка.
the father, отéцъ.	instead, вмѣсто.
healing , врачéбный.	a horse , лóшадь.
art , наука, (science.)	to harness, запрлгáть.
Gibraltar, Гибралшáрь.	a dog , собáка.
strong , сильный.	Diana , Диáна.
fortress , крѣпость.	to represent, изобра- жáть.
Europe , Еврóпа.	
gold , золото.	a bow , лукъ.
to try , испытывать.	a quiver , колчáнъ.
fire , огóнь.	full , напóлненый.
adversity , несчáстie.	an arrow , стрѣлa.
a criminal, винóвный.	every thing , все.
to punish , накáзывать.	nature , прирóда.
according, по , gov. the dat.	to change , измѣнить.
measure , мѣра.	through , во .
a crime, пресуплéніе.	all , все.
	the course , пеchéниe.

of this short life, we *struggle* with diseases, misfortunes, and above all, with our passions. All the world *complains* of the inconstancy of fortune. Virtue does not *dread* calumny. There are people, who *laugh* at others, but do not allow others to *laugh* at them.

short, краткий.	inconstancy, колебл- ность.
life, жизнь.	
to struggle, бороться.	fortune, счастье.
disease, болезнь.	to dread, бояться.
misfortune, беда.	calumny, злословие.
above all, более всего.	there are, есть.
passion, страсть.	to laugh, смеяться.
all the world, весь мир.	at, надъ, gov. the ins.
to complain, жало- ваться.	but do not, а не.
of, на, gov. the acc.	to allow, терпеть.

## S E C T. VII.

## C O M P O U N D V E R B S.

§ 206. Compound verbs are formed by prefixing a preposition to simple verbs, and thereby modifying or changing their original significance; as, *безславить*, to dishonour &c.

*Rem.* In some instances the simple verb has become obsolete, while the compound remains in use; as, *воскрешить* to raise up; *исчезать* to disappear &c.

§ 207. The indefinite branch of compound verbs is formed by prefixing a preposition to the iterative of simple verbs; and the perfect branch by prefixing a preposition to the indefinite simple; as, *печатать*, to seal, *распечатывать*, to unseal; perf. *распечатать* &c.

§ 208. When the simple verb has the selfactive, the compound derived from it has also this branch; as, *двинуть*, to move (once), *воздвигнуть*, to erect.

### CONJUGATION OF A COMPOUND VERB.

#### INDEFINITE BRANCH.

*Infinitive mood:* подпишивать, to undersign.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### P r e s e n t.

##### S i n g.

я подпишываю, I undersign.

ты подпишиваешь, thou undersignest.

онъ } подпишиваетъ, he }

она } подпишиваетъ, she }

оно } подпишиваетъ, it }

##### P l u.

мы подпишываемъ, we undersign.

вы подпишиваете, you undersign.

они, онъ подпишиваютъ, they undersign.

\* \*

P a s t.

Sing.

и подпісуваль, а, о, I undersigned.

ши подписывалъ, а, о, thou undersignedst.

онъ подписывалъ, he undersigned.

она подписывала. she undersigned.

оно подписывало, it undersigned.

P. J. u.

мы подпѣсывали, we undersigned.

вы подписывали, you undersigned.

они. они подпѣсывали, they undersigned.

*F u t u r e.*

S i n g .

я буду підписувати, I shall undersign.

шы будешь подпісывать, thou wilt undersigne.

P l a.

мы будемъ подписывать, we shall undersign.

вы будете подпisyвать, you will undersign.

ени, онъ будушъ подпісывать, they will undersign.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S i n g.

поді́сьвай, undersign (thou).

пусть {онъ} {она} {оно} подпісываешьъ, let {him} {her} {it.} undersign.

*P l u.*

подпісывайше , undersign (ye).

пушь они, онъ подпісываюшъ, let them undersign.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Pres. подпісываюшій , ая , ее , who undersigns.

Past. подпісывавшій , ая , ее , who undersigned.

*G e r u n d.*

Pres. подпісывая , undersigning.

Past. подпісывавши , having undersigned.

## P E R F E C T B R A N C H.

*Infinitive mood.* подпісатъ , to undersign.

## I N D I C A T I V E M O O D.

*P a s t.**S i n g.*

я подпіса́ль , а , о , I have undersigned.

ты подпіса́ль , а , о , thou hast undersigned.

онъ подпіса́ль , he has undersigned.

она подпіса́ла , she has undersigned.

оно подпіса́ло , it has undersigned.

*P l u.*

мы подпіса́ли , we have undersigned.

вы подпіса́ли , you have undersigned.

они , онъ подпіса́ли , they have undersigned.

*F u t u r e.**S i n g.*

я подпишу , I shall undersign.

ты подпишешь , thou wilt undersign.

онъ	{ подпишеть ,	{ he
она		
оно		

{ she	{ will undersign.	
		it

*P l u.*

мы подпишемъ, we shall undersign.

вы подпишете, you will undersign.

они, онѣ подпишутъ, they will undersign.

**I M P E R A T I V E M O O D.***S i n g.*

подпиши, undersign (thou).

пушь	онъ	она	подпишеть,	let	him
					undersign.
		оно			her
					it

подпишите, undersign (ye).

пусть они, онѣ подпишутъ, let them undersign.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Past. подпишій, ая, ое, who undersigned.

*G e r u n d.*

Past. подпишыи от подпишъ, having undersigned,

**§ 209.** The prepositions used in the formation of compound verbs are the following:

*Без*, (without) marks privation., ex.

безпокойть, to deprive of rest, to disturb.

безобрѣзить, to deprive of beauty, to disfigure.

*Во, въ* (in) adds the meaning of the preposition to the simple verb, ex. вставлять, to insert, вовлечь, to intrain.*Воз*, *взо*, *вз*, (up) marks 1<sup>st.</sup> ascension :

восходить, to ascend. взлѣстъ, to climb up.

2ly. The commencement of an action ;

**возлюбить**, to conceive an affection.

**возненавидеть**, to begin to hate.

**3ly. Reinstatement:**

**возвратить**, to return.

**возстановить**, to replace.

**Вы**, (out) marks 1st. the passing of an object from the interior to the exterior, and corresponds to the latin preposition *ex*; as,  
**выгнать**, to expel.

**вывозить**, to export.

**2ly. Duration:**

**выстоять**, to stand all the time.

**выслушать**, to listen to the end.

**3ly. Acquirement by means of exertion:**

**выльстишь**, to obtain by flattery.

**выплакашь**, to obtain by tears..

**До**, (till, to) marks the boundary, or termination:

**доходить**, to arrive at a certain point.

**дочитать**, to read to a certain point.

**За**, (for) marks 1st. the commencement of an action.

**заговорить**, to begin to speak.

**закипеть**, to begin to boil.

**2ly. The expansion of the action over an object:**

**заделать**, to stop up.

**закрасить**, to cover over with colour.

## 3ly. Excess :

заговоришься, to say too much.  
заспáшися, to oversleep.

## 4ly. Deviation :

заѣхать, to ride off the road.

5ly. Acquirement, by exertion.  
зарабóтать, to earn by labour.

## 6ly. Descent.

заходишь, to set, to go down.

*Изъ*, (from) has 1st. nearly the same signification as *вы*, but is used in a more elevated style.

изгнàшь, to banish. избрáшь, to elect.

## 2ly. Wasting by use :

износишь, to wear out.

## 3ly. Exploring.

изыскивать, to search out.

*На*, (on) marks 1st. accumulation :

набросáшь, to throw in a heap.

наговоришь, to speak too much.

## 2ly. Witchcraft :

наговáривать, to foretell.

наколдóвывать, to bewitch.

*Надъ*, (upon) Corresponding to the latin preposition *super*.

надстроишь, to build a superstructure.

надпиcáшь, to superscribe.

*Низ*, (below) marks descent:

низвёргнуть, to precipitate.

низходишь, to descend.

*O*, *объ*, *обо* (about) corresponding to the latin preposition *circum*.

обливáшь, to circumfuse.

обходишь, to circumambulate.

обняшь, to embrace.

*Отъ*, (from) 1<sup>st</sup>. the separation of parts:

отбýшь, to detach.

отшáвишь, to displace.

2<sup>ly</sup>. Cessation.

отписáшь, to finish writing.

отплáкать, to cease weeping.

3<sup>ly</sup>. With the particle *съ* deliverance:

отдѣлаться, to disencumber one's self.

отговориться, to excuse one's self.

*Пере*, (over) marks 1<sup>st</sup>. excess:

переполнить, to overfill.

переспѣть, to over-ripen.

2<sup>ly</sup>. Change of place:

перелишь, to pour out of one vessel into another.

перевозить, to transport, to carry over.

3<sup>ly</sup>. Joined to the preposition *въз*, superiority:

превзойти, to surpass.

превосходить, to excel.

4<sup>ly</sup>. Repetition:

переписа́ть , to copy (to write over again).  
перечиша́ть , to read over again.

*По* , modifies the duration of the action :

поигра́шь , to play a little.

погостя́ишь , to pay a short visit.

*Подъ* , (under) corresponds in its first signification to the particle *sub*.

подложи́ть , to put under.

подверга́ть , to subject.

подпиши́ть , to subscribe (undersign).

2ly. Approach :

подъѣхашь , to drive up.

*Предъ* , (before) corresponding to the particle *pre*:

предсказа́ть , to predict.

предшес́твовать , to precede,

предупрежда́шь , to anticipate.

*При* , denotes 1st. approach :

пріѣхать , to arrive.

прикаса́ться , to touch.

присоединя́шь , to unite.

2ly. Increase :

прибавля́ть , to add.

прибыва́шь , to augment.

3ly. Concealment :

прикрыва́ть , to hide under.

*Про* , (through) denotes 1st. passage :

произи́ти , to run through.

проходи́шь , to pass through.

**2<sup>ly</sup>. Duration :**

простоять , to stand all the time.

**3<sup>ly</sup>. Loss :**

проспать , to lose by sleeping.

проиграть , to lose by gaming.

**4<sup>ly</sup>. with the particle ся , a fault or mistake :**

проболтаться , to speak incautiously.

*Противъ* , (against) marks opposition or contrariety :

противоречить , to contradict.

противостоять , to oppose.

*Раз* , Marks 1<sup>st</sup>. separation :

разобраться , to sort.

раздѣлиться , to divide.

**2<sup>ly</sup>. Development :**

развѣваться , to expand.

развернуться , to unfold.

**3<sup>ly</sup>. With the particle ся , augmentation of the action :**

разсердиться , to become very angry.

*Со* , съ (marks) 1<sup>st</sup>. connexion :

составиться , to compound , mix.

сплѣститься , to entwine , plait.

**2<sup>ly</sup>. Descent :**

сойти , to walk down.

сбросить , to throw down.

*У* , expresses 1<sup>st</sup>. departure :

унесш̄ , to carry away.

улетш̄ , to fly away.

2ly. Arrangement :

убрáш̄ , to place in order.

уклáш̄ , to pack up.

3ly. Diminution :

убывáш̄ , to decrease.

убавляш̄ , to diminish.

4ly. Opposition :

устояш̄ , to resist.

5ly. Persuasion.

убѣдяш̄ , to convince.

уговоряш̄ , to persuade.

6ly. Retention.

удержáш̄ , to stop , to arrest.



## Т Н Е М Е XXVI.

### On COMPOUND VERBS.

The northern nations *harrassed* the Roman Empire by their frequent incursions. The Danube

northern , съверный.	Empire , Имперія.
a nation , нарόдъ.	frequent , чаcший.
to harrass , беспокóитъ.	an incursion , набѣгъ.
Roman , Рымскій.	the Danube , Дунай.

*falls into the Black-sea. The sight of the ocean excites admiration. The prayers of the righteous ascend to heaven. After the rain the sun shone forth again. It is impossible to recall lost time. The Neva flows out of the Ladoga lake. Troy held out a long time, but was taken at last. Priam obtained from Achilles the body of his son Hector. Paper is made out of rags.*

to fall, <i>падать.</i>	lost, <i>пошёренный.</i>
the Black Sea, <i>Чёрное море.</i>	the Neva, <i>Невá.</i>
the ocean, <i>океань.</i>	to flow out, <i>вытекать.</i>
to excite, <i>возбуждáть.</i>	Ladoga, <i>Лáдожскíй.</i>
admiration, <i>удивлéніе.</i>	Troy, <i>Трóя.</i>
a prayer, <i>молитва.</i>	to hold, <i>дéржать.</i>
a righteous man, <i>праведный.</i>	at last, <i>наконéцъ.</i>
to go, <i>ходи́ть.*</i>	to take, <i>взять.</i>
heaven, <i>небо.</i>	Priam, <i>Приáмъ.</i>
after, <i>послѣ.</i>	to obtain, <i>выпроси́ть.</i>
the rain, <i>ненáстье.</i>	Achilles, <i>Ахиллéсъ.</i>
again, <i>снова.</i>	son, <i>сынъ.</i>
to shine-forth, <i>возсия́ть.</i>	Hector, <i>Гéкшоръ.</i>
to recall, <i>возврати́ть.</i>	paper; <i>бумáга.</i>
	to make, <i>делать.</i>
	of, <i>изъ.</i>

\* When the signification of the verb will allow of the separation the prefix of the preposition is left for the scholar.

No one has ever reached the pole. The Nile overflows the neighbouring countries annually. Speak candidly, but not imprudently. The sun had no sooner gone down, than the nightingale began to sing. The diligent deserve encouragement. Vesuvius emits flames. Bees extract honey from every flower. The alchymists endeavoured to

---

a rag ,	тряпіца.	nightingale ,	соловей.
no one ,	никтò.	to sing ,	петь.
ever ,	ещé.	diligent ,	прилеж-
to reach,	доходить.		ный.
the pole ,	пóлюсь.	to deserve ,	заслужи-
the Nile ,	Ниль.		вать.
annually ,	кáждый годъ.	encouragement ,	одо-
to overflow ,	зато-		брéніе.
	плáть.	Vesuvius ,	Везúвій.
neighbouring ,	окрéст-	to emit ,	извергáть.
	ный.	flames ,	плáмя.
country ,	странá.	a bee ,	пчелá.
candidly ,	опкровéнно.	to extract ,	извлекáть.
to speak ,	говорítъ.	honey ,	медь.
no sooner ,	лишь шоль-	a flower ,	цвéть.
	ко.	an alchymist ,	алхі-
to go down ,	закатýть-		місшъ.
	ся.	to endeavour to find ,	
than ,	какъ.		изысківать.

*discover the means of transforming the base metals into gold. Misers heap up wealth and their heirs spend it. The desires of an ambitious man are not easily satisfied. Gipsies tell fortunes by the hand. On the pillars of Hercules were inscribed the words: nec plus ultra. In Rome they used to precipitate criminals from the Tarpean rock. Drunkenness obscures the*

---

the means , спóсобъ.	a gipsy, цыгáнка.
to transform , превра- щать.	to tell , наговáривать.
base , нíзкíй.	by, на , gov. the acc.
metal , мешáлль.	a pillar , столпъ.
into , въ , gov, the acc.	Hercules , Геркулéсь.
gold , зóлото.	to inscribe , надпиcáть.
a miser , скupýй.	nec plus ultra , не дá- лje сего.
to heap up, накоплáтъ.	Rome , Римъ.
wealth , богáшства , (plu).	to precipitate , низвер- гáть.
an heir , наслéдникъ.	a criminal , престóпу- никъ.
to spend , растoгáть.	from , съ , gov. the gen.
desire , желánie.	Tarpean , Тарпéйскíй.
an ambitious man , че- столюбецъ.	a rock , скалá.
not easily , нескóро.	drunkenness пьяниство.
to satisfy , насыщатъся.	to obscure , омрачáть.

understanding. Captain Cook *sailed round the world* three times. The dread of shame *deters* many from criminal actions. No one should *excuse himself* by pleading ignorance of the laws. *Satiated with earthly grandeur* Charles V retired to a monastery. Many nomadian tribes *have changed* their mode of life, and settled (themselves) in villages. No poet has

the understanding, раз-  
судокъ.  
Captain Cook, Капи-  
тánъ Куќъ.  
three times, три рáза.  
to sail round, обѣхать.  
the world, весь земной  
шаръ.  
the dread, опасénie.  
shame, спыдъ.  
to deter, отвращáть.  
many, мнóгихъ.  
criminal, худый.  
an action, постùпокъ.  
(by pleading, expres-  
sed by the ins.)  
ignorance, незнánie.  
the law, законъ.  
no one, никшó.

to excuse one's self,  
отговариваться.  
should, не дóлжно.  
to satiate, пресыщáть.  
earthly, земный.  
grandeur, величие.  
Charles, V. Карльпятый  
to retire, удали́ться.  
to, въ.  
a monastery, мона-  
стырь.  
nomadian, кочевый.  
a tribe, нарóдъ.  
to change, перемѣнить.  
mode, óбразъ.  
to settle, поселить V.  
203.  
a village, деревня.  
a poet, сшихошвóрецъ.

ever *surpassed* Homer. Dark clouds *forebode* rain. We should *prefer* what is useful to that, which is agreeable. In spring numbers of birds *flock* to the north from warm countries. Hypocrites *conceal* their vices under a mask of sanctity. Science *enlights* the understanding. Gamesters frequently *gamble away* all their fortunes.

---

**to surpass, превзойти.**

**Homer, Гомéръ.**

**dark, мрачный.**

**a cloud, облако.**

**to forebode, предвѣ-  
щать.**

**rain, дождь.**

**we should, должно.**

**to prefer, предпоги-  
тать.**

**that which is useful,  
полезное.**

**that which is agreeable,  
пріятный.**

**in the spring, весною.**

**to the north, на съверъ.**

**to flock, прилетѣть.**

**many, мнóжество.**

**from, изъ, gov. the gen.**

**warm, теплый.**

**a country, страна.**

**a hypocrite, лицемъръ.**

**to conceal, прикрыватъ.**

**a mask, личина.**

**sanctity, свѧтость.**

**science, наука, (to be  
put in the plu.)**

**to enlighten, просвѣ-  
щать.**

**a gamester, игрбкъ.**

**frequently, часпо.**

**to gamble away, про-  
игрывать.**

**a fortune, имѣніе.**



## S E C T. VIII.

## I M P E R S O N A L V E R B S.

§ 210. A verb is called impersonal, when its nominative or agent is unknown, or considered as such; this unknown agent is expressed in English by, *it*, *one*, *they*, *people* &c. and in the Russian language as follows:

1<sup>st</sup>. By the third person singular of the reflective verb.

говорится, it is said. кажется, it seems.

случается, it happens. требуется, it is required.

удаётся, it succeeds. повествуясь, it is related.

запрещается, it is forbidden. повелеваясь, it is commanded.

2<sup>d</sup>. By the third person singular of active or neuter verbs.

замерзаетъ, it freezes. зависитъ, it depends.

недостаётъ, it is not enough. належитъ, it belongs.

есть, there is. пропадаетъ, it is proper.

достаточно, it is enough. таечть, it thaws.

3<sup>ly</sup>. By the apocopated participle passive of the neuter gender.

скáзано, it is said.    вéльно, it is commanded.  
 пíсано, it is written.    прикаzано, it is ordered.  
 говорено, it is spoken.    запрещено, it is forbiden.  
 должно, it must.    позвóлено, it is permitted.  
 предпíсано, it is ordai-    отмéчено, it is marked.  
                                ned.

4ly. By a verb used in the form of an adverb :

вíдно, it is evident.    нùжно, it is necessary.  
 желáтельно, it is desirable.    угóдно, it pleases.  
 жáлосчно, it is pityable.    извéстно, it is known.  
 досáдно, it is vexing.    опасно, it is dangerous.

*Rem.* These, and other impersonals, formed in the same manner, are conjugated with the auxiliary verb, as,

Pres. прикаzано, it is ordered.

Past. прикаzано бýло, it was ordered.

Fut. прикаzано бùдетъ, it will be ordered.

5ly. Any active or neuter verb used in the third person plural without a pronoun :  
 пíшушъ, they write.    начинáютъ, they begin.  
 говоряшъ, they say.    скáзываютъ, they relate.

6ly. By the second person singular of the verb ; as, ему говорáшь, а онъ смеéшся, one speaks to him, and he laughs &c.

§ 211. Several verbs, which are impersonal in English have their subject in the Russian language; as,

- громъ гремитъ, it thunders.
- молнія сверкаешъ, it lightens.
- вѣтръ дуешъ, it blows.
- дождь идѣшъ, it rains.
- градъ идѣшъ, it hails.
- снѣгъ идѣшъ, it snows.



## S E C T. IX.

### I R R E G U L A R V E R B S.

§ 212. Irregular verbs are such as deviate from the general rules of conjugation.

§ 213. In the Russian language the irregular verbs are:

1<sup>st</sup>. All monosyllabical verbs, except:

- |                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| знать, to know.  | спѣсть, to mature.   |
| зрѣть, to ripen. | прѣсть, to perspire. |
| грѣть, to warm.  | смѣсть, to dare.     |
| дуть, to blow.   | тлѣсть, to decay.    |

2<sup>ly</sup>. All the verbs ending in the infinitive in *ть*.

3<sup>ly</sup>. All the verbs which terminate in the infinitive in *ти* or *ти* preceded by a consonant.

4<sup>ly</sup>. The verbs, which form the perfect branch without the aid of a preposition.

5<sup>ly</sup>. The verbs, which have a definite branch.

## 1st. MONOSYLLABICAL VERBS.

<i>Infin.</i>	1 per	2 per	3 per.	<i>Imp.</i>
бдѣть, to watch.	бд-ю	-иша	-иша	бди.
брить, to shave.	брѣ-ю	-еша	-иша	брѣй.
бѣть, to heat.	бѣ-ю	-еша	-иша	бей..
врашь, to lie.	вр-у	-еша	-иша	ври.
вышь, to burl.	во-ю	-еша	-иша	вой.
вишь, to wind.	ви-ю	-еша	-иша	вей.
гнишь, to rot.	гні-ю	-еша	-иша	гний.
гишь, to bend.	ги-у	-еша	-иша	гини.
дерать, to tear.	дер-у	-еша	-иша	дери.
дашь, to prolong.	да-ю	-ишь	-иша	даи.
ждать, to expect.	жд-у	-еша	-иша	жди.
жратъ, to devour.	жр-у	-еша	-иша	жри.
жашь, to squeeze.	жм-у	-еша	-иша	жми.
жашь, to reap.	жи-у	-еша	-иша	жни.
живѣть, to live.	жив-у	-еша	-иша	живи.
зовашь, to call.	зов-у	-еша	-иша	зови.
зрѣшь, to behold.	зр-ю	-ишь	-иша	зри.
крышь, to cover.	кро-ю	-еша	-иша	крой.
лагань, to lie.	л-ту.	-жеша	-гуша	лги.
льсшишь, to flatter.	ль-шу	-спиша	-спиша	льши.
лишь, to pour.	ль-ю	-еша	-иша	лей.
мчашь, to fly.	мч-у	-ишь	-иша	мчи.
мнишь, to knead.	мн-у	-еша	-иша	мни.
мнишь, to think.	мн-ю	-ишь	-иша	мни.
мшишь, to cover with moss.	мш-у	-ишь	-иша	мши.
мспишишь, to revenge.	м-шу	-спишишь	-спишишь	мспиши.
мышишь, to wash.	мо-ю	-фишь	-юиша	мой.
нышишь, to stamp.	но-ю	-еша	-иша	ной.
пить, to drink.	п-ю	-елишь	-иша	пей.
плывшишь, to float.	плыв-у	-еша	-иша	плыви.
пѣшь, to sing.	по-ю	-еша	-иша	пой.
рвашь, to tear.	ра-у	-еща	-иша	рви.

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>1 per.</i>	<i>2 per.</i>	<i>3 per.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>
ржать, to neigh.	рж-у	-ешь	-уяшъ	ржи.
рыть, to burrow.	ро-ю	-ешь	-юшъ	рой.
слать, to send.	ша-ю	-ешь	-юшъ	шал.
стлать, to spread.	стел-ю	-ешь	-юшъ	стелт.
слышь, to pass for.	слыв-у	-ешь	-ушъ	слыши.
стыть, to congeal.	стын-у	-ешь	-ушъ	стынь.
шкать, to weave.	ш-ку	-чешь	-кушъ	шки.
чашь, to honour.	чу-у	-иши	-ионъ	чиши.
шипь, to sew.	шю	-ешь	-юшъ	шей.

§ 214 The past and future tenses of these verbs are formed regularly, the former by changing the termination *ть* of the infinitive into *ль*, *ла*, *ло*, ex. *пѣть*, to sing; *я пѣль*, I sang.; and the latter by the addition of the future tense of the auxiliary verb *быть* to the infinitive mood, ex. *я буду пѣть*, I shall sing.

#### 214. VERBS ENDING IN *ть*.

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>1st. per.</i>	<i>2nd. per.</i>	<i>past.</i>
беречь, to preserve.	бере-гу	-жешь	берегъ.
влечь, to draw.	вле-ку	-чешь	влекъ.
жечь, to burn.	ж-гу	-жешь	жегъ.
мочь, to be able.	мо-гу	-жешь	могъ.
печь, to cook.	пе-ку	-чешь	пекъ.
стричь, to shear.	стри-гу	-жешь	стригъ.
сѣть, to cut.	сѣ-ку	-чешь	сѣкъ.
течь, to flow.	ше-ку	-чешь	текъ.
толочь, to pound.	шом-ку	-чешь	толокъ.

§ 215. The above verbs form the third person plural of the present tense, by the addition of *ть* to the first person singular, ex. берегу, берегутъ; влеку, влекущъ. The feminine and neuter genders of the past tense are formed from the masculine, by changing the final *ъ* into *ла*, *ло*, ex берéгъ, береглá, береглó.

**3dly. VERBS ENDING IN *ть* OR *ти* PRECEDED  
BY A CONSONANT.**

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>1st. per.</i>	<i>2nd. per.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
блюсти, to guard.	блю-ду	-ешь	блюль.
брести, to crawl.	бред-у	-ешь	брель.
тресть, to row.	греб-у	-ешь	гребъ.
гнесть, to oppress.	гнеш-у	-ешь	гнель.
грысть, to gnaw.	грыз-у	-ешь	грызъ.
клясть, to curse.	клян-у	-ешь	кляль.
мести, to sweep.	меш-у	-ешь	мель.
прясть, to spin.	прид-у	-ешь	пряль.
плести, to plait.	плет-у	-ешь	плель.
настичи, to pasture.	пас-у	-ешь	пасъ.
растичи, to grow.	роси-у	-ешь	росъ.
шрясти, to shake.	щряс-у	-ешь	шрясъ.
цвѣстить, to blossom.	цвѣти-у	-ешь	цвѣль.

§ 216. The third person plural of the present tense, and the feminine and neuter genders of the past are formed in the same manner as in the verbs ending in *ть*.

## 44. VERBS WHICH FORM THE PERFECT BRANCH WITHOUT A PREPOSITION.

<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>In d i c a t i o n e.</i>				<i>Imperative.</i>
		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Future.</i>		
Ind. брашь	to take.	берау	брашь	буау брашь	беи.	
Perf. взялъ		взялъ		возьму	возьми.	
Ind. давашь	to give.	даю	давалъ	бууду давашь	давай.	
Perf. дамъ.		дамъ		дамъ	дан.	
Ind. дѣвашь	to place.	дѣваю	дѣвалъ	бүду дѣвашь.	дѣвай.	
Perf. дѣмъ.		дѣмъ		дѣну	дѣни.	
I. начинать	to begin.	начинаю	начиналь	буау начинать	начинай.	
Perf. начатъ			нацааль	нацну.	начиши.	
Ind. падашь	to fall.	падаю	падаль	буау падашь	падай.	
Perf. пасни		пасъ		паду	пади.	
I. становиться	{to standup.	становлюсь	становилъся	буау становиться	становись.	
Perf. спѣшъ				спану	спани.	
I. ложишься	{to lie down.	ложусъ	ложился	буау ложишься	ложись.	
Perf. лечъ.		лечъ		лигу		

		51y. V E R B S W H I C H H A V E A D E F I N I T E V R A N C H.				
		In fin i t i v e.		In di c a t i v e.		
		Present.	Past.		Future.	
Ind. садишься	{ to sit down.	сажусь	садился	буду садишься	садись.	
Perf. съсыпь.		сѣмъ	съялъ.	съяу.	съяль.	
Ind. класпъ ,	{ to put.	кладу	кладъ.	буду класпъ	клади.	
Perf. положишь,				положу	положи.	
Ind. спашь,	{ to sleep.	сплю	спаль.	буду спашь	спи.	
Perf. уснушь ,		уснуль	уснуу.	усну	усни.	

Infinitive.	Indicative.			Imperative.
	Present.	Past.	Future.	
Ind. водить , Def. веди , Perf. свести ,	вожу веду	водилъ велъ	буду водить буду вести	води . веди .
Ind. возитъ , Def. вези , Perf. свезти ,	возжу везу	возилъ везъ	буду возить буду везти	свезди . вези .
Ind. вѣшатъ , Def. вѣши , Perf. свѣсти ,	вѣшало вѣшу	вѣшалъ вѣшу	буду вѣшать буду вѣсить	вѣшай . свѣти .
Ind. гонятъ , Def. гони , Perf. погнастъ ,	гоняю гоню.	гонялъ гналь	буду гонять буду гнасть	гоняй . гнаи .
		погналъ	погною	погони .

Infinitive.	Indicative.			Imperative.
	Present.	Past.	Future.	
Ind. лазить ,	лажу	лазилъ	буду лазить	лаズь
Def. лѣзть ,	лѣзу	лѣзъ	буду лѣзть	лѣзь.
Perf. слѣзть ,		слѣзъ	слѣзу	слѣзъ.
Ind. лепать ,	лепато	лепаль	буду лепать	лепай.
Def. лепѣтъ ,	лечу	лепѣль	буду лепѣть	лѣпи.
Per. полепѣтъ ,		полепѣль	полечу	полепи.
Ind. мѣрять ,	мѣрю	мѣрияль	буду мѣрять	мѣрий.
Def. мѣрипъ ,	мѣрю	мѣрилъ	буду мѣрипъ	мѣрь.
Per. смѣрипъ ,		смѣриль	смѣрию	смѣрь.
* Ind. носять ,	ношу	носилъ	буду носять	носин.
* Def. нести ,	несу	несъ	буду нести	неси.
Per. снести ,	снесъ		снесу	снеси.

Infinitive.		Indicative.		Imperative.
		Present.	Past.	Futur.
Ind. плавать ,	{ to swim.	плаваю	плавалъ	бууду плавать
Def. плыть ,	{	плыву	плыль	бууду плыть
Per. поплыть,			поплыль	поплыви.
Ind. ползать ,	{ to creep.	ползаю	ползаль	бууду ползать
Def. ползти ,	{	ползу	ползъ	бууду ползти
Per. сползти ,			сползъ	сползу
Ind. сажать ,	{ to plant.	сажаю	сажаль	бууду сажать
Def. садить ,	{	сажу	садиль	бууду садить
Per. посадить ,			посадиъ	посажу
Ind. маскать ,	{ to drag.	маскаю	маскалъ	бууду маскать
Def. тащить ,	{	тащу.	тащилъ	бууду тащить
Per. спащить ,				спашу

§ 217. The definite branch corresponds to the prefix in English of the different tenses of the auxiliary verb *to be* to the gerund of the principal verb, ex. онъ ведéть лóшадь въ конюшню, he is leading the horse to the stable.

§ 218. The verbs ходíть, to go, ъзди́ть, to ride and кùшать, to eat, have also the definite branch: идти, to be going; ъхать, to be riding, and ъешь, to be eating; which being too irregular to be inserted in the preceding table, the full conjugation of the definite and perfect branches is here subjoined.

*Conjugation of the verb идти, to be going.*

#### D E F I N I T E   B R A N C H.

*Infinitive mood, идти, to be going.*

#### I N D I C A T I V E   M O O D.

##### P r e s e n t.

###### S i n g.

я идù, I am going.

ты идéшь, thou art going.

онъ, она, оно идéть, he, she, it is going.

###### P l u.

мы идéмъ, we are going.

вы идéпе, you are going.

они, онъ идùпъ, they are going.

###### P a s t.

###### S i n g.

я шелъ, шла, шло, I was going.

ты шелъ, шла, шло, thou wast going.

**онъ шелъ**, he was going.

**она шла**, she was going.

**оно шло**, it was going.

*P l u.*

**мы шли**, we were going.

**вы шли**, you were going.

**они, онъ шли**, they were going.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

**я бùлу идти**, I shall be going.

**ты бùдешь идти**, thou wilt be going.

**онъ, она, оно бùдемъ идти**, he, she, it will be going.

*P l u.*

**мы бùдемъ идти**, we shall be going.

**вы бùдете идти**, you will be going.

**они, онъ бùдутъ идти**, they will be going.

**I M P R E V A T I V E M O O D.**

*S i n g.*

**иди**, go (thou).

**пусть онъ, она, оно идёшь**, let him, her, it go.

*P l u.*

**идите**, go (ye).

**пусть они, онъ идùтъ**, let them go.

*Participle.*

**Pres. идùщій, ая, ее, who or which is going.**

**Past. шéдшій, ая, ее, who or which was going.**

*G e r u n d.*

**Pres. идя or идучи**, going.

**Past. шéдши**, having gone.

( 223 )

PERFECT BRANCH.

*Infinitive mood*, пойти, to go.

*P a s t.*

*S i n g.*

я пошёлъ, пошлá, пошлó, I went.

ты пошёлъ, пошлá, пошлò, thou wentest.

онъ пошёлъ, he went.

она пошлá, she went.

оно пошлó, it went.

*P l u.*

мы пошли, we went.

вы пошли, you went.

они, онъ пошли, they went.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я пойду, I shall go.

ты пойдёшь, thou wilt go.

онъ, она, оно пойдёшь, he, she, it will go.

*P l u.*

мы пойдемъ, we shall go.

вы пойдете, you will go.

они, онъ пойдутъ, they will go.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*S i n g.*

пойдй, go (thou).

пусть онъ, она, оно пойдёшь, let him, her, it go.

*P l u.*

пойдемъ, let us go.

пойдите, go (ye).

пусть они, онъ пойдутъ, let them go.

( 224 )

*Participle.*

**Past.** пошёдшій , ая , ее , gone.

*G e r u n d.*

**Past.** пошёдши , having gone.

*Conjugation of the verb ъхать , to be riding.*

**DEFINITE BRANCH.**

**Infinitive mood ,** ъхашь , to be riding.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

*Present.*

*S i n g.*

я ъду , I am riding.

ши ъдешь , thou art riding.

онъ , она , ово ъдешь , he , she , it is riding.

*P l u.*

мы ъдемъ , we are riding.

вы ъдете , you are riding.

они , онѣ ъдуть , they are riding.

*P a s t.*

*S i n g.*

я ъхалъ , а , о , I was riding.

ши ъхалъ , а , о , thou wast riding.

онъ ъхалъ , he was riding.

она ъхала , she was riding.

оно ъхало , it was riding.

*P l u.*

мы ъхали , we were riding.

вы ъхали , you were riding.

они , онѣ ъхали , they were riding.

*F u t u r e.*

я буду ъхать, I shall be riding.

ты будешь ъхать, thou wilt be riding.

онъ	}	будешъ ъхать ,	he	will be riding.
она				
оно				

*P l u.*

мы будемъ ъхать, we shall be riding.

вы будете ъхать, you will be riding.

они, онъ будутъ ъхать, they will be riding.

## I M P E R A T I V E M O O D.

*S i n g.*

онъ	}	бдешъ ,	him	ride.
она				
оно				

пусть они, онъ будутъ, let them ride.

*Participle.*

Pres. ъдущи, ая, ее, who or which is riding.

Past. ъхавши, ая, ее, who or which was riding.

*G e r u n d.*

Pres. ъдучи, riding.

Past. ъхавши, having been riding.

## P E R F E C T B R A N C H.

*Infinitive mood*, поѣхать, to ride.

## I N D I C A T I V E M O O D.

*P a s t.**S i n g.*

я поѣхалъ, а, о, I rode.

ты поѣхалъ, а, о, thou rodest.

онъ поѣхалъ, he rode.  
она поѣхала, she rode.  
оно поѣхало, it rode.

*P l u.*

мы поѣхали, we rode.  
вы поѣхали, you rode.  
они, онъ поѣхали, they rode.

*F u t u r e.**S i n g.*

я поѣду, I shall ride.  
ты поѣдешь, thou wilt ride.  
онъ, она, оно поѣдешь, he, she, it will rid

*P l u.*

мы поѣдемъ, we shall ride.  
вы поѣдете, you will ride.  
они, онъ поѣдутъ, they will ride.

## I M P E R A T I V E M O O D.

*S i n g.*  
поѣзжай, ride (thou).

пусть  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{оно} \end{matrix} \right\}$  поѣдешь, let  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{him} \\ \text{her} \\ \text{it} \end{matrix} \right\}$  ride.

*P l u.*

поѣзжайте, ride (ye).  
пусть они, онъ поѣдутъ, let them ride.

*Participle.*

Past. поѣхавшій, ая, ее, who or which rode.

*Gerund.*

Past. поѣхавши, having ridden.

*Conjugation of the verb ъесть, to be eating.*

**D E F I N I T E   B R A N C H .**

*Infinitive mood, ъешь, to be eating.*

**I N D I C A T I V E   M O O D .**

*P r e s e n t.*

*S i n g .*

я ъмъ, I am eating.

ты ъши, thou art eating.

онъ, она, оно ъспъ, he, she, it is eating.

*P l u .*

мы ъдимъ, we are eating.

вы ъдите, you are eating.

они, онѣ, ъдятъ, they are eating.

*P a s t.*

*S i n g .*

я ъль, ъла, ъло, I was eating.

ты ъль, ъла, ъло, thou wast eating.

онъ ъль, he was eating.

она ъла, she was eating.

оно ъло, it was eating.

*P l u .*

мы ъли, we were eating.

вы ъли, you were eating.

они, онѣ ъли, they were eating.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g .*

я бѫду ъесть, I shall be eating.

ты бѫдешъ ъсть, thou wilt be eating.

онъ, она, оно бѫдешъ ъсть, he, she, it will  
be eating.

## P l u.

мы бùдемъ ъешь , we shall be eating.

вы бùдеше ъешь , you will be eating.

они, онъ, бùдущъ ъешь , they will be eating.

## I M P E R A T I V E M O O D .

## S i n g.

ъешь , eat (thou).

пусть онъ, она, оно ъешь , let him, her, it eat.

## P l u.

ъьшишь , eat (ye).

пусть они, онъ ъдàшь , let them eat.

## P a r t i c i p l e .

Pres. ъдàющiй, ая, ee, who or which is eating.

Past. ъвший, ая, ee, who or which was eating.

## G e r u n d .

Pres. ъдà , eating.

Past. ъвши , having eaten.

## P E R F E C T B R A N C H .

. *Infinitive mood*, съесть , to eat up.

## I N D I C A T I V E M O O D .

## P a s t .

## S i n g .

я съелъ , съела , съело , I ate up.

ты съелъ , съела , съело , thou atest &c.

онъ съелъ , he ate.

она съела , she ate.

оно съело , it ate.

( 229 )

*P l u.*

мы съели, we ate.

вы съели, you ate.

они, они съели, they ate.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я съемъ, I shall eat &c.

ты съешь, thou wilt eat.

онъ, она, оно съестъ, he, she, it will eat.

*P l u.*

мы съедимъ, we shall eat.

вы съедите, you will eat.

они, они съедятъ, they will eat.

**I M P E R A T I V E   M O O D.**

*S i n g.*

съешь, eat (thou) &c.

пусть онъ, она, оно съестъ, let him, her, it eat.

*P l u.*

съешьте, eat (ye).

пусть они, они съедятъ, let them eat.

*Participle.*

**Past.** съевшій, ая, ее, who or which ate &c.

*G e r u n d.*

**Pres.** съевши, having eaten &c.



## T H E M E XXVII.

## O N I R R E G U L A R V E R B S.

In countries where there is no wood they *burn* coal, turf and even straw. Oak-wood is employed (*goes*) in the building of ships. The grape vine *cannot* grow in cold climates. Many Nomadian tribes inhabit (*live in*) Siberia. The hawk *soars* above the clouds. People *make* (*plait*) baskets of willow branches. Small offences *lead*

where there is no wood,	cold , холóдный.
country , странá.	climate , климашъ.
to burn , жечь.	in , въ.
coal , кáменное ўголье.	Siberia , Сибирь.
turf , шурфъ.	to live , жить.
even , даже.	the hawk , ястребъ.
straw , солóма.	to soar , витъся.
oak-wood, дубóвый лéсъ.	above , надъ.
to go , идти.	a cloud , бблако.
in , на , gov. the acc.	a basket , корзина.
the building, строéніе.	to plait , плестъ.
a ship, корабль, V. § 40.	of , изъ, gov. the gen.
grape , виногráдный.	willow , ѹвовый.
vine , лозá.	branch , вѣтвь.
to be able , мозъ.	small , малый.
to grow , распти.	offence, проспùпокъ.
	to lead , вести.

to great crimes. Socrates *fell* a victim to the calumny and malice of his fellow-citizens Vasco de Gama *discovered* the passage by sea to the East - Indies (Eastern India) Mongolfier *invented* air balloons. Linæus *acquired* great fame by *reducing* (having reduced) natural history to a system. Peter the Great *established* the first Russian fleet. Where thou

great, большій.	Mongolfier, Монголь-
crime , преступлé-	фіеръ.
nie.	to invent, изобрѣсти.
Socrates, Сокрaтъ.	air, воздушный.
to fall , пастъ.	a balloon, шаръ.
a victim , жéршва.	Linaeus, Линей.
to , to be rendered by	to acquire, приобрѣсти.
the gen. case.	fame, слáва.
calumny , клевéтa.	by having, шéмъ что.
malice , злóба.	to reduce, привестý.
fellow-citizen , согра-	natural , есшéспен-
жданинъ.	ный.
Vasco de Gama, Васко	history , истóрія.
дe Гама.	a system , систéма.
to discover , найти.	Peter the Great, Пепръ
by sea , морскóй.	Великій.
the passage , путь.	to establish , завестí.
to , въ , gov. the acc.	Russian , Россíйскій.
Eastern , востóчный.	fleet , флошъ.
India , Индія.	where , гдѣ.

**hast not sown (there) thou wilt not reap.** *Come and take them,* said Leonidas to the king of Persia who demanded, that the Spartans should deliver up their arms.

---

to sow, съясть.	King, Царь.
to reap, пожать.	Persian, Персійський.
to come, прийти.	to demand, пребовать.
to take, взять.	a Spartan, Спартанецъ.
to say, отвѣчать.	to deliver up, отдать.
Leonidas, Леонидъ.	their arms, оружие.



## S E C T. X.

### [REMARKS ON THE USE OF THE TENSES AND MOODS.]

#### 1. *Tenses.*

§ 219. In general the present tense Russ answers to the present tense English.

§ 220. The present tense is sometimes used instead of the past in Russ, as well as in English, especially in narration, ex.

Наконéцъ наступá- At length the dismal  
етъ сшрáшная ночь; night comes on; black  
вéбо покрывáется чéр- clouds cover the sky,  
ными облакáми и ши- and a death-like si-

шина подобная смéр- lence reigns through  
ти обьемлетъ всю при- all nature.  
роду.

§ 221. In some instances the present tense is used instead of the future in both languages; as,

Она чрезъ мѣсяцъ от- She sets out on her  
правляется путеше- travels in a month.  
ствовать.

Я завтре обѣдаю дѣ- I dine at home to-  
ма. morrow.

§ 222. The past tense English preceded by the conjunction *if* or *whether* is rendered in Russ by the present tense; as,

Онъ спросилъ менѧ, He asked me, if I  
пишу ли я письмо. was writing a letter.

Онъ хотѣлъ знать, He wished to know,  
говорю ли я по Фран- if I spoke French.  
цузски.

Я сомнѣвался, дѣй- I doubted whether  
свѣтѣльно ли онъ чи- he actually *read* useful  
таетъ полезныя книги. books.

§ 223. The past indefinite is rendered by the imperfect tense in English, as,

Я вчера писалъ пись- I wrote some letters  
ма. yesterday.

Я никогда не читалъ I never *read* such an  
такой забавной книги. amusing book.

*Rem.* If the action be correlative, or continuing, when another commences, this tense may be rendered in English by the auxiliary verb *to be*, joined to the gerund of the principal verb; as,

Я писа́ль, когда́ онъ вошёль. I was writing, when he entered.

Я ду́малъ о васъ вчера́, когда́ я полу чилъ вáшу запáску. I was thinking of you yesterday, when I received your note.

224. The past perfect corresponds to both the perfect and pluperfect English. When the action is of recent occurrence, it may be rendered by the former, and when of more remote occurrence and correlative, by the latter; as,

Я написа́ль письмо. I have written the letter.

Вы мнѣ сказа́ли, что онъ ёже прогна́тель книгу́, а онъ еще читáль ее́, когда́ я вошёль. You told me that he had read the book through, and he was reading it, when I went in.

§ 225. The past tense of the iterative, in addition to its signification of repetition, marks the remoteness of the action, and may be rendered in English by *used to* with the infinitive of the principal verb; as,

**Соло́нь говáривалъ :** Solon used to say:  
познай самагó себѧ ! know thyself!

**Я ча́сто къ нему́ хá- живалъ.** I used often to visit him.

§ 226. The past tense of the semelfactive cannot be expressed by any particular tense in English without the aid of an adverb.

**Волна́ плеcнúла на пáлубу.** The wave broke (suddenly) on the deck.

**Ряды сомкпùлись и вóйско двинулось.** The ranks closed (at once) and the army moved (suddenly).

§ 227. The future tenses of the indefinite, perfect and semelfactive branches are rendered in English by the first future.

**Въ дерéвѣ я буду ча́сто ъзди́ти верхомъ.** In the country I shall often ride on horseback.

**Зáвтре я поїду за городъ.** To morrow I shall ride out of town.

**Онъ ничегó не трó- нешь.** He will not touch any thing.

§ 228. The Russian gerund present is rendered by the participle active English with the addition of *in*; as.

**Лóдка, переправлýсь чрезъ рѣку, опрокину- лась.** In crossing the river, the boat was upset.

**Читáя Гомéра я вос-  
хищаюсь красотою его  
стиховъ.**

*In reading Homer I  
am transported at the  
beauty of his poetry.*

§ 229. The gerund past is rendered in English by the gerund present of the auxiliary verb *to have*, connected with the participle past of the principal verb; as,

*Снявшись съ якоря, мы пустились въ море.* Having weighed anchor we put out to sea.

§ 230. The auxiliary verb *было* added to the past of the definite branch corresponds to the English pluperfect; as.

*Я сдѣялъ было ошибку, да успѣль ее по-правиши.* I had made a mistake, but took it in time, but corrected it in time.

§ 231. The same verb with the past tense of the verb *хотѣть* and the infinitive of the principal verb corresponds to the English *was going*; as,

*Я хотѣлъ было выѣхать, но былъ удер-жанъ дурною погодою.* I was going to ride, but was prevented by the bad weather.

§ 232. The auxiliary verb *бывало* added to the past tense of a verb, corresponds to the English *used to* followed by the infinitive; as,

*Я бывало бѣгалъ по лугамъ.* I used to run about the meadows.

**Я бывáло хáживаль** I used to walk thirty  
по тридцати верстъ versts a day.  
въ день.

*Rem.* Prefixed to the present tense it expresses the same idea in a more lively manner.

**Въ шкóль мы бывá- At school we used to  
ло ўчимся, а онъ и- study, while he was  
граeшъ. playing.**

## 2. *M o o d s.*

§ 233. The infinitive is used in the Russian language without any preposition or sign; as,

**Я желáю знать.** I wish to know.

**Учись говорить прá- Learu to speak cor-  
вильно.** rectly.

§ 234. When the infinitive Russ is preceded by the conjunction чтобы огдабы it expresses the end of the action; as ,

**Дабы хорошо знать языкъ, надоно много чишасть и писать.** It is necessary to read and write much to know a language well.

§ 235. The infinitive is frequently employed instead of the imperative; as,

**Исполнишь по приказанию.** Let this be executed according to the order.

**Быть по сему.** So be it.

§ 236. The infinitive is sometimes followed by the interrogative particle *ли*, in which case it expresses doubt; as,

Видáть-ли мнé еще разъ мою родину? Shall I see my native place once more?

When preceded by *не* it marks the certainty of the non-occurrence of an action; as,

Не видáть тебѣ бо-  
льше твоей родины. Thou wilt never see thy native place more.

§ 237. In addition to the manner of forming the imperative shewn in the conjugation it may be expressed by the prefix of the particle *да*; in which form it corresponds to the optative English.

Да сохранишь васъ Богъ. May God preserve you.

Да исполнится вá-  
ше желаніе. May your desire be gratified.

Да будешь воля  
твоя. Let thy will be done.

§ 238. There is neither conditional nor subjunctive mood in the Russian language; the former is expressed by the addition of the particle *бы* or *если бы* to the past indicative; as,

Безъ дружбы и люб-  
ви свѣтъ быль бы пе-  
чальною пустынею.

Without love and  
friendship the world  
would be a dismal wil-  
derness.

Еслибы я быль бо-  
гатъ.

If I were rich &c.

§ 239. The subjunctive is expressed in the Russian language by the particles чтобы, дабы, or хотя бы, added to the past tense of the indicative; as,

Онъ тре́буетъ, чтó-  
бы я съ нимъ пош-  
халъ.

He requires that I  
should go with him.

Дѣтей нака́зыва-  
ютъ, дабы они́ ис-  
правились.

Children are punish-  
ed, that they may re-  
form.



TABLE FOR THE CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

\* The perfect branch is not inserted in the above table as it is formed by the prefix of a preposition to the indefinite branch.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE.

## ON THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

*Howard's tomb.*

If I *tell* you, that at the very entrance of the town of Sympheropol, on the high road from Nicolaeff, there *stands* a monument to Howard, *you will think that I contradict myself* in an unpardonable manner — but *you will be mistaken*, the monument *is actually there*,

---

if, <i>если.</i>	to, expressed, by the
to tell, <i>сказать.</i>	gen.
at, y, gov. the gen.	Howard, Гоурдъ.
the very, <i>самый.</i>	to think, <i>подумать.</i>
entrance, <i>въездъ.</i>	to contradict, <i>проти-</i>
of the town, <i>въ грободъ.</i>	<i>воргтить.</i>
of Sympheropol, Сим-	in, expressed by the ins.
ферополь.	case.
on, по, gov. the dat.	unpardonable, <i>непро-</i>
high, <i>большой.</i>	<i>стішельный.</i>
road, <i>дорога.</i>	manner, <i>образъ.</i>
from, <i>отъ.</i>	but, <i>и.</i>
Nicolaeff, Николаевъ.	to be mistaken, <i>оши-</i>
there, not expressed.	<i>батъся.</i>
to stand, <i>стоять.</i>	actually, <i>подлинно.</i>
a monument, <i>памят-</i>	there, <i>тушъ.</i>
никъ.	to be, <i>находйтъся.</i>

high granite obelisk, the pedestal of which forms a sarcophagus with the *following* inscription: «Howard departed this life at the age of sixty five years, 1790.» It is *surrounded* by a circular stone wall with gates of iron railing opposite the inscription. This is all very well; thanks to him who first *conceived* the idea of honouring the memory of a man worthy of universal

---

high ,	высокій.	circular ,	круглый.
granite ,	гранітный.	stone ,	каменныи.
obelisk ,	обеліскъ.	wall ,	огрѣда
the pedestal ,	пьеде- сталь.	railing ,	рѣшѣтчаный.
to form ,	<i>составлѣть.</i>	wide ,	широкій.
a sarcophagus ,	сар- кофагъ.	gates ,	ворота.
with, съ , gov. the gen.		opposite ,	насупро- шивъ.
to follow ,	<i>следовать.</i>	all this ,	все эшо.
inscription ,	надпись.	is very well ,	шакъ.
to depart this life ,	<i>скон- чаться.</i>	thanks ,	и хвалá.
at the age of 65 ,	на 65омъ году отъ рож- дѣнія своего.	to conceive an idea ,	<i>захотѣть.</i>
to surround ,	<i>обно- сить.</i>	to honour ,	<i>погтить.</i>
		the memory ,	памѧть.
		worthy ,	достойный.
		universal ,	всеобщій.

esteem; but it is a monument, a cenotaph, and not the tomb of Howard. The ashes of this benefactor of the wretched *lie* about three versts from the town, where *I saw a miserable mouldering brick pyramid*, instead of the sun-dial, which *I hoped* to have found over his grave according to his last request. This circumstance may be perhaps unknown to you. In the year 1790, when a

---

esteem , уважéніе.	miserable , бѣдный.
but , чо.	brick , кирпичный.
it is , это.	pyramid , пирамида.
a cenotaph , кенотафъ.	instead , вмѣсто.
and not , а не.	the sun-dial , солнеч-
the tomb , гробница.	ные часы.
the ashes , прахъ (sing.)	to hope , желать.
benefactor , благотво-	to find , найти.
рїшель.	over , надъ , gov. the ins.
the wretched , спрѣж-	according , согласно.
дущie.	last , послѣдній.
to lie , потишасть.	request , воля.
about , въ , gov. the	circumstance , обсто-
prep.	ѧтельство.
three , V. § 130.	may be perhaps , можетъ
a verst , верстá.	быть.
from , отъ.	unknown , неизвѣс-
where , и тамъ шо.	но.
to see , видѣть.	when , когда.

\* \*

contagious putrid fever *raged* in the Crimea, Howard *happened* to be at Cherson on his way to Constantinople. You may easily *imagine*, that it *was difficult* for a man, who *considered* it as a sacred duty daily *to visit* prisons, hospitals and dungeons, *to escape* the contagion: he actually *fell* a sacrifice to it. *Feeling* that

---

to rage, <i>свирѣпство-</i>	man, <i>человѣкъ.</i>
вать.	<i>to consider, ставить</i>
in the Crimea, <i>въ Кры-</i>	<i> себѣ.</i>
му.	as, <i>въ</i> , <i>gov.</i> the acc.
contagious, <i>прилипчи-</i>	sacred, <i>неминуемый.</i>
вый.	duty, <i>обязанность.</i>
putrid, <i>гнилой.</i>	daily, <i>ежеднѣвно.</i>
fever, <i>горячка.</i>	<i>to visit, посѣщать.</i>
to happen, <i>случиться.</i>	a prison, <i>шюрмá.</i>
to be, not expressed.	an hospital, <i>больнїца.</i>
at, <i>въ</i> , <i>gov.</i> the prep.	a dungeon, <i>острѣгъ.</i>
Cherson, <i>Херсонъ.</i>	<i>to escape, избѣжать.</i>
on, <i>на</i> , <i>gov.</i> the prep.	the contagion, <i>зарѣза.</i>
way, <i>путь.</i>	actually, <i>дѣйствицель-</i>
Constantinople, <i>Царь-</i>	<i>но.</i>
градъ.	<i>to fall, дѣлаться, gov.</i>
easily, <i>легко.</i>	<i>the ins.</i>
to imagine, <i>предста-</i>	a victim, <i>жѣртва.</i>
вить себѣ.	it, V. § 155.
you may, <i>можешь.</i>	<i>to feel, гуѣстовать.</i>

his end was approaching ; he *called* his two friends, with whom he could *converse* in his native language , and *having bid* them *farewell* said : *I wish* for no monument , and *beg* you only to place a simple sun-dial over my grave . But this request *was forgotten*, there is no sun-dial over his grave ; and it is a pity, a great pity ! His friends *erected* a little brick pyramid, but now even that simple monument is *mouldering away*,

---

end , конéцъ.	to place , постáвить.
was approaching , бли- зокъ.	grave , могила.
to call, призвáть къ себѣ.	simple , простый.
a friend , прíятели.	sun-dial , солнечные часы.
to be able , могъ. V.	request , повелѣніе.
§ 215.	to forget , забыть.
to speak , говорить.	there is no , нѣтъ.
native , природный.	it is a pity, этого жаль.
language , языкъ.	a great pity, очень жаль.
to bid farewell , про- ститься.	to erect , воздвигать.
them , съ ними.	a little , маленький.
to say , сказать.	now , теперь.
monument, памятникъ.	even , и.
no , никакого.	that , это.
to wish , хотѣть.	simple , простой.
to beg , просить.	to moulder away , раз- сыпаться.

and e'er long the place will be unknown where  
lie the remains of this friend of suffering hu-  
manity.

*Mouravieff.*

---

e'er long, вскóрѣ.	to lie, лежáть.
will be unknown, не	the remains, останки.
узнáютъ.	of suffering humanity,
the place, мѣсто.	спрада́льцевъ.

---

## C H A P. VI.

### P A R T I C I P L E S.

§ 240. The participle is a part of speech derived from the Verb, and combines the meaning of the relative pronoun *кто*, who; *кошорый*, which, or *что*, that, with the signification of the verb, from which it is derived, ex. *человѣкъ*, *любящій пра́вду*, the man, *who loves truth*.

§ 241. Participles have the same declension as adjectives and vary according to the number, gender and case of the substantive, to which they are prefixed, ex. *лучи восходящаго солнца*, the rays of the *rising sun*, &c.

## DECLINATION OF PARTICIPLES.

зnaющiй, knowing, or who knows.

*S i n g.*

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
-------------	-------------	--------------

Nom. знающiй,	знающая ,	знающее .
Gen. знающаго ,	знающей ,	знающаго .
Dat. знающему ,	знающей ,	знающему .
Acc. } знающаго ,	знающую ,	знающес .
} знающiй ,		
Ins. знающимъ ,	зnaющею ,	знающимъ .
Prep. о знающемъ ,	о знающей ,	о знающемъ .

*Plur.*

Nom. знающiе ,	знающiя ,	знающiя .
Gen. знающихъ ,	знающихъ ,	знающихъ .
Dat. знающимъ ,	знающимъ ,	знающимъ .
Acc. } знающихъ ,	знающихъ ,	знающiя .
} знающiе ,	знающiя ,	
Ins. знающими ,	знающими ,	знающими .
Prep. о знающихъ	о знающей ,	о знающихъ .



## THEME XXVIII.

## ON THE DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES.

The earth, *inhabited* by us is a planet, *belonging* to the solar system. The ruins of ancient Rome are monuments of its *former* greatness. A man, (*who is*) unmindful of his future destination, is like a traveller, *who has* no other end but the pleasures of the present moment. Russia is divided from America by Behring's straits,

---

the earth, земля.	destination, опредѣлѣ- ніе.
by us, нами.	
to inhabit, обитать.	is like, подобенъ.
a planet, планета.	a traveller, путешѣ- ственикъ,
to belong, принадле- жать.	not to have, не имѣть.
solar, солнечный.	any other, другой.
system, система.	end, цѣль.
the ruins, развалины.	but, кромѣ.
ancient, древній.	of the present moment, минутный.
Rome, Римъ.	
a monument, памят- никъ.	pleasure, удовольствіе.
former, бывшій.	Russia, Россія.
its, его.	to divide, опредѣлять.
greatness, величіе.	from, отъ.
to be unmindful, за- бывать.	America, Америка.
	Behring, Берингъ.
	strait, проливъ.

*which are about 73 versts wide. Of the rivers, which fall into the Caspian sea, the Volga is the most considerable. Among the poets, who have distinguished themselves in modern times in England, the most celebrated are Scott and Byron. Epaminondas, mortally wounded in the battle of Mantinea, said to his friends, who lamented that he should die without leaving any children; I leave two daughters, the victories of Leuctra*

which are, rendered by the participle of <i>имѣть</i> ,	Epaminondas, Епаминонда.
to have.	mortally, смертельно.
a verst, верста.	to wound, ранить.
a river, река.	the battle, сражение.
to fall, впадать.	Mantinea, Мантина.
Caspian, Каспийский.	to say, сказать.
the Volga, Волга.	a friend, другъ.
considerable, значительный.	to lament, соболезновать.
among, изъ числа.	that he should die, о томъ что умирал.
a poet, поэтъ.	without leaving, не оставляешь.
to distinguish, прославить.	a child, дитя.
modern, новѣйший.	to leave, оставляешь.
time, время.	daughter, дочь.
England, Англия.	the victory, победа.
Scott, Скоттъ.	Leuctra, Левктра.
Byron, Байронъ.	

and Mantinea. Ignorance *united* with modesty is more bearable than knowledge *accompanied* by haughtiness. A *perturbed* mind, like a *trouled sea*, reflects all the objects, *which surround it, distorted and broken*, communicating to them that disordered motion, by which it is itself *agitated*. It is necessary for man, who is hourly *tempest-tost* on the sea of life, to have faith

---

ignorance, невѣжество.	to distort, <i>обезобра- живать.</i>
to unite, <i>соединять.</i>	
with, съ.	to break, <i>преломлять.</i>
modesty, скрѣмность.	to communicate, <i>со- общать.</i>
bearable, сносный.	
knowledge, знаніе.	that, <i>тоже.</i>
to accompany, <i>сопро- вождатъ.</i>	disordered motion, <i>волненіе.</i>
haughtiness, спесь.	to agitate, <i>обуреватъ.</i>
to perturb, <i>встрево- жить.</i>	for, expressed by the dat.
mind, духъ.	hourly, <i>ежечасно.</i>
like, подобно.	sea, мѣре.
to trouble, <i>взволноватъ.</i>	life, жизнь.
the sea, море.	to tempest-toss, <i>обуреватъ.</i>
to reflect, отражать.	it is necessary, <i>необ- ходимо.</i>
all, все.	
to surround, <i>окружать.</i>	to have, имѣть.
an object, предметъ.	faith, вѣра.

in Providence for his pilot. The first step beyond the cottage presented me with the most enchanting view. The rays of the *rising* sun, *intercepted* by a range of rocky hills, shot their *enlivening* light through the rugged openings ; the valley partly *illumined*, and partly *hid* in shade, exhibited the most varied display of colours. The Tartar village with its huts, *sending forth* their white clouds of

in , въ.	through , сквозь.
Providence , Провидѣ- ніе.	rugged opening, юголь.
step , шагъ.	to enliven , оживлѣть.
beyond , за.	light , свѣтъ.
the threshold , поро́гъ.	the valley , долина.
cottage , хижина.	partly , часцю.
to present, доспѣвашъ.	to illuminate, освѣщать.
enchanting, восхити- тельный.	to hide , скрыватъ.
view , взглядъ.	shade , тѣнь.
a ray , лучъ.	to exhibit , являшъ.
to rise , восходи- ти.	varied, разнообрѣзный.
to intercept, перехвѣ- тывать.	display , игрá.
a range , смыка.	colour , цвѣтъ.
rocky , каменный.	Tartar , Тата́рскій.
a hill , гора.	a village , дерѣвня.
to shoot, броса- шь.	hut , домикъ.
	to send forth, пускать.
	white , бѣлый.
	column , облако.

*curling smoke through the dark foliage of the trees, was seated like the ruling genius of the mountain scene, which served as its crown; amidst the groves which girded it as with a luxuriant garland; and on the shore of the great deep, which brought to its feet the tribute of its waves.*

---

to curl , <i>виться.</i>	a crown , <i>венецъ.</i>
smoke , <i>дымъ.</i>	midst , <i>между.</i>
dark , <i>густый.</i>	a grove , <i>роща.</i>
foliage , <i>сень.</i>	to gird , <i>препоясывать.</i>
a tree , <i>дерево.</i>	as , <i>въ образъ.</i>
was seated, <i>величалось.</i>	luxuriant, <i>роскошный.</i>
like , <i>какъ.</i>	a garland , <i>тиары.</i>
the ruling genius , <i>ца-</i> <i>рица.</i>	shore , <i>берегъ.</i>
of the mountain scene, <i>между горъ.</i>	the great deep , <i>море.</i>
to serve , <i>служить.</i>	to bring , <i>приносить.</i>
as its , <i>ей.</i>	foot , <i>нога.</i>
	tribute , <i>дань.</i>
	a wave , <i>волна.</i>



---

## C H A P. VII.

### A D V E R B S.

§ 242. The adverb is commonly prefixed to the verb to express some qualifying circumstance of the action ; as ,

говори́шь *внáтно* , to speak distinctly.

поступа́шь *благоразúмно* , to act prudently.

§ 243. The only variations, which adverbs are subject to, are the degrees of signification \* which are formed by changing the termination *о* into *те* for the comparative, and by prefixing *пре* , *очень* , or *весъмá* to the positive for the superlative degree ; as ,

быстро , rapidly. быстрѣ , more rapidly.

мнóго , much , премнóго , very much.

рано , early , очень рано , very early.

успéшно , success- весъмá ус- very success-  
sully. пѣшно. fully.

#### 1. *Adverbs of place, in answer to the question гдѣ ? where ?*

здесь , here. гдѣ нибùдь , any-where.

тамъ , there. вездѣ {everywhere.

тутъ , here. повсюду }

---

\* There are however diminutive adverbs, which are formed in the same manner as diminutive adjectives : маловáшо , rather little ; ранéнько , pretty early etc.

йндѣ , somewhere.	въ низѣ , below.
кругомъ , around.	въ пра́во , on the right.
вокрѣгъ , about.	въ лѣво , on the left.
внутрѣ , inside.	посредѣ , in the middle.
снаружи , outside.	близко , near.
въ передѣ , before.	далеко , far.
назадѣ , behind.	вдали , at a distance.
на верхѣ , above.	вблизѣ , near, at hand.

2. *Adverbs of movement, in answer to the questions* *куда?* *whither* *откуда?*  *whence.* &c.

сюдѣ , hither.	отсюда , hence.
тудѣ , thither.	оттуда , thence.
кудѣ нибѣдь , somewhere.	извнушрѣ , from out.
	извнѣ , from without.
прѣмо, straightforward.	съ верхѣ , from above.
вкосъ , on one side.	съ низѣ , from below.
вдоль , along.	съ пѣреди , from before.
поперѣгъ , across.	съ зѣди , from behind.
вверхъ , up.	иѣдали , from far.
внизъ , down.	изблизї , from near.
внутрѣ , into.	съ лѣва , from the left.
назадѣ , behind.	съ пра́ва , from the right.
впередѣ , before.	отовсюду , from all
вдаль , distantly.	sides.
вонъ , away.	прочь , away.

3. *Adverbs of time, in answer to the question  
когда? when?*

тогдá , then.	пóздо , late.
тепéрь , now.	дóлго , long.
нынé , at present.	ужé , already.
сейчáсь , this minute.	отнынé , henceforth.
тотчáсь , immediately.	впредь , henceforward.
и ногдá , sometimes.	сегóдня , to day.
всегдá , always.	зáвтра , tomorrow.
никогдá , never.	вчérá , yesterday.
рёдко , seldom.	трéтьяго дня , the day before yesterday.
чáсто , often.	послé зáвтра , the day after tomorrow.
давнó , long ago.	éжегóдно , annually.
не давни , lately.	éжеднéвно , daily.
вèчно , eternally.	постепéнно , gradually.
издáвна , long since.	ѝсподоволь , by and by.
прéжде , before.	покá , until.
послé , after.	посредí , in the midst .
потóмъ , then.	
ráно , early.	

4. *Adverbs marking the order of time.*

во пéрвыхъ , in the first place.	спервá , at first.
во вто́рыхъ , in the se- cond place.	прéждe , before.
сначáла , from the be- ginning.	пошóмъ , afterward.
	за сýмъ , after this.
	мáло по мáлу , little by little.

далѣе , farther.	снова ,
наконѣць , at last.	вновь ,
напослѣдокъ , at length.	опять ,

5. *Adverbs of repetition , in answer to the question сколько разъ ?*

спо́лько разъ , so many	и́сколько разъ , seve- times.
однáжды ,	многокráтно , frequi-
еди́ножды ,	ентly.
однокráтно ,	чáсто , often.
двáжды , twice ,	сто разъ , a hundred times.

6. *Adverbs of quantity, in answer to the question сколько ? how much?*

спо́лько , so much.	довóльно , enough.
много , much.	достáточно , sufficient-
мáло , little.	ly.
и́сколько , some.	слишкомъ , too much.

7. *Adverbs of affirmation.*

да , yes.	конéчно , certainly.
шакъ , so.	вèрно , faithfully.
шóчно , exactly.	действишельно , actu-
впра́мь , surely.	ally.
подлино , indeed.	безъ сомнéнія , without doubt.

право, truly. на вѣрное, for certain.  
въ сїмомъ дѣлѣ, in fact.

### **8. Adverbs of negation.**

не , not.	ошниूдъ, } not at all.
нѣпъ , no ,	никакъ, }
нимало , } not in the	ничего , nothing.
ничутъ , } least	

### 9. *Adverbs of doubt.*

едвá ли , scarcely.      можетъ быть, perhaps.  
авóсь, perchance.      можетъ статься, maybe.

#### 10. *Adverbs of augmentation and excess.*

горáздо , much.	слишкомъ , too much.
очень , } very.	чрезвычайно , uncom-
весьма , }	monly.
крайне , }	совсѣмъ , entirely.
излишне , }	вовсе , altogether.

### 11. *Adverbs of comparison.*

шакъ какъ, so.	равнó, equally.
шакъ же какъ, as.	подобно, like.
какъ бы, { as if.	иначé, otherwise.
бùдшо, {	точно, exactly,

## 12. *Adverbs of explanation.*

что есть, that is.                    именно, namely.

**13. Adverbs of quality in answer to the question  
какъ? how?**

такъ, so.	обыкновéнно , com-
шакимъ óбразомъ, in	monly.
such a manner.	
хорошó, well.	охóтно , willingly.
хùдо , badiy.	добровóльно , volun-
	tarily.
изрядно , tolerably.	насíльно , forceably.
дùрно , indifferently.	нарóчно , purposly.
шакъ и сякъ , so-so.	ѝвно , evidently.
порядочно, pretty well.	легкó , easily.
посрéдственno , mid-	удóбно , conveniently.
lingly.	дáромъ , gratis.
вдругъ , all at once.	шáйно , secretly.
внезáпно , suddenly.	шщéшно , fruitlessly
опромéшчиво , rashly.	&c.

**14. Adverbs of interrogation.**

гдë , where.	скóлько , how many.
кудá , whither.	скóлько разъ , how
откуда , whence.	many times.
докùда , how far.	какъ , how.
когда , when.	какимъ óбразомъ in
докóлë , till when.	what way.
сколь долго , how long.	почтó , why.
какъ чàсто , how often.	зачéмъ , for what.



## THEME XXIX.

## ON ADVERBS.

The people are happy *there*, where industry is combined with good morals. We see *everywhere* traces of the wisdom of the Creator. Magellan performed the first voyage round the world. There is *no where* such a dense population as in China. In Egypt, where formerly the sciences flourished, ignorance *now* reigns. Anger *often* causes us to act *rashly*. As we ap-

are happy ,	благодéн-	there is ,	нѣть.
	ствуетъ.	such ,	тако́й.
industry ,	трудолюбіе.	a dense population ,	
to combine ,	соеди-		многолюдство.
	нять.	China ,	Китáй.
morals ,	нрáвы.	Egypt ,	Егíпетъ.
to see ,	видѣть.	a science ,	наука.
a trace ,	слѣдъ.	to flourish ,	процвѣ-
wisdom ,	премудрость.		тать.
of the Creator ,	Бóжіей.	to reign ,	цáрство-
Magellan ,	Магеллánъ.		вать.
to perform ,	совершить.	anger ,	гнѣвъ.
voyage ,	путешéствіе.	to cause ,	засставлять.
round ,	кругомъ ,	to act ,	дѣйствовать.
	gov.	as we approach ,	при-
the gen.			ближáясь.
the world ,	свѣтъ.		

proach the land we discover *first* the summits of the mountains, *then* the tops of towers, and at *last* the shore itself. A grateful man remembers *eternally* a benefit once conferred upon him. To speak *much* and reflect *little* is a sign of frivolity. We do not know *for certain how far* the Phenicians extended their navigation. *There is* no rule without exception. In some arts we can *scarcely* be compared with the ancients. A gentle spirit, *like* a smooth lake,

---

land, бéрегъ.	a Phenician, Фини-
to discover, примѣчать.	кіянинъ.
(to observe.)	to extend, просши-
summit, вершина.	рапъ.
a mountain, гора.	navigation, плаваніе.
tops, верхъ.	a rule, пра́вило.
a tower, бáшня.	exception, изключé-
the shore, бéрегъ.	ніе.
a grateful man, bla-	art, иску́ство.
годárный.	we can, мы можемъ.
to remember, пом-	to compare, равняшься.
нить.	with, съ.
to confer, оказáть.	the ancients, дре́вніе.
a benefit, услùга.	gentle, спокóйный.
a sign, признакъ.	spirit, душá.
frivolity, легкомысліе.	smooth, зеркальный.
to know, знать.	lake, озеро.

reflects every object in its just proportions. The Lacedæmonians, accustomed their children from their very infancy to speak *briefly* and *distinctly*. It is *easier* to govern the passions than to conquer them. People forgive malice *sooner* than contempt. Many people write *better* than they speak, and others speak *better* than they write. *Sooner*, said Pyrrhus, will the sun swerve from its course,

---

to reflect, отражáшь.	to conquer, побѣж-
object, предмéшь.	дáшь.
in въ.	people, люди.
just, надлежáшій.	soon, скóро.
proportion, видъ.	to forgive, прощáшь.
a Lacedæmonian, Ла-	malice, злоба.
кедемонянинъ.	than, нежели.
from, съ.	contempt, презрѣніе.
very, сáмый.	many, многіе.
infancy, младéнчество.	to write, писать.
to accustom, пріучáшь.	to speak, говорить.
a child, дитя V. § 51.	to say, сказать.
to speak, говорить.	Pyrrhus, Пирръ.
briefly, крашко.	will swerve, совра-
distinctly, ясно.	тишся.
to govern, управляшь.	from, съ.
passion, страсти.	course, путь, V, § 40.

than Fabricius from the path of virtue. Leaving our own country (Russia) at the commencement of autumn, in a few days we passed to the south of England, where delightful weather still lingered; and when even there the rains and fogs commenced, and the vegetative force of Nature began to decay, in the stormy month of December we passed over

---

its , свой.	delightful, прекрасный.
Fabricius , Фабриций.	weather , погода.
path , спэзя.	to linger, продолжать-ся.
to leave , оставилъ.	
our own country, отé- чество.	even , и.
Russia , Россия.	to commence , начи- нашься.
at , при , gov. the prep.	rain , дождь.
commencement , на- ступлénie.	fog , шуманье.
autumn , осень.	vegetative, распáтель- ый.
in , въ.	force , сила.
a few , нѣсколько.	to decay , мертвѣши.
day , день.	stormy , бùрный.
to pass , перейти.	month of December ,
to , въ , gov. the acc.	Декабрь.
south , южный.	to pass over , перено- ситься.
England , Англія.	

to the still warmer climate of the south of Europe. *There* the most delightful summer again met us. All creation was full of life, every thing blossomed, every thing was clothed in green, and thousands of insects murmured in the air.

---

to , въ , gov. the acc.	full , исполнено.
still warmer , жаркий.	life , жизнь.
climate , климатъ.	to blossom , цветсті.
Europe , Европа.	was clothed , одѣто.
delightful, прекрасный.	green , зелень.
summer , лѣто.	an insect , насекомое.
to meet , встрѣтишь.	to murmur , шумѣть.
creation , твореніе.	the air , воздухъ.



---

---

## С Н А Р. VIII.

### P R E P O S I T I O N S.

§ 244. Prepositions serve to point out the relation, in which objects stand to each other, as,  
книга лежитъ на столѣ, the book lies *on* the table.  
красота безъ пріятности, beauty *without* grace &c.

The following is a list of the prepositions alphabetically arranged. \*

безъ, without.	изъ, from.
близъ or близко, near.	кромѣ, besides.
вдоль, along.	къ or ко, to.
вместо, instead.	между, between.
внутри, inside.	мимо, near by.
внѣ, outside.	на, on.
возлѣ, near.	надъ, above.
вокругъ, around.	напротивъ, opposite.
въ ог во, in.	около, about.
для, for.	окресть, around.
до, until, before.	опричъ, besides.
за, after.	отъ, from.

---

\* For the different cases, which they govern see Syntax, Chap. II. Sect. VI.

но , according , until.	прóшивъ , against.
повéрхъ , above.	rádi , for the sake .
пóдлъ , close.	сверхъ , in addition.
подъ , under.	сквозь , through.
позади , behind.	спуспя , after.
поперéгъ , across.	среди , amidst.
пóслѣ , after.	супрошивъ , opposite.
предъ , before.	съ , or со , from , with , about.
прéжде , before.	
про , about.	чрезъ , through , by .



## Т Н Е М Е XXX.

## ON PREPOSITIONS.

There is no fruit *without* labour. *Near* Schafhausen is the celebrated fall of the Rhine. Savages use sharp stones, or fish bones, *instead*

labour , трудъ.	a fall , водопáдъ.
there is no , нéшъ.	savages , дíкіе .
fruit , плодъ.	iron , жel'зо.
Schafhausen , Шафгау-	to use , употребляшъ.
зенъ.	sharp , óстрый.
is , находится.	a stone , камень.
celebrated , слáвный.	a fish , рыба.
of the Rhine , Рейнскíй.	bone , кость.

of iron. Learning serves as an ornament to man *in* prosperity, and a refuge *in* adversity. The planets revolve *round* the sun. The Ural mountains divide Siberia *from* European Russia. Pleasures are the rocks, *on* which many young people are wrecked. They press *after* them with all sails set; but *without* compass to guide their course, and *without* helm

---

iron , жельзо.	Siberia, Сибирь.
learning , учéние.	pleasure , упъхи.
to serve , служить.	a rock , скалá.
prosperity , счастье.	on , о.
as, expressed by the ins. an ornament, украшé-	to be wrecked , раз- бивáться.
níe.	many, большая часпь.
adversity , несчастье.	young, молодыи.
a refuge, прибъжище.	people , люди.
a planet, планéта.	to press, пускáться.
to revolve, обращáться	after, за.
the sun , солнце.	with all sails set, на всехъ парусахъ.
Ural, Уральскíй.	compass , компасъ.
a mountain , горá.	to , для.
to divide, отдељить.	guide , направлénie.
European , Европéй- скíй.	course , плáванie.
Russia , Россíя.	helm , кормило.

to steer the vessel , and so *instead* of enjoyment, they meet with shame and disappointment. What melancholy ideas of the transitory grandeur of nations are excited in Italy, at the foot of ancient columns ; on the top of triumphal arches ; *in the interior* of ruined tombs , and *on* the mossy banks of fountains. Apollo is sometimes represented *with* a lyre,

---

to steer the vessel ,	мо-	Italy , Италія.
гùщаго управлѧть		the foot , подóшва.
кораблéмъ.		ancient , дрéвнíй.
and so , и пошомù.		a column , колónна.
enjoyment , удоволь-		the top , высотá.
спвie.		triumphal , торжéст-
to meet , вспрѣчáшь.		венный.
shame , стыдъ.		arch , ворóшта.
disappointment , огор-		of ruined , развалив-
чénie.		шихся.
what , сколь.		a tomb , гробníца.
melancholy , печáльный.		mossy , мши́сший.
idea , мысль.		bank , бéреgъ.
transitory , непостойн-		a fountain , истóчникъ.
ный.		Apollo , Аполлонъ.
grandeur , величíе.		sometimes , иногда.
nation , народъ.		to be represented , изоб-
are excited , рождаюш-		ражáшься.
ся.		a lyre , лира.

\*\*

and sometimes with a drawn bow. Innocence smiles like a vernal morning, upon her elevated brow sit peace of mind and tranquility; unfading roses and lilies bloom upon her cheeks. The playful zephyrs sporting around her, wanton with her white and airy robe and floating locks. Crowned with the flowers of the Graces she glides along the smiling earth,

---

drawn ,	нашàнущий.	playful ,	рèзвый.
bow ,	лукъ.	zephyr ,	зефиръ.
innocence, невинность.		to sport ,	вìться, irr.
to smile ,	улыбаться.	to wanton ,	игráть, gov.
like ,	подобно , gov. the dat.		the ins.
elevated ,	высокий.	airy ,	лéгкий.
brow ,	челò.	white ,	блéлый.
to sit ,	изображаться.	robe ,	одéжда.
peace of mind ,	ду- шевный миръ.	floating,	распущéнный.
tranquility ,	спокой- ствie.	lock ,	вóлось.
unfading, неувядаемый.		crowned ,	увéнчанный.
a rose ,	róза.	flower ,	цвéть.
a lily ,	лѝлія.	the Graces ,	Гráци.
to bloom ,	цвéстí.	to glide ,	шéствоватъ.
the cheek ,	ланьта.	along ,	по.
		smiling ,	благословéн- ный.
		the earth ,	земля.

storms and clouds flee *at* her approach, and celestial happiness spreads itself *before* her *in* sunny rays. When mortals obeyed the voice of beneficent Nature, and lived *in* love, tranquility and peace, innocence resided *upon* earth; but when man, *in* a fatal hour of error, spurned the laws of nature, then innocence returned (*up*) to heaven, her native place. *Since* that time she rarely visits the

---

a storm , бùря.	love , любóвь V. § 36.
clouds , мрáки.	tranquility , шишиá.
at her approach , ошъ	peace , миръ.
не.	to reside , обитáпь.
to flee , удаляться.	fatal , гибельный.
celestial , небéсный.	hour , часъ.
happiness , благоство.	error , заблуждénie.
to spread one's self , из-	to spurn , презирáпь.
ливашься.	to return , возвращáпь-
гau , лучъ.	ся.
sunny , солнечный.	up , на.
a mortal , смéртный.	heaven , нéбо , V. § 45.
to obey , повиновáпь-	to , въ.
ся.	her native place , своé
the voice , гласъ.	отéчесшво.
beneficent , благодéв-	since , съ.
щельный.	rarely , рѣдко.
to live , жить.	to visit , посещáпь.

earth and is seldom seen by mortal eye. (visible to the eye of mortal).

---

to be visible , бывáшь the eye , óко , V. § 45.  
въдиму. a mortal , смéртный ,  
to , къ . V. § 23.

---



---

## C H A P. IX.

### C O N J U N C T I O N S.

§ 245. The conjunction is a part of speech, which serves to connect words and parts of sentences.

§ 246. Conjunctions are divided, according to their signification, into :

#### 1) *Connective.*

и , and.	такъ , so.
да , and , but.	не тóлько , not only.
тákже , also.	но и , but.
какъ , as.	дáже , even.

#### 2) *Distributive.*

йли , or.	ни , not , nor.
лìбо , either.	нéжели , than.

3) *Conditional.*

éжели , if.	бùде , in case.
то , then.	кóли , if.
когда , when.	шогда , then.

4) *Concessive.*

пусТЬ , or пускáй , let.	скóль ни , however
хотя , {	much.
хотя бы , {	although.
правда , true.	какъ ни , however.
	чтó ни , whatever.

5) *Adversative.*

а , but.	напрóшивъ , on the con-
но , but.	trary.
однако , still.	только or шóкмо , only.
же , than.	не взирая на то , not-
впрóчемъ , otherwise.	withstanding.

6) *Causative.*

ибо , for.	потомù что , {
поелику , because.	для шогó чшо , { because.

7) *Conclusive.*

по сему , hence.	слéдовательно , con-
и такъ , and so.	sequently.
	потому , therefore.

### 8). Comparative.

Чемъ, the more.

9) *Relative.*

что, дабы, чтобы, that.

## THEME XXXI.

## ON CONJUNCTIONS.

Forget not your own weakness; *that* you may the more readily excuse the errors of others. *Neither* precepts, *nor* severity act so powerfully on morals, as a good example. Na-

<b>to forget</b> , забыва́ть.	<b>another</b> , другой.
<b>your own</b> , сóбственный	<b>severity</b> , стрóгость.
	<b> свой.</b> a precept, наставлé-
<b>weakness</b> , слáбость.	nie.
<b>readily</b> , удóбный.	<b>to act</b> , дéйствовать.
<b>to be able</b> , мочь (V. irr. verbs).	<b>powerfully</b> , сильно.
<b>to excuse</b> , извиня́шь.	<b>morals</b> , нráвы.
<b>an error</b> , погрýшность	<b>good</b> , хорóшій.
	<b>example</b> , примéръ.

ture produces talents., and education displays them. Death spares neither rich, nor poor. Fear not death, but shame. Although the commencement of learning is difficult, the end is delightful. Pythagoras obliged his scholars to remain silent five years, that they might learn to reflect. Avoid indolence: for it is the source of many vices. True civilization not only opens a way to fortune, but

---

to produce ,	произво-	delightful, пріятный.	
dýšť.	Pythagoras ,	Пиæагоръ.	
talent ,	даровánie.	to oblige ,	засипа-
education ,	воспитá-		влѧшь.
	nie.	a scholar ,	ученýкъ.
to display ,	обнарùжи-	five years ,	пять лѣтъ.
	вашь.	to remain silent ,	мол-
death ,	смершь.		чáшь.
to spare ,	щадýшь.	to learn ,	научýться.
a rich man ,	богáтый.	to reflect ,	разсуждáшь.
a poor man ,	бèдный.	to avoid ,	убъгáшь.
to fear ,	бояшься.	indolence,	прáздность.
shame ,	стыдъ.	the source ,	испóч-
the commencement ,	на-		никъ.
	чáло.	true ,	їстинный.
learning ,	учéніе.	civilization ,	образовá-
difficult ,	трудный.		nie.
the end ,	конéцъ.	to open ,	опкрывáшь.

confirms our internal happiness. Mental beauty is preferable to external beauty. Human happiness is so uncertain, *that* it may be destroyed in a moment. The heavier a body is, *the more* rapidly it falls to the earth. The Americans said to their oppressors: You, who behave so tyrannically and cruelly towards us, you must be *either* Gods, or such people as ourselves; *if* you are Gods, you should be

---

a way ,	путь.	rapidly, скоро.
to confirm ,	утвержд-	to fall, падашь.
	даться.	an American, Амери-
internal, внутренний.		канецъ.
happiness, благососто-		to say, говорить.
	яніе.	an oppressor, утесни-
mental ,	душевный.	тель.
beauty ,	красота.	
preferable ,	лучше.	tyrannically ,
external ,	внешний.	само-
uncertain, непостоян-	ный.	власшно.
		cruelly ,
to be destroyed ,	измен-	сурово.
	ниться.	to behave, поступаешь.
a moment, мгновение.		towards, съ, gov. the
a body ,	тело.	ins.
heavy ,	тяжелый.	must ,
		должны.
		such people as ourselves,
		шакие же люди.

merciful to men, and if you are such creatures as ourselves, you should remember humanity.

---

merciful, милосéрдый. humanity , человéче-  
to remember, помнить. ство.

---



---

## C H A P. X.

### I N T E R J E C T I O N S.

§ 247. Interjections are, mere sounds expressive of the different emotions of the soul, and denote,

*J o y.*

а! ра! Ah! ура! hurra!

*G r i e f.*

увы! Alas! ахъ! Ah!

*S u r p r i s e.*

не ужéль! Indeed!

*A v e r s i o n.*

тьфу! Fye!

*D e s i r e o f s i l e n c e.*

шсь! Hush! Silence!

*P a i n.*

ай! Oh.

*Incitement of attention.*

у! hear! Hark! Listen!

*Calling.*

эй! Holla!

*Encouragement.*

иу! ну же! now then!



## Т Н Е М Е XXXII.

### ON INTERJECTIONS.

Oh, endearing ties of country, kindred and friendship! Ah, how happy is he, who enjoys peace of mind! Alas! how uncertain is human happiness. Alas! all hope is vanished. Woe to thee thou impious man! Ah, how

endearing,	милый.	mind,	духъ.
ties,	узы.	uncertain,	непостойн-
country,	отечество.		ный.
kindred,	родство.	happiness,	счастье.
friendship,	дружба.	human,	человѣческій.
happy,	счастливъ.	to vanish,	изчезаешь.
to enjoy,	наслаждаться-	hope,	надежда.
	ся.	impious man,	не-
peace,	спокойствіе.		честивый.

glad I am that I have met you. The troops met  
their beloved leader with loud cries of Hurra !

---

glad ,	радъ.	beloved ,	любимый.
to meet ,	увидѣться.	leader ,	вождь.
the troops ,	войско.	loud ,	громкій.
to meet ,	встрѣтить.	cry ,	крикъ.

---

## C H A P. XI.

### D E R I V A T I O N A N D C O M P O S I T I O N .

#### S E C T. I.

##### D E R I V A T I O N .

###### I. S U B S T A N T I V E S D E R I V E D F R O M S U B S T A N T I V E S .

§ 248. Substantives are derived from other substantives by the addition of the following terminations , which denote the occupation of a person with the object, expressed by the primitive :

-никъ.	-акъ.
-овникъ.	-аръ.
-янкъ.	-азъ.
-щникъ.	-лъкъ.

## in никъ.

мѣдь , copper.	мѣдникъ, a copper-smith.
печь , a stove.	печнікъ, a stove-builder.
охόта , a hunt.	охóтникъ , a hunter.
совѣтъ , counsel.	совѣшникъ, a counsellor.

*Examples , in which the final consonant is changed.*

сапогъ , a boot.	сапожникъ, a boot maker.
грѣхъ , sin.	грѣшникъ , a sinner.
башмакъ , a shoe.	башмáшникъ, a shoe maker.

## in овникъ.

садъ , a garden.	садовникъ , a gardener.
полкъ , a regiment.	полковникъ , a colonel.
санъ , a dignity.	сановникъ , a dignitary.

## in чикъ.

переплѣтъ, binding.	переплѣтникъ, a book binder.
переводъ, a transla-	переводникъ, a translator.
tion.	

## in щикъ.

камень , a stone.	каменщикъ , a stone-mason.
могила , a grave.	могильщикъ, a grave-digger.
шракшѣръ , an inn.	шракшѣрщикъ, an inn-keeper.
бараба́нъ , a drum.	бараба́нщикъ , a drummer.

## in акъ.

рыба , a fish.	рыбакъ , a fisherman.
чудо , a wonder.	чудакъ , an original.

in аръ.

столъ , a table. столáръ , a cabinet-maker.

звонъ , ringing. звонáръ , a ringer.

in ачъ.

трубá , a trumpet. трубагъ , a trumpeter.

скрипка, a violin. скрипагъ , a fiddler.

in якъ.

мóре , the sea. морáкъ , a seaman.

землѧ, a country. землáкъ , a countryman.

§ 249. When the derivatives terminating in никъ are not personal , or do not mark the occupation of a person with the object expressed by the primitive, they denote , that the derivative is a receptacle of the substance , expressed by the primitive ; as ,

чай , tea. чайникъ , a tea-pot.

молокó , milk. молошникъ , a milk-pot.

кофей , coffee. кофéйникъ , a coffee-pot.

250. The termination ница added to a primitive has a similar signification ; as ,  
 песóкъ , sand. песочница , a sand-box.  
 чернила , ink. чернильница , an ink-stand.  
 гость , a guest. гостинница , an inn.

§ 251. This termination denotes also the occupation of a female with the substance expressed by the primitive , or the feminine of titles and professions ending in никъ and тель.

полковникъ, a colo- полковница, a colonel's wife.  
nel.

писатель, a writer. писательница, a female writer.  
молоко, milk. молошница, a milk-maid.

§ 252. The derivatives formed by the addition of *ство* denote a substance or quality connected with the signification of the primitive; ex.

сосѣдъ, a neighbour. сосѣдство, neighbourhood.  
рабъ, a slave. рабство, slavery.

лѣкарь, a doctor. лѣкарство, medicine.

§ 253. The derivatives ending in *ie* require the prefix of a preposition to the substantive, ex.  
смѣрть, death. безсмѣртие, immortality.  
слава, glory. щеславіе, vain-glory, vanity.  
гробъ, a coffin. надгробіе, a tomb-stone.

## 2. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 254. Substantives are derived from adjectives, by changing the adjectival terminations *ый* and *ий* into *ость*, *есть*, *ство*, *ина*, *ота*, *ie* and *eцъ*, ex.

гордый, proud.	гордость, pride,
тяжелый, heavy.	тяжестъ, heaviness.
богатый, rich.	богатство, riches.
тихий, tranquil.	тишина. tranquility.
толстый, thick.	толстота, thickness.
здравый, healthy.	здравіе, health.
глупый, stupid.	глупецъ, a fool.

## 3. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

§ 255. Substantives are derived from verbs by changing the final *ть* of the infinitive \* into *ба*, *nie*, *тель*, *ецъ*, *уль*, *окъ*, *никъ*, *щикъ*, *тикъ*, and *агъ*.

служи́шь, to serve.	служба, service.
смотри́шь, to look.	смотри́шнie, inspection.
пиши́шь, to write.	пиши́тель, a writer, an author.
купи́шь, to buy.	купе́цъ, a buyer, a merchant.
лгать, to lie.	лгунъ, a liar.
игра́ть, to gamble.	игро́къ, a gambler.
учи́шь, to teach.	учени́къ, a scholar.
рѣзать, to carve.	рѣзчи́къ, a carver.
подряди́шь, to contract.	подря́дчикъ, a contractor.
шкать, to weave.	шкатель, a weaver.

## 4. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 256. Adjectives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the terminations : *ный*, *еный*, *истый*, *овый*, *ивый*, *ый*, *скій*, and *яній*, *еx*.

\* By the above examples it will be seen, that the vowel, which precedes *me* is frequently changed in forming the derivative.

мѣдь , copper.	мѣдный , copper, adj.
соль , salt.	солёный , salt, adj.
лѣсь , a wood.	лѣсистый , woody.
дубъ , an oak.	дубовый , oaken, oak.
поля , a field.	полевый , field , adj.
спесь , pride.	спесивый , proud.
золото , gold.	золотый , golden, gold.
человѣкъ , a man.	человѣческій , human.
вода , water.	водяной , aqueous.

§ 257. Several adjectives are derived from the plural of substantives by the addition of *ный*; as ,

чудеса , miracles.	чудесный , miraculous.
небеса , the heavens.	небесный , heavenly.

#### 5. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

§ 258. Adjectives are derived from verbs by changing the termination *ть* of the infinitive into *ный*, *лы**й*, *ки**й*, *ти**й*, *жи**й* and *иши**й*, *ех*.

погреба́ть , to bury.	погребальны́й , burial.
закоренѣ́шь , to radi- cate.	закоренѣ́лый , deep-roo- ted.
лома́ть , to break.	ломкій , brittle.
рабоша́ть , to labour.	рабо́тій , laborious.
проходи́нть , to pass.	прохóжій , transitory.
игра́шь , to play.	игривый , playful.

§ 259. Many adjectives, and derivatives with the adjectival termination, have the signification of substantives.

дікій, a savage.	прохóжій, a passenger.
кóрмчíй, a pilot.	служíвой, one who serves.

#### 6. VERBS DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 260. Verbs are derived from substantives by adding the infinitive terminations, *атъ*, *итъ*, *лтъ* and *ть*, preceded by *т* to the primitive, ex.

заші́па, defence.	защищáть, to defend.
соль, salt.	солíть, to salt.
мѣра, a measure.	мѣрять, to measure.
шумъ, a noise.	шумѣть, to make a noise.

#### 7. VERBS DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 261. Verbs are derived from adjectives by changing the adjectival terminations *ый* and *иń* into the infinitive termination *ть* preceded by a vowel, ex.

золотýй, golden.	золотítъ, to gild.
сухóй, dry.	сушítъ, to dry.
красный, red.	краснѣть, to blush.
великíй, great.	величáть, to magnify.
ясный, clear.	объяснáть, to explain.

## 8. ADVERBS DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 262. Adverbs are derived from adjectives by changing the adjectival terminations *ый* and *ий* into *о*, ex.

благочестивый, pious.	благочестиво, piously.
простой, common.	просто, commonly.
прилежный, diligent.	прилежно, diligently.
горький, bitter.	горько, bitterly.
гладкий, smooth.	гладко, smoothly.
строгий, severe.	строго, severely.



## S E C T. II.

## С о м р о с и т о н .

§ 263. Compound substantives may be formed:

1<sup>st</sup>. By the combination of a primitive with a verbal substantive ; as ,

- землеописánie , geography.
- кораблекрушéниe , a shipwreck.
- мореплáванíe , navigation.

2<sup>ly</sup>. By the combination of a substantive with an adjective.

- добродùшie , kindness.
- злонрáвіе , wickedness.
- пустослóвіе , nonsense.

**3<sup>ly</sup>.** By the combination of a verb with a substantive; as,

*честолюбіе*, ambition.

*рыболовство*, fishing.

*садоводство*, gardening.

**4<sup>ly</sup>.** By the combination of a numeral with a substantive; as,

*единодушие*, unanimity.

*двоеточіе*, a colon.

*треугольникъ*, a triangle.

**5<sup>ly</sup>.** By the combination of a preposition with a substantive; as,

*надпись*, an inscription.

*предмѣстникъ*, predecessor.

*предопределеніе*, predestination.

#### § 264. Compound adjectives may be formed:

**1<sup>st</sup>.** By prefixing a substantive to an adjective; as,

*правовѣрный*, orthodox.

*гостепріимный*, hospitable.

*громоглѣсный*, thundering.

**2<sup>ly</sup>.** By the combination of two adjectives; as,

*свѣтло-голубый*, light-blue.

*темно-буровый*, dark-brown.

*остро-конечный*, sharp-pointed.

**3<sup>ly</sup>.** By the combination of a numeral with an adjective; as,

*единообразный*, uniform.

*четвероногий*, quadruped.

*пятиугольный*, pentangular.

**§ 265.** Compound verbs may be formed:

**1<sup>st</sup>.** By the combination of a substantive with a verb; as,

*благопворить*, to do good.

*путешествовать*, to travel.

*лицетворить*, to personify.

**2<sup>ly</sup>.** By the combination of an adjective with a verb; as,

*злословить*, to calumniate.

**3<sup>ly</sup>.** By the combination of two verbs; as,

*любопытствовать*, to be curious.

**4<sup>ly</sup>.** By the combination of an adverb with a verb; as,

*мимоходить*, to pass by.

**5<sup>ly</sup>.** By the combination of a pronoun with a verb; as,

*самовластвовать*, to use an absolute authority.

**6<sup>ly</sup>.** By the combination of a preposition with a verb; as,

*изкоренить*, to eradicate &c.



---

## P A R T III.

### S Y N T A X.

§ 266. Syntax is that part of grammar, which shews the agreement or concordance of the different parts of speech, their government, or influence upon each other, and their right disposition in a sentence.

---

## C H A P I.

### C O N C O R D A N C E.

#### S E C T. I.

##### C O N C O R D A N C E O F N O U N S I N G E N E R A L.

§ 267. When two substantives occur together and relate to the same object, they are both put in the same case, ex. *рѣка Невѣ*, the river Neva; *месяцъ Іюль*, the month of July; *на горѣ Эtnѣ*, on Mount Etna &c.

§ 268. When one substantive relates to two or more objects it is put in the plural number, ex. *Апостолы Петръ и Павель*, the apostles Peter and Paul.

§ 269. Adjectives must agree with the substantives, to which they refer in gender, number and case, ex. *Славный народъ*, a famous people,

*дóбрые нráвы, good manners; скрóмная жéнщина, a modest woman, обши́рное óзеро, an extensive lake; обитáтель холóдного климата, an inhabitant of a cold climate, &c.*

§ 270. When a possessive adjective precedes two or more substantives, it agrees with the first in number, gender and case, ex. *отéгеская любóвь и попечéние*, paternal love and care.

§ 271. When an adjective follows two substantives and relates to both, it is put in the plural, ex. Гомéръ и Виргíлій, *слáвные свóйми стихотворéніями*, Homer and Virgi famous for their poems. When the substantives are of different genders the preference is given to the masculine, ex. *нарóды и госудárства знаменítые въ истóрии*, the nations and kingdoms, celebrated in history.

§ 272. When a common and proper noun occur together, the adjective must agree with the common, ex. *рѣкá Днѣпръ по причинѣ мнóжества порóговъ неспосóбна къ судохóдству*. The river Dneiper is unfit for the purposes of navigation on account of its numerous falls.

*Rem.* The above rules relate equally to the cardinal numbers, *оди́нь*, one; *двѣ*, two, and *оба* both; to the ordinal numbers, and to the relative, possessive, demonstrative and indefinite pronouns.

## EXAMPLES OF THE CONCORDANCE

OF ADJECTIVES, NUMERALS, PRONOUNS, AND PARTICIPLES WITH THEIR SUBSTANTIVES.

*A pronoun and adjective.**Mas. Sing.*

- N. мой вѣрный другъ , my true friend.  
 G. моего вѣрнаго дрѹга , of — — — —  
 D. моему вѣрному дрѹгу , to — — — —  
 A. моего вѣрнаго дрѹга , — — — —  
 I. моймъ вѣрнымъ дрѹгомъ , by or with-  
 P. о моёмъ вѣрномъ дрѹгѣ , of — — —

*P l u.*

- N. мой вѣрные друзья , my true friends.  
 G. мойхъ вѣрныхъ друзей , of — — — —  
 D. моймъ вѣрнымъ друзьямъ , to — — — —  
 A. мойхъ вѣрныхъ , друзья , — — — —  
 I. мойми вѣрными друзьями , by or with-  
 P. о мойхъ вѣрныхъ друзьяхъ , of — — —

*A pronoun and participle.**Fem. Sing.*

- N. сіѧ текущая рѣка , this flowing river.  
 G. сей текущей рѣкѣ , of — — — —  
 D. сей текущей рѣкѣ , to — — — —  
 A сію текущую рѣку , — — — —  
 I. сею текущею рѣкою , by or with.  
 P. о сей текущей рѣкѣ , of — — — —

## P l u.

N. сій текùщія рѣки, these flowing rivers.

G. сихъ текùщихъ рѣкъ, of — — — —

D. симъ текùщимъ рѣкámъ, to — — —

A. сій текùщія рѣки, — — — — —

I. сіми текùщими рѣкáми, by or with—

P. о сихъ текùщихъ рѣкáхъ, of — — —

## A P R O N O U N A N D N U M E R A L.

## N e u t . S i n g .

N. вáше пéрвое письмó, your first letter.

G. вáшего пéрваго письмá, of — — —

D. вáшему пéрвому письмù, to — — —

A. вáше пéрвое письмó, — — — —

I. вáшимъ пéрвымъ письмόмъ, by or with —

P. о вáшемъ пéрвомъ письмè, of — —

## P l u.

N. вáши пéрвые пíсьма, your first letters.

G. вáшихъ пéрвыхъ пíсемъ, of — — — —

D. вáшимъ пéрвымъ пíсьмамъ, to — — —

A. вáши пéрвые пíсьма — — — — —

I. вáшими пéрвыми пíсьмами, by or with —

P. о вáшихъ пéрвыхъ пíсьмахъ, of — —

## S E C T . II.

## C O N C O R D A N C E O F V E R B S.

§ 273. The verb agrees with its nominative in person and number, ex. я гуляю, I walk; онъ пишéтъ he writes; мы рисуемъ, we draw; вы желáете, you wish.

§ 274. In the past tense the verb must agree with its nominative in gender also, ex. громъ грѧ-  
нуль, молнія блеснѣла, и море зашумѣло, the  
thunder rattled, the lightning flashed, and the  
sea began to roar.

§ 275. Passive verbs agree with their nominative in gender and number through all the tenses, ex. Римъ былъ взятъ и разграбленъ Галлами, Rome was taken and pillaged by the Gauls. Италія часто посещаєма путеше-  
ственниками, Italy is frequently visited by travellers.

§ 276. When two or more nouns or pronouns are connected together in a sentence as joint agents or subjects, the verb must be in the plural, ex. живопись и салніе про-  
цвѣтаяютъ въ Италіи, painting and sculpture flourish in Italy.



\* \*

---

---

## С Н А Р. II.

### G O V E R N M E N T.

#### S E C T. I.

##### G O V E R N M E N T O F S U B S T A N T I V E S.

§ 277. When two substantives occur together, the one, which answers to the question *whose?* *of which?* *of what?* is put in the genitive case, ex. свѣшъ истины, the light of truth; царствование Августа, the reign of Augustus.\*

§ 278. In such instances as the latter, where the relation of the two substantives denotes possession, a possessive adjective is frequently used instead of the genitive case, ex. Августово царствование, Augustus' reign; Монаршал милость, the Monarch's bounty.

§ 279. Substantives, which denote quantity, measure or weight govern the genitive case, ex. множество народа, a multitude of people; стаканъ воды, a glass of water; пудъ муки, a pood of flour &c.

---

\* The dative case is sometimes used instead of the genitive, ex. хозяинъ дому, the master of the house; господинъ имѣнию, the proprietor, or lord of the estate; посланикъ книгамъ, a catalogue of books.

§ 280. When a quality is ascribed to an object, the noun, which expresses that quality, is put in the genitive case, ex. *жéнщина крóткаго нráва*, a woman of mild manners; *мúщина высóкаго рóста*, a tall man.

§ 280. The word *охóтникъ* (fem. *охóтница*) an amateur, governs the gen. case with the preposition *до*, as: *она охóтница до чтéнíя*, she is a lover of reading; *онъ охóтникъ до лошадéй*, he is an amateur of horses.



### S E G T. II.

#### G O V E R N M E N T O F A D J E C T I V E S.

§ 281. The adjectives *достóинъ*, worthy; *чуждъ*, strange (free from); *пóлонъ* full, govern, the gen. case; as, *человéкъ достóйный почтéнíя*, a man worthy of respect; *сосúдъ пóлный воды*, a vessel full of water; *чуждъ пристрастíя*, free from prejudice.

§ 282. The adjectives *вéренъ*, faithful; *зna-  
комъ*, known; *милъ*, agreeable; *любозéнъ*, lovely; *полéзенъ*, useful; *прилигень*, proper; *равенъ*, equal; *подóбенъ*, like; *покóренъ*, humble; *сопазмéренъ*, proportioned; *угóденъ*, pleasant, govern the dative case, as: *Вéренъ Госудáрю*, faithful to the sovereign; *милъ всí-  
кому*, agreeable to every one &c.

§ 283. The adjectives, *а́лгень* greedy; *спо-  
собенъ* or *гóденъ*, fit; *прилжень*, diligent;  
*пристрастенъ*, prejudiced; *готóвъ*, ready;  
*склоненъ*, inclined; *страстенъ*, passionate;  
*сострадáтеленъ*, compassionate, govern the  
dative with the preposition *къ*, ex. *пристра-  
стенъ къ игрѣ*, passionately fond of gaming;  
*сострадáителенъ къ нестáстныи*, compas-  
sionate to the unfortunate &c.

§ 284. The adjectives : *бережливъ*, careful;  
*похóжъ*, like; *дéрзокъ*, bold; *легóкъ*, active  
(light), govern the accusative with the pre-  
position *на*, ex. *онъ бережливъ на плáтье*,  
he is careful of his clothes; *онъ дéрзокъ на  
языкъ*, he is bold in his speech; &c.

§ 285. The adjectives *блéденъ*, pale; *бéденъ*,  
poor; *богáтъ*, rich; *боленъ*, sick; *великъ*,  
great; *высóкъ*, high; *дикъ*, wild; *довóленъ*,  
content; *знаменítъ*, *слáвенъ*, celebrated; *знá-  
тенъ*, distinguished; *крóтокъ*, gentle; *малъ*,  
little; *нáзокъ*, low; *старъ*, old; *чистъ*, clean;  
*скúденъ*, miserable; *слабъ*, weak; *крéпокъ*,  
strong; *стáсливъ*, fortunate; *проводенъ*, active,  
govern the instrumental case, ex. *онъ блéденъ  
лицéмъ*, his face is pale; *она болына голóвою*,  
her head aches; *знáтенъ порóдою*, of a dis-  
tinguished race &c.

§ 286. The adjectives : *искусенъ*, skilful ; *исправенъ*, exact; *умеренъ*, moderate; *твердъ*, firm; *постояненъ*, steady, govern the instrumental case with the preposition *въ*, ex. *Онъ исправенъ въ должности*, he is exact in his duty; *она умеренна въ пищѣ*, she is moderate in her food &c.

§ 287. Adjectives of the comparative degree (when not connected with the substantive by the particle *нежели*, than) govern the gen. case, ex. *глѣдь дороже жицни*, honour is dearer than life. The latter manner is generally employed, when the comparison is vague and indefinite.



### S E C T. III.

#### G O V E R N M E N T O F N U M E R A L S.

§ 288. *Два*, two; *оба* both; *три*, three; and *четыре*, four, when used in the nominative, require the gen. sing. ex. *два рубля*, two roubles; *три дня*, three days; *четыре корабля*, four ships &c. When there is an adjective relating to the same substantive, it is frequently put in the genitive plural instead of the nominative case, ex. *два дома каменныхъ*, two stone houses; *три голубя прекрасныхъ*, three

beautiful pigeons. In the oblique cases these numbers agree with the substantives, to which they relate, ex. *тримъ вóинамъ*, to three warriors &c.

§ 289. Cardinal numbers from five upwards govern the genitive plural, ex. *пять фúтovъ*, five feet; *шесть рабóтниковъ*, six labourers &c. The numerals *двóе*, *трóе*, *чéтыре*, govern the same case, when they relate to animated objects.

§ 290. When numbers are used to mark the age of a person, they are put in the genitive case, ex. *онъ жени́лся тридцáти*, *а ўмеръ се-мíдесяти лéть*, he married at thirty, and died at seventy years of age.



#### S E C T. IV.

##### G O V E R N M E N T O F V E R B S.

§ 291. Active verbs govern the accusative case, ex. *роди́тели любятъ своíхъ дéтей*, parents love their children; *точъ одéрживаетъ славнйшую побéду*, who *себя самаго побéжда́етъ*, he gains the most glorious victory, who conquers himself. But if the action extends to only part of the verb, it then governs the genitive case, ex. *слуслýть воды*,

to let out part of the water ; *убѣситъ пárусовъ*,  
to take in some of the sails , &c.

§ 292. An active verb , preceded by a negation, governs the gen. case , ex, *безъ прилѣ-  
жанія не ожидай успѣха въ наукахъ*, expect not  
to make progress in learning without diligence.

§ 293. Reciprocal verbs govern the instru-  
mental case with the preposition *съ* , ex. *срa-  
жаться съ непріятелемъ* , to combat with the  
enemy ; *бороться со страстью* , to struggle  
with the passions ; *знаться съ гѣстными людь-  
ми* , to be acquainted with honest people.  
Reflective verbs govern the same cases as  
the active verbs , from which they are deri-  
ved.

§ 294. Compound verbs govern different ca-  
ses according to the preposition , with which  
they are formed. The prepositions *въ* , *до* , *съ* ,  
*отъ* and *предъ* are frequently repeated before  
the noun , ex. *дойти до крайности* , to be  
driven to extremity ; *предстать предъ судомъ* ,  
to appear before the tribunal ; *соглашаться съ дружомъ* , to agree with one's friend. Verbs ,  
composed with the preposition *при* , and which  
signify the approach of one object towards  
another, require the dative case with the pre-  
position *къ* , ex. *пристать къ берегу* , to land ;  
*приготоvиться къ войнѣ* , to prepare for war ;

Those composed with the particle *вы* require the genitive case with the preposition *изъ*, вырвашь побѣду изъ рукъ непріятеля, to wrest the victory out of the hands of the enemy. Those composed with the particle *въз* or *оз* require the accusative case and the preposition *на*, ex. взльсть на дёрево, to climb up a tree, &c.

§ 295. The auxiliary verb *быть*, to be, governs the nominative case, when it expresses a permanent duration, and the instrumental when a temporary, ex. смерть *есть общій жречій человѣчества*, death is the common lot of humanity; Шекспиръ *былъ великий поэтъ*, Shakspeare was a great poet; Іосифъ *былъ нѣкоторое времѧ рабомъ въ Египтѣ*, Joseph was for some time a slave in Egypt.

§ 296. The verbs: желáшь, to wish; достигáшь, to attain, слùшать; to hear; слѣдовать, to follow; избѣгáшь, to avoid; стыдиться, to be ashamed; дожидáшься, to await; осшерегáшься, to take care; бояться, to be afraid; ошчáеваться, to despair; чуждáшься, to estrange, govern the genitive case, ex. желáшь счастия, to wish for happiness; страшишься смерти, to be afraid of death. &c.

§ 297. When the passive form of the verb is used instead of the active, the nomi-

native case is employed in place of the accusative, and the instrumental instead of the nominative, ex. (active) *Богъ создалъ вселенную*, God created the universe; (passive) *Вселенная создана Богомъ*.

*Rem.* When the instrumental case occurs in the phrase, which is to be rendered by the passive voice, the preposition *отъ* with the genitive case is employed to avoid its repetition, ex. *Богъ одарилъ человѣка разумомъ*, God has endowed man with reason; *человѣкъ одаренъ отъ Божія разумомъ*, Man is endowed by God with reason. From the above rules it will be seen, that passive verbs govern either the instrumental, or the genitive case with the preposition *отъ*.

§ 298. The verbs *зависѣть*, to depend; *исцѣлиться* or *вылѣчиться*, to be cured; *берѣться* or *хранѣться*, to preserve; *свободѣться*, to liberate; *воздѣрживаться*, to refrain; *удалѣться*, to depart; *очищаться*, to purify; *разрѣшииться*, to be delivered; *спасаться*, to be saved; *уклонѣться*, to recede, govern the genitive case with the preposition *отъ*, ex. *разрѣшиться отъ бремени*, to be delivered of a burden; *спастися отъ смѣрти*, to be saved from death; *удалѣться отъ родины*, to depart from our native place, &c.

§ 299. In general the same verbs, that are followed by the dative in English, govern that case in the Russian language, ex. новиновáться закóнамъ; to be obedient to the laws; внимáться глáсу сóвěсти, to listen to the voice of conscience; прилъжáть къ учéнию, to apply to learning &c. But in some instances the dative is employed after Russian verbs, when it cannot be used after the corresponding verbs in English, ex. удовлешвóряться своíмъ желáніямъ, to satisfy our desires; учиться Латинскому языку, to learn the latin language; печáль вредить здорóвию; sorrow injures the health &c.

§ 300. The verbs : прáвить , упраvlя́ть , to direct or govern; презирáть , to despise; промышля́ть , to speculate; уважáть , to esteem; располагáть , to dispose; повелевáть , to order (govern); предводи́тельствовáть , to conduct; владе́ть , to rule ; обладáть , to possess; жéршвовáть , to sacrifice ; дорожи́ть , to esteem, немо́чь , to be ill; обиловать , to abound; слы́ть , to pass ; жи́ть , to live ; мучи́ться , to be tormented; веселíться, to rejoice; зва́ться , называ́ться , to call one's self; ми́няться , to change; возноси́ться , to exalt one's self; кля́сться , to swear; пользоваться , to profit, govern the instrumental case, ex. жéршвовать имéниемъ , to sacrifice one's estate; предво-

( 301 )

действовать войскомъ, to conduct an army; слышь гостнымъ теловѣкомъ, to pass for an honest man; жить своими трудами, to live by one's own labour; реки изобилующь рыбью, the rivers abound with fish, &c.

§ 301. The verbs смотрѣть, to look; примѣчать, to observe and гоняться, to pursue, in most instances, govern the instrumental case with the preposition за, ex. смотрѣть за дѣломъ, to look after an affair; примѣчать за его поведеніемъ, to observe his conduct; гоняться за гостемъ и богатствомъ, to pursue honours and riches.

§ 302. The verbs: действовать, to act; умилостивляться, to have compassion; господствовать, to domineer; начальствовать, to rule, and some other verbs of like signification, govern the instrumental case with the preposition надъ, ex. краснорѣчие действуетъ надъ сердцами слушателей, eloquence affects the minds of the hearers, страсти нерѣдко господствуютъ надъ разумомъ, not unfrequently the passions domineer over reason; сжалиться надъ бѣднымъ, to have compassion upon the poor, &c.

§ 303. The verbs граничить, to border; сходствоваться, to resemble; согласоваться, to

agree; равняться, to be equal; сообразоваться, to conform, govern the instrumental case with the preposition *съ*, ex. Россия граничишь *съ Китаемъ*, Russia borders upon China ; согласоваться *съ истиною*, to agree with truth, &c.

§ 304. The verbs: упóрствовашь, to persist; успéвáти, to make progress; винíтись, to accuse; исповéдываться, to confess (sins); признавáтись, to acknowledge; ошибáтись, to be mistaken; упражнáтись, to exercise one's self; обмáныватся, to be mistaken; нуждáтись, to be in want; раскáивашъя, to repent; сомнéвáтись, to doubt, followed by the preposition *въ*, govern the prepositional case, ex. упóрствовать *въ трéбованiи*, to persist in a demand; раскáиваться *въ грехахъ*, to repent of one's sins; нуждáться *въ дénьгахъ*, to be in want of money, &c.

*Rem.* The verb сомнéвáтись is sometimes followed by the preposition *о*, ex. сомнéвáтись *о истиинѣ*, to doubt of the truth, &c.

§ 305. The verbs : оснóвываться, to found and утверждáтись, to confirm, govern the prepositional case with the preposition *на*, ex. оснóвываясь *на опытахъ*, to found upon experiments. &c.

§ 306. The verbs : бдѣть , to watch ; милосердоваться , to have compassion ; ходатайствовать , to intercede ; жалѣть and сожалѣть , to pity ; плакать , to weep ; злонамотаться , to take pains , тужить and скорбѣть , to be afflicted ; стараться , to endeavour ; заботиться , to take care , govern the prepositional case with the preposition *о* , ex. бдѣть о благосостояніи народа , to watch over the welfare of the people ; заботиться о воспитаніи дѣтей , to take care of the education of children .

§ 307. The verbs : велѣть , to command ; готовиться , to prepare one's self ; дать , to give ; допускать , and дозволять , to allow ; долженствоваться , to be obliged ; думать , to think ; желать , to wish ; замышлять , to conspire ; проповѣдовать , to preach ; запрещать , to prohibit ; зарекаться , to forswear ; запѣвать , to invent ; зачинать , and начинать , to begin ; знать , to know ; любить , to like ; молить , to beg , мыслить , to imagine ; мочь , to be able ; надѣяться , to hope ; обѣщать , to promise ; опасаться , to be afraid ; повѣживаться , and пріучаться , to accustom one's self ; покушаться , to try ; понуждать , and при-нуждать , to oblige ; предпринимать , to undertake ; приказывать , to order ; продолжать ,

to continue; предпѣывать, to ordain; пропѣть, to ask; сбираѣтъся, to prepare one's self; умѣть, to know how; уповаѣть, to trust; хотѣть, to desire, require to be followed by the infinitive of another verb, ex. разсѹ-  
докъ предпѣываетъ избирать полѣзное; rea-  
son directs (us) to choose what is useful;  
законъ Божій повелѣваешь любить другъ дру-  
га, the law of God commands (us) to love  
one another.



## S E C T. V.

## GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

§ 308. The adverbs: достойно, worthily;  
много, much; довольно, enough; мало, little;  
несколько, some; близъ, near; касатель-  
но, relatively; вдоль, along, вмѣсто, in-  
stead; внутрї, inside; вокрѣгъ, around; по-  
зади, behind; поперѣгъ, across; сверхъ, be-  
yond govern the genitive case, ex. вдоль  
берега, along the coast; внутрї города, in  
the interior of the city: среди дворы, in the  
midst of the court; сверхъ силъ, beyond  
one's strength, &c.

§ 309. Adverbs of the comparative degree  
govern the genitive case, ex. лѣто проходишь

горáздо веселéе зи́мы, summer passes much more cheerfully than winter.

§ 310. The adverb: *вонъ*, out, governs the genitive case with the preposition *изъ*, from; \* *вонъ изъ дома*, out of the house; *протъ*, away, requires the same case with the preposition *отъ*, (from) ex. *прочь отъ меня*, away from me, &c.

§ 311. The adverbs: *вопреки*, in opposition; *подобно*, like; *прили́чно*, *пристóйно*, suitably; *протíвно*, in an opposite manner; *свóйственno*, naturally; *угóдно*, agreeably, govern the dative case, ex. *Богъ объщáлъ Авраáму умнóжить сvяя его подобно песку морскóму*, God promised Abraham to multiply his seed like the sand upon the sea shore; ты должен жить *пристóйно* *состоиню*, you should live suitably to your condition.

§ 312. In general adverbs derived from other parts of speech, govern the same cases as their primitives.

\* *Изъ*, signifies the passing of an object from the interior; *отъ*, the mere removal of one object from another.



## S E C T. VI.

## GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

§ 313. Prepositions require the substantives, to which they are prefixed, to be put in certain cases.

1. PREPOSITIONS, WHICH GOVERN THE  
GENITIVE CASE.

безъ , without.	около , about.
близъ, or близко , near.	окрѣстъ , around.
вдоль , along.	опрічъ , besides.
вмѣшо , instead.	отъ , from.
внутрі , inside.	подлѣ , close.
внѣ , outside.	позади , behind.
вблизъ , near-by.	поперѣгъ , across.
вокрѣгъ , around.	послѣ , after.
для , for.	прѣжде , before.
до , until.	противъ , against.
изключая , except.	ради , for the sake.
изъ , from.	сверхъ , in addition.
кромѣ , besides.	среди , amidst.
мимо , close by.	супротивъ , opposite.
напротивъ , opposite.	у , at.

## 2. PREPOSITIONS, WHICH GOVERN THE DATIVE CASE.

къ ог ко , to.

**3. PREPOSITIONS, WHICH GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE  
CASE :**

про , about.	сквозь , through.
чрезъ , through.	спустя , after.

**4. PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE INSTRUMENTAL CASE :**

надъ , over.	между , among.
--------------	----------------

*Rem.* между governs the genitive also.

§ 314. The following prepositions vary their signification according to the case of the substantive, to which they are prefixed.

*За* , governs the accusative, when it signifies for, and the instrumental, when it signifies behind.

*Подъ* , under , and *предъ* , before , govern the accusative case, when they denote the motion of one object towards another , and the instrumental case, when they express the stationary position of an object.

*Въ* , or *во* , in , and *на* , on , govern the accusative case , when they denote the motion of one object towards another , and the prepositional , when they express the stationary position of an object.

*Съ* , or *со* , from , governs the genitive case.

*Съ* , or *со* , with , governs the instrumental case.

*Съ*, or *co*, about, governs the accusative case.

*По*, according, governs the dative.

*По*, until, governs the accusative.

*По*, after, governs the prepositional.

§ 315. The prepositions *во*, *ко* and *со* are used instead of *въ*, *къ* and *съ*, when the word, to which they are prefixed, begins with two or more consonants, and the sound requires the intervention of the vowel, ex. *со скалы*, from the rock; *ко миѣ*, to me; *въ старину*, anciently.

*Rem.* When a noun is preceded by two prepositions the first is the governing preposition, ex. *изъ подъ стола*, from under the table, *изъ за стѣны*, from behind the wall &c.



---

---

## С Н А Р. III.

### C O N S T R U C T I O N.

§ 316. Construction treats of the arrangement of the different parts of speech in the formation of a sentence. In the Russian language words may be placed in the natural, the inverted, or the interrogative order, ex. я пишу письмо, I am writing a letter; письмо я пишу, a letter I am writing; писалъ ли я письмо? have I written a letter? &c.

§ 317. In the natural order the first place is occupied by the nominative of the phrase, the second by the verb and the third by the regimen of the verb. ex. она читаетъ книгу, she is reading a book; in which phrase, книга, a book, is put in the accusative case, being the regimen of the transitive verb читашъ, to read; these three principal members of a sentence admit the insertion of explanatory parts of speech, as: adjectives, numerals, adverbs &c. in the arrangement of which the following rules are to be observed:

§ 318. The adjective should precede its substantive, ex. она читаетъ забавную книгу, she is reading an *amusing* book.

§ 319. The genitive case follows the nominative , ex. письма *Русского путешественника*, the letters of a Russian traveller.

§ 320. Numerals generally precede the nouns, to which they relate , ex. два часа , two hours. When the numeral follows the noun , the number is not marked with precision , ex. часа два , about two hours &c.

§ 321. Pronouns should precede their substantives , ex. сія страна , this country , and when the substantive is qualified by an adjective , they precede the adjective also , ex. сія прекрасная страна , this delightful country.

§ 322. The apposition is placed after the substantive , to which it belongs , ex. Вѣра , сія кроткая дщерь неба , утѣшаешь насъ въ несчастіи , Faith , that gentle daughter of heaven , consoles us in misfortune .

§ 323. The adverb generally follows the verb , ex. я читалъ вчера книгу , I read a book yesterday.

§ 324. When two verbs occur in a phrase , the infinitive mood is placed after the indicative , ex. онъ заспавиль враговъ трепетать , he made the enemy (to) tremble .

*Rem.* Although the above may be the most natural disposition of the different parts of speech in a sentence, yet the Russian language (on account of its declensions by cases &c.) allows much greater liberty in construction, than can be taken in English composition without injury to perspicuity. The best Russian authors have paid much more attention to harmony than to the rules of construction, and in reading their works we continually meet with the following departures from the natural order.

§ 325. The adjective placed after the substantive, ex. Нарóдъ Россíйскíй, the Russian people; мужъ слáвный, a celebrated man &c.

§ 326. The transposition of the pronoun, ex. отéцъ моí, my father; другъ моí любéзный, my dear friend; мíлоспивый госудáрь моí, my honoured sir &c.

§ 327. The apposition before the principal noun, ex. мужъ слáвный и учéный, Локъ, that celebrated and learned man, Locke.

§ 328. The infinitive before the indicative, ex. ужасáть врагóвъ жесipокóсшю, было его прáвиломъ; It was a rule with him to terrify the enemy by his cruelty.

§ 329. Beginning the sentence with the word, to which it is intended to attract attention, ex.

*сего́дня я отъ васъ полу́чилъ письмо́.*

*отъ васъ полу́чилъ я сего́дня письмо́.*

*письмо́ полу́чилъ я сего́дня отъ васъ.*

which transposition of words has the same effect in the Russian language, as the transposition of emphasis in English., ex.

I received a letter from you *to day*.

I received a letter *from you to day*.

I received *a letter from you to day*.

§ 330. A phrase becomes interrogative 1) by the transposition of the verb and the addition of the interrogative particle *ли*, ex. вы бы́ли въ Москвѣ, you have been in Moscow—бы́ли ли вы въ Москвѣ? have you been in Moscow? 2) by prefixing an interrogative pronoun or adverb, когда бы́ли вы въ Москвѣ? when were you in Moscow? како́й го́родъ вамъ бо́лье нра́вишся Парижъ или Лондонъ? which city do you prefer, Paris or London?

§ 331. The interrogation may also be expressed by the mere elevation of the voice at the conclusion of the phrase, as: и вы нака́зывае-мые Бóгомъ, дерза́еше учи́шь другихъ? ска-зáль Владíмíръ Іудéйскимъ проповéдникамъ, пришéдшимъ склони́шь его къ приня́тию своéй

ей вѣры; And you , punished by the Almighty, pretend to teach others ? said Vladimir to the Jewish Rabins, who had come to persuade him to adopt their faith. Сей храмъ спрѣлся сорокъ шесть лѣтъ , и ты въ три дня воздвѣгнешь его ? Forty and six years was this temple in building , and wilt thou rear it up in three days ?

§ 332. When the interrogative particle *ли* is used , it generally follows immediately after the verb, or the apocopated adjective, ex. знаешь ли ты свой долгъ? — do you know your duty? — остороженъ ли онъ? — is he cautious? — But it may also be placed after the other parts of speech , ex. это ли сынъ вашъ? is this your son? не праѣду ли я вамъ сказалъ? did I not tell you the truth? не уже ли ты бѣльше отца нашего? Art thou greater than our father? &c.



---

## P A R T. IV.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

§ 333. Orthography is that part of grammar, which treats of the correct combination of letters in the formation of words.

§ 334. In the Russian language words are written, as they are pronounced, every letter bearing its full and proper sound, consequently the only difficulty, that can occur in the choice of letters, arises from those characters, which are similar, or nearly similar in sound, but different in form, as, *e*, *ɛ* and *ə*; *i*, *ɪ* and *u*; *z* and *b*.

§ 335. The letter *ѣ* occurs:

1<sup>st</sup>. As the final of the prepositional singular of all substantives, except those, which terminate in the nominative singular in *и*, *ie* and *ъ* (fem); ex,

стуль, a chair, *prep.* на стулѣ.

покой, a room, — въ покоѣ.

свадьба, a marriage, — по свадьбѣ.

кухня, a kitchen, — при кухнѣ.

письмо, a letter, — о письмѣ.

море, the sea, — на морѣ.

монастырь, a monastery, въ монастырѣ.

- 2<sup>ly</sup>. In the dative singular of substantives, ending in the nominative in *а* and *я*, as:  
 роса́, dew,      *dat.* росѣ.  
 конюшня, a stable, — конюшнѣ.
- 3<sup>ly</sup>. In the dative and prepositional cases of the personal pronouns *и*, I; *ты*, thou, and *себя*, self; as, *мнѣ*, *тебѣ*, *себѣ* &c.
- 4<sup>ly</sup>. In the plural of the pronouns *тотъ*, that one, and *весь*, all, through all the cases, as : *тѣ*, *тѣхъ*, *тѣмъ*, &c.
- 5<sup>ly</sup>. In the instrumental singular of the pronouns *тотъ*, that; *кто*, who; *что*, what; *весь*, all, as : *тѣмъ*, *кѣмъ*, *чѣмъ* and *всѣмъ*.
- 6<sup>ly</sup>. In the nominative plural fem. of the pronoun *онъ*, he, as : *онѣ*, they.
- 7<sup>ly</sup>. In the nominative plural feminine of the numerals *одинъ*, one, and *два*, two, as : *однѣ*, *двѣ*.
- 8<sup>ly</sup>. In the feminine of *оба*, both, through all the cases : *обѣ*, *обѣихъ*, *обѣими*, &c.
- 9<sup>ly</sup>. In the comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives, as :  
 ясный, clear, яснѣе, and, яснѣйшій.
- 10<sup>ly</sup>. In all verbs, which have the sound of the letter *ä* before the final *ть*; as, *пѣть*, to sing; *краснѣть*, to blush &c. Except, *мерѣть*, to die; *перѣть*, to push, and *терѣть*, to rub.

\*\*

*Rem.* When the 1<sup>st</sup>. person indicative terminates in ъю, the letter ъ is retained through all the conjugation of the verb.

§ 336. In general it may be remarked, that when a primitive word, or root is written with ъ, that vowel is retained in all the derivatives. The following is a list of the most useful words, in which this letter occurs, arranged according to the different parts of speech.

*Substantives.*

Апрѣль, April.	дѣло, an affair.
бесѣда, conversation.	дѣти, children.
бѣдѣ, calamity.	желѣзѣ, a gland.
бѣсь, a devil.	желѣзо, iron.
вѣдьма, a sorceress.	запѣки, a scheme.
вѣнѣо, marriage portion.	звѣздѣ, a star.
вѣкша, a squirrel.	звѣрь, an animal.
вѣкъ, an age.	змѣй, a serpent.
вѣнѣцъ, a wreath.	зѣнѣца, the eye-ball.
вѣра, faith.	клѣтъ, a cage.
вѣсъ, weight.	колѣно, the knee.
вѣшвъ, a branch.	лѣнъ, idleness.
вѣтръ, wind.	лѣсъ, a forest.
гнѣвъ, anger.	лѣстница, a stair-case.
гнѣздо, a nest.	лѣто, the summer.
грѣхъ, sin.	медвѣдъ, a bear.
дѣва, a virgin.	мѣдъ, copper.
дѣдъ, grand-father.	мѣль, chalk.

мѣль , a shallow.	свирѣль , a shepherd's pipe.
мѣна , a change.	
мѣра , a measure.	свѣтъ , light.
мѣсто , a place.	свѣчѣ , a candle.
мѣсяцъ , a month.	слѣдъ , a trace.
мѣста , a target.	смѣхъ , laughter.
мѣхъ , fur.	снѣгъ , snow.
невѣста , a bride.	сѣвѣсть , conscience.
недѣля , a week.	сосѣдъ , a neighbour.
нѣга , indolence.	стрѣлѣ , an arrow.
нѣдра , the bowels.	стѣна , a wall.
обѣдъ , a dinner.	сѣдлѣ , a saddle.
обѣть , a vow.	сѣмя , seed.
опрѣснокъ , unleavened bread.	сѣнь , a cover.
орѣхъ , a nut.	сѣра , sulphur.
плѣнъ , captivity.	сѣно , hay.
побѣда , a victory.	сѣть , a net.
повѣшъ , a district.	сѣверъ , the North.
полѣно , a log.	шелѣга , a cart.
поцѣлуй , a kiss.	тѣло , the body.
пѣна , froth.	тѣнъ , a shadow.
пѣня , punishment.	тѣсто , dough.
рѣдька , a radish.	хлѣбъ , bread.
рѣка , a river.	хлѣвъ , a sheep-house.
рѣпа , a turnip.	хмѣль , hops.
рѣсница , the eye-lid.	цвѣтъ , a flower.
рѣчь , an oration.	цѣль , aim.
	цѣна , price.

цѣпь , a chain.  
цѣпь , a flail.

человѣкъ , a man.  
хрѣнъ , horse-radish.

*Adjectives.*

блѣдный , pale.	пѣгій , piebald.
бѣдный , poor.	пѣшій , foot (soldier).
бѣлый , white.	рѣдкій , rare.
гнѣдый , bay.	рѣзвый , playful.
зрѣлый , mature.	свирѣпый , ferocious.
извѣстный , celebrated.	свѣжій , fresh.
лѣвый , left (side).	слѣпый , blind.
лѣнивый , idle.	спѣлый , ripe.
мѣлкій , shallow.	сѣрый , grey.
нѣжный , tender.	тѣсный , crowded.
нѣмѣй , dumb.	цѣлый , entire.

*Verbs.*

брѣю , I shave.	зашмѣвѣТЬ , to obscure.
бѣгашь , to run.	лѣзТЬ , to climb.
встрѣчать , to meet.	лѣпїТЬ , to mould.
вѣдашь , to know.	лѣчить , to cure.
вѣсимъ , to weigh.	мѣсить , to knead.
вѣщашь , to tell.	мѣшкатЬ , to hesitate.
вѣяшь , to blow.	обрѣтапть , to find.
дѣвѣТЬ , to dispose.	одѣвѣТЬ , to clothe.
дѣлашь , to do.	посѣщашь , to visit.
дѣять , to act.	пѣняТЬ , to complain.
зашмѣвѣТЬ , to contrive.	рѣзашь , to cut.

реши́ть , to decide.	съеда́ть , to consume.
смеяться , to laugh.	спѣши́ть, to make haste
снабдя́вáть , to supply.	сéчь , to flog.

*Adverb s.*

вездѣ , every-where.	где , where.
вмѣстѣ , together.	здесь , here.
вмѣсто , instead.	нѣгдѣ , some-where.
внѣ , outside.	нѣкогда , once.

§ 337. The letter *э* occurs in words of foreign origin only , as : Экваторъ ; the Equator ; поэзія , poetry &c.

§ 338. The letters *й* and *i* are exactly similar in sound , the first is used before consonants , and the second before vowels ; as , доли́на , a valley .      Июль , July .  
 мѣльни́ца , a mill .      чте́ние , reading .  
 вишня , a cherry .      наси́ліе , violence .

*Rem.* 1. The only exception to the above rule is the word миръ , the world , in which the *i* occurs before a consonant to distinguish it from миръ , peace .

*Rem.* 2. Many writers retain *и* in all words composed of the preposition *при* and a word commencing with a vowel , as : приобщáть , to communicate ; приѣхать to arrive ; but it is more regular to change the *и* into *i* , and to write such words приобщáть and приѣхать . For the letter *й* V. § 5 .

§ 339. The letter *ы* may always be distinguished from *и* by its guttural sound; it occurs in the genitive singular and nominative plural of the substantives ending in *а*, and in the nominative plural of those ending in *ъ*  
V § 5.

§ 340. The letter *о* is commonly pronounced as *а* when it occurs in a syllable, upon which the accent does not fall, as:

конéцъ, the end, pronounced kanetz.

§ 341. The consonants, having a definite sound, are not liable to be mistaken for each other, except the compound letters *ц* and *щ*, which may be written by mistake *mc* and *ct*, and *vice versa*:

цéрковь, a church, and not. щéрковь.

щéдрость, bounty, — — — счéдрость.

брáтскíй, a brother's, — — бráцкíй.

счислénіе, calculation, — — щислénіе.

§ 342. The *з* of the particles *из*, *воз*, and *раз*, is changed into, *c* when the word, with which they are connected, begins with a hard consonant, ex.

*из*, истребíть, to destroy.

*воз*, воскресénie, the resurrection.

*раз*, распечáтишь, to unseal.

§ 343. The hard or soft sign (*з* or *ъ*) follows the last letter of every word, that ends in a consonant, as: глагóль, a verb; дворъ, a court; вѣтвь, a branch; крѣпость, a fortress &c.

§ 344. In the modifications, to which the variable parts of speech are subject, the hard sign *з* occurs:

1<sup>st</sup>. In words composed with the prepositions *безъ*, *въ*, *изъ*, *объ*, *отъ*, *подъ*, *предъ*, *разъ*, and *съ*, when the letter, which follows, the preposition is one of the vowels *e*, *и*, *ю* or *я*.

безъимéнныи, anonymous.	отъѣздъ, departure.
	подъѧчий, an attorney.
вѣзъ, entry.	предъидущий, preceding.
изъявленіе, indication.	инг.
объявленіе, declaration.	съѣздъ, an assembly.

2<sup>ly</sup>. In the conjugation of verbs, at the end of the third person singular, and of the second and third persons plural of the present, as:  
 онъ ъзитъ, he rides. мы читаемъ, we read.  
 она пишетъ, she writes. они играютъ, they play.

3<sup>ly</sup>. In the past tense of all three persons singular of the masculine gender, as, я ска-  
 залъ, I said; ты отвѣчалъ, thou answeredst;  
 онъ молчалъ, he kept silence.

§ 345. The soft sign *ъ* occurs:

1st. As the final of all regular verbs in the infinitive mood, as: ходить, to walk; говорить, to speak &c.

2ly. In the conjugation of verbs, as the final of the second person singular, present tense, ex. ты любишь, thou lovest; ты спрашиваешь, thou sifferest &c.

3ly. In the second person singular of the imperative, V § 182.

4ly. In the middle of many derivatives, as: мельница, a mill, &c.

§ 346. The signification of the following words is determined by the prefix of the hard or soft sign (ž or ь).

брать, brother.	брать, to take.
вязь, an elm.	вязь, a bog.
кладь, a treasure.	кладь, a cargo.
кробъ, roof.	кробъ, blood.
матъ, mate (at chess).	мать, mother.
перстъ, a finger.	перстъ, earth.
плотъ, a raft.	плотъ, the flesh.
пыль, heat.	пыль, dust.
столъ, a table.	столъ, so much.
уголь, a corner.	уголь, coal.
цѣпъ, a flail.	цѣпъ, a chain.
шестъ, a pole.	шестъ, six.
щеголь, a goldfinch.	щеголь, a sop.

§ 347. The signification of the following words is determined by the position of the accent:

áтласъ , an atlas.	аплásь , satin.
вéдро , fine weather.	ведró , a pail.
вóлна , a fleece.	волná , a wave.
гúба , the lip.	губá , a bay.
желъза , irons.	желъzá , a gland.
зámокъ , a castle.	замóкъ , a lock.
засыпашь , to heap.	засыпáшь , to doze.
кóзлы , a coach-box.	козлý , goats.
кróю , I cover.	крою , I cut- out.
мокróта , phlegm.	мокромá , humidity.
мùка , torment.	муká , flour.
пárы , pairs.	пары , vapours.
пáрить , to steam.	парíшь , to soar.
пóлонъ , full.	полónъ , captivity.
пóрохъ , gun-powder.	порóкъ , vice.
нráвило , a rule.	правíло , a rudder.
пùшыня , a hermitage.	пушыня , a desert.
сéмя , seed.	семýя , a family.
тáю , I thaw.	таю , I hide.
ùгольный , coal. (adj.)	угóльный, corner, (adj.)

§ 348. The only signs peculiar to the Russian language are ‘ and ‘‘ ; the former is placed over *и*, when that vowel is used in the diphthongs *ай*, *еи*, *ии*, *ой*, *уй*, *ый*, *ти*, *эй*, *юи*, and *яй* ; the latter over *e*, when that vowel is pronounced as *eo*, ex. *далёко*, distant, pronounced *daleoko*. &c.

#### END OF THE FIRST BOOK.

## E R R A T A.

<i>Page</i>	10	<i>line</i>	24	for <i>numbes</i> read <i>numbers</i> .
—	26	—	10	— <i>riches</i> — indolence.
—	59	—	18	— <i>excepions</i> — exceptions.
—	108	—	7	— <i>Coloseum</i> — Coliseum.
—	115	—	9	— <i>sixty nine</i> — eighty six.
—	146	—	13	— <i>indefinite</i> — definite.



## O M I S S I O N S.

<i>Page</i>	7	<i>line</i>	20	omitted <i>animal</i> .
—	32	—	15	— whistling , свистъ.
—	40	—	12	— of the White sea , Бѣла- го моря.
—	41	—	11	— gratitude, благодѣрность
—	135	—	8	— никто , nobody , and ничто , nothing.



K E Y  
T O  
THE THEMES  
CONTAINED IN  
HEARD'S  
RUSSIAN GRAMMAR,  
TO WHICH ARE ADDED  
A VOCABULARY, DIALOGUES  
AND  
READING-LESSONS  
IN PROSE AND VERSE.

---

St. PETERSBURG.

PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR, AND SOLD BY SLEUNING,  
AND BY BOOSEY AND SONS LONDON..

1827.

## ПЕЧАТАТЬ ПОЗВОЛЕНО

съ шѣмъ, чтобы по напечатаніи, до выпуска  
изъ Типографіи, представлено было сеять эк-  
земпляровъ сей книги въ Цензурный Коми-  
тетъ, для препровожденія куда слѣдуетъ, на  
основаніи узаконеній. С. Петербургъ, Юня  
30 дня, 1826 года.

*Цензоръ Александръ Красовскій.*

---

---

Въ типографіи Департамента народнаго  
просвѣщенія.

## C O N T E N T S.

---

### K E Y

#### PAGE.

<b>Key to the themes on substantives . . . . .</b>	<b>1</b>
On adjectives . . . . .	12
On numerals . . . . .	18
On pronouns . . . . .	22
On verbs . . . . .	28
On participles . . . . .	41
On adverbs . . . . .	43
On prepositions . . . . .	45
On conjunctions . . . . .	47
On interjections . . . . .	48
<b>VOCABULARY . . . . .</b>	<b>49</b>
Titles and ranks . . . . .	88
Table of Russian weights, measures and coins . . . . .	94

### D I A L O G U E S.

<b>Dialogue I. On the arrival of a foreigner at Cronstadt.</b>	<b>96</b>
— II. At an inn . . . . .	102
— III. Expressions of politeness . . . . .	105
— IV. Remarkable objects at Petersburg . . . .	108
— V. Shopping. . . . .	111
— VI. With tradespeople. . . . .	113
— VII. Enquiries previous to a journey . . . .	115
— VIII. On the road to Moscow . . . . .	119
— IX. Remarkable objects at Moscow . . . . .	121

READING LESSONS IN PROSE.

An Oriental tale . . . . .	123
The Bedouin Arab . . . . .	125
Domestic scene . . . . .	132
Gibraltar . . . . .	135
St. Petersburg . . . . .	141
The first English in Russia . . . . .	144

READING LESSONS IN VERSE.

The ass and the nightingale . . . . .	150
Rich and poor . . . . .	154
The church-yard . . . . .	158
A national song . . . . .	162
Good night . . . . .	166
The Hermit . . . . .	172
Gray's elegy . . . . .	186



---

## Т Н Е М Е И.

### О Н Т Н Е М Е Т Е Р М И Н А Т И О Н

3.

- Богъ есть Созда́тель *мира*.  
Душа́ геловѣка безсмѣртна.  
Ра́зумъ данъ геловѣку для обузданія спра-  
шѣй.  
Счастлівъ шошь юноша, кошорый нашель  
вѣрнаго *друга*.  
Пьянство ослабляешь разсудокъ.  
Желѣзо напѣртое магнішомъ всѣгда покака-  
зываешь на *Северъ*.  
Богословія есть наука, кошорая разсу-  
ждаетъ о Богѣ.  
Поселянинъ говориши о плугѣ и о посѣвѣ.  
Санктпетербургъ есть одинъ изъ краси-  
вѣйшихъ городовъ въ Европѣ; въ семъ градѣ  
есть мніо гекколѣпныхъ домовъ.  
Опытъ есть наставникъ глупцѣвъ.  
Любопытство влечеши разумъ человѣческій  
къ новымъ предметамъ.

I

Дружба есть взаймное влече́ніе добродѣтельныхъ сердѣцъ; люди злые имѣютъ сообщниковъ поро́ка, распушные соуга́стниковъ развра́та, сребролюбцы товáрищей корысти, сùешные соспяза́телей пщеславія, — одни шолько добродѣтельные имѣютъ друзей.

Весною земля украшае́тъ цвѣтами.

Правовѣденіе есть наука о законахъ.

Въ городахъ обишаешь роскошь, а въ селахъ проспоща.



## Т Н Е М Е II.

### On the MASCULINE TERMINATION

#### и.

Великоду́шіе есть свойство ѹспиннаго героя.

Пойдемъ къ ру́гу купа́ться:

Садовникъ поспроилъ ѹлей, въ котóромъ онъ содержитъ цѣлый рой пчель.

Фемистокль ѹзгнанъ быль жре́біемъ изъ ошечества.

Супрѹжескій союзъ установленъ быль въ раю.

Въ Африкѣ водящихся ядовитые зми.

Не пропускай удобныхъ слугаевъ къ пріо-  
брѣтенію познаній.

Смершь ужасна злодѣямъ.

Древніе Египтяне обожали эмбевъ.

Дождь напиталъ вѣрхніе слои земли.

Темпейская долина орошаема многими ру-  
чьами.

Слава Александра великаго гремѣла во всѣхъ  
краяхъ вселенной.



### Т Н Е М Е III.

#### ON THE FEMININE TERMINATION

a.

Нѣть розы безъ шиповъ.

Кто не удивляется дѣйствіямъ Природы?

Горѣ Роза едвѣ ли уступаешь въ вышинѣ  
горѣ Монбланъ.

Рабоша укрѣплѣашь сѣму и здоровіе.

Древніе Римляне презирали нѣгу и роскошь.

Волга изобилуешь рыбью.

Все въ Природѣ возвѣщаешь премудросши  
Творца.

Алпийскія горы сушь высочайшиe въ Европѣ.

Египтяне вѣрили переселенію душъ.

\*\*

До изобрѣшениѧ компаса мореходцы напра-  
вляли своё плаваніе по звѣздамъ.

Надѣжда пишаешь души несчастныхъ.

Швейцарія изобилуетъ горами и долинами.

Греки при Олимпійскихъ играхъ вѣнчали  
побѣдителей лавровыми вѣнками.



## Т Н Е М Е IV.

### ON THE FEMININE TERMINATION

#### A.

Страннопріїмство, происпекающее у дре-  
внихъ народовъ изъ чистаго человѣколюбія  
нынѣ основывается на выгодахъ *торговли*.

Воины должны слѣпо повиноваться *волѣ*  
своего предводителя.

Франклінъ изобрѣлъ сре́дство оправдашь  
*молню* громовымъ опровергомъ.

Одно мгновеніе успѣаетъ за другимъ, какъ  
спрятъ за *струею* въ море вѣчности.

Люди, привыкшіе къ городской роскоши  
не находящіе никакаго удовольствія въ *деревнѣ*.

Полководецъ долженъ сохранять присущіе  
духу среды свѣтлая *пуль* и грома *пушекъ*.

( 5 )

Учреждение школъ по деревнамъ содѣйствовало къ благососѣйнію Шотландіи.

Африка заключаешь въ себѣ многія пространныя пустыни.

Изъ Россійскихъ спихошвѣрцевъ Крыловъ, Дмиштровъ и Хемницеръ прославились своими баснями.

Въ разныхъ земляхъ, разные обычай.



#### T H E M E V.

#### ON THE FEMININE TERMINATION

и.

Здоровіе есть плодъ умѣренности.

Младенчество есть счастливѣйшее врѣмя жизни.

Доброта предпочтительна богатству, дружество лести, а польза удовольствію.

Человѣкъ лѣнійный самъ себѣ бываешь въ тѣгостѣ.

Щедрость должна бысть умѣряма бережли-  
востию.

Азія была колыбелью рода человѣческаго.

Если хочешь быть добродѣтельнымъ, размышляй чѣсто о смерти.

Правосудіе есьть перваѧ изъ добродѣтелей.  
Онасно предавающія неумѣренныи стра-  
стамъ.

Созерцаніе Природы внушающіе величе-  
ственныя мысли.

Разумъ часыто помрачаетъся страстиами.  
Есть необыкновенные умы, прославившіеся  
во всѣхъ ствояхъ человѣческихъ познаній.



## Т Н Е М Е VI.

### ON THE SUBSTANTIVES ENDING IN ь, WHICH ARE MASCULINE.

Тщѣтное усиліе сотиннителя угождашь вку-  
су всѣхъ свойхъ гитателей.

Ученикъ долженъ повиноваться своему угйт-  
телю.

Южная Россія произвѣдипъ въ великому  
изобиліи лѣмѣнь, прѣсо, овѣсь и всякаго  
рода хлѣбныя распѣнія.

Рюрикъ быль основателемъ Россійскаго  
Государства.

Непріятель опустошилъ всѣ города и сѣла  
огнѣмъ и метѣмъ.

Англичанинъ Чанселоръ, прїехавъ на кораблѣ  
къ берегамъ Бѣлаго моря, завѣль первыя тор-  
говыя свѣзи съ Россіею.

( 7 )

Завоеватели въ оди́нъ годъ испровергаюшъ то, что учреждаёшся вѣками.

Въ Англіи мнѣго оштѣчныхъ писателей.

Россійскіе крестьяне вѣсятъ вмѣсто дбуви лапти; плетёныя изъ берёзовой коры.

Дитя оказываетъ своймъ родителямъ благодарность покорностию и почтѣніемъ.

Египтяне были угітелями Грековъ въ наукахъ и искуствахъ.

Учёность въ срѣдніе вѣки процвѣшала въ однихъ шолько монастыряхъ.



## Т Н Е М Е VII.

### ON THE NEUTER TERMINATION

o.

Изъ Россіи вывозится мнѣго желяза.

Вставать рано по утрѣ здорово.

Трудъ и упражненіе укрепляютъ тѣло.

Испинновеликійчеловѣкъ соединяешь скромность съ достоинствомъ.

Мексиканскіе рудники изобилуюшь золотомъ и серебромъ.

Порядокъ требуетъ, чтобы всякая вещь хранилась на своёмъ месте.

Средства самая простая суть чисто самая лучшая.

Иногда ошь малыхъ нагаль раждаюшся великія дѣла.

Скромность принадлежитъ къ привлекательнѣйшимъ свойствамъ женскаго пола.

Сокращъ превосходилъ всѣхъ своихъ согражданъ красотами ума и сердца.

Красноречие не состоять въ высокопарныхъ словахъ: но въ сильныхъ густвахъ.



### Т Н Е М Е VIII.

#### ON THE NEUTER TERMINATION

e.

Судьба человѣка болѣею частію зависить отъ собственнаго его поведенія.

Человѣкъ не имѣющій благодарнаго сердца неспособенъ къ добродѣтельному поступку.

Хвалить человѣка въ лицѣ значить уличать его въ тщеславіи.

Сchezя къ добродѣтели ешь пушь къ спокойствію.

Привычка подавляешь воображеніе.

Упьянѣ вѣры бываешь върнѣйшимъ нашимъ приближаемъ въ несчастіи.

Славно умерѣшь на полѣ бѣзы, сражаясь за отечество.

*Въ счастіи надлежишь хранить воздержаніе, а въ несчастіи терпѣніе.*

*Сердца юношей равнѣ ощѣрсты для добрыхъ и для худыхъ впечатлѣній.*

*Восхожденіе солнца на морѣ есть одно изъ величесшеннѣйшихъ зрелищъ въ природѣ.*

*Предразсудокъ ослѣплѣшь глаза пустыми привидѣніями.*

*Добродѣтельный человѣкъ находитъ въ собственныхъ своихъ тѣстованихъ удовлетвореніе за всѣ преврашности мѣра.*



## Т Н Е М Е IX.

### ON THE NEUTER TERMINATION

#### МА.

*Немногіе люди умѣюши цѣнить важность времени.*

*Большая часть жителей, населяющихъ Россію, принадлежишь къ Славянскому племени.*

*Послѣ великихъ препѣтствій Крестоносцы успѣли водрузить знамя свое на спинахъ Іерусалима.*

*Не должно унывать даже и подъ бременемъ несчастій.*

( 10 )

О времена! о нравы!

Всёкое изъ времéнъ гóда имѣетъ свой прéлестни.

Испóрія предаешь пошомству имена великихъ мужей.

Непріятель вступиъль въ городъ съ распушчеными знамéнами.

Мы имѣемъ мало извѣстий о племенахъ населяющихъ внутренность Африки.



#### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

#### ON THE DECLEN SION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

#### Финляндія.

Здѣсь цáрство зимы.— Въ начáле Октября все покрыто снегомъ. — Едва сосѣдня скала выкáзываешь безплодную вершину; йней падаешь въ видѣ густаго облака. Деревья, при первомъ утреннемъ морозѣ, блестяютъ рдяговою, отражая солнечные лучи тысячью пріятныхъ цветовъ. Но болице, кажеется, съ ужасомъ взираешь на опустошёнія зимы; едва явится и ужé погруженъ въ багровый туманъ, предвестникъ сильной стужи. Мѣсяцъ въ tegénie всей ноги изливаетъ сереб-

бренные луги свой и образуешь круги на чистой лазурин небесной, по которой изредка пролешают блестящие метеоры. Ни малейшее дуновение ветра не колеблешь деревъ, облённыхъ и неемъ: печальное, но прятное зрѣлище! Какая необыкновенная шишина. Робкая лань торопко пробирается въ гащу, отрясая съ роговъ свойхъ олденълый иней; спадо тетеревей безопасно дремлетъ въ глубокой шишинѣ леса, и всякий шагъ странника слышанъ въ снежной пустынѣ.

Но и здѣсь природа улыбается веселою, но крашкою улыбкою. Когда снега распаяли опять теплого лѣтняго вѣтра и яркихъ лугей солнца; когда воды съ шумомъ утекли въ моря, образовавъ въ течениіи своемъ тысячи ручьевъ, тысячи водопадовъ; тогда природа выходитъ изъ пагостнаго и продолжительного усыпленія. Вдругъ озимья поля одѣваются зеленымъ бархатомъ, луга душистыми цветами. Вчера все было мертвое, — сего дня все цветущее, все благоухаешь.



## Т Н Е М Е Х.

## ON THE DECLEMION OF ADJECTIVES.

Въ съпѣ нѣпъ ничего совершённаго.

Кто ѹщепъ себѣ друзѣй, то пъ должны прѣжде всего сдѣлашься достойнымъ дружбы.

Благодарный человѣкъ подобенъ плодоносной почвѣ, щедро награждающей шруды воздѣльвшеля.

Нѣпъ истиннаго благодѣнствія безъ добродѣтели.

Доброе намѣреніе не можетъ оправдывать неблагоразумнаго дѣла.

Скромное и весёлое обхожденіе привлекаетъ сердца людей.

Человѣкъ съ добрымъ сердцемъ спаравшся все обращашь въ добро, злой же находишь и въ самомъ добрѣ зло.

Въ жицни человѣческой нѣшь прѣтнаго счастья.

Счастья должно искать не въ шумномъ вершепѣ удовольствій; но въ мирномъ кругу добродѣтельнаго семейства.

Древніе стихопѣрцы говорятъ о золотомъ, серебренномъ и желѣзномъ вѣкѣ.

Древній Римъ произвѣль многихъ великихъ мужей.

Христіанская вѣра пріучаетъ насъ бысть  
благодѣтельными и геловѣколюбивыми.

Олени водяшися шолько въ холодныхъ, а  
верблюды въ тёплыхъ странахъ.

У Китайцевъ красота состоять въ широ-  
комъ лицѣ, въ юзеныхъ глазахъ, въ сплю-  
щенномъ носѣ, въ маленькихъ ножкахъ и въ  
городномъ шѣль.



## Т Н Е М Е XI.

### ON THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

Роза прекраснѣе лилѣи.

Орель сильнѣе нежели ястребъ.

Чѣмъ пища бываша проще, темъ она здо-  
ровѣе.

Весна пріятнѣе зимы.

Золото драгоценнѣе другихъ мешалловъ;  
но желѣзо полезнѣе золота.

Произведенія природы гораздо величествен-  
нѣе нежели всѣ произведенія искусства.

Гористая страна гораздо привлекательнѣе  
для глазъ, нежели плоская равнина.

Шерсть Саксонскихъ овѣцъ тонѣе нежели  
шерсть Англійскихъ.

Лондонъ многолюднѣе Парижа.

Азія пространнѣе Европы, но Европѣцы образованнѣе Азіатцевъ.

Французскій языкъ лѣтте Рѣсского, но Рѣсской богаче Французскаго.

Венера ближе къ солнцу нежели земля, а Меркурий ближе нежели Венера.



## Т Н Е М Е XII.

### О Н THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

Россія есть пространнѣйшее Государство въ свѣтѣ.

Венера есть светлѣйшая изъ планѣтъ.

Самолюбіе есть опаснѣйшій льстецъ.

Ещесъщенная исторія есть одна изъ пріятѣйшихъ наукъ.

Меркурий есть самая меньшая и ближайшая къ солнцу планета.

Вершины высокайшихъ горъ скрываются въ облакахъ.

Лошадь есть красивѣйшее, овца же самое полезное изъ всѣхъ домашнихъ животныхъ.

Стрѣусъ есть величайшая изъ птицъ.

Слонъ есть самое смышленное изъ всѣхъ четвероногихъ.

Высокайшимъ стѣпенемъ неучтивства почшаешься прерывашь чужую рѣчь.

Хорóшій примѣръ ешь сильнѣйшее побуждѣніе къ добродѣтели.

Киша́й ешь самая многолюдная страна въ свѣтѣ.



### Т Н Е М Е XIII.

#### ON POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

Молокó коробъе, овѣтъе и козье доставляешь весьма здоровую пищу.

Козью шерсть употребляютъ на разный шкани.

Лапланцы питаютсѧ оленьимъ молокомъ и дѣлаютъ себѣ шалашъ и одѣжду изъ оленьей кожи.

Изъ верблюжей шерсти дѣлаются шляпы, плашки и другія издѣлья.

Воловью и телюжью кожу выдѣлываютъ для разнаго употребленія.

Жители сѣвера одѣваются на зиму собольими, лисицами, медведыми и волчьими мехами.

Бобрьи и горностаевые мехи доброго цѣняются.

Бобрый и зайчий пухъ служишъ для дѣлания шляпъ.



## T H E M E XIV.

## ON AROSCOPATED ADJECTIVES.

*Богъ милосéрдъ.*

*Добродѣшель скромна.*

*Будь покоренъ въ дѣлствѣ, и шы бùдешь  
погтёнъ въ спáросши.*

*Труденъ путь ко слáвѣ.*

*Сообщесшво разврáшныхъ людéй зарази-  
тельно.*

*Иногда сáмые враги бываюшъ намъ полéзны,  
открывая намъ наши недоспáшки.*

*Шумныя рáдости свѣща обманчины.*

*Лèность постыдна и вредна.*

*Человéкъ смéртенъ.*

*Лисица хитра, левъ великодúшенъ, а шигръ  
кровожáденъ.*

*Любóвь слéпа.*

*Вréмя драгоцéнно, а жизнь кратка.*



## P R O M I S C U O U S   E X E R C I S E

## ON THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

*Тúхий и прохладный вéчеръ засступа́ль ужé  
мѣсто палáщаго дня, когда Услáдъ, молодой  
певéцъ, приближался къ берегамъ Москви*

рѣкѣ, на кошбóрыхъ провёль *цвѣтущіе*<sup>(\*)</sup> дни  
своей юности. Глáдкая повéрхность водъ, едва  
лобзаемая лéгкимъ вѣтеркомъ покрыша была  
рóзовымъ сіяніемъ запада; въ зерцалѣ ихъ  
опражались съ одной стороны *древутій лѣсъ*  
и шéремъ гróзного Рогдáя, окружённый *вы-  
сокимъ дубовымъ шыномъ*—(онъ былъ постро-  
енъ на крутої горѣ, шамъ, гдѣ нынѣ видимъ  
зубатыя спѣны Кréмля, великолéпные чер-  
шóги *древнихъ Русскихъ Царей*)—съ другой  
зелéные берега, покрытые кустáрникомъ и  
осыпанные *нýзкими хижинами* землемедѣльцевъ.  
Повсюду цárствовало спокóиствie: воздухъ  
былъ расщорéнъ благоухáніемъ *цвѣтущей лí-  
пы*; иногда во глубинѣ лѣса раздавался гóлосъ  
соловья, или печáльное пѣніе ѹволги; иногда  
*непостойнныи* вѣтерокъ попрясалъ вершины  
дерéвъ; иногда *робкій* кроликъ, испуганный  
шорохомъ бросался въ кустáрникъ и шумѣль  
*изсохшими вѣшками*.—Услáдъ шелъ по про-  
пинкѣ, извивавшейся мéжду дерéвьями; душа  
его, наполненная воспоминáніями, погруженá  
была въ задумчивость. Гдѣ ты, мой рáдость?  
восклíкнулъ Усладъ: прихожу на тоже мѣсто,  
на кошбóромъ я нѣкогда восхищался бытіемъ  
своимъ: *тѣнистая роща, свѣтлая рѣка, зелéные  
берега не измѣнились!* По прéжнему благовонная  
лíпа разливаетъ свой слáдостный зáпахъ, по-

---

(\*) Participles have the same declension as adjectives.

прéжнему унылое пёное соловья и юволги раздаёшся въ глубинѣ дрему́гаго лѣса; а шошь кто нѣкогда услаждался благовоніемъ цветущей ли́пы, и пёниемъ соловья, шошь уже не похожъ на самаго себя!



## Т Н Е М Е XV.

### ON THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

Всеобщій потопъ во время Но́я продолжался триста сёмдесять семь дней.

Израильтяне странствовали сброкъ лѣтъ въ пустынѣ.

Солнечный годъ состоять изъ трехъ сотъ шестидесяти пяти дней пяти часовъ и сорока пяти минутъ.

Римъ построенъ за семь сотъ пятьдесятъ три года до Рождества Христова.

Птоломе́й Филадельфъ, употребилъ сёмьдесятъ двухъ толковниковъ для перевода вешчаго завѣта на Греческій языкъ.

Константинополь былъ взятъ Тюрками тысяча сто двадцать три года посль перенесенія шуда столицы Константиномъ Великимъ и

*девъ ты́сячи две́сти шесть лѣтъ послѣ построéнія города Рима.*

Александрийская библіошёка состояла изъ трéхъ сотъ ты́сячъ книгъ.

Моисе́й оставилъ Египетъ съ шестью ста-ми ты́сячъ Израильтянъ спустя геты́реста тридцать лѣтъ послѣ пे́рваго ихъ поселенія въ сей странѣ.

Кругъ раздѣллешся на триста шестьдесятъ градусовъ.

Свѣтъ солнечныхъ луче́й доспигаешь до насъ почтѣ въ восемь минутъ.

Александръ вели́кій вступилъ на престолъ двадцати, а умеръ тридцати лѣтъ отъ ро-ду.

При построеніи Римскаго Амфитеатра, извѣстнаго подъ именемъ Колизея, работали въ продолженіе пяти лѣтъ тридцать ты́сячъ военноплѣнныхъ Еврѣевъ. Портикъ сего зданія имѣлъ девъ ты́сячи пятьдесятъ фу́товъ въ окружности и былъ поддер живаемъ геты́рмá рядами столбовъ въ две́сти двадцать два фу́та вышины каждый. Въ немъ помѣщалось до ста ты́сячъ зрителей и не рѣдко хоры въ три ты́сячи пѣвцовъ и столько же шанцовщицы увеселяли въ семъ огромномъ зданіи Римскую публику.

Высота Монблана составляєть геты́рнадцать ты́сячъ пятьсотъ пятьдесятъ шесть,

а высота Чимборассо девяноста шестьсот два (Парижскихъ) фùша.



## Т Н Е М Е XVI.

### ON THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

На памятнике Петра Великаго изображенà слèдующая надпись: *Петрù первому Екашерину втораю.*

Имена Петра первого, Фридриха втораго и Генриха четвёртаго безсмèртны въ и-стории.

Римъ имѣлъ семь Царей: первой былъ Ромуль, второй Нума Помпилій, третий Тулль Гостилій, четвёртый Анкъ Марцій, пятый Тарквіній Прискъ, шестой Се́рвій Туллій, седьмой и последний Тарквіній Гордый.

Первый мѣсяцъ въ году Генварь, второй Февраль, третий Мартъ, четвёртый Апрель, пятый Май, шестой Июнь, седьмой Июль, восьмой Августъ, девятый Сентябрь, десятый Октябрь, одиннадцатый Ноябрь, двенадцатый Декабрь.

Компасъ былъ изобрѣщенъ въ тысяча триста трётьемъ году.

Российское торговое общество основано въ Англіи въ *тысяча пятьсотъ пятьдесятъ пятнадцатомъ* году.

Петръ Великій побѣдилъ Карла *двенадцатаго* при Полтавѣ въ *тысяча семь сотъ девятомъ* году.

Америка открыта въ *пятнадцатомъ* въ-



### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

#### ON NUMERALS.

Россія просширается ошъ востока къ западу на *сто шестьдесятъ девяты съ половиною градусовъ*, т. е. ошъ *тридцать девятаго до двухъ сотъ восьмага съ половиною градусовъ долготы*; и включая самые отдаленные острова восточного Океана, (кои доходятъ до *двухъ сотъ двадцать пятаго градуса*,) на *сто восемьдесятъ шесть градусовъ*.

Самое большоё протяженіе ошъ съвера къ югу составляешь *тридцать восемь градусовъ то есть, ошъ сороковаго до семидесяти восьмаго градуса широты*: Слѣдовательно величайшая часть Россіи находится въ умеренномъ, а самая мала въ холодномъ поясѣ. Вся же поверхность Государства выключая

островá востóчнаго Океáна , просшиráется на триста сорокъ ты́сячъ географическихъ квадратныхъ Ньмéцкихъ миль , или шестьнáдцать миллионовъ шестьсотъ шестьдесятъ ты́сячъ квадратныхъ вершъ .



## Т Н Е М Е XVII.

### On PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Скажи мнé , съ кемъ ты обходишься , и я тебѣ скажу , кто ты шаковъ .

Помни менá , когда ты будешь счастливъ .

Кто не со мнóю , пошь прóшивъ менá .

Арисшóпель , подавая злому человéку мильоспыню , сказа́ль : не ему даю , а человéчеству .

Вéрный другъ открываешь намъ наши недосташки .

Естéственная истóрия даётъ намъ понятие о насъ самихъ и о предметахъ насъ окружающихихъ .

Разсéдовъ ука́зываетъ намъ путь къ благополучию , а спрасти отвлекающъ насъ ошь бнаго .

На однóй Егíпетской стáтуе была слéдующая надпись : я есть тошь , кто былъ , и

есть, и бùдешь въ вѣкъ; никто еще не снималъ съ менѣ завѣсы.

Гнѣвящіяся значишь наказываешь себѣ за чужую вину.

Берегись дурака, если его тронешь; умнаго, если причинишь ему обиду, и злаго, если сведёшь съ нимъ знакомство.

Многіе люди подобны ходячей монетѣ: не рѣдко принуждены бываемъ принимать ихъ по курсу, а не по исшинному ихъ достоинству.



## Т Н Е М Е XVIII.

### On RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Осторожайся тогдѣ, *кто* тебѣ безпрестанно хвалишь.

Мужественъ топъ, *кого* ничѣмъ всхрѣвѣшишь не въ состояніи.

Люди рѣдко любятъ тогдѣ, *когдѣ* боятся.

Не начинай за спыдь учиться въ зрѣлыхъ лѣтахъ тому, *тому* не научился въ младости.

Не откладывай до завтра, *что* можешь сдѣлать сего дня.

Филиппъ, Царь Македонскій имѣль у себя нарочнаго, *который* напоминаль ему, *что* онъ смѣршный.

Жизнь подобна сну, ошь котóраго просыпáемся въ часъ смéрши.

Испинно счáспливъ шошъ, кто не даéшъ вóли своймъ спраспáмъ.

Подумай наперéдъ о шомъ, что хóчешь сказáть.

Мы всегдà любимъ шéхъ, котóрые намъ удивляются, а не всегдà шéхъ, котóрымъ сáми удивляемъся.

Кто оправдываешся, не бùдучи обвиняемъ, шошъ тóлько возбуждáешь подозрèніе.

Трудно любишь тогò, когó не почитаemъ.

Испинное просвëщёніе есть то, котóрое учишь насъ быть полéзными томù общесству, въ котóромъ мы живéмъ.



## Т Н Е М Е XIX.

### ON POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Мы должны почитаить добродéшель лúчшимъ своймъ дрùгомъ, ёбо она есть истóчникъ нашего счàстия, нашей чéсти и нашего спокóйствия.

Я почитаю свойхъ родítелей: ёбо обязанъ имъ моёю жизнью и моимъ воспишàниемъ.

Берегись гнёва: онъ обезобрáживаешь твоё лицé, и ещё болéе твою душу.

Не говори о предметѣ, кошѣрый превыше  
твоїхъ поняшій.

Гомеरъ и Виргилій славны по *своймъ* шво-  
реніямъ.

Будь вѣренъ *своему* Государю.

Орэль въ быстремъ полѣшъ *своемъ* вознѣ-  
сишся превыше облаковъ.

Спараїся образовашъ *свой* умъ, облагород-  
диши свою душу и укрѣпиши *своё* шѣло.



## Т Н Е М Е ХХ.

### On DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Императоръ Типъ счишаіъ *тотъ* день по-  
тѣрянныиъ, въ кошѣрый не сдѣлаіъничего  
доброго.

Не повторяй въ одной бесѣдѣ *того*, чшо  
ты слышалъ въ другой.

Злополучны *те* люди, которые всегда це-  
довольны *своймъ* состояніемъ.

Трудъ укрѣпляешь шѣло, а праздношь раз-  
слабляешь *бое*.

*Сіё* наказаніе соразмѣрно *сему* преступленію.

*Сей* холмъ, *сія* роща, *сіе* полье, *сія* скром-  
ная хижина напоминающъ миъ мою родину.

*Всѧ си́й мра́моры, си́й надгрóбныя на́дписи, си́й величественныя развалины, си́е безмòлвіе, си́е уединéніе, си́й вели́кія имена свидѣтельствующь времена пропекшой слáвы.*

Ничто не можетъ изобразить тогó воспóртаго, котóрый восхищаетъ душу, когда вхóдишь въ цéрковь св. Петра въ пéрвый разъ; когда стойишь на семъ проспáрномъ помостѣ, между си́хъ ужásныхъ подпóръ, предъ си́ми бронзовыми колоннами, при видѣ всéхъ си́хъ карпíнъ, всéхъ си́хъ спàтуй, всéхъ си́хъ мавзолéевъ, всéхъ си́хъ жéршвенниковъ, подъ си́мъ кùполомъ.



## Т Н Е М Е XXI.

### ON INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

*Всѧ жáлются на слáбості памяши, никто не жáлуетъ на слáбость умá.*

*Кáждый человéкъ долженъ умерéшь.*

*Всакий день приносишь съ собою что нибудь новаго.*

*На семъ свѣтѣ нѣть нигерé постояннаго.*

*Дѣлай добро и никогó небойся.*

*Никакáя минùша не можеТЬ назваТЬся на-  
шею, кромъ настойщей.*

*Нигтó шакъ не пóршишь нравовъ, какъ ху-  
дое сообщество.*

*Человéкъ, какоГО бы соспоянія ни быль,  
имѣешь всегда нѣкоторый родъ щеславія.*



## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

### ON PRONOUNS.

*Что такоЕ Отчeчество? Схрана, гдѣ мы  
родились; колыбель, въ котóрой мы возлeяны;  
гнѣздо, въ котóромъ согрѣты и воспѣтаны;  
земля, гдѣ лежаипъ кoспи опцѣвъ нашихъ, и  
кудá мы сâми лâжемъ. Какая душа дер-  
зneшъ расшoргнуть сiй крѣпкiя ўзы? КакоE  
сéрдце мoжетъ не чuвствовашь сего священ-  
наго пламени? Сâмыи иптицы и звѣри любяипъ  
мѣсто рожденiя своего: человѣкъ ли, одаренный  
разумною душою, отделишь себѣ отъ спра-  
ны своeй, отъ единоземцевъ своихъ? Какой  
извергъ не любишь мáшери своей! Но отчe-  
чество мeньше ли намъ, чѣмъ машь? Отвращe-  
ніе отъ сей пропивуестпевной мысли  
шакъ велико, что какую бы ни положили мы*

\*\*

въ человѣкѣ худѹю нравственность и беспыдство; хотя бы и предспавили себѣ, что можетъ найтился *такои*, который въ развращённой душѣ *своей* дѣйствительно питаешь ненависть къ отечеству *своему*; однакоже и *тотъ* постыдился бы всенародно и громогласно въ томъ признаться. *Всѧ вѣки, всѧ народы, землѧ и вебеса* возопіяли бы пропшивъ *него*: одињъ адъ спалъ бы *ему* руко-плескашь.



## Т Н Е М Е XXIL

### ON THE AUXILIARY VERB.

*День есть* врѣмя труда, а *ночь* врѣмя покоя.

*Праздность есть* порокъ.

*Доброта есть* сама себѣ награда.

*Конецъ гнѣва есть* начало раскаянія.

*Человѣкъ безъ твѣрдыкъ правиль есть* игралице свойхъ спрасшѣй.

*Есть* во всякомъ народѣ и добрые и злые люди.

*Рубли и копѣйки суть монеты, ужошибляемыя въ Россїи.*

**Хвастовство и надменность суть доказательства невежества.**

Желания наши бывают ненасытны.

Глаза бывают исполнены страсти сердца.

Люди ни на что не бывают такъ щедры, какъ на совѣты.

**Пиѳагоръ былъ первый изъ Греческихъ мудрецовъ.**

**Масличная вѣнье была у древнихъ знакомъ мира.**

**Римляне были величайшими побѣдителями древнихъ времёнъ.**

Александръ великій сказалъ: если бы я не былъ Александромъ, то хотелъ бы быть Диогеномъ.

**Хлѣбопашество было у Римлянъ въ великомъ почетѣ.**

**Немногіе Европейцы бывали во внутренности Африки.**

Богъ есть, былъ и будетъ въ вѣкъ.

Будь воздерженъ и ты будешь здоровъ.

Не будь завистливъ.

Быть довѣреннымъ значить быть богатымъ.

Каждый человѣкъ способенъ быть врагомъ, но не всякій другомъ.

**Во всякомъ званіи можно быть благополучнымъ.**

*Будущее скрыто отъ насъ непроницаемою  
затѣсью.*

*Будутъ здоровы, мы смигнемся надъ болѣзнями.*

*Моцартъ, бывши ещѣ малолѣтнимъ, восхи-  
щаль ужѣ всѣхъ своею игрою.*

*Торговля Генуэзцевъ, бывшая нѣкогда первою  
въ свѣтѣ, нынѣ въ великомъ упадкѣ.*

*Было время, когда вся Европа была погру-  
жена въ невѣжество.*

*Да будетъ сѣрдце твоѣ чуждо всякой не-  
правды.*



### T H E M E XXIII.

#### O N T H E C O N J U G A T I O N O F A C T I V E A N D N E U T E R V E R B S.

*Люди имѣютъ весьма разлѣчныя понятія о  
красотѣ.*

*Безъ дружбы жизнь не имѣеть никакой  
прѣлести.*

*Мы любимъ мѣсто своего рожденія.*

*Лунѣ заимствуетъ свой свѣтъ отъ солнца.*

*Конецъ вѣнчаетъ дѣло.*

*Чистый воздухъ мнѣго способствуетъ къ  
излеченію отъ болѣзней.*

*Ты жаждешъ славы, а онъ ищетъ бога́шства.*

*Не мно́гие люди творятъ добро по одной  
только любви къ добрѣ.*

*Вы любите чужие краи, а я люблю своё  
отечество.*

*Если покупаешь лишнее, то скоро будешь  
продавать нужное.*

*Усовершёнствование телескоповъ моего  
способствовало новымъ астрономическимъ от-  
крытиямъ.*

*Древніе Египтяне не знали употребленія  
бумаги, и писали на листьяхъ расщѣнія, име-  
нуемаго папирусомъ.*

*Лгать, знать забывашь Бога и болтаться  
людей.*

*Играть, знать бросать свое имѣніе въ море  
съ тюю надеждою, чтобы снова собрать боное  
на берегу.*

*Уповай на Бога.*

*Хранй во всякомъ случаѣ правила честно-  
сти.*

*Не судите о вещахъ по однѣй наружности.*

*Человѣкъ хранящій молчаніе можетъ при-  
мѣгать чужія глупости, не показывая своихъ.*

*Пліній, желая извѣдать причину изверженія  
горы Везувія, пожертвовалъ своему любопыт-  
ству жизнью.*

*Цицеронъ въ рѣчи своёй проптивъ Капиллы  
сказа́лъ : съ нами бысть тебѣ больше не воз-  
можно ; не снесу́ , не стерплю́ , не попущу́ .*

*Пришель , узрѣль и побѣдиль .*

*Многія сочиненія дре́внихъ погибли .*

*Наступила осень : листья пожелтели .*

*Благопріятный вѣтръ наду́л паруса наши ,  
и корабль быстро полетѣлъ по волнамъ .*

*Упавший съ дерева яблокъ , откры́лъ Невтона  
законы тяготѣнія .*

*Охотникъ крикнулъ : вспрѣнули гончіе .*

*Блеснула молния и грянула громъ .*

*Виргилій потерпнѣль многія мысли изъ Гоме́ра .*

*Минувшее невозвратимо .*

*Вспыхнувшая въ спукѣ селитра подала  
пόводъ къ изобрѣтенію пороха .*

*На Олимпійскихъ їграхъ поэты тѣтывали  
свой спихошворенія и орапоры говаривали  
рѣчи .*



## Т Н Е М Е XXIV.

## ON THE CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

*Самолюбіе чáсто бывае́тъ накáзываемо пре-  
зръніемъ.*

*Сицилія подвéржена чáстымъ землеprясе-  
ніямъ.*

*Сказывають, что Рóмуль и Рéмъ были  
воскóрмлены волчíцею.*

*Человéкъ сотворéнъ съ даровáніями, ош-  
личающими его отъ всéхъ прóчихъ швáрей.*

*При вýдѣ Ахиллéской гробници Алексáндръ  
былъ тронутъ до слезъ.*

*Бóльшая часть нашихъ знáній погéрпнута  
изъ творéній дреvнихъ.*

*Лицемѣrie есть дань, платímal порóкомъ  
добродѣтели.*

*Содѣланное нами добро должно забывáть, а  
получéнное вѣчно помнить.*

*Человéкъ, озарéнный свѣтомъ вѣры, усмá-  
тривая вездѣ слѣды всемогùщества и благосши  
Создáшеля, дивицся имъ; но умы погружен-  
ные въ невѣжество и безвѣrie, среди без-  
численныхъ чудéсь мíра не видашъ ничего,*

кромъ слѣчай: онъ подобны шѣмъ несчастнымъ, коихъ очи, лишённыя зрења, хотя обращаются къ солнечному свѣту; но кромъ мрачной шемониши ничего не вспрѣчаюшъ.



## Т Н Е М Е XXV.

### ON REFLECTIVE, RECIPROCAL AND COMMON VERBS.

*Способности наши развиваются съ возрастомъ.*

*Плющъ обвивается около дубовыхъ дерёвъ.  
Курцій низвергся въ пропасть для спасенія  
своего отечества.*

*Англичане и Португальцы прославились  
многочисленными пушечными орудиями около свѣта.  
Китайцы потыкаютъ себѣ мудрѣйшимъ на-  
родомъ въ свѣтѣ.*

*Гиппократъ и Галенъ потыкаются опциами  
врачебной науки.*

*Гибралтаръ потыкается одною изъ силь-  
нейшихъ крѣпостей въ Европѣ.*

*Золото испытывается огнёмъ, а другъ не-  
счастиемъ.*

*Виновные наказываются по мѣрѣ преступлѣнія.*

*Въ Камчашкѣ вмѣсто лошадѣй запрягаются собаки.*

*Діана изображалась съ лукомъ и колчаномъ наполненнымъ стрѣлами.*

*Все въ Природѣ измѣняется.*

*Во все теченіе сей крашкой жизни мы бѣремся съ болѣзнями, съ бѣдами, а болѣе всего со спрастями.*

*Весь свѣтъ жалуется на коловоращность счастія.*

*Добродѣтель не боится злословія.*

*Есть люди, которые стоятъ надъ другими, а не терпятъ, чтобы надъ ними стояли.*



## Т Н Е М Е XXVI.

### ON COMPOUND VERBS.

*Сѣверные народы беспокойли Римскую Имперію частыми набѣгами.*

*Дунай впадаетъ въ Чёрное море.*

*Зрѣлище Океана возбуждаетъ удивленіе.*

*Молитвы праведнаго возходятъ къ небесамъ.*

Пóслѣ ненастíя снóва вóзсíлlo сóлнце.  
Невозмóжно вóзвратýть пошéряннаго врé-  
мени.

Невá вытекáетъ изъ Лáдожскаго óзера.  
Тróя дóлго выдéрживала осáду; но нако-  
нéць была взята.

Прíамъ вýпросилъ у Ахиллéса пóло сына  
своегó Гéктора.

Бумáгу выдéлываютъ изъ трапицъ.  
Никшó еще не доходитъ до полюса.  
Нилъ кáждый годъ затопляетъ окréстныя  
спрáны.

Говорí ошкровéнно, но не заговáриваеся.  
Лишиь только закатýлось сóлнце, какъ  
соловéй запéль.

Прилéжный засlуживаетъ ободрénie.  
Везùвий извергáетъ плáмя.  
Пчёлы извлекáютъ медъ изъ всéхъ цвéтóвъ.  
Алхимíсты изы́скивали спóсобъ превратить  
ни́зкие мешáллы въ зóлото.

Скупые нáкоплáютъ богáтства, а наслед-  
ники ихъ растогáютъ бныя.

Желáнія честолюбца не скóро насыщаются.  
Цыгáнки наговáриваютъ на руку.  
На столпáхъ Геркулéсовыхъ были надпíсаны  
словá: не дáлбе сегó.

Въ Рымѣ низвергали преступниковъ съ Тарпейской скалы.

Пьянство омрагаетъ разсудокъ.

Капитанъ Кукъ при раза обиѣхалъ весь земной Шаръ.

Опасение ссыда отвращаетъ многихъ отъ худыхъ поступковъ.

Незнаніемъ законовъ никто отговариваться не долженъ.

Пресыщенный земнымъ величиемъ, Карль пѣшій удалился въ монастырь.

Многіе кочевые народы перемѣнили свой образъ жизни и поселились въ деревняхъ.

Ни одинъ смихомвбрецъ не превзошёлъ Гомера.

Мрачныя шучи предвещаютъ дождь.

Должно предполагать полезное пріяншому.

Весною на северъ прилетаетъ множесшво птицъ изъ шепыхъ схранъ.

Лицемѣры прикрываютъ свой пороки личинкою священства.

Науки просвещаютъ разумъ.

Игрокъ чашо проигрываютъ все свое имѣніе.



## Т Н Е М Е XXVII.

## ON IRREGULAR VERBS.

Въ безлѣсныхъ странахъ *жгутъ* каменное  
уголье, шурфъ и даже солому.

Дубовый лѣсь *идѣтъ* на строеніе кораблей.

Виноградная лоза не *можетъ* растѣ въ хо-  
лодныхъ климатахъ.

Въ Сибири *живутъ* многія кочевыя племена.

Ястребъ *вѣтается* надъ облаками.

Корзины *плетутъ* изъ ѹзовыхъ вѣтвей.

Малые проспушки *ведутъ* къ большимъ пре-  
спупленіямъ.

Сокращъ *палъ* жершвою клеветы и злобы  
своихъ согражданъ.

Васко де Гама *нашёлъ* морской путь въ  
Восточную Индію.

Монгольфиеръ *изобрѣлъ* воздушные шары.

Линней *пріобрѣлъ* великую славу шѣмъ, что  
привелъ Естественную Исторію въ систему.

Петръ Великій *завёлъ* первый Россійскій  
флотъ.

Гдѣ не *посѣлъ*, шамъ и не *пожнёши*.

*Пріайди* и *возмій*, ошвѣчаль Леонидъ Царю  
Персидскому, требовавшему, чтобы Спаршан-  
цы *вшдали* оружіе.



## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

## ON THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

Если я скажу тёбѣ, что у сáмого възда въ городъ (Симферóполь) по большой доро-гѣ ошь Николаева, стойть памятникъ Гóуарда, ты подумаешь, что я противоречу себѣ непроспѣтельнымъ образомъ — и ты ошибёшься: памятникъ подлинно тушъ находится — высокій гранитный обелискъ, кóего пьедесталъ составлѧетъ саркофагъ съ слѣдующею надписью: Гóуардъ скончался на шестидесятъ пятомъ году ошь рожденія своеГО въ 1790; онъ обнесёнъ клуглою каменною оградою, съ рѣшёпчатыми широкими желѣзными воротами, насупротивъ надписи. — Все это такъ; и хвалá тому, кто захотѣлъ погнать память человѣка, достойнаго всенощаго уваженія: но это памятникъ, кенотафъ, а не гробница Гóуарда. Прахъ сего благопривѣтствовалъ спрѣжущихъ погибаеть въ прехъ верстахъ ошь города; и тамъ-то я видѣлъ развалившуюся бѣдную кирпичную пирамиду вместо солнечныхъ часовъ, котоные я желалъ найти надъ могилою егò, согласно съ послѣднею его волею: это обстоятельство мо-

жепть бытъ тебѣ неизвѣстно. — Когда въ 1790 году *свирѣпствовали* въ Крымѣ прилип-  
чивыя гнилые горячкі, Гоурдъ *слугілся* въ Херсонѣ, на пушкѣ своемъ въ Царыградъ. Лег-  
ко себѣ представить можешь, что человѣку, котрорый ставилъ себѣ въ неминуемую обя-  
занность ежеднѣвно посещать шюрмы, боль-  
ныцы, оспрѣги, труждно было избѣжать за-  
разы: онъ дѣйствительно *сдѣлался* жѣршвою бной. Чувствуя, что конецъ его близокъ, онъ призвалъ къ себѣ двухъ пріятелей своихъ, съ коими могъ говорить на природномъ своёмъ языке и простившись съ ними, *сказалъ*: памятника я не хочу; а прошу васъ поставить надъ могилою мою простые солнечные часы; но повѣтніе сіе было забыто: итпъ солнечныхъ часовъ надъ его могилою; и этаго жаль, очень жаль! Друзья его *воздвигли* маленькую кирпичную пирамиду, шеперь, и этотъ простой памятникъ *разсыпается* и вскорѣ не узнаютъ мѣста, гдѣ лежатъ осшапки друга спрадальцевъ.

*Муравьевъ.*



## Т Н Е М Е XXVIII.

## On the Declension of Particles.

*Земля, наами обитаемая, есть планета, принадлежащая къ солнечной системѣ.*

*Развалины дрёвняго Рима суть памятники бывшаго его величия.*

*Человекъ, забывающій своё опредѣленіе для будущаго свѣща подобенъ путешеспивнику, не имѣющему другої цѣли кромѣ минутнаго удовольствія.*

*Россія отдѣляется отъ Америки Беринговымъ проливомъ, имѣющимъ ширину около семидесяти трехъ верстъ.*

*Изъ рѣкъ, впадающихъ въ Каспійское море Волга есть самая значительная.*

*Изъ числа стихотворцевъ, прославившихся въ новѣйшія времена въ Англіи, знающіе суть Вальтеръ Скоттъ и Байронъ.*

*Эпаминондъ, смертельно раненный въ сраженіи при Мантинѣ, сказалъ друзьямъ своимъ, соболезновавшимъ о томъ, что онъ умирая не оставляешь дѣтей: я оставляю двухъ дочерей Левкпры и Мантинею.*

*Невѣжество соединенное со скромностию, сноснѣе знаній, сопровождаемыхъ спесью.*

*Встревоженный духъ, подобно взволненному морю, отражаетъ всѣ окружающіе предметы обезображенными и преломленными, сообща имъ тоже волненіе, кошѣрымъ онъ самъ обуреваемъ.*

*Человѣку, ежечасно въ морѣ жизни обуреваемому, необходимо должно имѣть кормчимъ вѣру въ Провидѣніе.*

Первой шагъ за порогъ хижины доспѣвиль мнѣ восхитительнѣйшій взглядъ. Лучъ восходящаго солнца, перехваченные спилю каменныхъ горъ, бросали сквозь углы ихъ оживляющій свѣтъ свой; долина, частію освещенная, а частію скрытая въ тѣнѣ, являла самую разнообразную игру цвѣшбовъ. Татарская деревня съ домиками, пускающими бѣлые облака вѣющагося дымомъ сквозь густую сѣнь деревъ, величалась какъ Царница между горъ, служащихъ ей вѣнцемъ; между рощей, препоясывающихъ ее въ образѣ роскошныхъ гирляндъ; на берегу моря, приносящаго къ ногамъ ея дань своихъ волнъ.



## Т Н Е М Е XXIX.

## On Adverbs.

*Тамъ благодéнствуютъ народы, гдѣ шру-  
домлюбие соединено съ добрыми нравами.*

Мы видимъ *посюду* следы премудрости Божией.

Магелланъ совершилъ первое путешествие кругомъ свѣта.

*Нигдѣ нѣть такого многолюдства, какъ въ Китѣ.*

Въ Египтѣ, гдѣ прѣжде процвѣтали науки, нынѣ царствуетъ невѣжество.

Гневъ тасто заставляешь насъ действовать опромѣчivo.

Приближаясь къ берегу, мы примѣчаемъ *снатала* вершины горъ, потомъ верхніе башни, а *наконечъ* и самыи берегъ.

Благодарный *вѣтно* помнишь единожды оказанную ему услугу.

Много говорить и мало думашь есть признакъ легкомыслия.

Мы не знаемъ за подлинно сколь далеко Финикияне простирали свое плаваніе.

*Нѣть* правила безъ исключений.

Въ некоторыхъ искусствахъ мы *едва ли* можемъ равняться съ древними.

Спокойная душа подобно зеркальному озеру

*отражаетъ всякий предметъ въ надлежа-  
щемъ егъ видѣ.*

*Лакедемони не съ самаго младенчества прі-  
учали свойхъ дѣтей говоритьъ кратко и ясно.*

*Легче управлять спрасилю, нежели поту-  
шить оную.*

*Люди скорѣе прощають злобу, нежели пре-  
зрѣніе.*

*Многіе люди пѣшутъ лѣтше, чѣмъ говорятъ, а  
другіе лѣтше говорятъ, чѣмъ пѣшутъ.*

*Сколько, сказаълъ Пирръ, соврашить солнце  
съ пушы онаго: нежели Фабриція со спезій  
добродѣтели.*

Оставля отечество (Россію) при наступ-  
лѣніи осени въ нѣсколько дней перешли  
мы въ южную Англію, сдѣлъ прекрасная по-  
года еще продолжалась; когда же и тутъ  
начались дожди и пуманы, и когда распѣ-  
тельная сила природы и тамъ начинала мерть-  
вѣть, то въ бурномъ Декабрѣ перенеслись  
мы въ жаркій климатъ Европы. Тамъ пре-  
краснѣйшее лѣто вновь насы встрѣтило. Все  
твореніе исполнено было жизні, все цвѣлo,  
все одѣто зеленью, и тысячи наскомыхъ  
шумѣли въ воздухѣ.



## Т Н Е М Е XXX.

## On PREPOSITIONS.

*Безъ* труда нѣть плода.

*Близъ* Шафгаузена находится славный Рейнскій водопадъ.

Дикіе *вместо* желѣза употребляють оспрые камни и рыбью кость.

Ученіе служитъ человѣку въ счастіи укращеніемъ, а въ несчастіи прибѣжищемъ.

Планеты обращаются *около* солнца.

Уральскія горы отдаляются Европейскую Россію отъ Сибири.

Утѣхи сушь скѣлы, о которыхъ разбивающемся большая часть молодыхъ людей. Они пускаются *за* быими на всѣхъ парусахъ; но безъ компаса *для* направленія ихъ плаванія и безъ кормила могущаго управлять кораблемъ, и попому *вместо* удовольствія вспрычайшъ спиды и огорченіе.

Сколько печальныя мысли о непостоянномъ величиіи народа раждаются въ Италии у подошвы дреvнихъ колоннъ, на высотѣ торжественныхъ воротъ, внутри развалившихся гробницъ, на мшистыхъ берегахъ исчѣниковъ.

Аполлонъ иногда изображается съ лирою, а иногда съ нашинутымъ лукомъ.

Невійність улыбáешся подóбно ўпру ве-  
сéнному, на высóкомъ чelъ еї изображáешся  
душéвный миръ и спокóйствie. Неувядáемыя  
róзы и лíліи цвѣтùть на еї ланіпахъ; рѣ-  
звые зефíры, віясь вокrúгъ ея, играюшъ лéгкою  
и бълою еї одéждою и разпущéнными воло-  
сами. Увѣнчанная цвѣтами Гráцій шéствуєтъ  
она по землѣ благословéнной; бùри и мрàки отъ  
неé удалѧютъся; небéсная блàгость изливаетъ-  
ся предъ нéю въ лùчахъ солнечныхъ. Когда  
смérшиные повиновáлись гласу благодéтельной  
прирóды и жíли въ любви, тишинѣ и мíрѣ,  
шогдá невійність на землѣ обитала; но ко-  
гдá человéкъ въ гíбелльный часъ заблуждéнія  
презрѣль законы прирóды, тогдá невійність  
возвратилась на небеса въ свое ощéчество.  
Съ шогó врéмени она ужé рѣдко посвѣщаєтъ  
зéмлю, и рѣдко бывáешь вíдима дку смérш-  
наго.

*Karamzin.*



## Т Н Е М Е XXXI.

## On CONJUNCTIONS.

**Не забывай сόбственныхъ свойхъ слабостей, да́бы ты удоби́те могъ извиня́тие по грѣшноши другаго.**

**Ни строгость, ни наспавлёнія не дѣйствують столь сильно на нравы какъ хороший примѣръ.**

**Природа производитъ дарованія, а воспитаніе раскрываѣтъ бытия.**

**Смерть не щадиша ни богатаго, ни бѣднаго.**

**Не смѣрши, но спыда бойся.**

**Хотя нача́ло учёния трудно; но конецъ онаго пріятенъ.**

**Пиегоръ заспавлялъ учениковъ свойхъ пашь лѣти молчашь, чтобы они научились разсуждаться.**

**Убѣгай праздноши, ибо она есть испочникъ многихъ пороковъ.**

**Испинное образованіе не только открываетъ путь къ счастию; но и утверждаетъ внутреннее наше благосостояніе.**

**Душевная красота лучше, нежели телесная.**

**Счастие человѣческое столь непостоянно, что можешь измѣниться въ одно мгновеніе.**

*Чѣмъ пѣло шяжѣлѣ, тѣмъ скорѣе падаешь  
къ землѣ.*

Американцы говорили утѣшнителямъ своймы: вы, кои столь самовлѣстно и споль сурѣво поступаєте съ наими, вы должны быть *или* бѣги, *или* такіе же люди: *есжели* вы бѣги, *то* должны бытъ къ людямъ милосѣрды; *а* *если* такіе же люди, *то* должны помнишь человѣчество.



### Т Н Е М Е XXXII.

#### ON INTERJECTIONS.

*О мѣлкия єзы оипечества, родствѣ и дружбы!*

*Ахъ, сколь счастливъ тошъ, кіо наслаждаетсѧ спокойствіемъ духа!*

*Увы, сколь непостойнно счастіе человѣческое.*

*Увы, изчезла надежда!*

*Горе тебѣ, нечестивому!*

*Ахъ! какъ я радъ, чшо увидался съ вами!*

*Войско встрѣтило своего любимаго вождя  
громкимъ крикомъ, ура!*



## VOCABULARY.\*

### SPIRITUAL OBJECTS.

#### *Substantives.*

Богъ , God.	Вѣра , the faith.
Богъ Отецъ , God the Father.	Христіаніе , a Christian.
Богъ Сынъ , God the Son.	язычникъ , a heathen.
Іисусъ Христосъ , Jesus Christ.	идоль , an idol.
Духъ Святый , The Holy Ghost.	идолопоклонникъ , an idolater.
Провиденіе , Providence.	вольнодумецъ , a free-thinker.
Ангель , an Angel.	еретикъ , a heretic.
Святые , the Saints.	лицемѣръ , a hypocrite.
рай , paradise.	ханжა , a bigot.
страшный судъ , the day of judgment.	судьба , fate.
Священное писаніе , the Holy scriptures.	вѣчность , eternity.
Библия , the Bible.	таинство , a mystery.
Вѣтхій завѣтъ , the old testament.	заповѣдь , a commandment.
Новый завѣтъ , the new testament.	молитва , a prayer.
	богослуженіе , divine service.
	проповѣдь , a sermon.

\* The above arrangement has been adopted in preference to an alphabetical list, that the scholar might have an opportunity of increasing the number of grammatical exercises by connecting the different parts of speech and forming sentences.

*Adjectives.*

<b>Боже́ственны́й</b> , God-like.	правовърни́й, orthodox.
<b>Боже́сکій</b> , Divine.	прáведный, just.
<b>милосéрдый</b> , merciful.	нáбожный, pious.
<b>Ангельскій</b> , Angelic.	избраннýй, elect.
<b>райскій</b> , heavenly.	шайнсвенный, mystic.
<b>áдскій</b> , infernal.	безсмершный, immortal.
<b>вѣчный</b> , eternal.	суевърный, superstitious.
<b>безконе́чный</b> , everlast- ing.	языческій, pagan, heathen.
<b>Христиа́нскій</b> , Chri- stian.	

*Verbs.*

<b>обожа́шь</b> , to adore.	вѣровашь, to believe.
<b>поклоня́шься</b> , to wor-	проповѣдывашь, to
ship.	preach,
<b>призыва́шь</b> , to implore.	спаса́шься, to be saved.
<b>моли́шься</b> , to pray.	исповѣдыва́шься, to
<b>кресчи́шься</b> , to make	confess.
the sign of the cross.	
<b>служи́шь</b> , to serve.	причаща́шься, to com-
<b>преклоня́шь колѣна</b> , to	mune.
kneel.	
<b>обраща́шься</b> , to be con-	грѣши́шь, to sin.
verted.	и́роклина́шь, to curse,
	отрека́шься, to ab-
	jure,

## NATURAL OBJECTS.

*Substantives.*

<b>Приро́да</b> , Nature.	свойство, a quality.
<b>нача́ло</b> , beginning.	величинá, magnitude.
<b>коне́ць</b> , end.	длина, length.

рождение, birth.	ширина, breadth.
жизнь, life.	высота, height.
смерть, death.	толщина, thickness.
движение, motion.	глубина, depth.
время, time.	пространство, extent.
место, place.	штукость, weight.
тело, a body.	количество, quantity.
целое, the whole.	число, number.
часть, a part.	вещество, substance.
существо, a being.	мера, measure.
наружный видъ, exterior figure,	

*Adjectives.*

природный, natural.	густой, dense.
начальный, original.	круглый, round.
конечный, final.	старый, old.
живой, living.	пресстарелый, aged.
мертвый, dead.	целый, entire.
большой, великій, great.	скорый, quick.
длинный, дологій, long.	быстрый, rapid.
широкий, wide.	временной, temporal.
высокий, high.	подвижный, moveable.
толстый, thick.	неподвижный, immovable.
глубокий, deep.	сущесственный, substantial.
шлесный, corporeal.	малый, little.
проспанный, extensive.	короткий, short.
неизмеримый, immeasurable.	узкий, narrow.
тяжелый, heavy.	низкий, low.
бесчисленный, innumerable.	тонкий, thin.
твёрдый, hard.	мелкий, shallow.
грубый, rough, rude.	тесный, confined.
	безмерный, immense.

\* \*

лéгkíй, light.	нóвый, new.
многочíсленный, nu- merous.	молодой, young. юный, youthful.
мáгkíй, soft.	чáспий, partial.
нéжный, tender.	мéдленный, slow.
рéдкíй, rare.	внезáпный, sudden.
óстрый, sharp.	пóлный, full.

*V e r b s.*

быть, to be.	увелíчивáться, to en- large.
существовáТЬ, to exist.	продолжáТЬ, to con- tinue.
начинáТЬ, to begin.	расширяТЬ, to widen.
кончíТЬ, to end.	возвышáТЬ, to elevate.
родíТЬся, to be born.	толстéТЬ, to thicken.
живíТЬ, to live.	углубляТЬся, to deepen.
умирáТЬ, to die.	распространяТЬ, to spread.
двигáТЬся, to move.	вéсить, to weigh.
проходíТЬ, миновáТЬ, to pass (away).	мéряТЬ, to measure.
изчезáТЬ, to disappear.	считáТЬ, to count.
расши́ТЬ, to grow.	обновляТЬся, to renew.
сварéТЬся, to grow old.	

## О ф т и к У Н I V E R S E.

*Substantives.*

Всéлéнная, the uni- verse.	комéта, a comet.
миръ, свéтъ, the world.	востóкъ, the east.
нéбо, heaven, the sky.	зáпадъ, the west.
солнце, the sun.	сéверъ, the north.
лунá, мéсяцъ, the moon.	югъ, the south.
звéздá, a star.	воскéждéніе сóнца,
созвéздie, a satellite.	sun-rise.
планéша, a planet.	захождéніе сóнца, sun- set.

шечéние, бýгъ, course.	полнолùніе , a full moon.
свѣшъ, light.	
лучь , а гау.	послѣдняя чéтверть , last quarter.
запмѣніе , an eclipse.	
новолùніе , новый мѣ- сяцъ , a new moon.	млéчный путь , the milky-way.
пёрвая чéтверть , first quarter.	сїверное сїяніе , the Northern-lights.

*Adjectives.*

всемíрный , universal.	западный, west, western.
небесный , celestial.	сїверный, полуночный, north, northern.
солнечный , solar.	
лунный, мѣсячный , lu- nar.	южный , полуденный , south, southern.
звѣздный , starry.	холóдный , cold.
ясный , clear.	шéплый , warm.
шёмный , dark.	жаркій , hot.

*Verbs.*

обращáться, to revolve.	свѣтишь , to light.
освѣщаšь , to illuminate.	сїяшь , to shine.
	мелькашь , to glitter.
согрѣваšь , to warm.	зашмѣвашься , to ob-
восходишь , to rise.	secure.
заходишь , to set.	казаться , to appear.

## OF THE ELEMENTS AND NATURAL PHENOMENA.

*Substantives.*

Стихія , an element.	дымъ , smoke.
огонь , fire.	искра , a spark.
вода , water.	пламя , a flame.
воздухъ , air.	зола , пепель , ashes.
земля , earth.	уголь , coal.

ráдуга , a rain-bow.	дождь , rain.
мóлнія , lightning.	кáпля , a drop.
вèтеръ , wind.	бúря , a storm.
облако , a cloud.	погóда , weather.
шумáнь , a fog , vapour.	блудàщий огóнь , ignis-
росá , dew.	fatuus.
йней , hoar-frost.	громъ , thunder.
морóзъ , frost.	вихрь , a whirlwind.
снёгъ , snow.	непогóда , bad weather.
градъ , hail.	выюга , мяшéль , snow-
ледъ , ice.	storm.

*Adjectives.*

бгненный , igneous ,	дымный , smoky.
fiery.	громóвой , thunder.
водяный , aqueous , wa-	вèшреный , windy.
tary.	облачный , cloudy.
воздùшный , aerial.	шумáнный , foggy.
земной , terrestrial.	пáсмурный , misty,dark.
горючíй , combustible.	снёжный , snowy.
шéпельный , ashy.	ледовицкий , icy.
плáменный , flaming.	дождевóй , rainy.
угольный , coaly.	бúрный , stormy.

*Verbs.*

горéть , to burn (v. neuter.)	молнія блескáть , it lightens.
жечь , to burn (v. active.)	дождь идéть , it rains.
наводнятъ , to deluge.	снёгъ идéшь , it snows.
воспламенять , to in-	градъ идéть , it hails.
flame.	душь , to blow.
дымиться , to smoke.	морозить , to freeze.
грéмъ гремятъ , it	перемéняться , to chan-
thunders.	ge.

## OF THE EARTH AND ITS PARTS.

*Substantives.*

пóчва землѝ, the soil.	пóле, a field.
повéрхность, the sur- face.	лугъ, a meadow.
горá, a mountain.	садъ, a garden.
холмъ, пригóрокъ, a hill.	сшéнь, a waste.
океáнь, the ocean.	пустыня, a wilderness.
мóре, the sea.	приливъ, flow.
заливъ, a gulph.	отливъ, ebb.
пролíвъ, a strait.	волнá, a wave.
хребéшь горъ, a chain of mountains.	озеро, a lake.
равнѝна, a plain.	прудъ, a pond.
долина, a valley.	рѣкá, a river.
скalá, a rock.	ручéй, a rivulet, brook.
пещера, a cave.	болóто, a bog, marsh.
лъе́нь, a forest, wood.	бéргъ, a coast.
рбща, a grove.	островъ, an island.
	прóпастъ, a precipice.
	бéздна, an abyss.

*Adjectives.*

плодонóсный, fruitful.	безплóдный, unfruitful.
плодорóдный, fertile.	морскóй, marine.
róвный, plain, smooth.	рѣчной, river.
возвышенный, high, ele- vated.	зелéной, green.
гори́стый, mountain- ous.	болóшишый, marshy, boggy.
холмистый, hilly.	береговóй, coast.
упéсиспый, rocky.	дикíй, wild.
лъснóй, woody.	пустынны́й, waste,
полевóй, field.	solitary.
сшéнны́й, desert.	разнообрáзный, diver- sified.

рыть, to dig.

пахать, to plough.

обрабо́тывать, to cul-  
tivate.

сажа́ть, to plant.

срывáть, to tear up.

проводя́ть, to cut.

высушáть, to drain.

огорáживашь, to en-  
close.

OF THE PRODUCTIONS OF THE EARTH.  
THE MINERAL KINGDOM.

*Substantives.*

рудá, a mine.

металль, a metal.

сталь, steel.

золото, gold.

серебро, silver.

медь, copper.

жёлтая медь, brass.

олово, pewter.

ртуть, quicksilver.

жесть, tin.

свинец, lead.

камень, a stone.

кремень, a flint.

известь, lime.

глина, clay.

гранитъ, granite.

мраморъ, marble.

песокъ, sand.

железо, iron.

магнiшъ, loadstone.

ржáвчина, rust.

сéра, brimstone, sul-  
phur.

селицра, salt-petre.

мéль, chalk.

соль, salt.

купоросъ, copperas.

дорогой камень, a pre-  
cious stone.

алмáзъ, a diamond.

изумрудъ, an emerald.

рубинъ, a ruby.

жемчугъ, a pearl.

яшма, jasprag.

сердоликъ, cornelian.

гранатъ, a garnet.

аметистъ, amethyst.

сафиръ, a sapphire.

*Adjectives.*

золотой, gold, golden.

серебреный, silver.

мéдный, copper.

оловянный, pewter.

жеспяный, tin.

свинцовой, leaden.

сша́льно́й , steel.	бѣлый , white.
желѣзной , iron.	чёрный , black.
соля́ный , salt.	красный,румънай, red.
кáменный , stone.	зелéный , green.
кремни́стый , flinty.	жéлтый , yellow.
изве́сткóвый , limy.	си́ний , blue.
глини́стый , clayey.	фиолéтовый , violet.
сухóй , dry.	сѣрый , grey.
възкíй , adhesive.	кори́шневый , brown.
грубýй , rude.	бѣловáтый , whitish.
гладкíй , smooth.	черновáтый , blackish.
мраморный , marble.	красновáтый , reddish.
стекля́нный , glass.	зеленовáтый , greenish.
ковкíй , malleable.	синевáтый , bluish.
плотный , solid.	изжелта красный , light red.
плáвкíй , fusible.	прозрачный , transparent.
рыхлýй , loose.	
крупный , massy.	

*V e r b s.*

плáвить , to melt.	бѣлить , бѣльТЬ , to whiten.
ковáть , to forge.	
ломáть , to break.	чернить , чернѣть , to blacken.
серебрятъ , to plate.	краснѣть , to redden.
золотятъ , to gild.	копа́ть , to dig.
лудить , to tin.	рѣзать , to cut.
полирова́ть , to polish.	смѣшивать , to mix.
краси́ть , to colour.	

## THE V E G E T A B L E K I N G D O M.

*Substantives.*

растѣніе , a plant.	стволь , a stem.
дёрево , a tree.	вѣнь , a branch.
корень , a root.	листь , a leaf.

цвѣтъ , цвѣтѣкъ , а	flower.	рожь , rye.
пóчка , a bud.		шненїца , wheat.
сѣмя , a seed.		ячмѣнь , barley.
зернó , a grain.		овѣсь , oats.
плодъ , fruit.		прóсо , millet.
корá , the rind , bark.		рисъ , rice.
жéлудь , an acorn.		картофель , potatoes.
дубъ , an oak.		вишня , a cherry.
жльимъ , an elm.		пéрсикъ , a peach.
ель , a fir.		абрикосъ , an apricot.
берёза , a birch.		яблоко , an apple.
осина , an aspen.		груша , a pear.
букъ , a beech.		слива , a plum.
клень , a maple-tree.		смородина , a currant.
липа , a linden tree.		крыжовникъ , a gooseberry.
жасень , an ash tree.		малина , a raspberry.
сосна , a pine.		земляника , a strawberry.
и́ва , a willow.		орѣшникъ , a nut-tree.
яблоня , an apple tree.		орѣхъ , a nut.
кустъ , a bush.		миндаль , an almond.
кушáрникъ , a shrub- bery.		каштанъ , a chesnut.
бузинá , an alder-tree.		лимónъ , a lemon.
мозжевéльникъ , mul- berry-tree.		померáнецъ , a lime.
плющъ , ivy.		бвощи , garden-stuff.
храпи́ва , a nettle.		горóхъ , pease.
тростъ , a reed.		чечеви́ца , lentil.
шернóвникъ , a thorn		бобы , beans.
травá , grass.		капу́са , cabbage.
сено , hay.		рѣпа , a turnip.
дернъ , turf.		моркóвь , a carrot.
хлѣбъ , corn.		рѣдька , a radish.
ко́лосъ , an ear of corn.		лукъ , an onion.
		чесно́къ , garlick.

спéбель , stubble.	спáржа , asparagus.
петрùшка , parsley.	жасмíнъ , jasmine.
дýня , a melon.	фiáлка , a violet.
шыкva , a pumpkin.	тильпáнъ , a tulip.
арбùзъ , a water-melon.	нарциссъ , narcissus ,
огурцы , cucumbers.	гiацинтъ , hyacinth.
щавéль , sorrel.	гвоздíка , a pink.
мàта , mint.	василéкъ , corn-flower.
хмélъ , hops.	незабùдка , forget-me-
солóма , straw.	not.
сокъ , sap.	левкóй , a gilliflower.
виногрáдъ , grapes.	лáндышъ , a may-flower.
виногрáдная лозá , a grape-vine.	подсóлнечникъ , a sun-
виногрáдная кисшь , a bunch of grapes.	flower.
цвéты , blossoms.	макъ , a poppy.
róза , a rose.	ревéнь , rhubarb.
лилéя , a lily.	табáкъ , tobacco.
	лёнъ , flax.
	пеньká , hemp.

*Adjectives.*

жéтвийстый , branchy.	осинный , aspen.
сучковáшый , knotty.	кíслый , sour.
пúшоý , hollow.	góркíй , bitter.
колючíй , prickly.	слáдкíй , sweet.
цвéшùщíй , blooming.	прíятный , agreeable.
плодовítый , fruitful.	благоухáнnyй , души-
безплóдный , unfruit-	стый , aromatic.
ful.	краеýвый , beautiful.
дубóвый , oaken.	прелéсный , charming.
берéзовый , birch.	зрéлый , ripe.
елóвый , fir.	вкùсный , fine flavoured.
ли́повый , linden.	сóчный , juicy.

( 66 )

*V e r b s.*

расті̄, to grow.	вянуть, блéкнуть, to wither.
саді̄ть, to plant.	
сіять, to sow.	жать, to reap.
вырывáть, полóть, to weed.	собирáть, to gather.
срубáть, to cut down.	молóть, to thrash.
поливáть, to water.	созрѣвáть, to ripen.
цвѣсті̄, to blossom.	пада́ть, to fall.
распуска́ться, to put forth.	благоухáть, to perfume.
	пахáть, to plough.

**T H E A N I M A L K I N G D O M .**

*Substantives.*

**Четвероногія животные, quadrupeds.**

ле́въ, a lion.	олéнь, a rein-deer.
слónъ, an elephant.	вóлкъ, a wolf.
верблю́дъ, a camel.	бáрсъ, a leopard.
медвѣдъ, a bear.	лóсь, an elk.
шíгръ, a tiger.	заяцъ, a hare.
кабáнь, a wild boar.	собóль, a sable.
бобръ, a beaver.	горностáй, an ermine.
лисица, a fox.	ежъ, a hedge-hog.
куни́ца, a marten.	крóликъ, a rabbit.
крошъ, a mole.	коњъ, a steed.
бѣлка, a squirrel.	лошáкъ, a mule.
лóшадь, a horse.	кобыла, a mare.
осéль, an ass.	корóба, a cow.
жеребéцъ, a stallion.	овцá, a sheep.
быкъ, a bull.	козá, a she-goat.
барáнь, a ram.	кóшка, a cat.
козéль, a goat.	кры́са, a rat.
собáка, a dog.	мыши́, a mouse.

## Птицы , birds.

орéль , an eagle.	ајстъ , a crane.
сокóль , a falcon.	скворéцъ , a starling.
совá , an owl.	жáворонокъ , a lark.
сорóка , a mag-pie.	йволга , a thrush.
журáвль , a stork.	воробéй , a sparrow.
попугáй , a parrot.	павлѝнъ , a peacock.
соловéй , a nightingale.	пъшùхъ , a cock.
щегóль , a gold-finch.	гусь , a goose.
лáсточка , a swallow.	góрлица , a dove.
стрóусъ , an ostrich.	лéбедь , a swan.
јастребъ , a hawk.	кùрица , a hen.
вóронъ , a raven.	ùтка , a duck.
гáлка , a jack-daw.	гóлубь , a pigeon.

## Рыбы , fishes.

кишъ , a whale.	акùла , a shark.
щùка , a pike.	карпъ , a carp.
сéмга , a salmon.	осéшръ , a sturgeon.
ùгорь , an eel.	сельдь , a herring.

## Земноводные животные , amphibia or animals.

крокодíль , a crocodile.	јщерица , a lizard.
змéя , a serpent.	черепáха , a turtle.
лягùшка , a frog.	жáба , a toad.
ùстрица , an oyster.	ráкъ , a crab.

## Насéкомые , insects.

саранчá , a locust.	пчелá , a bee.
комáръ , a gnat.	бáбочка , a butterfly.
моль , a moth.	блóхá , a flea.

паукъ , a spider.  
мұха , a fly.  
сверчекъ , a cricket.

муравей , an ant.  
жукъ , a beetle.  
клопъ , a bug.

### *Adjectives.*

звѣрскій , brute.  
косматый , shaggy.  
горячій , rѣzvый , fiery.  
ручной , tame.  
домашній , domestic.  
голодный , hungry.

ужасный , horrid.  
страшный , frightful.  
вредный , poxious.  
дикій , wild.  
люстый , ferocious.  
свирѣпый , savage.

### *V e r b s.*

ловить , to catch.  
стрѣлять , to shoot.  
лаять , to bark.  
ржать , to neigh.  
пѣть , to sing.  
свистать , to whistle.  
кричать , to cry.  
визжать , to yell.  
выть , to roar.  
летать , to fly.  
плѣвать , to swim.  
бѣгать , to run.

мычать , to bellow.  
пищать , to squeak.  
кусать , to bite.  
пожирать , to devour.  
поглощать , to gulp.  
щипать , to nip.  
прѣгать , to jump.  
ползать , to creep.  
пастися , to pasture.  
гнѣздиться , to nestle.  
пойти , to water.  
кормить , to feed.

### O F M A N.

### *Substantives.*

человѣкъ , man.  
мужчина , a man.  
жѣнщина , a woman.

шарикъ , шарецъ , an  
old man.  
шаруха , an old woman.

мáльчикъ , a boy.  
 дívушка , a girl.  
 осóба , лицé , a person.  
 мозгъ , the brains.  
 мясо , the flesh.  
 кровь , the blood.  
 жíлы , the veins.  
 волосъ , the hair.  
 чéрепъ , the scull.  
 головá , the head.  
 лицé , the face.  
 лобъ , челó , the forehead.  
 глазъ , an eye.  
 бровь , an eye-brow.  
 вéжди , eye-lids.  
 зрачóкъ , an eye-ball.  
 чéлюсть , a jaw.  
 рошь , the mouth.  
 губы , the lips.  
 зубы , the teeth.  
 языкъ , the tongue.  
 деснá , the gums.  
 подборóдокъ , the chin.  
 бородá , the beard.  
 шéя , the neck.  
 горло , the throat.  
 плечó , a shoulder.  
 грудь , the breast.  
 спинá , the back.  
 рукá , a hand.  
 лóконь , an elbow.  
 пáлецъ , a finger.  
 ногопь , a nail.

тéло , the body.  
 кожа , the skin.  
 кóсти , the bones.  
 брюхо , живóть , the belly.  
 ногá , a foot.  
 ѹкра , the calf of the leg.  
 лáдвея , the thigh.  
 колъно , the knee.  
 подóшва , the sole of the foot.  
 носъ , the nose.  
 щекá , a cheek.  
 виски , the temples.  
 ухо , an ear.  
 потъ , perspiration.  
 слезá , a tear.  
 членъ , a member.  
 состáвъ , a joint.  
 слюнá , expectoration.  
 пятá , the heel.  
 внутрénность , the inside.  
 сéрдце , the heart.  
 ребró , a rib.  
 лéгкое , the lungs.  
 печéнка , the liver.  
 желчь , the gall.  
 почки , the kidneys.  
 желудокъ , the stomach.  
 обráзъ , видъ , form.  
 морщýна , a wrinkle.  
 спань , shape.  
 похóдка , gait.

*Adjectives.*

человѣческій ,	human.	бородатый ,	bearded.
мужеской ,	masculine.	блѣлокурый ,	fair.
жѣнской ,	feminine.	смѣуглый ,	dark.
строѣный ,	well-made.	блѣдный ,	pale.
благообрѣзный ,	proportioned.	дородный ,	corpulent.
изувѣченный ,	mutilated.	дюжій ,	muscular.
горбатый ,	hump-backed.	сухощавый ,	thin, meagre.
безобрѣзный ,	deformed	слабый ,	weak.
сѣдой ,	grey.	кривой ,	crooked.
		косой ,	squint-eyed.

*Verbs.*

ходиѣть ,	to walk.	дѣлать ,	to make, to do.
сидѣть ,	to sit.	вставаѣть ,	to rise.
лежаѣть ,	to lie.	ѣсть ,	to eat.
спать ,	to sleep.	пить ,	to drink.
трогаѣть ,	to touch.	жеваѣть ,	to chew.
брать ,	to take.	глотаѣть ,	to swallow.
класти ,	to put.	плеваѣть ,	to expectorate.

## OF THE HUMAN MIND AND FACULTIES.

*Substantives.*

душа ,	the soul.	представленіе ,	conception.
умъ ,	the mind.	память ,	memory.
разумъ ,	the understanding.	воспоминаніе ,	remembrance.
оспрота ,	wit.	воображеніе ,	imagination.
остроуміе ,	acuteness.	чувствованіе ,	sentiment.
разсудокъ ,	reason.	желаніе ,	desire.
разсужденіе ,	reflection.		
понятіе ,	comprehension.		

воля , will.	злоба , malice.
решение , resolution.	ревность , jealousy.
намѣреніе , intention.	знаніе , познаніе , свѣдѣніе , knowledge.
иноступокъ , action.	правъ , manner.
предубѣжденіе , пред- possession.	характеръ , character.
мысль , idea.	поведеніе , conduct.
мнѣніе , opinion.	прихоть , whim.
сомнѣніе , doubt.	сонь , сновидѣніе , a dream.
предразсудокъ , preju- dice.	мечтѣ , a vision.
чувство , feeling.	забота , care.
зрѣніе , sight.	суета , vanity.
слухъ , hearing.	трудъ , labour.
осязаніе , touch.	наказаніе , punishment.
вкусъ , taste.	мученіе , torment.
обоняніе , smell.	страданіе , suffering.
рѣчь , discourse.	должность , обязан- ность , duty.
слово , a word.	упрѣкъ , herproach.
звукъ , a sound.	досада , vexation.
голосъ , the voice.	способность , capacity.
крикъ , a cry.	дарованіе , talent.
языкъ , a language.	сѣть , conscience.
разговоръ , a dialogue.	мудрость , wisdom.
выраженіе , an expres- sion.	благородство , princi- pality.
предложеніе , a pro- position.	выборъ , choice.
склонность , inclina- tion.	смѣхъ , laughter.
спрастъ , a passion.	плачъ , weeping.
пристрастіе , parti- ality.	подозрѣніе , suspicion.
любовь , love.	почтѣніе , respect.
ненависть , hatred.	презрѣніе , contempt.
зависть , envy.	отвращеніе , antipathy.
	дружба , пріязнь , friend- ship.

враждá, enmity.	rádoscь, joy.
нѣжность, delicacy.	печáль, sorrow.
грубость, rudeness.	прискóрбíе, affliction.
страхъ, fear.	удовóльсивíе, pleasure.
надéжда, hope.	гнѣвъ, wrath, anger.
опчáянíе, despair.	яростъ, fury.
удивлéníе, astonishment.	

*Adjectives.*

ùмственныи, mental.	рѣшительныи, decisive.
ùмныи, wise.	твéрдый, firm.
разùмныи, prudent.	сомнíшельныи, doubtful.
разсудиùшельныи, considerate.	свèдущíй, well-informed.
поняùливыи, intelligent.	своенрáвныи, self-willed.
бстрыи, quick, clever.	прихोшлывыи, whimsical.
естпроùмныи, witty.	мечтáшельныи, fanciful.
замысловáшыи, ingenious.	забóшливыи, careful.
чùвственныи, feeling.	трудолюбивыи, diligent.
безчùвственныи, unfeeling.	слепои, blind.
глухои, deaf.	глухои, deaf.
нѣмои, dumb.	нѣмои, dumb.
словоохóшной, loquacious.	спосóбныи, capable.
выразиùшельныи, expressive.	еёвъспливыи, conscientious.
склонныи, inclined.	бесовъстнныи, inconscientiable.
спрásшныи, passionate.	мùдрый, wise.
забычивыи, forgetful.	благоразùмныи, prudential.
разсéянныи, distracted.	смѣшиои, ridiculous.
чувшriùшельныи, sensible.	плачевной, melancholy.
	приспáшныи, partial.

злобный , malicious.  
ревнивый , jealous.  
завистливый , envious.  
почтительный , respectful.  
почтенный , respectable.  
презрительный , contemptible.  
подозрительный , suspicious.

опровергательный , dis-  
gusting.  
дружный , friendly.  
страшный , terrible.  
безнадёжный , hopeless.  
удивительный , astonishing.  
радостный , joyful.  
печальный , mournful.  
довольный , contented.  
яростный , furious.

*V e r b s.*

умѣшь , to be able.  
разумѣшь , to understand.  
разсуждашь , to consider.  
понимашь , to comprehend.  
представляшь , to conceive.  
помнишь , to remember.  
воображашь , to imagine.  
ощущашь , to feel.  
видѣшь , to see.  
слышашь , to hear.  
осязашь , to touch.  
вкушашь , to taste.  
обоняшь , to smell.  
говоришь , to speak.  
чувствовашь , to feel.  
нравишься , to please.  
хотѣшь , to wish.

желашь , to desire.  
мыслишь , to reflect.  
думашь , to think.  
знашь , to know.  
вести себя , to behave.  
решашься , to decide.  
намѣревашься , to intend.  
послушашь , to act.  
видѣшь во снѣ , to dream.  
забошишься , to mind.  
суетишься , to bustle.  
трудишься , to work.  
спрадаешь , to suffer.  
досадовашь , to vex.  
шершашь , to bear.  
выбирайшь , to choose.  
смѣяшься , to laugh.  
плакашь , to weep.  
причапашь , to cry (out).  
разговаривашь , to converse.  
выражашь , to express.

любіть , to love.	страшіться , to be afraid.
ненавідіть , to hate.	
завідовати , to envy.	боятися , to fear.
злобствовашь , to bear malice.	надіяшсья , to hope.
ревновасть , to be jealous.	опочаївашсья , to despair.
подозрівашь , to suspect.	удивлятися , to wonder.
почиташь , to respect.	радіватися , to rejoice.
презирашь , to despise.	печалитися , to mourn.
гнушашсья , to abhor.	гніватися , to be angry.
	яришсья , to be furious.

## VIRTUES AND VICES.

## Substantives.

добродітель , virtue.	человѣколюбіе , phisical charity.
вѣрхностъ , piety.	laudhropy.
смиреніе , humility.	доброша , goodness.
улованіе , trust.	жалостъ , pity.
надежда , hope.	поспойнство , constancy.
щерпніе , patience.	stancy.
крупостъ , gentleness.	ошковеношть , candour.
вѣрность , fidelity.	правосудіе , justice.
чеснотъ , honesty.	прозорливость , penetration.
благодарность , gratitude.	прилежаніе , industry.
воздержаніе , temperance.	цѣломудріе , chastity.
бережливость , carefulness.	скромность , modesty.
щедрость , bounty.	услугливость , com-plaisance.
великодушіе , magnanimity.	учтивость , politeness.
храбрость , bravery.	послушаніе , obedience.
смѣлость , boldness.	осторожность , carefulness.

хорбъ , vice .  
беззаконіе , irreligion  
высокомѣrie , надмен-  
ніость , haughtiness.  
гордость , pride.  
непрѣмѣвостъ , im-  
patience .  
шлеславіе , vanity .  
въроломство , infide-  
lity .  
плутовствѣ , villainy .  
несправедливость , in-  
justice .  
неблагодаркость , in-  
gratitude .  
невоздѣржность , in-  
temperance .  
распочищельность , ex-  
travagance .  
скѹпость , avarice .

малодушіе , pusillani-  
mity .  
дѣрзость , temerity .  
безчеловѣчіе , inhu-  
manity .  
злость , malice .  
жестокость , cruelty .  
непостоянство , in-  
constancy .  
хитрость , artifice .  
безпѣчность , indifference .  
лѣнность , idleness .  
распутьство , licen-  
tiousness .  
безстыдство , impru-  
dence .  
грѣбость , rudeness .  
уирягство , obstinacy .  
неоспорожность , sage-  
lessness .

### *Adjectives.*

добродѣшельный , vir-  
tuous .  
благочестивый , pious .  
смиренный , humble .  
щерпѣмливый , patient .  
кропкій , gentle .  
вѣрный , faithful .  
честный , honest .  
справедливый , just .  
благодарный , grateful .  
умѣренный , temperate .  
бережливы , careful .  
щѣдрый , bounteous .

великодушный , mag-  
nanimous .  
храбрый , brave .  
смѣлый , bold .  
человѣколюбивый , hu-  
mane .  
добрый , good .  
жалошливый , com-  
passionate .  
постоянны , constant .  
опшковенны , candid .  
презорливый , pene-  
trating .

прилéжный, diligent.	скупóй, miserly, avari-
цвломùденный, chaste.	cious.
сшыдливый, modest.	
услùжливый, obliging.	
учтивый, polite.	малодùшный, pusil-
послùшный, obedient.	lanimous.
всшорожный, careful.	рóбкий, timid.
порочный, vicious.	безчеловèчный, inhu-
беззаконный, impious.	man.
высокомèрный, proud.	злой, evil.
нешперпёльный, impa-	жестокíй, cruel.
тient.	легкомысленый, in-
шщеславный, vain.	constant.
втроломный, unfaithful.	хитрый, cunning.
безчёстный, dishonest.	безпечный, careless.
неправосудный, unjust.	лèнивый, indolent.
неблагодарный, ungra-	распùтный, licentious.
teful.	наглый, impudent.
неумèренный, intem-	неуслùжливый, disobli-
perate.	ging.
распochишельный, ex-	грùбый, rude.
travagant.	упрàмый, obstinate.
	неосмошрìшельный,
	careless.

### *Verbs.*

смиря́ться , to submit.	гордиться , to pride
у́мовáшь , to trust.	на́звать one's self.
шершáшь , to bear.	шщеслави́шься , to exalt
благодáришь , to thank.	на́звать one's self.
берéч , to take care.	обманы́вать , to cheat.
воздéрживашься , to refrain.	распочáшь , мотáшь , to spend!
ошváжива́шься , смéшь , to venture.	пьянствува́шь , to drink (to excess.)
жалéшь , to pity.	робéшь , to be afraid.

предвидѣшь, to foresee.	льшишь, to flatter.
радѣшь, to mind.	лѣнишься, to be lazy.
уелужить, to oblige.	упрѣмиться, to be ob-
слушаешься, to obey.	stinate.
осхерегаешься, to be- ware.	грубишь, to be rude.
	суешишься, to be vain.

## СЛОТНИК.

*Substantives.*

одѣжда, clothing.	чулокъ, a stocking.
платье, clothes.	носокъ, a sock.
шляпа, a hat.	платокъ, a handker-
шапка, a cap.	chief.
шинель, a cloak.	шаль, a shawl.
салопъ, a lady's cloak,	носовой платокъ, a
кафтанъ, a coat.	pocket-handkerchief.
камзоль, a vest.	сапогъ, a boot.
жилетъ, a waistcoat.	башмакъ, a shoe.
серпукъ, a great-coat.	тюфля, a slipper.
рубашка, a shirt.	пряжка, a buckle.
галстукъ, a neck-hand-	подвязка, a garter.
kerchief.	перчатка, a glove.
паншалоны, pantaloons.	кольцо, } a ring.
рукавъ, a sleeve.	пёрдень, } a ring.
карманъ, a pocket.	лента, a riband.
нёшля, a button-hole.	ноясь, a girdle.
подкладка, lining.	пуговица, a button.
ворошникъ, a collar.	гребень, a comb.
шулупъ, a fur-coat.	парикъ, a wig.
чепчикъ, a (lady's) cap.	пудра, powder.
юбка, a petticoat.	серьги, ear - rings.

ожерéлье, a necklace.	кошельéнь, a purse.
зонтикъ, an umbrella.	мùфша, a muff.
парасоль, a parasol.	корсéмь, a corsette.
опахáло, a fan.	часы, a watch.
очки, spectacles.	ципóчка, a chain.
дорнéшъ, a lorgnette.	лечáль, a seal.

*Adjectives.*

богáтой, rich.	простóй, plain.
опрýтный, neat.	нечíстый, dirty.
новомóдный, fashion- able.	неопрýтный, untidy.
полный, full.	старомóдный, old- fashioned.
одъшый, dressed.	нагóй, naked.

*Verbs.*

надѣвáшь, to put on.	раздѣватЬ, to undress.
одѣвáшь, to dress.	шнуровáть, to lace.
покрыва́шь, to cover.	причёсывать, to comb.
украша́шь, to ornament.	разспéгивать, to un- brace.
заспéгивать, to brace.	развязывать, to untye.
связывать, to tye.	пудришь, to powder.
мыть, to wash.	

**НАВИТАЦИОН.***Substantives.*

строéние, a build- ing.	хижина, a cottage.
жилíще, an abode.	основáние, the foun- dation.
цéрковь, a church.	крóвля, the roof.
дворéцъ, a palace.	стенá, a wall.
домъ, a house.	дворъ, a yard.

лъстница , stair-case.	спóйло , a stall.
сшупéнь , a step.	саpáй , a shed.
перѝла , railings.	голубáшня , a dove-cot.
зала , a hall.	лáвка , } a shop.
жóмната , a room.	магазýнь , }
прихóжая , anti-cham- ber.	жýшница , a barn.
столóвая,dining-room.	кùхня , a kitchen.
спáльня , bed-room.	шрубá , a chimney.
кабинéтъ , cabinet.	замóкъ , a lock.
окнó , a window.	ключъ , a key.
окончины , a window- frame.	рùчка , a handle.
спáвня , shutters.	задвижка , a bolt.
поль , the floor.	бревнó , a log.
пополóкъ , the ceiling.	доскá , a board.
дверь , a door.	жильé , a story.
пéчъ , a stove.	эшажъ , a floor.
конюшня , a stable.	чердáкъ , a garret.
	погребъ , a cellar.
	колóдезъ , a well.

*Adjective s.*

дрéвнíй , спаринный , old.	общéшвенныи , com- mon.
четыреугольный , qua- drangular.	церкóвный , church.
шокóйный , удóбный , comfortable.	дворóвый , court.
обши́рный , spacious.	домáшнíй , domestic.
сосéднíй , neighbour- ing.	необитáемый , unin- habited.
	да́льнíй , distant.
	чáстный , private.

*V e r b s.*

стрóить , to build.	нанимáть , to hire.
жýть , to live.	срывáть , to pull down.
обитáть , to inhabit.	шомъщáть , to hold.

опворя́ть , to open.	мости́ть , to pave.
закрывáть , to cover.	очисти́ть , to quit.
лома́ть , to break.	обива́ть , to hang.
убирáть , to clear away.	затворя́ть , to shut.
съезжáть , to leave.	открыва́ть,to uncover.

## H O U S E H O L D F U R N I T U R E.

*Substantives.*

мéбель , furniture.	кремéнь , a flint.
обóи , tapestry.	ковéръ , a carpet.
спóль , a table.	скáтерть,atable-cloth.
стùль , a chair.	полотénцо , a napkin.
крéсла , an arm-chair.	салфéтка , a towel.
скамья , a bench.	тарéлка , a plate.
ковéръ , a carpet.	солónка , a salt-cellar.
комóдъ , drawers.	блюдо , a dish.
шкáпъ , a cupboard.	лóжка , a spoon.
лáвка , a shelf.	вìлка , a fork.
зéркало,a looking-glass.	ножъ , a knife.
постéль , a bed.	спакáнъ , a glass.
кровáть , a bed-stead.	рюмка , a wine-glass.
зáнавéсь , a curtain.	чáшка , a cup.
покрывáло,a bed-cover.	кру́жка , a jug.
тюфя́къ , a mattress.	бутилка , a bottle.
подúшка , a pillow.	тазъ , a basin.
просши́нà , a sheet.	ушáть , a tub.
нáволочка , a pillow-	ведро , a pail.
case.	корзíна , a basket.
фонáрь , a lantern.	мъшóкъ , a bag.
свéчá , a candle.	чемодáнъ , a portman-
подсвéчникъ , a candle-	teau.
stick.	сундúкъ , a trunk.
щипцы , snuffers.	щéпка,a brush, broom.
дровá , fire-wood.	нóжницы , scissors.
уголь , coal.	булавка , a pin.

### *Adjectives.*

богатый, rich.	простой, common.
великолепный, magnificent.	посредственный, passable.
отборный, chosen.	худой, bad.
хороший, fine.	готовый, ready-made.
приличный, proper.	непристойный, improper.
порядочный, tolerable.	
нужный, necessary.	
бездны, poor.	ломкий, brittle.
	излишний, superfluous.

### *V e r b s.*

наполня́ть , to fill.	глáдить , to iron.
лишь, наливáть, topouг.	опорóжнить, to empty.
стира́ть , to rub.	проливáть , to spill.
зажигáть , to kindle.	пошущítъ , to extin-
освѣщáть , to light.	guish.
шоло́чъ , to pound.	снимáть со свѣчъ , to
щерéть , to rub.	snuff a candle.
месчи́ , to sweep.	рѣзать , to cut.
иря́сь , to spin.	чи́стить , to clean.

## RELATIONSHIP.

### *Substantives.*

семéйство , a family.	дéдъ, дéдушка, grand-father.
родъ , race.	
родствó , relationship.	родищели , parents.
рóдственникъ , роднý,	опéцъ , father.
a relation.	
женíхъ , a bridegroom.	супrùгъ, мужъ, husband.
прéдки , ancestors.	сынъ , son.
пráддъ , great grand-father.	внукъ , grand-son.
	пráвнукъ , great grand-son.

\* 1

дядя , uncle.	бáбушка, grand-mother
племянникъ , nephew.	дѣти , children.
шуринъ , brother - in- law.	мать , mother.
зять , son-in-law.	супруга, жена , wife.
песть , father-in-law.	дочь , daughter.
брать , brother.	внукка,grand-daughter.
двоюродный братъ , cousin. m.	прáвнука , great grand- daughter.
вóтчимъ , step-father.	тéтка , aunt.
пáсынокъ , step-son.	племянница , niece.
вдовéцъ , a widower.	свойченица , sister-in- law.
кумъ , a gossip. m.	невéстка, daughter-in- law.
крéспный отéцъ , god father.	теща , mother-in-law.
опекùнъ , guardian.	сестрá , sister.
бракъ , супрùжество , marriage.	двоюродная сестрá , cousin. f.
свáдьба , a wedding.	мáчиха , stepmother.
сговóръ , contract.	пáдчерица, step daugh- ter.
обручéние , espousals.	вдовá , a widow.
невéста , a bride.	кумá , a gossip.
потомки , descend- ents.	крéспная мать , god- mother.
прабáушка , great- grandmother.	сирошá , an orphan.

*Adjectives.*

семéйственный,family.	супрùжеский, matrimon- ial.
родный , related.	
женáтый , married.	холостóй , unmarried.
отéческий , paternal.	мáтеринский,maternal.
сыновníй , filial.	дóчеринский , filial.
брáшкý , brotherly.	свáдебный , marriage.

## A TOWN AND ITS ENVIRONS.

*Substantives.*

гóродъ , a city, town.	хижина , a cottage, hut.
предмѣстіе , suburbs.	монашырь , a mona- stery.
крѣпость , a fortress.	кладбище , a burying- ground.
замокъ , a castle.	часовня , a chapel.
башня , a tower.	садъ , a garden.
церковь , a church.	рынокъ , market-place.
колокольня , a belfry.	площадь , a square.
мостъ , a bridge.	большая дорожка , the high-road.
улица , a street.	постоялый дворъ , трактиръ , an inn.
переулокъ , a lane.	каналъ , a canal.
ворота , gates.	ровъ , a ditch.
заспáва , a barrier.	шаможня , the custom- house.
стѣна , a wall.	гумно , a barn.
бдка , a watch-house.	смирительный домъ , house of correction.
монетный дворъ , the mint.	домъ сумасшéдшихъ , a mad-house.
биржа , the exchange.	шюрема , a prison.
арсеналъ , the arsenal.	
анбаръ , a store-house.	
почта , the post.	
гошпиталь , an hospital.	
деревня , селó , a village.	
окре́сность , neigh- bourhood.	

## T I T L E S A N D D I G N I T I E S .

*Substantives.*

Госудáрь , a Sovereign.	Великíй Князь , a Grand-
Имперáторъ , an Em- peror.	Duke.
Императрица , an Em- press.	Великая Княгиня , a Grand-Duchess.

Король , a King.	Игуменъ , an Abbot.
Королéва , a Queen.	проповéдникъ, a preachers.
Гéрцогъ , a Duke.	монахъ , a monk.
Герцогиня , a Duchess.	монахиня , a nun.
Князь , a Prince.	Свящéнникъ , a priest.
Княгиня , a Princess.	господинъ , a master.
Графъ , a Count.	помъщикъ , a land-owner.
Графиня , a Countess.	начáльникъ , a chief.
Баронъ , a Baron.	Казначéй , a treasurer.
Баронесса, a Baroness.	Дóкторъ, a doctor.
Посоль , an Ambassas-	челобитчикъ , an accuser.
sador.	природный житель , a native.
Посланикъ , an Envoy.	подданный , a subject.
Фельдмаршаль, a Field-	погребщикъ , wine-merchant.
Marshal.	шюремщикъ , a turn-key.
Генералъ , a General.	поваръ , a cook. m.
Полковникъ, a Colonel.	кучеръ , a coachman.
Подполковникъ, a Lieu-	поселянинъ , a villager.
tenant-colonel.	слуга , a servant.
Майоръ , a Major.	крестьянинъ , a peasant.
Капитанъ , a Captain.	дворянство , nobility.
Лордъ, a Lieutenant.	дворянинъ , a nobleman.
Корнептъ , a Cornet.	купецъ , a merchant.
Пррапорщикъ , an En-	кавалеръ , a knight.
sign.	свидетель , a witness.
Губернаторъ , a Go-	народъ , the people.
vernor.	гражданинъ , a citizen.
Судья , a Judge.	
Духовенство, the clergy.	
Патриархъ, a Patriarch.	
Митрополитъ , a Me-	
tropolitan.	
Архиепископъ, an Arch-	
bishop.	
Епископъ , a Bishop.	

солдàтъ , a soldier.  
мъщàнство, citizenship.  
мъщанинъ , a citizen.  
секрèшàръ , a secretary.  
спрàпчíй , a lawyer.  
обвинàемый , an accu-  
sed (person).  
присяжный , a juror.

инострàнецъ , a fo-  
reigner.  
лавочникъ, a shop-keep-  
er.  
палàчъ, an executioner.  
кухàрка , a cook. f.  
извóщикъ , a hack-dri-  
ver.

*Adjectives.*

Имперàторскíй , Цар-  
скíй , Imperial.  
верхóвный , high.  
главный , head , prin-  
cipal.  
почéтный , venerable.  
воéный , military.

Королéвский , Royal.  
действительный , ac-  
tual.  
нарòдный , popular.  
посторонníй , acces-  
sory.  
низкíй , low, base.  
спàшкíй , civil.

*Verbs.*

цàрствовашь , to reign.  
приказывашь , to com-  
mand.  
проповèдывашь , to  
preach.  
судѝшь , to judge.  
опредéляшь , to decree,  
to appoint.  
защищàшь , to defend.

повиновàться , to obey.  
покóрствовашь , to sub-  
mit.  
внимáшь , to hear with  
attention.  
накàзывашь , to punish.  
оправдывашь , to ju-  
stify.  
казнѝшь , to execute.

*Of war.**Substantives.*

войнá , war.  
миръ , peace.  
шишина , tranquility.  
возмущéніе , a distur-  
bance.

союзникъ , an ally.  
щитъ , a shield.  
стрèлá , an arrow.  
мечъ , a sword.  
пùшка , a cannon.

ядро , a cannon-ball.	лукъ , a bow.
бомба ; a bomb.	колчанъ , a quiver.
оружие , arms.	копье , a lance.
порохъ , gun-powder.	лафетъ , a carriage (for
шпага , a sword.	cannon).
кинжалъ , a dagger.	пуля , a ball.
клинокъ , a blade.	гранатъ , a grenade.
барабанъ , a drum.	ружье , a gun (musket).
литавра , a kettle-drum.	дробь , shot.
портупей , a sword-	сабля , a sabre.
belt.	штыкъ , a bayonet.
ножны , a scabbard.	труба , a trumpet.
походъ , a campaign.	ефесъ , the hilt.
спавка , палашка , a tent.	сумка , a sash.
войско , an army.	лагерь , станъ , a camp.
полкъ , a regiment.	осада , a siege.
рота , a company.	гарнизонъ , a garrison.
эскадронъ , a squadron.	патруль , a patrol.
батальонъ , a battalion.	рундъ , a round.
кавалерия , cavalry.	пикиеть , a piquet.
артиллерия , artillery.	караулъ , a guard.
сражение , a battle.	шпиона , a spy.
выстрелъ , firing.	пехота , infantry.
победа , victory.	приступъ , an attack.
мятежъ , бунтъ , a revolt.	спышка , a skirmish.
неприятель , an enemy.	слава , glory.

*Adjectives.*

мирный , peaceful.	союзный , allied.
возмутительный , se- ditious.	пушечный , cannon.
походный , campaign.	барабанный , drum.
конный , horse.	неприятельский , ad- verse.
убитый , killed.	ружейный , musket.
раненый , wounded.	штробный , trumpet.

побѣдный , victorious.	осадный , besieged.
кровопролитный , bloo- dy.	пѣхотный , foot.
войнственныи , war- like.	плѣнии , captive.
оборонительный , de- fensive.	славный , glorious.
войскій , военныи , mi- litary.	непобѣдимый , invin- cible.
мятежный , rebellious.	неприспѣшний , inac- cessible.
	наступательный , of- fensive.

*V e r b s.*

воева́шь , to make war.	распуска́шь , to disband.
набира́шь , to collect.	успирия́шь , to quell.
возмуща́шься , to excite.	укроща́шь , to subdue.
бунтова́шь , to rebel.	ранишь , to wound.
убива́шь , to kill.	взя́шь прѣступомъ , to take by storm.
идши на прѣступъ , to attack , storm.	заряжáшь , to load.
стрѣля́шь , палишь , to fire.	опушупа́шь , to re- treat.
подступа́шь , to ap- proach.	напада́шь , to attack.
осажда́шь , to besiege.	защища́шь , обороно́я́шь- ся , to defend.
вспомога́шь , to aid.	бомбардирова́шь , to bombard.
укрѣпла́шь , to fortify.	руби́шь , to cut.
коло́тишь , to pierce.	умерщвля́шь , to kill.
бѣжа́шь , to fly.	опустоша́шь , to de- vastate.
разоря́шь , to destroy.	да́шь сраже́ніе , to give battle.
граби́шь , to pillage.	
заключать миръ , to conclude peace.	

## THE ARTS AND SCIENCES.

## Substantives.

Наука , a science.	Врачъ, мѣдикъ, a physician.
Богословія , Theology.	
Правовѣдіе , Jurisprudence.	Философъ, a Philosopher.
Врачебная наука , the healing art.	Стихотворецъ, a Poet.
Философія, Philosophy	Ораторъ, an orator.
Словесность , Literature.	Историкъ, an Historian.
Грамматика , Grammar.	Сочинитель , Писатель, an Author.
Стихотворчество, поэзія , Poetry.	Библиотекарь , a librarian.
Краснорѣчіе, Eloquence.	Переводчикъ , a translator.
Исторія , History.	рѣчь , an oration.
Географія , землеописание, Geography.	стихіи , verses.
Физика , Physic.	правило , a rule.
Естественная Исторія , Natural History.	поэма , a poem.
Математика , Mathematics.	слогъ , style.
Астрономія, Astronomy.	слово , a word.
ученіе , learning.	пѣсня , a song.
Профессоръ , a Professor.	письмо , a letter.
Учитель , a Teacher.	книга , a book.
Богословъ , a Theologian.	листъ , a leaf.
Правовѣдь , Законовѣдецъ , a Lawyer.	странница , a page.
	перо , a pen.
	чернила , ink.
	бумага , paper.
	художество , искусство , an art.
	музыка , music.
	вайніе , скульптура , sculpture.

жывопись, painting.	зóдчíй, архитекtorъ,
ръзьба, carving.	an architect.
зóдчество, архитек- шúра, architecture.	изобрѣщаль, an in- ventor.
кораблеплáванie, na- vigation.	земледѣлецъ, an agri- culturist.
книгопечáшанie, print- ing.	хлѣбопáшецъ, a hus- bandman.
прóмысль, a trade.	рыболовъ, a fisherman.
земледѣліе, хлѣбопáше- ство, agriculture.	рудокопъ, a miner.
рыболо́вство, fishing.	охóпникъ, a hunter.
охóша, звѣроло́вство, hunting.	паспухъ, a shepherd.
скошовóдство, breed- ing of cattle.	изобрѣщенie, an inven- tion.
рудокóпство, mining.	ошкрытиe, a discovery.
шоргóвля, commerce.	каршѝна, a picture.
художникъ, an artist.	портретъ, a portrait.
музыкàнпъ, a musician.	кистъ, a pencil.
виршуóзъ, a virtuoso.	рѣзéцъ, a chisel.
ваятель, скульпторъ, a sculptor.	флейта, a flute.
живопи́сецъ, a painter.	свирѣль, a pipe.
гравéръ, an engraver.	скрипка, a violin.
рѣзчикъ, a carver.	фабрика, a manufac- tory.

*Adjectives.*

учéный, learned.	живопи́сный, pictu- resque.
врачéбный, medical.	
краснорѣчивый, eloquent.	архитекùрный, ar- chitectural.
правильный, correct.	
письменный, written.	промышленный, enter- prising.
изùстный, extempore.	
искусственный, arti- ficial.	торгóвый, commercial.
музыкальный, musical.	изобрѣщальный, in- ventive.

*V e r b s.*

учить , to teach.	изобрѣтать , to invent.
учиться , to learn.	играть , to play.
писа́ть , to write.	живописа́ть , to paint.
чита́ть , to read.	рѣзать , to carve.
разговàриватъ , to con- verse.	плàвать , to melt.
сочиня́ть , to compose.	печа́тать , to print.
лѣчить , to heal.	промышля́ть , to con- trive.
опи́сывать , to describe.	паха́ть , to plough.
повѣщовава́ть , to relate.	съя́ть , to sow.
переводи́ть , to trans- late.	борони́ть , to harrow.
вычисля́ть , to calculate.	молоти́ть , to grind.
счи́шьашь , to reckon.	копа́ть , to dig.
	лови́ть , to catch.

## O f t w a d e s. &amp;c.

*Substantives.*

ремесло , a trade.	сѣдѣльникъ , a harness- maker.
ремесленникъ , an artist.	
плóшникъ , a carpenter.	шкачъ , a weaver.
столя́ръ , a cabinet- maker.	портнóй , a tailor.
плокàръ , a turner.	шляпникъ , a hat-maker.
карéшникъ , a carriage- maker.	скорня́жникъ , a furrier.
каменщикъ , a stone- mason.	сапожникъ , a boot- maker.
хлѣбникъ , a baker.	штекольщикъ , a gla- zier.
мясникъ , a butcher.	гончаръ , горшечникъ , a potter.
пирóжникъ , a pastry- cook.	мѣдникъ , a copper- smith.
кожéвникъ , a tanner.	оловянникъ , a tin-man.

красильщикъ , a dyer.	кузнецъ , a black-smith.
мельникъ , a miller.	молотило , a flail.
слѣсарь , a lock-smith.	узда , a bridle.
золотыхъ дѣль ма-	сѣдло , a saddle.
сперъ , a gold-smith.	шпора , a spur.
переплѣщикъ , a book- binder.	сѣть , } a net.
перевощикъ , a water- man.	уда , a fish-hook.
рабо́тникъ , alabourek.	шельга , a cart.
мореходецъ , a seaman.	са́ни , a sledge.
солдатъ , a soldier.	карёта , a carriage.
орудіе , tools.	коляска , a calash.
шомбръ , an axe.	колесо , a wheel.
спрѣгъ , a plane.	станокъ , a press.
пила , a file or saw.	шерпугъ , a rasp.
осёлокъ , a hone.	бура́въ , a gimblet.
колодка , a block.	корабль , a ship.
ножницы , scissors.	судно , a vessel.
мѣрка , a measure.	лодка , a boat.
вилы , a pitch-fork.	парусъ , a sail.
рычагъ , a lever.	снасть , the rigging.
серпъ , a sickle.	руль , a rudder.
коса́ , a scythe.	весло , an oar.
	мачта , a mast.

*V e r b s.*

молоть , to grind , (corn.)	переплетать , to bind, (books.)
бура́вить , сверлить , to bore.	лудить , to tin.
шочить , to sharpen.	паять , to solder.
ковать , to shoe (a horse.)	рубить , to cut.
	шругать , to plane.
	колоть , to split.

## О Ф Т И М Е.

*Substantives.*

врёмя , time.	Іюль , July.
мгновéніе , a moment.	Августъ , August.
минùта , a minute.	Сентябрь , Septem- ber.
часъ , an hour.	Октябрь , October.
полчасá , half an hour.	Ноябрь , November.
чётверть часá , a quar- ter of an hour.	Декáбрь , December.
три чётверти часá , three quarters of an hour.	годъ , a year.
день , day.	полгода , half a year.
ночь , night.	полтора́ года , a year and a half.
утро , the morning.	праздникъ , a holiday.
вечеръ , the evening.	новый годъ , the new year.
пóлдень , mid-day , noon.	постъ , a fast.
пóлночь , midnight.	мáсляница , the carni- val.
недѣля , a week.	Свяшáя недѣля , Easter week.
Воскресénie , Sunday.	Трóицынъ день , Wit- suntide.
Понедѣльникъ , Mon- day.	Рождество , Christmas.
Втóрникъ , Tuesday.	вѣкъ , an age.
Середá , Wednesday.	врёмя года , a season.
Четвéргъ , Thursday.	весна , spring.
Пятница , Friday.	лѣто , summer.
Суббо́та , Saturday.	осень , autumn.
мъсяцъ , a month.	зима , winter.
Январь , January.	срокъ , a period , term.
Февраль , February.	вѣчность , eternity.
Мартъ , March.	рождéніе , birth-day.
Апрель , April.	имянины , names-day.
Май , May.	
Июнь , June.	

*Adjectives.*

годи́чный, annual.	весе́нній, spring.
годово́й, yearly.	лѣтній, summer.
дневно́й, daily.	зимній, winter.
ночно́й, nocturnal.	осе́нній, autumn.
ежего́дный, yearly.	полу́денный, mid-day.
еженедѣльный, weekly.	полно́чный, mid-night.
ежеднѣвный, daily.	предъиду́щій, the pre- ceding.
ежечасны́й, hourly.	
у́тренній, morning.	послѣдующій, the fol- lowing.
вечерній, evening.	

*Verbs.*

нашупа́ть, to begin.	проходи́шь, to pass.
продолжа́сья, to con- tinue.	оканчиватсѧ, to end.
	счита́шь, to count.



---

## TITLES AND RANKS.

Emperors and Kings are addressed by the title of *Ваше Величество*, Your Majesty; the former being distinguished by the epithet *Императорское*, Imperial, and the latter by *Королевское*, Royal. All the members of the Imperial family, except the Emperor and Empress, are addressed by the title of *Ваше Императорское Высочество*, Your Imperial Highness.

Foreign Princes and Dukes, and a few Russian Princes, have the title of *Ваша Стольность*, which may be rendered in English, according to the dignity of the person addressed, Your Serene Highness, or Your Grace.

Russian Princes (*Князья*) and Counts (*Графы*) are addressed by the title of *Ваше Сиятельство*, Your Lordship.

Those Persons, who are not distinguished by any hereditary title, are divided into 14 classes, and addressed according to their rank in the civil or military service.

1<sup>st</sup> C l a s s.

Государственный Кан-цлеръ. The Chancellor of the Empire.

Генералъ - Фельдмаршаль. General-Field-Marshal.

Генералъ-Адмиралъ. Admiral in chief.

Дѣйствительный Тай-ный Совѣтникъ 1-го класса. Actual Privy Counsellor of the first class.

2<sup>nd</sup> C l a s s.

Генералъ опѣ Инфантеріи, Кавалеріи и Артиллериі.

Адмиралъ. Admiral.

Дѣйствительный Тай-ный Совѣтникъ. Actual Privy Counsellor.

These two classes are addressed by the title of Ваше Высокопревосходительство, Your High Excellency.

3<sup>rd</sup> C l a s s.

Генералъ-Лейтенантъ. Lieutenant-General.

Вице-Адмиралъ. Vice Admiral.

Тайный Совѣтникъ. Privy Counsellor.

4<sup>th</sup> C l a s s.

Генералъ-Майоръ. Major-General.

Контръ-Адмиралъ. Rear Admiral.

Дѣйствительный Статской Совѣтникъ. Actual Counsellor of State.

The above two classes are addressed by the title of Ваше Превосходительство, Your Excellency.

5<sup>th</sup> Class.

Бригадиръ.	Brigadier.
Капитанъ Командоръ.	Commodore.
Сташскій Совѣтникъ.	Counsellor of State.

This class is addressed by the title of Bame Высокородіе, which may be rendered in English by Your Honour.

6<sup>th</sup> Class.

Полковникъ.	Colonel.
Флоша Капитанъ пер- ваго ранга.	Post Captain.

Коллежскій Совѣтникъ. Counsellor of College.

7<sup>th</sup> Class.

Подполковникъ.	Lieutenant Colonel.
Флоша Капитанъ вто- раго ранга.	Captain in the Navy.
Надворный Совѣтникъ.	Counsellor of Court.

8<sup>th</sup> Class.

Майоръ.	Major.
Флоша Капитанъ Лей- тенантъ.	Lieutenant and Com- mander.
Коллежскій Ассесоръ.	Assessor of College.

The above three classes are addressed by the title of Ваше Высокоблагородіе.

( 91 )

9<sup>th</sup> Class.

Капиша́нъ.	Captain (army).
Фло́па Лейтенанти́.	Lieutenant in the Navy.
Тишуля́рный Совѣт- никъ.	Titulary Counsellor.

10<sup>th</sup> Class.

Штабсъ-Капиша́нъ.	Captain of the 2 <sup>nd</sup> rank.
Колледжский Секре́тарь.	Secretary of College.
Переводчикъ Коллегіи иностранныхъ дѣль.	Interpreter in the Col- lege of foreign affairs.

*Rem.* The 11<sup>th</sup> class has been suppressed.

12<sup>th</sup> Class.

Пору́тчикъ.	Lieutenant. (army).
Мичманъ.	Midshipman.
Губернскій Секре́тарь.	Provincial Secretary.

13<sup>th</sup> Class.

Подпору́тчикъ.	Second Lieutenant.
Сенáтскій и Синóд- скій Регистра́торъ.	Senate or Synod Re- gistrator.

14<sup>th</sup> Class.

Пропорщи́къ и Кор- непъ.	Ensign and Cornet.
Колледжский Регистра́торъ.	Registrar of College.

The above five classes have the appellation  
of Ваше Благородие.

**MANNER OF ADDRESSING LETTERS TO PERSONS  
OF DIFFERENT RANKS.**

То тнє Е мрерор.

Его Императорскому Величеству, Всемилостивейшему Государю Императору НИКОЛАЮ ПАВЛОВИЧУ.

То тнє Е мресс.

Ея Императорскому Величеству, Всемилостивейшей Государынѣ Императрицѣ АЛЕКСАНДРѢ ФЕОДОРОВНѢ.

То тнє Successor to the Throne.

Его Императорскому Высочеству, Государю Наслѣднику и Великому Князю АЛЕКСАНДРУ НИКОЛАЕВИЧУ, Милостивейшему Государю.

То тнє Grand Duke Cesarewitch.

Его Императорскому Высочеству, Государю Цесаревичу и Великому Князю КОНСТАНТИНУ ПАВЛОВИЧУ, Милостивейшему Государю.

То тнє Grand Duke.

Его Императорскому Высочеству, Милостивейшему Государю Великому Князю МИХАИЛУ ПАВЛОВИЧУ.

То тнє Grand Duchess.

Ея Императорскому Высочеству, Государынѣ, Великой Княгинѣ, \* followed by the patronymic etc. Милостивейшей Государынѣ.

\* If the Grand Duchess be unmarried the address is Великой Княжнѣ, the same applies to Princesses before marriage, Ея Сиятельству, милостивой государынѣ Княжнѣ Софії Михайлownѣ etc.

## To a Prince or Count.

Его Сиятельству Милостивому Государю Князю or Графу, Александру Ивановичу &c. Ея Сиятельству Милостивой Государыне Княгине or Графине Анне Петровне &c.

## To a person of the first class.

Его Высокопревосходительству, Милостивому Государю &c. Letters are addressed in the same manner to persons of the other classes according to their ranks, as : Его Превосходительству, or Его Высокородию &c. Милостивый Государь being applied to them all.

Letters to Princes and Counts usually commence with : Сиятельныйший Князь, or Сиятельныйший Граф ; to Princesses or Countesses Сиятельныйшая Княгиня, or Сиятельныйшая Графиня, and terminate with *вашего* Сиятельства, Милостивейшаго Государя, or милостивейшей Государыни, всепокорнейший слуга &c. To other persons of elevated rank the letter may commence with Милостивый Государь, and to Ladies, Милостивая государыня, and terminate with честь имъю пребыть

Вашимъ покорнейшимъ слугою.



TABLE OF RUSSIAN WEIGHTS, MEASURES  
AND COINS.

*Weights.*

- 1 Берковецъ contains 10 пудъ \*
- 1 Пудъ — — — 40 фунтовъ.
- 1 Фунтъ — — — 32 лопша.

*Dry measure.*

- 1 Ласпъ contains 12 четвертей \*\*
- 1 Четверть — — — 2 осмины.
- 1 Осмина — — — 2 пайка.
- 1 Паёкъ — — — 2 четверика.
- 1 Четверикъ — — — 4 четвершки.
- 1 Четвершка — — — 2 гарнца.

*Rem.* The sack (куль) contains 10 tchetveriks.

*Liquid measure.*

- 1 Анкерокъ contains 3 ведра \*\*\*
- 1 Ведро — — — 4 четвершки.
- 1 Четвершка — — — 2 осмухи.

*Long measure.*

- 1 Верста contains 500 сажень \*\*\*\*
- 1 Сажень — — — 3 аршина \*\*\*\*\*
- 1 Аршинъ — — — 16 вершковъ.

\* A pood Russ is equal to  $36\frac{1}{2}$  lb. avoir dup. consequently a Russian pound weighs 6373 grains English.

\*\* A tchetvert is equal to  $\frac{18}{25}$  of a quarter English.

\*\*\* A vedro is equal to  $3\frac{1}{4}$  gallons English.

\*\*\*\* A sajen (сажень) is equal to 7 feet English.

\*\*\*\*\* The arshine (аршинъ) is equal to  $\frac{7}{9}$  of an English yard, consequently 77 $\frac{2}{5}$  yd. contain 100 arshines.

*Rem.* Land, in Russia, is divided into desiateens (десятина), each desiateen containing 2400 square sajens (сажень).

### C o i n s.

#### G o l d.

- 1 Имперіаль is equal to 10 рублей (sil) \*
- 1 Полуимперіаль — — — 5 рублей.

#### S i l v e r.

- 1 Рубль is equal to 100 копѣекъ.
- 1 Полтинникъ — — — 50 — — —
- 1 Полуполтинникъ — 25 — — —
- 1 Гриненникъ — — — 10 — — —
- 1 Пятачекъ — — — 5 — — —

#### C o p p e r.

- 1 Грошъ is equal to 2 копейки.
- 1 Копейка — — — 2 деньги.
- 1 Деньга — — — 2 полушки.

\* The intrinsic value of the silver rouble is about 3 Sh.  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ; the value of the paper rouble fluctuates according to the rate of the exchange; at the present period (1827) it is worth about  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the silver rouble.



## DIALOGUES.



## DIALOGUE I.

ON THE ARRIVAL OF A FOREIGNER AT CRONSTADT  
AND PETERSBURG.

Перевóщикъ, свези Waterman! take me  
меня на берегъ. on shore.

Могу ли я взять съ Can I take my lug-  
собою поклáжу? gage with me?

Вы мóжете взять You may take a small  
только небольшой portmanteau; all the  
чемодáнь; все прочее rest must go to the  
должно быть оппра- custom house for exa-  
влено въ тамóжню для mination.  
осмóтра.

Есть ли въ гóродѣ Are there any good  
хорошíе трактиры? inns in the town?

Вы найдéте два или You will find two  
три Англíйскихъ тра- or three English houses.

Человéкъ! снеси эшотъ Porter! carry this port-  
чемодáнь въ трактиръ. manteau to the inn.

Далекó ли отсюда?

Гдѣ живéтъ Англíй- Where does the  
скíй Консулъ? English Consul live?

Въ этомъ ли домъ?  
Is this the house?  
Это ли Англійскій  
трактиръ?  
Is this an English  
tavern?

Понеси мой чемоданъ  
на верхъ.  
Bring the portman-  
teau up-stairs.

Покажите мнѣ вашъ  
пашпорть.  
Shew me your pass-  
port.

Вошь онъ.  
Here it is.

Мнѣ должно взять  
его съ собою и если  
вамъ угодно прійти за-  
втра въ Контору, вы  
получите другой, ко-  
торой послужитъ вамъ  
до Петербурга.  
I must take it with  
me, and if you will  
come to morrow to the  
alien office, you will  
receive another, that  
will serve you to Pe-  
tersburg.

Въ котроромъ часу  
должно мнѣ быть тамъ?  
At what o'clock must  
I be there?

Около перваго часа.  
About 12 o'clock.

Надѣюсь, что ме-  
ня не спаॻнуль задер-  
живаясь, я хочу зав-  
тра отпраॻившися въ  
Петербургъ.  
I hope I shall not  
be detained, as I wish  
to go to Petersburg to-  
morrow.

Пароходъ сейчасъ  
отпраॻившися.  
The steam - boat is  
ready to start.

Сколько врёмени  
In what time does

и́дёт парохóдъ до Пе-  
тербúрга ?

the steam boat usually  
perform the voyage to  
Petersburg ?

Около трехъ часóвъ,  
а иногда и мénje при-  
благопрíятномъ въ-  
шрѣ.

In about three hours,  
and sometimes less,  
when the wind is fair.

Найдéмъ ли мы у  
пристани наёмныя ка-  
réши ?

Shall we find any  
hackney-coaches at the  
landing place ?

Нéшь , но довóльно  
дрóжекъ , небольшой  
экипажъ въ одиù лó-  
шадь .

No , but plenty of  
*droshkies* , a small vehi-  
cle with one horse.

Бывáли ли вы уже  
въ здéшнемъ краю ?

Were you ever in  
this country before ?

Нéшь , сударь , я въ  
пéрвый разъ здéсь .

No , sir , it is my first-  
visit.

Дóлго ли вы намé-  
рены оспáться въ Пе-  
тербúргъ ?

Do you intend to  
make a long stay in Pe-  
tersburg ?

Бùдучи побуждáемъ  
однíмъ любопытст-  
вомъ , я по осмóпрѣ глá-  
вныхъ достопримéчá-  
щельносíней Петер-

As the object of my  
journey is mere curi-  
osity , after having seen  
what is worthy notice  
in Petersburg , I shall

бурга , отпра́влюсь въ proceed to Moscow.  
Москвѣ ?

Вы найдёте въ Пе-  
тербургѣ множество  
вашихъ землякоў.

Не знаете ли вы ,  
живёть ли тамъ Г-нъ  
Н , я имѣю къ нему ре-  
комендательное пись-  
мо .

Я его очень корош-  
ко знаю : онъ живёть  
по А́нглійской набе-  
режной .

Какимъ образомъ со-  
вѣтовали бы вы ино-  
страницу распорядиться  
ся въ семъ городѣ въ  
разсуждёніи кварши-  
ры ?

Въ слу́чаѣ коротка-  
го пребыванія оста-  
новившись въ трактирѣ , а если онъ намѣренъ  
осипава́ться д о л г о е  
врёмя , — панять чá-  
сную кварширу .

You will find many  
of your countrymen in  
Petersburg .

Do you know whether  
Mr. N. resides there ?  
I have a letter of re-  
commendation to him .

I know him very well ;  
he lives on the English  
quay .

What plan would  
you advise a stranger  
to adopt in this town  
in regard to his lodg-  
ings ?

If his stay be short ,  
to live at an hotel , but  
if he intend residing  
here a considerable  
time it is better to hire  
private lodgings .

\*\*

**Котóрые сáмые лúч-  
шиe трактиры въ гó-  
родѣ?**

**Дéмутовъ трак-  
тиръ, гóродъ Лóндонъ,  
Лúисовъ отéль и проч.**

**Послúжитъ ли миѣ  
пáшпоршъ, котóрый  
я получíль въ Крон-  
штáпѣ, для пребывáнія  
въ Пешербúргѣ?**

**Нѣть, вы полùчиште  
другóй: сейчáсь по при-  
ѣздѣ въ гóродъ, вамъ  
надóбно отdáть пáш-  
поршъ хóзяину дóма,  
въ котóромъ вы оспа-  
новишесь; онъ опо-  
шлéть его въ Адрессъ-  
Контóру, изъ котóрой  
вы, явясь тудá сáми,  
полùчиште билéть для  
пребывáнія на годъ.**

**А поклáжа, котóрую  
я оспáвилъ въ Крон-  
штáпѣ?**

**Which are the best  
hotels in the town.**

**Demuth's hotel , the  
hotel de Londres ,  
Louis' hotel &c.**

**Will the passport ,  
which I received at  
Cronstadt, serve for my  
residence in Peters-  
burg ?**

**No , it must be chan-  
ged ; upon your ar-  
rival you will deliver  
it to the landlord of  
the house , in which  
you take up your  
abode , and he will  
send it to the alien  
office , from whence ,  
upon personal appli-  
cation you will receive  
a billet of residence.**

**And my luggage ,  
which I have left at  
Cronstadt ?**

Она бùдешь отпра-  
влена въ Петеpбùрг-  
скую таможню, где  
вамъ должно бùдешь  
объ ней спрaвишься.

Спáнушь ли осмá-  
шривать наши вéщи,  
когда мы выйдемъ на  
берегъ ?

Мóжешь бысть осмó-  
шряшь вашъ чемодáнь?

Извóщикъ, свези ме-  
ня въ трактиръ Лóн-  
донъ.

Въ Дéмушовъ трак-  
тиръ.

На Англíйскую на-  
бережную.

Въ Галéрную ѿлицу.

На Нéвский про-  
спéктъ.

Какáя это ѿлица?

Это ли трактиръ?

Стой здéсь!

It will be sent to  
the custom house at  
Petersburg, where you  
must apply for it.

Will our luggage be  
examined, when we  
land?

Perhaps they may  
look into your portman-  
teau.

Coachman ! take me  
to the London hotel.

To Demuth's hotel.

To the English quay.

To the Galernoy street.  
To the Nevsky Pro-  
spect.

What street is this?  
Is this the hotel?  
Stop here !



## DIALOGUE II.

## AT AN INN.

Есть ли у васъ по-  
рожнія комнатаы?

Have you any unoc-  
cupied rooms?

Въ котроромъ этажѣ  
желаете вы ихъ имѣть?

On which floor would  
you like to live?

Пожалуйте, покажи-  
ше мнѣ ваши комнатаы.

Have the goodness to  
shew me your apart-  
ments.

Мнѣ надоены спаль-  
ня, гостиная, и пе-  
редняя.

I shall want a bed-  
room, a sitting room  
and a servant's room.

Что вы берете за  
наемъ этихъ комнатаъ  
на мѣсяцъ, на недѣлю,  
на день?

What will be the rent  
of these rooms per  
month, per week, per  
day?

Прикажите внести  
сюда мой чемоданъ и  
развести огонь въ го-  
спиной.

Let my luggage be  
brought in, and order  
a fire to be made in the  
sitting room.

Приготовьте мнѣ  
ужинъ, какъ можно  
скоро.

Let me have supper  
as soon as possible.

Прикажи́те хоро-  
шенько высуши́ть про-  
стыни и посла́ть по-  
стель.

Order the sheets to  
be well aired and the  
bed to be made.

Принеси́ ми ѿ горя-  
чей воды бритье.

Bring me some hot  
water to shave.

Вычищены ли мои  
сапоги и плáтые?

Are my boots cleaned  
and my clothes brush-  
ed?

Гдѣ мой слуга? приш-  
ли́ше егó сюда.

Where is my ser-  
vant? send him here.

Гото́ва ли постель.

Is my bed ready.

Разбуди́ меня зав-  
тра въ шесть часо́въ.

Call me to morrow at  
six o' clock.

Подай́ поскорѣе за-  
втракъ.

Let me have ,break-  
fast immediately.

Чего́ вамъ уго́дно къ  
завтраку?

What would you wish  
to have for breakfast?

Чаю.

Tea.

Кофе.

Coffee.

Шеколáду.

Chocolate.

Молокá.

Milk.

Хлѣба, ма́сла.

Bread and butter.

Ветчины.

Ham.

Свѣжихъ ла́цъ, въ  
смѣшку.

Fresh eggs, not too  
much boil'd.

Сухарéй.

Rusks.

Наймъ мнѣ колыску  
и пáruloшадéй на день.

Hire me a calash and  
pair of horses for to  
day.

Скóлько прóсяшь за  
день?

What do they charge  
a day?

Я возвращусь къ обѣ-  
ду около четырехъ ча-  
совъ.

I shall come back to  
dinner about four o'  
clock.

Гото́въ ли обѣдъ?

Is the dinner ready?

Принеси́ мнѣ бутыл-  
ку Поршвейна.

Bring me a bottle  
of Port-wine.

Мадéры.

Madeira.

Шампáнскаго.

Champaign.

Пóртпера.

Porter.

Пýва.

Beer.

Крёпкаго пýва.

Ale. &c.

Чáшку кóфе съ слíв-  
ками или безъ слíвокъ.

A cup of coffee,  
with, or without cream.

Чáю.

Tea.

Бутылку рóму или  
вóдки, горячей воды,  
сáхару, лимóновъ и пр.

A bottle of rum or  
brandy, hot water, su-  
gar, lemons &c.

Не мóжете ли вы оп-  
рекомендовáть мнѣ хо-  
рошаго слугù?

Can you recommend  
me a good servant?

Есть ли у тебѧ ап-  
тестáть за послѣднее  
врёмя твоéй слùжбы?

Have you a character  
from your last place?

У какихъ господъ ты  
прежде служилъ? In whose service did  
you live last?

Говоришь ли ты по  
Русски, по Француз-  
ски, по Немецки, и пр.  
Can you speak Russ,  
French, German, &c.

Умѣешь ли ты пи-  
сать? Can you write?

Хочешь ли тыѣхать  
со мною въ Москву? Are you disposed to  
go with me to Moscow?

Сколько ты про-  
сишь жалованья? What wages do you  
expect?

Сто рублѣй въ мѣ-  
сяцъ, на своеемъ ку-  
шанье. A hundred roubles a  
month, and I will board  
myself.

Приходи завтра въ  
одиннадцатомъ часу. Call to morrow at ten  
o'clock.



### DIALOGUE III.

#### EXPRESSIONS OF POLITENESS.

Здоробы ли вы, сѹ-  
дарь, сударыня? How do you do Sir,  
Madam, Miss?

Слава Божи, здоровъ,  
здраво.

Very well, I thank  
you.

Я очень радъ уви-  
дѣться съ вами.

I am very glad to see  
you.

- Здорóвъ ли вáшъ бá-  
тиюшка , вáша мáтуш-  
ка , вáша сестрίца ? How is your father,  
your mother , your si-  
ster ?
- Здорóва ли вáша су-  
прùга ? How is your wife ?
- Здорóвы ли вáши  
дёщи ? How are your child-  
ren ?
- Благодарю васъ , онѝ  
совершено здорóвы . They are quite well,  
I thank you.
- Я эшому очень радъ . I am very glad to  
hear it.
- Засвидѣтельствуй-  
те моé почтéніе вá-  
шему бáтюшкѣ , и пр. Present my respects  
to your father &c.
- Не сдѣлаеше ли вы  
мнѣ чéсши сегодня со  
мною отобѣдать ? Will you do me the  
favour to dine with me  
to day ?
- Съ удовольствiемъ ,  
въ котóромъ часу? With pleasure , at  
what hour ?
- Мы обыкновéнно  
обѣдаемъ въ пять ча-  
сóвъ . We dine usually at  
five o'clock .
- Желаю вамъ , сúдарь ,  
дóбраго ўпра . Good morning , sir.
- Дóбраго вéчера , су-  
дáрыня . Good evening , Madam
- Покойной нóчи . Good night!
- Прощáйше . Farewell !

Сча́стливо оспа-  
вáсься.

Сдѣлайше мѣлость  
скажише мнѣ, гдѣ га-  
лѣрная єлица?

Я вамъ очень обя-  
занъ.

Спросиши пожалуй-  
те эшого человѣка,  
что ему наѣдобно; я  
его не понимаю.

Вы менѧ крайне обя-  
зали, государь мой.

Когда бѣду я имѣть  
удовольствіе увидѣть-  
ся съ вами?

Прошу прощенія.

Не угодно ли вамъ  
войти?

Садишесь.

Извините менѧ на  
нѣсколько минутъ, я  
сейчасъ буду къ вамъ.

Давно ли вы приѣха-  
ли въ Петербургъ?

Adieu! good by!

Have the goodness  
to inform me, which  
is the Galernoy street.

I am exceedingly o-  
bliged to you.

Do me the favour to  
ask this man what he  
wants; I do not under-  
stand him.

You are very obli-  
ging sir.

When shall I have  
the pleasure of seeing  
you.

I beg your pardon.

Walk in, if you  
please.

Take a seat.

If you will excuse  
me for a few minutes,  
I will be with you al-  
most immediately.

When did you arrive  
in Petersburg, sir?



## D I A L O G U E IV.

## REMARKABLE OBJECTS AT PETERSBURG.

Видѣли ли вы ужé нѣкоторыя изъ достопримѣчательносѣй сегó гóрода?

Весьма немнóго, но я бùду вамъ оченъ обѣзанъ, если вы назовёте миъ сàмые достопри- мѣчательные предме- ты.

Пáмятникъ Петра Великаго—произведéніе знаменитаго Фальконéша; Зимній дво- рéцъ съ богатѣйшимъ собраниемъ картина и рѣдкостей въ эрмитáжъ; кунсткамера или натуральный кабинéтъ; Акадémia художествъ; лѣтній садъ съ великолѣпною же- лѣзною рѣшётою и проч.

Have you seen any of the curiosities of the place?

Very few, which are the most remarkable objects? You will greatly oblige me by naming them.

The monument of Peter the Great a production of the celebrated Falconet; the Winter palace and the rich collection of paintings and curiosities in the Hermitage; the museum, or cabinet of natural history; the Academy of arts; the summer garden with its magnificent iron railing &c. &c.

Какія изъ церквей заслуживающъ осо- бенное примѣчаніе?

Собо́ръ Нéвской Лá-  
вры, въ кóемъ покоятся  
мо́щи Святыго Алекса-  
ндра Нéвского, пере-  
несённыя сюда Пет-  
рóмъ Великимъ при  
основанíи шполицы;  
Казáнскій Собо́ръ, воз-  
двигнутый Россíйски-  
ми художниками въ цáр-  
ствование Александра I, въ кóемъ Россíйские профéи освяни-  
юшъ памятникъ Фельд-  
маршала Князя Куту-  
зова Смоленского; и  
Петропáвловскій Со-  
бо́ръ въ кръпости,  
гдѣ находятся гробни-  
цы всѣхъ Россíйскихъ  
Госудáрей, начиная ошь  
ПЕТРА Великаго.

Which of the chur-  
ches are most worthy  
of observation?

The church of St. Ale-  
xander Nevsky , which  
Contains the shrine of  
that saint, brought hither  
by Peter the Great  
when he founded the  
city; The Cazan cathedral,  
erected by Russian  
artists during the reign  
of the Emperor ALEX-  
ANDER I, in which  
the trophies of the  
Russian arms, oversha-  
dow the monument of  
Field Marshal Prince  
Kutusoff Smolensky; the  
cathedral of St. Peter  
and Paul in the fortress,  
which contains the  
tombs of the Russian  
sovereigns since  
Peter the Great.

Вы та́кже съ боль-  
шимъ удовольствиемъ

You will also be gra-  
tified by visiting the

**Осмотрите, огромный воспитательный Домъ, въ коемъ воспитывается нѣсколько сопѣ дѣтей.**

**Сколько въ Петербургѣ публичныхъ театровъ?**

Два театра, въ которыхъ поперемѣнно играются на Рѣсскомъ, Французскомъ и Нѣмецкомъ языкахъ.

Осмотрѣвъ главныя достопримѣчательности города вы познакомитесь съ нѣкоторыми изъ окрестностей онаго; съ Императорскими лѣтними дворцами въ Царскомъ селѣ, въ Петергофѣ, въ Павловскѣ, въ Ораніенбаумѣ, Гатчинѣ, Стрѣльни, Ропшѣ и проч. съ островами Крестовскимъ, Елагиннымъ, Каменнымъ и пр.

vast establishment of the foundling hospital, in which many hundreds of children are educated.

How many public theatres are there in Petersburg?

There are two, in which, pieces are performed alternately in the Russian, German and French languages.

After you have seen the most remarkable objects in the town itself, you can visit the environs; The Imperial summer residences of Tsarskoe-selo, Peterhoff, Pavlovsky, Oranienbaum, Gatchina, Strelnia, Ropsha, &c. The islands of Chrestofsky, Yelaguin, Kamenoi, &c.



## DIALOGUE V.

## SHOPPING.

Хотите ли вы идти со мною въ Гостиный дворъ?

Что вы покупаете, сударь?

Шляпу.

Пару перчатокъ.

Тонкаго сукна.

Пару сапоговъ.

Пару башмаковъ.

Тонкаго полотна.

Бумажные, шерстяные, шелковые чулки.

Покажите мнѣ шляпу лучшей доброды, другаго фасона.

Эта шляпа малы.

Эта шляпа велика.

Что стоять эта шляпа?

Это слишкомъ дорого, я не дамъ болѣе двадцати рублей.

Will you go with me to the great market (Gostiny-dvorr).

What do you wish to buy, sir?

A hat.

A pair of gloves.

Some fine cloth.

A pair of boots.

A pair of shoes.

Some fine linnen.

Some cotton, worsted or silk stockings.

Let me see a hat of the best quality, of a different form.

It is too small.

It is too large.

What is the price of this hat?

That is too dear, I will give you twenty roubles.

Есть ли у вась пер-  
чàпки? бòлые, жéлтые,  
чérные, подбýшыя мè-  
хомъ?

Почемъ аршинъ это-  
го сукна?

Нéшь ли у вась полу-  
ше? это слíшкомъ гру-  
бо: Цвéть мнъ не нра-  
вится: онъ слíшкомъ  
тéменъ, слíшкомъ свé-  
щелъ.

Что крайняя цéна  
эшому сукну?

Отрéжьте мнъ ку-  
сóкъ въ пять аршинъ  
и пришлиште ко мнъ на  
квартиру — вошь мой  
адреcсъ.

Не мóжете ли вы  
мнъ сдашь мèлкихъ дé-  
негъ? серебrá? мèлкихъ  
ассигнацíй? мèди?

Have you any gloves?  
white, yellow, black,  
or lined with fur?

What is this cloth a  
yard?

Have you no better?  
this is too coarse, the  
colour does not please  
me; it is too dark,  
it is too light.

What is the lowest  
price for this?

Measure me five yards  
and send it to my lodg-  
ings, here is my ad-  
dress.

Can you give me  
change, small change?  
silver money? small  
notes? copper?



## D I A L O G U E VI.

## W I T H T R A D E S P E O P L E .

Не можеше ли вы отрекомендовашь мнъ хорошаго портнаго, сапожника? и проч.

Can you recommend me a good tailor, shoe-maker &c.

Сколько аршинъ сукна идёшь на пару плáтвя?

How many yards of cloth are necessary for a suit of clothes?

Сними съ менѧ мѣрку; смотри, чтобъ плáтвье не было слїшкомъ широко, слїшкомъ ўзко, слїшкомъ тѣсно, мѣшковато, коротко, длинно.

Take measure of me.

Do not make them too large, too small, too tight, too loose, too short, too long.

Скоро ли онó бùдетъ готово?

When can I have them?

Мнъ нáдобно скорѣе.

I want them sooner.

Нáдобно, чтобъ было готово въ три дни.

I must have them in three days.

Какія пùговицы прикажися положить на фракъ? свѣплыя, или шéлковыя пùговицы.

What buttons would you like to have on the coat, gilt buttons, or silk buttons?

Что берёшь за рабошу съ фрaка, жи-

What do you charge for making a coat, a

лéта и пárы панталооны? a waistcoat, pantaloons?

Смотрй же , чтобъ непремѣнно бýло го- тово въ три дни.

Не застáвь менѧ ждапь.

Сапожникъ пришéль.

Пусть онъ войдéпь.

Есть ли у тебà хóшie готóвые сапоги?

Покажи мнѣ пárу.

Эти мнѣ не въ пору, онѝ жмутъ, они слíшкомъ простóрны, слíшкомъ велики, слíшкомъ малы.

Подáй примѣрить другóю пárу.

Скóро ли можешь мнѣ сдѣлать пару са- погóвъ и пárу башма- кóвъ?

Снимѝ мѣрку и сдер- жи своé слóво.

Be sure to let me have them in three days

Do not disappoint me.

The boot - maker is here.

Ask him in.

Have you any good ready-made boots ?

Shew me a pair.

They do not fit me, they pinch me , they are too wide , too long, too small.

Let me try another pair.

How soon can you make me a pair of boots and a pair of shoes ?

Take measure , but do not fail to let me have them.



## DIALOGUE VII.

## ENQUIRIES PREVIOUS TO A JOURNEY.

Сколько верстъ отъ  
Пешербурга до Москвы?

How many versts is  
it from Petersburg to  
Moscow?

728 верстъ.

728 versts.

Хорошà ли дорóга?

Is the road good?

Дорóга óколо двухъ  
столицъ весьмà хоро-  
шá и сдѣлана по Макъ-  
Адамову плàну.

The road is very good  
near the two capitals,  
where it is made upon  
the plan of Mac. Adam.

Прíятно ли мѣсто-  
положéніе, по котó-  
рому идётъ дорóга?

Does the road lie  
through a fine country?

Мѣстоположéніе до  
Валдáйскихъ горъ весь-  
мá плóское , но здѣсь  
станóвится бóлье раз-  
нообрáзнымъ и прíят-  
нымъ.

It is very flat until  
you reach the Valdai  
hills, where the scene-  
ry becomes more di-  
versified and agree-  
able.

Есть ли по дорóгѣ  
хорошія гостиницы?

Are there any good  
inns upon the road !

На нѣкоторыхъ стáн-  
цияхъ вы найдёте нó-  
выя гостиницы по-  
спрóенные для удóб-  
ствá путешéствен-

At some stages there  
are new inns erected  
for the accomodation  
of travellers , where  
all kinds of refresh-

никовъ, и снабжённыя ments may be pro-  
весьми необходимыми red.  
помѣбносными.

Какъ обыкновено  
путешествуютъ въ  
Россіи?

Или въ дилижансъ,  
или въ своеѣ экипа-  
жъ на почтовыхъ ло-  
шадяхъ.

Если вы хотише-  
тъхать въ дилижансъ,  
то споишь вамъ шоль-  
ко получитъ пашпорти  
и взять мѣсто въ ди-  
лижансовой канторѣ;  
если же намѣрены  
тъхать по почтѣ, то дол-  
жны получить изъ кан-  
целяріи Военнаго-Ге-  
нераль - Губернатора  
подорожную или при-  
казаніе почтмейсте-  
рамъ по дорогѣ снаб-  
жать васъ лошадьми.

Сколько положено  
платить за лошадь съ  
версты?

Which are the most  
usual modes of travell-  
ing, in this country?

Either in the stage-  
coach (*diligence*), or  
in your own carriage  
with post horses.

If you travel by the  
diligence, you have only  
to procure a passport  
and take your place  
at the coach - office ;  
but if you take post  
horses you must pro-  
cure a government or-  
der (called a *podorosh-  
naya*) from the of-  
fice of the Governor  
General to the postmas-  
ters on the road to fur-  
nish you with horses.

What do they charge  
for each horse per  
verst?

По осьмі копѣекъ ,  
сверхъ пла́ты за подо-  
рожную .

Eight copecks , be-  
sides what you pay for  
your podoroshnaya.

Не должно ли пла-  
тиль и извóщикамъ ?  
Бездѣлицу .

Is it customary to give  
the postilion any thing?  
A trifle.

Сколько отъ Петер-  
бùрга до Москвы спáн-  
ций ?

How many stages are  
there between Peters-  
burg and Moscow ?

26 спáнций ; начи-  
ная отъ Петербùрга  
въ слѣдующемъ поряд-  
ке :

There are 26; in tra-  
velling from Peters-  
burg in the following  
order.

*C. Петербургской Губерніи.*

*Government of St.  
Petersburg.*

	Версты		Versts.
Софія	22.	Sophia	22.
Ижора	11.	Ijora	11.
Тосна	25.	Tosna	25.

*Новгородской Гу-  
берніи.*

*Government of Nov-  
gorod.*

Померанія	32.	Pomerania	32.
Чудово	25.	Tchoodovo	25.
Спáская Поли́сль	24.	Spaskaya Poliste	24.
Подберéзье	24.	Podberezye	24.
Новгородъ	22.	Novgorod	22.
Бронницы	35.	Bronnitz	35.

Зáйцова	27.	Zaitzova	27.
Крепшы	31.	Krestzy	31.
Рáкино	16.	Rokino	16.
Яжелбицы	22.	Yajelbitzy	22.
Зимогóрье(Валдай)	22.	Zimogorye (Valdai)	22.
Едрóво	20.	Edrovo	20.
Хотилово	36.	Khotilovo	36.

*Tверской Губер-  
ни.*      *Government of  
Tver.*

Вышнíй Волочéкъ	36.	Vishney Volotchok	36.
Выдропóское	33.	Vidropooskoe	33.
Торжéкъ	38.	Torjok	38.
Мéдное	33.	Maydnoe	33.
Тверь	30.	Tver	30.
Воскресéнское	26.	Voskresenskoe	26.

*Московской Гу-  
бернiи.*      *Government of Mo-  
scow.*

Завидово	31.	Zavidovo	31.
Клинъ	26.	Kleen	26.
Пéшки	31.	Peshki	31.
Чéрная грязь	22.	Tchernaya Griaz	22.
Москвá	28.	Moscow	28.
	<hr/> <u>728.</u>		<hr/> <u>728.</u>



## DIALOGUE VIII.

## ON THE ROAD TO MOSCOW.

Какáя эшо спáнциá?

What is the name of this stage?

Далекó ли до слéду-  
ющей спáнции?

How far is it to the next stage?

Хорошá ли дорóга,  
не тяжелá ли, не пе-  
счáна ли? не горыща  
ли?

Is the road good, heavy, sandy, hilly?

Не нáдобно ли взять  
больше лошадéй?

Is it not necessary to take more horses.

Скóроли лóшади бу-  
дуть гошóвы?

How long will it be before the horses are ready?

Скóлько на этой  
спáнции дéржанть ло-  
шадéй?

How many horses are kept at this stage?

Осмотрí карéтные  
рессóры; не попóрши-  
лись ли они.

Examine the springs of the carriage, and see if they are not injured.

Скажí извóщику,  
чтобы онъ сей часъ  
заклáдываль лошадéй.

Order the postilion to put the horses to immediately.

Мáзаны ли колéса?

Are the wheels greased?

Все ли готово?	Is every thing ready ?
Ступай.	Drive on.
Ступай проворней.	Drive faster.
Ступай пошире.	Drive slower.
Стой! и отвори две- ри, я выйду и пойду пешкомъ на гору.	Stop ! and open the door, I will get out and walk up the hill.
Эшо ли почтовой дворъ ?	Is this the post- house ?
Могули я здѣсь обѣ- дашь ?	Can I dine here ?
Что у васъ гото- во къ обѣду ?	What have you got ready dressed ?
Сколько мнѣ приход- ится платить за ло- шадей до ближайшей станицы ?	How much have I to pay for the horses to the next stage.
Какой эшо городъ ?	What town is this ?
Какая деревня ?	Village ?
Что эшо за строение ?	Building ?
Какая эшо река ?	River ?
Держись большої до- роги и не сворачивай въ спорону.	Keep on the high road , don't turn into any by-road.
Сколько еще остаёт- ся верстъ до станицы ?	How many versts have we still to go ?



## DIALOGUE IX.

## REMARKABLE OBJECTS AT MOSCOW.

Сдѣлайши мілость  
укажиши мнѣ нѣкошо-  
рые изъ достопримѣ-  
чательнѣйшихъ пред-  
мѣтовъ сего го́рода.

Мы сперва осмѣ-  
шимъ Кремль , дре́в-  
нее и великолѣпное  
мѣстопребываніе Ца-  
ре́й , где вы найде-  
те драгоцѣнное соб-  
раніе дре́вностей ,  
ца́рскія сокро́вища ,  
весъма замѣчательную  
оружейную палату и  
другія рѣдкости . От-  
туда пойдемъ въ  
Успенскій Собо́ръ , памятникъ Греко-Италі-  
янской Архитекту-  
ры XV вѣка , постро-  
енный въ царствова-  
ніе Іоанна IV Василье-  
вича Архитекторемъ

Will you do me the  
favour to point out  
some of the objects  
most worthy a stran-  
ger's notice in this  
town.

We will first visit  
that ancient and magni-  
ficent residence of  
the Tsars , the Kremle ,  
where you will find a  
most precious collec-  
tion of antiquities and  
curiosities , the crown  
jewels , a curious ar-  
moury &c. &c. From  
thence we will go to  
the Uspensky cathe-  
dral a monument of the  
Greek-Italian Archi-  
tecture of the XV cen-  
tury , built by Aristotle  
of Bologna , in the reign  
of Ivan Vassilievitch ,  
and which contains

**Болонскимъ, и содер-  
жащій въ себѣ гробніцы  
Патріарховъ и Митро-  
полицій. Взглѧнемъ  
на колокольню Ивáна  
великаго, иѣкогда при-  
мѣчательную по свое-  
му кóлоколу, величай-  
шему въ Европѣ, выли-  
шому въ цáрствованіе  
Алексія Михаиловича  
въсомъ въ 8000 пудъ, и  
упавшему во врёмя по-  
жáра.**

**Изъ прóчихъ досто-  
примѣчательныхъ  
предмѣтовъ осмό-  
стремъ Музéй естé-  
ственной истòрии,  
разныя чáстныя собrá-  
нія картина и дрéвно-  
стей, воспитатель-  
ный домъ и другія чело-  
веколюбивыя заведé-  
нія, новые кремлéв-  
скіе сады, дворцовый  
садъ, два шéапра и  
Италійскую оперу.**

the tombs of the Patriarchs and Metropolitans.  
The belfry of Ivan Veliky is also remarkable, as having once contained the largest bell in Europe, cast in the reign of Alexy Michailovitch and weighing 8000 poods. A fire having consumed the rafters and supporters it fell to the ground.

The other objects we shall visit are the museum of natural history, several private collections of pictures and antiquities, the founding hospital and other benevolent institutions, the New Kremel gardens, the palace garden, the two theatres and the Italian opera.



---

## READING LESSONS IN PROSE.

### LESSON I.

#### AN ORIENTAL TALE.

Абба́съ, Сóфи<sup>1</sup> Перси́дскій, <sup>2</sup> обывѣзжалъ <sup>3</sup> областии свой, никѣмъ не <sup>4</sup> знаемъ. Молодой<sup>5</sup> пастшукъ <sup>6</sup> понравился ему, <sup>7</sup> благородствомъ рѣчей своихъ еще болѣе, нежели прѣятностію <sup>8</sup> вида. Сóфи, <sup>9</sup> открывъ ему <sup>10</sup> сань свой, говориша: Али Бегъ (шакъ назывался пастшукъ) природа <sup>11</sup> произвела тебѧ къ другому <sup>12</sup> званію. Оставь поля свой, <sup>13</sup> послѣдуй за мною: я поставлю тебѧ <sup>14</sup> пастыремъ людѣй. Пастшукъ послѣдовалъ. Онъ былъ <sup>15</sup> нелицемѣрный другъ Государя своеаго, всегда говориша ему правду, и <sup>16</sup> спасали народы отъ <sup>17</sup> упѣненія <sup>18</sup> злобныхъ. Но Абба́съ <sup>19</sup> скончался. Молодому сыну его <sup>20</sup> ласкали <sup>21</sup> олевешали Али-Бѣга. Онъ сбравъ себѣ <sup>22</sup> сокровища, говорили онѣ, слезами <sup>23</sup> сираго и

---

<sup>1</sup> Persian. <sup>2</sup> visited. <sup>3</sup> Provinces. <sup>4</sup> incognito. <sup>5</sup> shepherd. <sup>6</sup> pleased <sup>7</sup> wisdom. <sup>8</sup> appearance. <sup>9</sup> having discovered. <sup>10</sup> dignity. <sup>11</sup> destined. <sup>12</sup> condition <sup>13</sup> follow. <sup>14</sup> pastor. <sup>15</sup> faithful. <sup>16</sup> saved. <sup>17</sup> oppression. <sup>18</sup> the wicked. <sup>20</sup> flatterers. <sup>21</sup> calumniated. <sup>22</sup> treasures. <sup>23</sup> orphan.



вдовицы. <sup>25</sup> Воспалёнъ гнѣвомъ, сынъ Абасовъ идѣпъ самъ въ домъ Али-Бѣговъ, <sup>26</sup> удостовѣриться свойми глазами въ ѹспинѣ <sup>27</sup> доноса. Вездѣ находишъ <sup>28</sup> умѣренность, <sup>29</sup> простоту, <sup>30</sup> сельскіе нравы. Но вдали видны <sup>31</sup> желѣзныя <sup>32</sup> двери. За ними, <sup>33</sup> шепчутъ <sup>34</sup> клеветники, <sup>35</sup> сохраняются сокровища Али-Бѣговы. <sup>36</sup> Растворяютъ двери, что находять въ <sup>37</sup> казиѣ его? <sup>38</sup> Посохъ, <sup>39</sup> свирѣль, плащъ, котоющее онъ пастухомъ носиль. Али-Бѣгъ <sup>40</sup> обнимаетъ <sup>41</sup> колѣна Государя своеаго: « Не <sup>42</sup> отнимай у меня сихъ сокровищъ: я съ ними былъ и опять могу быть <sup>43</sup> счастливъ. Позволь мнѣ <sup>44</sup> возвратиться въ деревню. » Приведенный въ <sup>45</sup> умиление, Государь отдалъ <sup>46</sup> справедливость оклеветанной добродѣтели и <sup>47</sup> грознымъ <sup>47</sup> взоромъ <sup>48</sup> изгналъ ласкатель <sup>49</sup> навсегда.

*Mouravieff.*

<sup>24</sup> widow. <sup>25</sup> exasperated. <sup>26</sup> ascertain. <sup>27</sup> report. <sup>28</sup> moderation. <sup>29</sup> simplicity. <sup>30</sup> village. <sup>31</sup> iron. <sup>32</sup> doors. <sup>33</sup> whisper. <sup>34</sup> calumniators. <sup>35</sup> are kept. <sup>36</sup> they open. <sup>37</sup> coffer. <sup>38</sup> a staff. <sup>39</sup> shepherd's pipe. <sup>40</sup> embraces. <sup>41</sup> the knees. <sup>42</sup> deprive. <sup>43</sup> happy. <sup>44</sup> to return. <sup>46</sup> moved. <sup>46</sup> justice. <sup>47</sup> threatening. <sup>47</sup> glance. <sup>48</sup> banished. <sup>49</sup> for ever.



## L E S S O N II.

## THE BEDOUIN ALEX.

Карава́нъ <sup>1</sup> молéльщиковъ <sup>2</sup> выступáлъ изъ <sup>3</sup> врaшъ Diарбéка. Впереди егo ъхаль Осмáнъ и броса́лъ въ <sup>4</sup> нарóдъ дéньги; — Имáны <sup>5</sup> благословляли отходя́щихъ <sup>6</sup> спрaнниковъ; жи-  
тели <sup>7</sup> усыпáли цвéтами пушь ихъ.

Въ шесто́й разъ <sup>8</sup> отправлялся Осмáнъ съ карава́номъ въ Мéкку, и начáльствовалъ надъ охráннымъ <sup>9</sup> вóйскомъ. Всъ были увé-  
рены въ <sup>10</sup> благополúчномъ <sup>11</sup> окончaнíи своегó  
пушешéспвíя; ѹбо ни одnáжды eщé не <sup>12</sup> слу-  
чáлось съ Осмáномъ никакóго <sup>13</sup> несчáстíя:  
<sup>14</sup> бùри не засыпáли въ <sup>15</sup> спeпáхъ Арапíи ни  
одного́ человéка изъ <sup>16</sup> шéшвовавшихъ съ Ос-  
мáномъ; ни одnáжды <sup>17</sup> Арапíяне не <sup>18</sup> на-  
падáли на негó. Такáя <sup>19</sup> благоуспéшность въ  
<sup>20</sup> предпрíятíяхъ его <sup>21</sup> почишáлась <sup>22</sup> плодомъ  
Осмáновой <sup>23</sup> набожности, <sup>24</sup> щéдрости и  
<sup>25</sup> мùжества.

<sup>1</sup> Pilgrims. <sup>2</sup> departed. <sup>3</sup> gates. <sup>4</sup> people. <sup>5</sup> blessed. <sup>6</sup> strangers. <sup>7</sup> strewed. <sup>8</sup> set out. <sup>9</sup> military escort. <sup>10</sup> happy termination. <sup>11</sup> happened. <sup>12</sup> misfortune. <sup>13</sup> storm. <sup>14</sup> deserts. <sup>15</sup> who went. <sup>16</sup> Arabian. <sup>17</sup> attacked. <sup>18</sup> success. <sup>19</sup> enterprises. <sup>20</sup> considered. <sup>21</sup> fruit. <sup>22</sup> piety. <sup>23</sup> generosity. <sup>24</sup> bravery.

26 Спустя нѣсколько недѣль, послѣ отбытія изъ Діарбѣка, 27 приближился каравањъ къ 28 славному въ 29 дрѣвности Евфрата, рѣкѣ, 30 современой міру. При 31 пѣніи стиховъ изъ Алкорана, 32 перепрѣвились чрезъ нее молѣльщики и вступили въ 33 песчаныя 34 равнинны 35 Аравіи. Тутъ присоединилсѧ къ каравану 36 Бедуїнъ, на прекрасной 37 вороной лошади; онъ рѣвнымъ образомъ Ѹхалъ на 38 поклоненіе 39 колыбели и 40 гробу Магомѣтову.

Османъ вступилъ съ нимъ въ 41 разговоръ, 42 коснувшійся до 43 преимущества ихъ народа. Бедуїнъ ощущалъ короткое, но благоразумно; хвалилъ доспѣйное похвалы въ своемъ народѣ, и 44 охуждалъ то, что казалось ему 45 дурнымъ. 46 Непримѣтнымъ образомъ 47 отдалились они отъ каравана. Османъ съ жаромъ началь 48 выхвалить Оттомановъ.

« Тюрики » — говорилъ онъ Бедуїну — » 49 издавна славящія по всему 50 Востоку 51 хра-

26 after. 27 approached. 28 celebrated. 29 ancient times  
30 coeval. 31 chanting. 32 passed. 33 sandy. 34 deserts. 35 Arabia. 36 Bedouin Arab. 37 black. 38 worship. 39 cradle. 40 tomb. 41 conversation. 42 concerning. 43 superiority. 44 blamed. 45 bad. 46 imperceptibly. 47 wandered. 48 to exalt. 49 long since. 50 the East. 51 bravery.

бростію , <sup>52</sup> добродушиемъ и <sup>53</sup> милосердіемъ , издаўна рѣдкія сій <sup>54</sup> качества <sup>55</sup> снискали намъ <sup>56</sup> уваженіе цѣлаго свѣща , вездѣ єжели хотѧшъ <sup>57</sup> изобразить <sup>58</sup> непобѣдимость <sup>59</sup> вѣ- ина , что говорѧтъ : онъ храбръ , какъ Турукъ ! <sup>60</sup> купцы , желая выразить чье нибудь <sup>61</sup> безкорыстіе въ <sup>62</sup> превосходной стѣпени , гово- рѧтъ : онъ <sup>63</sup> справедливъ какъ Турукъ ! — Чѣмъ напротивъ того , <sup>64</sup> отличился твой бѣдный народъ , <sup>65</sup> шатющійся по степямъ <sup>66</sup> каме- мицкой и пустой Аравії ? какая <sup>67</sup> молва идѣшъ о васъ ? — Та , что вы не имѣете ни чести , ни <sup>68</sup> совѣсти ; вы <sup>69</sup> исповѣдуете однѣ Вѣру съ наими , но вамъ плѣтишь Султанъ ежегод- но <sup>70</sup> знѣтную сїмму , дабы спасти отъ вѣ- шего <sup>71</sup> хищничества глївный караванъ мо- лельщиковъ ; <sup>72</sup> грабительство сдѣлало васъ <sup>73</sup> презрѣнными <sup>74</sup> бродягами въ глазахъ всѣка- го ѹстиннаго Мусульмана . — <sup>75</sup> Признайся , творицъ , въ справедливости мойхъ словъ ; признайся , что вашъ народъ не чѣо инѣе , какъ <sup>76</sup> шайка <sup>77</sup> разбойниковъ .

<sup>52</sup> kindness. <sup>53</sup> compassion. <sup>54</sup> quality. <sup>55</sup> has called forth. <sup>56</sup> respect. <sup>57</sup> pourtray. <sup>58</sup> invincible. <sup>59</sup> warrior. <sup>60</sup> mer- chants. <sup>61</sup> disinterestedness. <sup>62</sup> surpassing. <sup>63</sup> just. <sup>64</sup> is distinguished. <sup>65</sup> roving. <sup>66</sup> stony. <sup>67</sup> fame. <sup>68</sup> conscience. <sup>69</sup> profess. <sup>70</sup> considerable. <sup>71</sup> rapacity. <sup>72</sup> pillage. <sup>73</sup> despi- cable. <sup>74</sup> vagabonds. <sup>75</sup> confess. <sup>76</sup> a band. <sup>77</sup> robbers.

« Мы посль <sup>78</sup> окончимъ нашъ разговоръ ...  
сказа́ль ему Бедуинъ, <sup>79</sup> ука́зыва на <sup>80</sup> по-  
скользнувшагося <sup>81</sup> верблюда, котóрый упа́ль  
и <sup>82</sup> придави́ль собою <sup>83</sup> вожа́шаго — « посль;  
наперéдъ посо́бимъ несча́стному? »

« Поди и <sup>84</sup> пособлай ты! » — отвéчалъ Ос-  
мáнъ; — « я не хочу <sup>85</sup> оказа́ть никакой <sup>86</sup> у-  
слуги этому <sup>87</sup> бездѣльнику: онъ <sup>88</sup> перекупи́ль  
у менѧ верблюда, чешире года шому <sup>89</sup> на-  
задъ; тепéрь я оченъ радъ, что сей же сá-  
мый верблюдъ <sup>90</sup> опи́спи́ль ему за менѧ. Еже-  
ли бы негодя́й <sup>91</sup> изыха́ль, и однó моé слó-  
во могло <sup>92</sup> возвра́тишь ему жизнь, то я, —  
да <sup>93</sup> проши́пъ моé <sup>94</sup> согрѣшёніе Алла и его  
Великій <sup>95</sup> Прорóкъ! — то я <sup>96</sup> заши́ль бы се-  
бѣ роптъ. »

Мéжду тьмъ Бедуинъ <sup>97</sup> вы́свободилъ изъ пόдъ  
верблюда вожа́шаго, и <sup>98</sup> возвраща́лся къ своему  
<sup>99</sup> спùшнику; онъ ужé недалеко отъ него на-  
ходи́лся, какъ вдругъ <sup>100</sup> спра́шный шигръ <sup>101</sup>  
вы́скочилъ изъ за куста, пóдлъ котóраго ъхаль  
<sup>102</sup>неосторожный Осмáнъ, ошда́лясь отъ Каравá-

<sup>78</sup> finish. <sup>79</sup> pointing. <sup>80</sup> stumbled. <sup>81</sup> a camel. <sup>82</sup> crushed.  
<sup>83</sup> guide. <sup>84</sup> aid. <sup>85</sup> to render. <sup>86</sup> service. <sup>87</sup> rascal. <sup>88</sup> over-  
bid. <sup>89</sup> ago. <sup>90</sup> has avenged. <sup>91</sup> was expiring. <sup>92</sup> restore.  
<sup>93</sup> forgive. <sup>94</sup> sins. <sup>95</sup> prophet. <sup>96</sup> would sew up. <sup>97</sup> delivered.  
<sup>98</sup> returned. <sup>99</sup> fellow-traveller. <sup>100</sup> horrid. <sup>101</sup> started.  
<sup>102</sup> careless.

на ; онъ пришёлъ въ <sup>103</sup> смяшёніе , ужаснулся , и упаль безъ <sup>104</sup> чувствъ на землю .

Бедуинъ <sup>105</sup> опрометью поскакалъ , не <sup>106</sup> прочь отъ него , но прямо къ нему ; вынуль пистолέть и въ ту самую минуту , какъ <sup>107</sup> кровожадный звѣрь <sup>108</sup> прыгнулъ на свою <sup>109</sup> добычу , выспрѣлиль по нему ; — <sup>110</sup> мертвый шигръ распянулся подъ полумёршаго Османа .

Наконечъ Османъ открылъ глаза ; спасение его казалось ему <sup>111</sup> сверхъестественнымъ ; онъ <sup>112</sup> обнялъ Бедуина и въ первомъ жару <sup>113</sup> благодарности своей , <sup>114</sup> предлагалъ ему со слезами , яко слабѣйший <sup>115</sup> знакъ должностной <sup>116</sup> признательности , кошелёкъ со спа секими нами .

Бедуинъ , къ немалому удовольствію Османа , <sup>117</sup> отказался .

Въ сие время <sup>118</sup> подошёлъ къ нему <sup>119</sup> нижний на деревянной ногѣ , покрытый рутищемъ и <sup>120</sup> ранами ; онъ <sup>121</sup> обратился къ Осману , державшему кошелёкъ съ секинами , и говорилъ :

<sup>103</sup> lost presence of mind. <sup>104</sup> insensible. <sup>105</sup> precipitately. <sup>106</sup> away. <sup>107</sup> bloodthirsty. <sup>108</sup> flew. <sup>109</sup> prey. <sup>110</sup> lifeless. <sup>111</sup> supernatural. <sup>112</sup> embraced. <sup>113</sup> thankfulness. <sup>114</sup> offered. <sup>115</sup> token. <sup>116</sup> gratitude. <sup>117</sup> refused. <sup>118</sup> same up. <sup>119</sup> beggar. <sup>120</sup> wounds. <sup>121</sup> turned.

«<sup>122</sup> Милосéрдіе должно быть тебѣ знакомо, богатый <sup>123</sup> спрѣнникъ; <sup>124</sup> утоли <sup>125</sup> голодъ и <sup>126</sup> жажду твостого <sup>127</sup> одноземца! уදѣли <sup>128</sup> неимущему одну рупію изъ толстаго кошелька твоего; одна рупія <sup>129</sup> избавить меня отъ мучительного <sup>130</sup> зною; къ вечеру надѣюсь съ эшою поющію <sup>131</sup> добрести до города; безъ неё лишусь силы, и принуждены буду <sup>132</sup> погибнуть отъ <sup>133</sup> люшости дикихъ живопынхъ.»

« Да поможешь тебѣ Алла! » — отвечалъ Османъ, <sup>134</sup> спрѣпавъ въ карманъ толстый кошелекъ съ секинами: » у меня же неѣтъ для тебѣ ни одной рупіи, я иду на <sup>135</sup> богомолье въ Мекку и Медіну изъ Діарбека, и болѣдѣнегъ, сколько мнѣ нужно для путѣ шуда и <sup>136</sup> обратно, не имѣю. Всѣ лѣшнія <sup>137</sup> раздаль я нарѹду при <sup>138</sup> выездѣ изъ опечества; <sup>139</sup> жалѣю о тебѣ, но пособить не могу. »

Бедуинъ вынулъ мѣшокъ съ <sup>140</sup> сорочинскимъ пшеномъ и мѣхъ съ водою, и подаль <sup>141</sup> убогому. «На! утоли твой голодъ и жажду, <sup>142</sup> подкрепи ослабѣвшія <sup>143</sup> силы, и пойдемъ вмѣстѣ.

---

<sup>122</sup> mercy. <sup>123</sup> stranger. <sup>124</sup> appease. <sup>125</sup> hunger. <sup>126</sup> thirst  
<sup>127</sup> fellow-countryman. <sup>128</sup> to him who is destitute. <sup>129</sup> will save. <sup>130</sup> excessive heat. <sup>131</sup> to reach. <sup>132</sup> to perish. <sup>133</sup> ferocity. <sup>134</sup> hiding. <sup>135</sup> pilgrimage. <sup>136</sup> back again. <sup>137</sup> distributed. <sup>138</sup> departure. <sup>139</sup> I am sorry. <sup>140</sup> rice. <sup>141</sup> poor man. <sup>142</sup> recruit. <sup>143</sup> forces.

Гóродъ , кудá шы идéшь , лежíтъ на дорóгъ ;  
по кошóрой идéть каравáнь : я провожú  
шебя . »

« Но я идù <sup>144</sup> мéдленно , чàсто <sup>145</sup> ошды-  
хаю » — говорíль нищíй .

« Такъ сядь на мою лóшадь ! » опвéчáль Бе-  
дуинъ , <sup>146</sup> соскочíль съ неé , посадíль бéдна-  
го , взяль за <sup>147</sup> уздù и повéль <sup>148</sup> потихóнъку .

<sup>149</sup> « Брось егó ! » — сказалъ Осмáнъ Бедуину ; — « кóнчимъ нашъ разговóръ , <sup>150</sup> докá-  
жемъ другъ другу.... »

*Разговóръ нашъ — опвéчáль Бедуинъ — давнó  
уже кóнчился : мы ясно доказáли другъ другу  
превосхóдство нашихъ нарóдовъ въ хráбрости ,  
добродúши и <sup>151</sup> щéдности . <sup>152</sup> Замéть себъ ,  
Осмáнъ , что везdѣ есть <sup>153</sup> добродéтельные  
люди , везdѣ есть и злýе !*

Осмáнъ <sup>154</sup> выразумéль всю <sup>155</sup> кóлкость се-  
гò опвéта , и <sup>156</sup> поклялся <sup>157</sup> бородóю сво-  
егò <sup>158</sup> прàдбда <sup>159</sup> опомстíпь Бедуину за егò  
<sup>160</sup> дéрзость . Скóро слùчай къ <sup>161</sup> исполнéнию  
<sup>162</sup> намéренíя <sup>163</sup> открылся . Бедуинъ <sup>164</sup> заснùль  
весьмà крèпко ; каравáнь <sup>165</sup> поднялся , и Ос-

<sup>144</sup> slowly. <sup>145</sup> rest. <sup>146</sup> leaped off. <sup>147</sup> bridle. <sup>148</sup> гéн-  
тly. <sup>149</sup> leave him. <sup>150</sup> will prove. <sup>151</sup> generosity. <sup>152</sup> ob-  
serve. <sup>153</sup> benevolent. <sup>154</sup> understood. <sup>155</sup> pointedness.  
<sup>156</sup> swore. <sup>157</sup> beard. <sup>158</sup> great-grandfather. <sup>159</sup> to be re-  
venged. <sup>160</sup> insolence. <sup>161</sup> fulfilment. <sup>162</sup> intention. <sup>163</sup> of-  
ered itself. <sup>164</sup> slept. <sup>165</sup> departed.

манъ оспа́вилъ своегò благодѣтеля средї пу-  
спыни; оспа́вилъ на жершву всѣмъ бѣдстві-  
ямъ, и дабы онъ не могъ <sup>166</sup> настілька кара-  
вана, то <sup>167</sup> укралъ у него прекрасную во-  
роную лошадь, все <sup>168</sup> имущество Бедуина.

И <sup>169</sup> судьба не <sup>170</sup> наказала его? — Нѣшь!  
онъ въполномъ удовольствіи жилъ, и окру-  
жёнъ радостями, умеръ. Діарбекирцы <sup>171</sup> вос-  
поминаюшъ объ немъ съ <sup>172</sup> сожалѣніемъ; от-  
цы и мачери <sup>173</sup> сшавашъ его въ <sup>174</sup> примѣръ  
дѣтійъ своймъ.

Увы! какъ много потрѣбно знать, какъ  
долго надобно <sup>175</sup> изслѣдывать человѣка, дабы  
не <sup>176</sup> ошибиться и въ самой его добродѣтели!

*Benitzky.*



### L E S S O N III.

#### D o m e s t i c s c e n e .

Вчера́ послѣ ужина проспѣлся я съ <sup>1</sup> гостепрійнымъ <sup>2</sup> семействомъ, чтобъ выѣхать  
сего́дня на <sup>3</sup> разсвѣтъ; но шакъ <sup>4</sup> сладокъ и  
самой сонъ въ семъ дому, что я, шакже какъ

<sup>166</sup> overtake. <sup>167</sup> stole. <sup>168</sup> riches. <sup>169</sup> fate. <sup>170</sup> punished.  
<sup>171</sup> make mention. <sup>172</sup> regret. <sup>173</sup> set him up. <sup>174</sup> example.  
<sup>175</sup> to trace. <sup>176</sup> to be mistaken.

<sup>1</sup> hospitable. <sup>2</sup> family. <sup>3</sup> dawn. <sup>4</sup> delightful.

и <sup>5</sup> люди мой, проспáль до пятыи часóвъ. Вы <sup>6</sup> приворожíли менà къ себѣ конéчно, скáзаль я Г-ну Машiасу: мнѣ отсюда не выѣзжáшь, чùвствую, что <sup>7</sup> тайная сила душíй менà удерживаетъ. — Онъ <sup>8</sup> пожáль мою рóку и <sup>9</sup> повéль къ женѣ, котóрая по обыкновéнію своему встала еще до солнечнаго <sup>10</sup> восходéнія и сидѣла съ дѣшьмí. Я похвалилъ еé, что она <sup>11</sup> просыпáешся вмѣспѣ съ <sup>12</sup> птичками, но она <sup>13</sup> удивилась, слыша опь менà, что Москóвskія <sup>14</sup> красавицы не позволяють никогда ўтреннимъ лучамъ солнца <sup>15</sup> заглядывать въ ихъ спáльню и <sup>16</sup> превóжишь ихъ нѣжнаго <sup>17</sup> сна.

Мéжду шѣмъ пòдали чай; мы сѣли всѣ <sup>18</sup> кружкомъ подъ открытое окнó; аромáпы <sup>19</sup> травъ мѣшались съ ароматами чаю; свѣжій ўтренний воздухъ <sup>20</sup> прохлаждалъ насъ; предъ нами цвѣтки <sup>21</sup> спрѣхивали съ себѧ <sup>22</sup> блестящія <sup>23</sup> жемчужины; листочки шихо <sup>24</sup> шевелились; птички <sup>25</sup> пѣли; <sup>26</sup> вдалі шумѣло мóре; къ намъ опь минùпы до минùпы прилепа́ль <sup>27</sup> вѣтерокъ, прикасался съ нѣжностью къ <sup>28</sup> свѣжему лицу госпожи Машiась (котóрое дѣла-

---

<sup>5</sup> servants. <sup>6</sup> enchanted. <sup>7</sup> secret. <sup>8</sup> pressed. <sup>9</sup> led. <sup>10</sup> sunrise. <sup>11</sup> wakes. <sup>12</sup> birds. <sup>13</sup> was surprised. <sup>14</sup> fair ones. <sup>15</sup> to peep. <sup>16</sup> to disturb. <sup>17</sup> slumber. <sup>18</sup> around. <sup>19</sup> herbs. <sup>20</sup> refreshed. <sup>21</sup> shook. <sup>22</sup> glittering. <sup>23</sup> pearly drops. <sup>24</sup> trembled. <sup>25</sup> sang. <sup>26</sup> at a distance. <sup>27</sup> zephyr. <sup>28</sup> fresh.

лось отъ того свѣжѣе и пріятнѣе), къ чёрнымъ волосамъ ея, къ лѣгкому <sup>29</sup> покрываалу груди. — Мы пили чай съ отмѣннымъ вкусомъ и дышали <sup>30</sup> сладостпю утра.

Какое утро! сказаъ <sup>31</sup> вѣжный Машасъ со <sup>32</sup> вздохомъ (и сей вздохъ по флегматическому характеру душѣ его следуешь у него всегда и за <sup>33</sup> движеніемъ радости и за движеніемъ <sup>34</sup> горести).

Какое прекрасное утро! сказала съ чувствомъ нѣжнала его <sup>35</sup> супруга.

Какъ весело лешають птички! <sup>36</sup> воскликнули дѣти съ <sup>37</sup> улыбкою.

Какое трогательное <sup>38</sup> согласіе сердца! новшориль я за всѣми: какое сладкое чѣвство! какое <sup>39</sup> невинное счастье! мы жалуемся на <sup>40</sup> несовершенство человѣческое, продолжаъ я съ нѣкошорымъ <sup>41</sup> жаромъ: мы <sup>42</sup> сѣтуемъ на судьбу, мы <sup>43</sup> обвиняемъ небо; но скажите, не дало ли намъ Природа все, что только нужно для спокойствія и радости — тихія убѣжища, землю <sup>44</sup> укрощенную зеленою и цветами, милыхъ дѣшѣй, пріятность <sup>45</sup> симѣстvenной жизни, и сверхъ тога сѣрдце

<sup>29</sup> veil. <sup>30</sup> sweetness. <sup>31</sup> stately. <sup>32</sup> a sigh. <sup>33</sup> emotion. <sup>34</sup> sorrow. <sup>35</sup> partner. <sup>36</sup> exclaimed. <sup>37</sup> a smile. <sup>38</sup> accord. <sup>39</sup> innocent. <sup>40</sup> imperfection. <sup>41</sup> fervour. <sup>42</sup> repine. <sup>43</sup> accuse. <sup>44</sup> ornamented. <sup>45</sup> domesies.

доброе, чувствительное, нѣжное? Чего <sup>46</sup> недостаѣть для наслажденія чувствъ и для <sup>47</sup> занятий мысли? Ахъ! если человѣкъ недоволенъ судьбою своєю, то это ошибка того, чѣмъ <sup>48</sup> искусственной порядокъ общества <sup>49</sup> разстроилъ порядокъ душѣ и природы! Хозяинъ и хозяйка взглянули на менѧ съ <sup>50</sup> прѣгательнымъ взоромъ, котрой <sup>51</sup> изяснилъ мнѣ ихъ чѣвство.

Едвѣ ли могъ я принудить себѣ сказать имъ: просишише. *Izmailoff.*



## LESSON IV.

### GIBRALTAR.

Не видавъ нѣсколько дней кромѣ нѣба и земли съ удовольствиемъ смотрю на тѣ Геркулесовы <sup>1</sup> столпы, котрорыми <sup>2</sup> означался <sup>3</sup> предѣль дреvняго міра. Высокая <sup>4</sup> утесистая <sup>5</sup> скала Гибралтара, кажется падаешь на корабль мой, и подобно какъ все великое и сильное <sup>6</sup> обращаешь на себѣ вниманіе. На <sup>7</sup> вершинѣ ся въ <sup>8</sup> поднебесной высотѣ,

---

<sup>46</sup> still wanting. <sup>47</sup> occupation. <sup>48</sup> artificial. <sup>49</sup> has destroyed. <sup>50</sup> full of feeling. <sup>51</sup> told.

<sup>1</sup> pillars. <sup>2</sup> marked. <sup>3</sup> boundary. <sup>4</sup> steep. <sup>5</sup> rock. <sup>6</sup> attracts. <sup>7</sup> summit. <sup>8</sup> towering.

відень телеграфъ, а при ономъ домикъ,  
 9 мелькающій между 10 проходящихъ облаковъ;  
 къ съверу 11 пологій зеленый берегъ Андалузіи  
 юзкимъ песчанымъ 12 перешейкомъ едва ка-  
 сается гранішной 13 громадѣ Гибралтара;  
 обширная 14 бухта въ 15 окружности около  
 бо верстъ, идеть отъ крѣпости на западъ,  
 16 загибаясь въ 17 правильномъ 18 полукругѣ,  
 открытомъ къ Африканскому берегу. По на-  
 бережной сего 19 залива, видно множество  
 селеній, 20 крѣпостей и городовъ; только  
 на 21 пушечный выстрѣль отъ Гибралтара  
 одна за одною лежать 22 испанская крѣ-  
 пости *Санъ Филиппа* и *Санъ Рока*; прямо  
 пропивъ ихъ виденъ Алжезірасъ. Къ Съверу  
 вдали 23 синюючи горы Андалузіи, къ Югу  
 же берегъ Африки 24 украшаются 25 огромными  
 горами. Абила, высочайшая изъ нихъ, со-  
 спавляясь второю 26 столпъ Геркулесовыхъ  
 воротъ. Цейша, Испанская крѣпость, лежа-  
 щая на Варварийскомъ берегу, такъ сказашь  
 27 спережеши Гибралтаръ.

---

9 just visible. 10 passing. 11 sloping. 12 neck of land.  
 13 mass. 14 bay. 15 circumference. 16 bending. 17 regular.  
 18 semicircle. 19 gulph. 20 fortresses. 21 cannon. 22 Spa-  
 nish. 23 appear. 24 is ornamented. 25 vast. 26 pillar 27 se-  
 ems to guard.

Нѣсколько ўзкихъ, <sup>28</sup> кривыхъ <sup>29</sup> улицъ со-  
ставляють небольшой городокъ, шолстая  
<sup>30</sup> стѣна съ юга, запада и сѣвера <sup>31</sup> закрываєтъ  
его такъ, что ни съ моря, ни отъ Испан-  
скихъ крѣпостей его не <sup>32</sup> видно. Домы вновь  
<sup>33</sup> построенные на Англійскій <sup>34</sup> вкусъ, дѣла-  
ють совершенную <sup>35</sup> противуположность съ  
<sup>36</sup> старыми Испанскими архитекшуръ, кошо-  
рыхъ <sup>37</sup> плоскія <sup>38</sup> крыши и <sup>39</sup> четвероуголь-  
ные <sup>40</sup> башенки, какъ по дѣкуму, <sup>41</sup> унылому  
положенію, такъ и великимъ жарамъ, здѣсь  
бывающимъ, болѣе <sup>42</sup> приличествующъ и кли-  
мату и мѣсту, нѣжели <sup>43</sup> веселые, красивые  
Англійскіе домики. Два дни <sup>44</sup> бродили мы по  
горѣ, <sup>45</sup> взбирались къ облакамъ, <sup>46</sup> спускались  
въ <sup>47</sup> пропасти и лазили по <sup>48</sup> крутизnamъ.  
<sup>49</sup> Неприступность Гибралтара съ перваго  
взгляда <sup>50</sup> очевидна; по точномъ же изслѣдо-  
ваніи укрѣпленія его непреодолимы. Пред-  
ставьте себѣ гранитную гору, которой сѣ-  
верная и восточная стороны <sup>51</sup> совершенно  
<sup>52</sup> отвесны, западная и южная хошь не такъ  
высоки, но также <sup>53</sup> круты. Море при <sup>54</sup> по-

<sup>28</sup> crooked. <sup>29</sup> streets. <sup>30</sup> wall. <sup>31</sup> covers. <sup>32</sup> seen. <sup>33</sup> rebuilt.  
<sup>34</sup> taste. <sup>35</sup> contrast. <sup>36</sup> antique. <sup>37</sup> flat. <sup>38</sup> roofs. <sup>39</sup> qua-  
drangular. <sup>40</sup> towers. <sup>41</sup> dreary. <sup>42</sup> adapted. <sup>43</sup> cheerful.  
<sup>44</sup> wandered. <sup>45</sup> climbed up. <sup>46</sup> descended. <sup>47</sup> abyss. <sup>48</sup> pre-  
cipices. <sup>49</sup> the impregnability. <sup>50</sup> evident. <sup>51</sup> entirely <sup>52</sup> per-  
pendicular. <sup>53</sup> steep. <sup>54</sup> foot.

дошвѣ горы съ двухъ споронъ усѣяно подводными <sup>55</sup> камнями; волны, <sup>56</sup> разбиваясь объ нихъ производятъ <sup>57</sup> бурунъ, <sup>58</sup> препяшшу-ющій <sup>59</sup> приставасть <sup>60</sup> шлюпкамъ. Новая мола, <sup>61</sup> единственное мѣсто, гдѣ можно <sup>62</sup> высадить войска, какъ и вся западная спорона покрыта башарѣями.

<sup>63</sup> Укрепленія на съверной споронѣ <sup>64</sup> за-служивають осѣбенное <sup>65</sup> вниманіе. Въ не-сколькихъ <sup>66</sup> шагахъ отъ упѣса построены <sup>67</sup> правильный <sup>78</sup> валъ, со рвомъ и равелиномъ, <sup>49</sup> занимающій всю небольшую ширину пе-решейка, ко торый въ пѣкоторомъ <sup>70</sup> раз-сторони отъ гласиса <sup>71</sup> перерѣтъ каналомъ со <sup>72</sup> шлюзами, помоющію коихъ въ слу чаѣ <sup>73</sup> осады, все пространство до Испанскихъ линій <sup>74</sup> наводнѧется. Отсюда по лѣстницѣ, глубоко <sup>75</sup> выстѣченной въ <sup>76</sup> обрывистой горѣ, взошедшѣ на высоту 200 <sup>77</sup> сажень, чрезъ дверь вошли мы въ главныя галлерѣи, изсѣчен-ныя въ <sup>78</sup> упрѣбѣ каменной горы. Каждый

55 rocks. 56 surf. 57 surf. 58 preventing. 59 to approach. 60 boats. 61 the only. 62 land. 63 fortifications. 64 are deserving. 65 attention. 66 paces. 67 regular. 68 rampart. 69 occupying. 70 distance. 71 cut. 72 sluice. 73 siege. 74 inundated. 75 cut out. 76 rocky. 77 fathom. 78 bowels.

каземáтъ имѣетъ 48 или 24 фунтовую  
 79 пùшку и просторно помѣстить мòжеть  
 80 солдáтъ. 81 Толстота 82 наружной спéны  
 имѣетъ около 4 сажень; амбразуры, въ ней  
 проби́тыя, слùжатъ вмѣстѣ для свѣта и для  
 83 сообщенія воздуха. Позади каземата, дàлje  
 внутрь горы высъченъ 84 пороховый погребъ;  
 а възль кóмнаты, гдѣ лежатъ всѣ 85 снаряды  
 для одной пушки. Обошёдъ нѣсколько кóм-  
 напъ, я дùмалъ, что должны бùдемъ по прéж-  
 ней 86 опасной лѣснице 87 спускаться внизъ;  
 но насъ повелъ вверхъ и мы вошли во вторую  
 галлерéю подобную пёрвой. Осмотрѣвъ юную,  
 ещё при рàза мы должны были 88 подымáться.  
 88 Переходы сiи 89 освѣщаюшся небольши-  
 ми въ горѣ проби́тыми окнами. 90 Пробывъ  
 нѣсколько врёмени во 91 внутиности горы,  
 на высотѣ 300 или 400 сажень 92 излазивъ  
 всѣ галлерéи и переходы, наконéцъ 93 ушавъ до  
 94 чрезмèрности вышли на 95 вершину, от-  
 кùда городъ, рейдъ, Испанскія линіи 96 предста-  
 вились какъ на 97 чертежѣ. И здѣсь на 98 ужá-  
 сной высотѣ на самомъ 99 краю горы, откùда

79 a cannon. 80 the thickness. 81 external. 82 communication. 83 powder - magazine. 84 apparatus. 85 dangerous. 86 descend. 87 ascend. 88 passage. 89 lighted. 90 having remained. 91 the interior. 92 having climbed through. 93 fatigued. 94 excess. 95 summit. 96 appeared. 97 drawing. 98 tremendous. 99 edge.

безъ <sup>100</sup> замирянія се́рдца смотрѣть внизъ не  
возмѣжно, <sup>101</sup> постѣвлены тяжѣлые <sup>102</sup> орудія,  
а позади ихъ морширы. Со спороны <sup>103</sup> Сре-  
дизѣмнаго моря, на углу скалы, природа  
<sup>104</sup> образовала родъ <sup>105</sup> круглой колонны, ко-  
торую называють <sup>106</sup> гѣртова башня. Невоз-  
мѣжно кажется <sup>107</sup> изчислить сколько <sup>108</sup> иждивенія,  
трудовъ и времени стоили сїи гал-  
лерѣи; въ нихъ ни <sup>109</sup> ядра, ни бомбы не  
могушъ <sup>110</sup> причинить никакого <sup>111</sup> вреда гар-  
нizonу, а какъ нельзя <sup>112</sup> предполагать, чтобы  
мѣжно было <sup>113</sup> подкопашь, и <sup>114</sup> обрушить  
каменную гору вышиню болѣе версты; то  
посему Гибралтаръ <sup>115</sup> единственная въ свѣ-  
тѣ крѣпость, где 5000 солдатъ, имѣя ну-  
жные <sup>116</sup> запасы, могушъ <sup>117</sup> пропивусшашъ  
100,000 <sup>118</sup> осаждавшихъ.

*Bronefsky.*

---

<sup>100</sup> shuddering. <sup>101</sup> are placed. <sup>102</sup> guns. <sup>103</sup> Medi-  
terranean. <sup>104</sup> has formed. <sup>105</sup> circular. <sup>106</sup> the devil's  
tower. <sup>107</sup> to calculate. <sup>108</sup> expence. <sup>109</sup> cannon ball. <sup>110</sup>  
cause. <sup>111</sup> injury. <sup>112</sup> suppose. <sup>113</sup> undermine <sup>114</sup> blow-  
up. <sup>115</sup> unique. <sup>116</sup> ammunition. <sup>117</sup> hold out against-  
<sup>118</sup> besiegers.



## LESSON V.

(St. P E T E R S B U R G .

Вчера́шній день по упту , сидя у окна моего съ Винкельманомъ въ рукѣ , я <sup>1</sup> предался <sup>2</sup> сладостному <sup>3</sup> мечтанію , въ котроромъ тебѣ не могу дать <sup>4</sup> отчѣта ; книга и читаное мню было <sup>5</sup> совершенно забыто . <sup>6</sup> Помню только , что взглянувъ на Неву , покрытую <sup>7</sup> судами , взглянувъ на <sup>8</sup> великолѣпную <sup>9</sup> набережную , на котрорую <sup>10</sup> благодаря <sup>11</sup> привычкѣ , житель Петербургскіе смотрѣть <sup>12</sup> холоднымъ окомъ , — любясь <sup>13</sup> безчисленными народаами , котрорый <sup>14</sup> волновался подъ моими окнами , симъ <sup>15</sup> чудеснымъ <sup>16</sup> смѣшніемъ всѣхъ <sup>17</sup> націй , въ котроромъ я отличаюсь Англичанъ и <sup>18</sup> Азиатцевъ , Французовъ и Калмыковъ , Русскихъ и Финновъ , я сдѣлалъ себѣ следующій <sup>19</sup> вопросъ : что было на этомъ мѣстѣ <sup>20</sup> до построенія Петербурга ? Може быть <sup>21</sup> сосновая роща , сырой <sup>22</sup> дремучій <sup>23</sup> боръ или <sup>24</sup> шокое болото , <sup>25</sup> поросшее <sup>26</sup> мхомъ

<sup>1</sup> gave myself up. <sup>2</sup> delightful. <sup>3</sup> reverie. <sup>4</sup> account. <sup>5</sup> entirely. <sup>6</sup> I remember. <sup>7</sup> vessels. <sup>8</sup> grand. <sup>9</sup> quay. <sup>10</sup> thanks. <sup>11</sup> habit. <sup>12</sup> cold, indifferent. <sup>13</sup> innumerable. <sup>14</sup> moved. <sup>15</sup> surprising. <sup>16</sup> mixture, assemblage. <sup>17</sup> nations. <sup>18</sup> Asiatic. <sup>19</sup> question. <sup>20</sup> before. <sup>21</sup> the building. <sup>22</sup> fir. <sup>23</sup> gloomy. <sup>24</sup> marshy. <sup>25</sup> over-grown. <sup>26</sup> moss.

и <sup>27</sup> бруси́кою ; — ближе къ бéрегу — <sup>28</sup> ла-  
чùга <sup>29</sup> рыбакà , кругомъ котòрой <sup>30</sup> развѣ-  
шены были мерéжи , <sup>31</sup> нéвода и весь <sup>32</sup> гру-  
бый снарядъ <sup>33</sup> скùднаго <sup>34</sup> прóмысла . Сюда ,  
можетъ бытъ , съ прудомъ <sup>35</sup> пробирался  
<sup>36</sup> охóшникъ , какòй нибудь <sup>37</sup> длинновлáсый  
Финъ.....

Здѣсь все было <sup>38</sup> безмòлвно . Редко чело-  
вèческій гóлосъ <sup>39</sup> пробуждалъ молчáніе <sup>40</sup> пустыни дíкой , мрачной ; а нынѣ ? Я взгли-  
нуль невольно на Троицкій <sup>41</sup> мостъ , по-  
томъ на <sup>42</sup> хìжину Великаго Монарха , и  
<sup>43</sup> воображёніе моé <sup>44</sup> представило мнѣ ПЕТРА ,  
котòрый въ первыи разъ <sup>45</sup> обозрёвàлъ берега  
дíкой Невы , нынѣ столь прекрасные ! — Изъ  
крéпости Ниисканцъ ещé <sup>46</sup> гремѣли <sup>47</sup> Швéдскія  
пùшки ; <sup>48</sup> ўстые Невы ещé было покрыто <sup>49</sup> не-  
прíятелемъ , и чàстые ружéйные <sup>50</sup> выстрѣлы  
<sup>51</sup> раздавались по <sup>52</sup> болóтнымъ берегамъ , когда  
великая мысль родилась въ умѣ великаго чело-  
вèка ! здѣсь бùдепь гòродъ , сказаль онъ , <sup>53</sup> чùдо  
свёта . Сюда призову всѣ <sup>54</sup> Художества , всѣ  
Искùства . Здѣсь Художества , Искусства , <sup>55</sup> гра-

---

<sup>27</sup> cranberries. <sup>28</sup> hut. <sup>29</sup> fisherman. <sup>30</sup> hung up. <sup>31</sup> nets.  
<sup>32</sup> coarse. <sup>33</sup> poor. <sup>34</sup> trade. <sup>35</sup> made his way through. <sup>36</sup> huntsman. <sup>37</sup> long-haired. <sup>38</sup> silent. <sup>39</sup> awaked. <sup>40</sup> wild, desert.  
<sup>41</sup> bridge. <sup>42</sup> cottage. <sup>43</sup> imagination. <sup>44</sup> represented. <sup>45</sup> ex-  
plored. <sup>46</sup> thundered. <sup>47</sup> Swedish. <sup>48</sup> mouth. <sup>49</sup> the enemy.  
<sup>50</sup> firing. <sup>51</sup> resounded. <sup>52</sup> boggy. <sup>53</sup> wonder. <sup>54</sup> arts. <sup>55</sup> civil.

жданскія <sup>56</sup> установленія и законы <sup>57</sup> побѣдить сїмую природу. Сказа́ль и Петербургъ <sup>58</sup> возникъ изъ дикаго болота.

Съ какимъ <sup>59</sup> удовольствиемъ я вообража́ль себѣ Монарха, <sup>60</sup> обозрѣвающаго начальныя рабо́ты: здѣсь валь крѣпости, тамъ магазины, фабрики, адмиралтейство. Въ ожиданіи <sup>61</sup> обѣдни въ <sup>62</sup> праздничный день или въ день <sup>63</sup> торжества побѣды, Государь часіо сиживалъ на новомъ валѣ съ планомъ города въ рукахъ, пропи́въ <sup>64</sup> крѣпостныхъ воротъ, <sup>65</sup> украшенныхъ <sup>66</sup> изваяніемъ Апостола Петра, изъ <sup>67</sup> гру́баго дерева. Именемъ <sup>68</sup> Святаго долженъ быль называемъся городъ, и на <sup>69</sup> жестяной доскѣ, прибитой подъ его изваяніемъ, изображался славный въ <sup>70</sup> лѣтописяхъ міра 1703 годъ. На ближнемъ баспіонѣ <sup>71</sup> развѣвался жёлтый флагъ съ большімъ <sup>72</sup> чёрнымъ <sup>73</sup> орломъ, кото́рый <sup>74</sup> заключалъ въ <sup>75</sup> когтихъ свойхъ четыре моля, <sup>76</sup> подвлашные Россіи. Здѣсь <sup>77</sup> толпились вокругъ Монарха <sup>78</sup> иностранные <sup>79</sup> корабельщики, <sup>80</sup> матро́сы, Художники, Учёные, <sup>81</sup> Полководцы, Воины; межъ ними, <sup>82</sup> про-

56 institutions. 57 will conquer. 58 arose. 59 pleasure. 60 examining. 61 liturgy. holyday. 63 celebration. 64 of the fortress. 65 ornamented. 66. sculpture. 67 rude. 68 the Saint. 69 tin. 70 annals. 71 floated. 72 black. 73 eagle. 74 held. 75 claws. 76 subject. 77 crowded. 78 foreign. 79 ship-builders. 80 sailors. 81 gennerals 82 common.

стый<sup>83</sup> рождениемъ, великий умомъ; <sup>84</sup> любимецъ Царскій Менщиковъ, великодушный Долгорукій, храбрый и <sup>85</sup> дѣятельный Шереметьевъ и вся фаланга иродевъ, которые <sup>86</sup> создали съ Петромъ <sup>87</sup> величие Русскаго Царства.

*Batushkov.*



## L E S S O N VI.

### THE FIRST ENGLISH IN RUSSIA.

Іоанново <sup>1</sup> царствование <sup>2</sup> ознаменовалось <sup>3</sup> тѣснымъ <sup>4</sup> союзомъ Россіи съ одною изъ <sup>5</sup> знаменитѣйшихъ <sup>6</sup> державъ Европейскихъ, которая была <sup>7</sup> въ еї политическаго горизонта, <sup>8</sup> едва <sup>9</sup> знала объ ней по <sup>10</sup> слуху. Вдругъ сей <sup>11</sup> предпріимчивый народъ <sup>12</sup> нашелъ <sup>13</sup> доспупъ къ самымъ <sup>14</sup> отдаленнымъ, всѣхъ менѣе известнымъ странамъ Государства Іоаннова, чтобы съ великою <sup>15</sup> выгодою для себѣ дать намъ новыя средства <sup>16</sup> обогащенія, новые <sup>17</sup> способы <sup>18</sup> гражданскаго

---

83 birth. 84 the favourite. 85 active. 86 created. 87 the grandeur.

1 reign. 2 was distinguished. 3 close. 4 alliance 5 the most eminent. 6 power. 7 beyond. 8 scarcely. 9 knew. 10 report. 11 enterprizing. 12 found. 13 access. 14 remote. 15 advantage. 16 acquirement of riches. 17 means. 18 civil.

<sup>19</sup> образованія. Еще Англія не былá тогдá <sup>20</sup> первостепéнною <sup>21</sup> морскóю держáвою, но ужé <sup>22</sup> спремíлась къ сей <sup>23</sup> цéли, <sup>24</sup> соревнùя Испánіи, Португáлліи, Венéціи и Гéнуѣ; хошëла <sup>25</sup> проложить путь въ Китáй, въ Индію <sup>26</sup> Ледовítымъ мóремъ, и весною въ 1553 годù, въ цárствованіе юнаго Эдуáрда VI, послáла три кораблѝ въ Океанъ Сéверный.

<sup>27</sup> Начáльниками ихъ бýли Гугъ Вíллоби и Капишáнь Чéнселеръ. <sup>28</sup> Разлучéнные <sup>29</sup> бùрею, сíй кораблѝ ужé не моглѝ <sup>30</sup> соединítться; два изъ нихъ <sup>31</sup> погибли у берегóвъ Россíйской Лаплáндíи, въ <sup>32</sup> прìстани Арцинѣ, гдë Гугъ Вíллоби <sup>33</sup> замёрзъ со всéми людьмíи свойми: зимóю, въ 1554 годù, <sup>34</sup> рыбаки Лаплáндскíе <sup>35</sup> нашли егó <sup>36</sup> мёртваго, сидящаго въ <sup>37</sup> ша-лашѣ за своймъ Журналомъ. Но Капишáнь Чéнселеръ <sup>38</sup> благополúчно <sup>39</sup> доплылъ до Бéлаго мóря; <sup>40</sup> Августа, 1553 года, <sup>40</sup> вошёль въ Дvинскíй <sup>41</sup> заливъ и пристáль къ бéрегу, гдë былъ тогдá <sup>42</sup> монастырь С. Николáя, и гдë посль основанъ гóродъ Архáнгельскъ.

Англичáне увидéли людéй, <sup>43</sup> изумлéнныхъ

<sup>19</sup> refinement. <sup>20</sup> first-rate. <sup>21</sup> maritime. <sup>22</sup> made rapid strides. <sup>23</sup> end. <sup>24</sup> rivalling. <sup>25</sup> to open. <sup>26</sup> frozen. <sup>27</sup> commander. <sup>28</sup> dispersed. <sup>29</sup> a storm. <sup>30</sup> join company. <sup>31</sup> were lost. <sup>32</sup> bay. <sup>33</sup> was frozen. <sup>34</sup> fishermen. <sup>35</sup> found. <sup>36</sup> dead. <sup>37</sup> hut. <sup>38</sup> safely. <sup>39</sup> arrived. <sup>40</sup> entered. <sup>41</sup> gulf. <sup>42</sup> monastery. <sup>43</sup> amazed.

44 явленіемъ большаго корабля; 45 сведали отъ нихъ, что сей берегъ есть Россійскій; сказали, что имѣюшь отъ Короля Англійскаго письмо къ Царю и 46 желаяшь 47 завесить съ нами 48 торговлю. Давъ имъ 49 съѣстные припасы, начальники Двінской земли 50 немедленно отправили 51 гонца къ Іоанну, который топчасъ понялъ 52 важность сего случая, 53 благопріятнаго для успѣховъ нашей торговли, 54 велѣль Ченселеру бысть въ 55 Москвѣ и доставилъ ему всѣ 56 возможныя 57 удобности въ пушкѣ.

Ченселеръ подаль слѣдующую 58 грамоту Эдуардову, писанную на 59 разныхъ языкахъ ко всѣмъ 60 Сѣвернымъ и 61 Восточнымъ 62 Государямъ:

« Эдуардъ V вамъ, Царю, Князю, 63 властители, 64 суди земли, во всѣхъ странахъ подъ солнцемъ, желаетъ 65 мира, 66 спокойствія и чести, вамъ и странамъ вашимъ! Господь 67 Всемогущій даровалъ человѣку сердце 68 дружелюбное, да 69 благоворитъ ближнимъ и

44 appearance. 45 they learned. 46 they wish. 47 to establish. 48 commerce. 49 provisions. 50 immediately. 51 messenger. 52 importance. 53 propitious. 54 ordered. 55 Moscow. 56 possible. 57 facilities. 58 epistle. 59 various. 60 northern. 61 eastern. 62 sovereigns. 63 governors. 64 judges. 65 peace. 66 tranquillity 67 Almighty. 68 friendly. 69 to do good.

въ осо́бенносши 7º спрáнникамъ , котóрые ,  
пріѣзжая къ намъ изъ мѣсши 7¹ отдалéнныхъ ,  
ясно 7² доказывающъ шѣмъ 7³ превосхóдную  
любовь свою къ 7⁴ брашскому 7⁵ общежищю .  
Такъ думали ощи наши , всегда 7⁶ госпе-  
пріймные , всегда 7⁷ ла́сковые къ 7⁸ инозéмцамъ ,  
шрёбующимъ 7⁹ покровищельства .

Всѣ люди имѣють право на госпепрійм-  
ство , но еще болѣе 8º купцы , презирая 8¹ опа-  
сности и труды , оставляя за собою моря  
и 8² пустыни , для того , чтобы 8³ благосло-  
вленными 8⁴ плодами земли своéй 8⁵ обогатитьсь  
спрáны дальня и 8⁶ взаймно обогатитьсь  
ихъ 8⁷ произведениями : ибо 8⁸ Господь 8⁹ все-  
лённый 9⁰ разсѧль дары Его 9¹ благости ,  
чтобы народы имѣли 9² нужду другъ въ другъ , и  
чтобы взаймными 9³ услугами 9⁴ утверждалась  
9⁵ пріязнь ме́жду людьми .

Съ симъ 9⁶ намѣренiemъ нѣкоторые изъ на-  
шихъ 9⁷ подданныхъ 9⁸ предпріяли дальнее 9⁹ пу-  
щешествие моремъ , и 10⁰ требовали отъ насъ

7º strangers. 7¹ distant. 7² they prove. 7³ exceeding. 7⁴ brotherly. 7⁵ community. 7⁶ hospitable. 7⁷ kind. 7⁸ foreigners 7⁹ protection. 8º merchants. 8¹ dangers. 8² deserts. 8³ blessed. 8⁴ fruits. 8⁵ to enrich. 8⁶ mutually. 8⁷ productions. 8⁸ the Lord. 8⁹ universe. 9⁰ has scattered. 9¹ bounty. 9² need. 9³ services. 9⁴ establish. 9⁵ good-will. 9⁶ intention. 9⁷ subjects. 9⁸ have undertaken. 9⁹ a voyage. 10⁰ solicited.

<sup>101</sup> соглásія. Исполняя желáніе ихъ, мы позвóлили  
мùжу <sup>102</sup> достóйному, Гùгу Вíллоби, и то-  
вáрищамъ егó, нашими вѣрнымъ слугамъ, Ѳхать  
въ спрáны, <sup>103</sup> донынъ <sup>104</sup> неизвѣстныя, и  
мѣняться съ ними избыткомъ; братъ, чего  
не имѣемъ, и давáшь, чѣмъ <sup>105</sup> изобилуемъ,  
для обойдной пользы и дружесства.

И такъ <sup>106</sup> мόлимъ васъ, Царі, <sup>107</sup> Князъ  
и властишели, чтобы вы <sup>108</sup> свободно про-  
пуштили сихъ людéй чрезъ свой зéмли: ѹбо  
они не <sup>109</sup> коснùтся ничегó безъ вáшего до-  
зволéнія. Не<sup>110</sup> забудьте <sup>111</sup> человѣчества, <sup>112</sup> ве-  
ликодùшио <sup>113</sup> помогише имъ въ нùждѣ, и прій-  
мите отъ нихъ, чѣмъ мόгущъ <sup>114</sup> вознаградить  
васъ.

<sup>115</sup> Поступиша съ ними, какъ хотиша,  
чтобы мы поступили съ вáшими <sup>116</sup> слугами  
если они когда-нибудь къ намъ забѣдятъ. А мы  
<sup>117</sup> клянёмся Бóгомъ, Гóсподомъ всего <sup>118</sup> сù-  
щаго на небесахъ, на землѣ и въ морѣ, кля-  
нёмся жїзню и <sup>119</sup> благомъ нашего <sup>120</sup> Цáр-  
ства, что всякаго изъ вáшихъ пóдданныхъ  
встрѣчимъ какъ <sup>121</sup> единоплеменника и друга,

<sup>101</sup> permission. <sup>102</sup> worthy. <sup>103</sup> hitherto. <sup>104</sup> unknown.  
<sup>105</sup> we abound. <sup>106</sup> we pray. <sup>107</sup> Princes. <sup>108</sup> freely. <sup>109</sup> will  
not touch. <sup>110</sup> forget. <sup>111</sup> humanity. <sup>112</sup> magnanimously.  
<sup>113</sup> assist. <sup>114</sup> recompense. <sup>115</sup> deal. <sup>116</sup> servants. <sup>117</sup> swear.  
<sup>118</sup> which exists. <sup>119</sup> the welfare. <sup>120</sup> kingdom. <sup>121</sup> fellow-

изъ <sup>122</sup> благодáрности за любóвь, котóрую окá-  
жеше нашимъ. За симъ мóлимъ Бóга <sup>123</sup> Все-  
держителя, да сподóбишъ вась земнáго <sup>124</sup> дол-  
голéтія и <sup>125</sup> мýра <sup>126</sup> вéчнаго. <sup>127</sup> Данó въ Лóн-  
донѣ, нашей <sup>128</sup> сполицѣ, въ лéто отъ <sup>129</sup> со-  
творéнія мýра 5517 , <sup>130</sup> Цáрствованія нашего  
въ 7мoe.

---

countryman. 122 gratitude. 123. Almighty. 124 length of days. 125 peace. 126 eternal. 127 given. 128 capital. 129 the creation. 130 reign.



---

## ИЗБРАННЫЯ СТИХОТВОРЕНІЯ.

### О се́ль и Соловей.

*Басня.*

Осéль уви́дѣлъ соловья ,  
И говори́шь емù : « послùшай-ко , дружьше !  
Ты , скáзываюшь , пѣши велїкій масперьше :  
Желáль бы очень я  
Самъ посуди́шь , твоé послушавъ пѣнье ,  
Велїко ли въ шебѣ умѣнье . »

Тушь соловéй являшь своé иску́шво сашь :  
Защóлкаль , засвисшáль ,  
На ты́сячу ладóвъ , шянùль , переливался ;  
То нѣжно онъ ослабъвалъ ,  
И шóмной въ далекъ свирѣлью отдавался ;  
То мѣлкой дробью вдругъ по рóщѣ разсыпался .  
Внимáло все шогдá  
Любимцу и пѣвцù Аврóры ,  
Зашихли вѣшеркѝ , замолкли птичекъ хóры ,  
И прилеглѝ спадá .  
Чушь — чушь дышá пастшùхъ имъ любовался ,  
И только иногда  
Внимáя соловью , пастшукъ улыбался .



## READING LESSONS IN VERSE.

### THE ASS AND THE NIGHTINGALE.

#### *A fable.*

An ass a nightingale espied,  
And shouted out, « Holla! holla! good friend,  
« Thou art a first rate singer they pretend:—  
Now let me hear thee, that I may decide;  
I really wish to know—the world is partial ever—  
If thou hast this great gift, and art indeed so clever:»

The nightingale began her heavenly lays;  
Through all the regions of sweet music ranging,  
Varying her song a thousand different ways;  
Rising and falling, lingering ever changing:  
Full of wild rapture now — then sinking oft  
To almost silence—melancholy, soft  
As distant shepherds pipe at evening's close:—  
Filling the wood with lovelier music; — there  
All nature seems to listen and repose:  
No zephyr dares disturb the tranquil air:—  
All other voices of the grove are still,  
And the charmed flocks lay down beside the rill.

The shepherd like a statue stands—afraid.  
His breathing may disturb the melody,

Скончáль пъвéцъ, и ждалъ себѣ хвалы попóмъ.  
 « Изрѧдно, говорѝшъ осéль, сказа́шь не лóжно,  
     Тебя безъ скùки слùшать мóжно,  
     А жаль что не знакóмъ  
         Ты съ нашимъ пътухóмъ!  
     Ещéбъ шы больше навострился,  
     Когдá бы у него немнóжко поучìлся.»  
     Услыша судъ шакóй, мой бéдный соловéй  
     Вспорхнùлъ— и полетéлъ за прýдевяшь полéй,  
     Избáви Богъ и нась ошь эдакихъ судéй!

*Крыловъ.*



His finger pointing to the harmonious tree,  
 Seems to say, « Listen! » to his favourite maid.  
 The singer ceased : — and to the critic bow'd,  
 Who cock'd his ears and bray'd aloud : —

« Now that's so so;—thou really hast some merit,  
 Curtail thy song and critics then may hear it ,  
 Thy voice wants sharpness:— but if chanticleer  
 Would give thee a few lessons , doubtless he  
 Might raise thy voice and modulate thy ear ;  
 And thou in spite of all thy faults may' st be  
 A very decent singer. » —

The poor bird

In silent modesty the critic heard ,  
 And winged her peaceful flight into the air ,  
 O'er many and many a field and forest fair.  
 Many such critics you and I have seen.  
 Heaven be our screen !

*Translated by Bowring.*



## Б о г а ч ь и Б ъ д н я к ь .

## Б а с н я .

Сей свѣшъ шаковъ, что кшо богашъ,  
 Топъ каждому и другъ, и братъ.  
 Хошъ не имѣй заслугъ, ни чина,  
 Хошъ рдомъ будь изъ конюховъ,  
 Дѣпина будешь, какъ дѣпина.  
 А бѣдный, будь хошъ изъ Князей,  
 Хошъ разумъ Ангельскій имѣй,  
 И всѣ достоинства достойнѣйшихъ людѣй,  
 Того почшенья не дождешься,  
 Какое опо всѣхъ богашымъ отдаѣтся.  
 Бѣднякъ въ какои-то домъ пришель;  
 Онъ знаене, умъ и чинъ съ заслугами имѣль;  
 Но бѣдняка никшо не шолькочпо не всшрѣшиль,  
 Никшо и не примѣшиль,  
 Иль можешъ бысть, никшо примѣшишь не хотѣль.  
 Бѣднякъ нашъ то къ шому, шо къ этому подходишъ,  
 Со всѣми разговоръ и такъ и сякъ заводишъ,  
 Но каждый бѣдняку въ отвѣппъ:  
 Короткое иль да, иль нѣпъ.  
 Привѣспвія ни въ комъ бѣднякъ нашъ не находишъ.  
 Попомъ  
 За бѣднякомъ  
 Богачъ прїехалъ въ шопъ же домъ.  
 Хопя заслугой, ни умомъ  
 Ни чиномъ онъ не отличался,

## R I C H A N D P O O R.

*A Fable.*

So goes the world; — if wealthy you may call  
*This friend, that brother;* - friends and brothers all :  
 Though you are worthless—witless, never mind it;  
 You may have been a stable-boy—what then ?  
 'Tis wealth, good Sir, makes honourable men.  
 You seek respect, no doubt, and you will find it.

But if your poor, heaven help you! though your sire  
 Had Royal blood within him, and though you  
 Possess the intellect of angels too ,  
 'Tis all in vain; — the world will ne'er enquire  
 On such a score: — why should it take the pains?  
 'Tis easier to weigh purses, sure, than brains.

I once saw a poor devil, keen and clever,  
 Witty and wise: — he paid a man a visit,  
 And no one noticed him, and no one ever  
 Gave him a welcome. «Strange,» cried I, «whence  
 is it?»

He walked on this side, then on that,  
 He tried to introduce a social chat;  
 Now here, now there, — in vain he tried;  
 Some formally and freezingly replied,  
 And some

Но шόлько въ двéри показáлся,  
 Сказáшь нельзѧ какóй прíемъ!  
 Всѣ вспáли пéредъ богачéмъ,  
**Всякъ** богачá съ почтéниемъ встрѣчáешъ,  
 Всякъ спуль и мѣсто уступаешьъ;  
 И подъ рукì его берùшъ;  
 То шупъ,  
 То шамъ его сажаюшъ;  
 Поклóны чутъ ему земные не кладùшъ,  
 И мѣры нѣшъ какъ величáютъ.  
 Бѣднàкъ, людéй увídя лестъ,  
 Къ богáшому непráву чеспъ,  
 Къ себѣ непráвое презрèніе,  
 Вступиль о томъ съ своймъ сосёдомъ въ разсуждéніе.  
 — Зачѣмъ, онъ говориши ему ;  
 Достóинствамъ, умъ,  
 Богáшество свѣшъ предпочишаешь ? —  
 « Легкó мой другъ поняшъ :  
 « Достóинства нельзѧ заняшъ,  
 « А дényги всàкой занимаешь. »

*Хемницеръ.*



Said by their silence — «Better stay at home».

A rich man burst the door,  
As Crœsus rich I'm sure,  
He could not pride himself upon his wit.  
Nor wisdom — for he had not got a bit:  
He had what's better — he had wealth.  
What a confusion! all stand up erect —  
These crowd around to ask him of his health ;  
These bow in humble duty and respect ;  
And these arrange a sofa or a chair ,  
And these conduct him there.

« Allow me , Sir, the honour; » — then a bow  
Down to the earth — Is't possible to show  
Meet gratitude for such kind condescension ?

The poor man hung his head ,  
And to himself he said ,  
« This is indeed beyond my comprehension »  
Then looking round  
One friendly face he found ,  
And said — « Pray tell me why is wealth preferr'd  
To wisdom? » — « That's a silly question , friend? »  
Replied the other — « have you never heard ,  
A man may lend his store  
Of gold or silver ore ,  
But wisdom none can borrow , none can lend? »

*Translated by Bowring.*



## К л а д б и щ е.

*Одýнъ голóсъ.*

Си́прашно въ могилѣ , хлáдной и шéмной ! —  
 Вѣшры шамъ вёюшь , грóбы шрясùшся , ,  
 Бѣлыя кóспи стучáшь .

*Друго́й голóсъ.*

Тíхо въ могилѣ , мàгкой , покòйной !  
 Вѣшры шамъ вёюшь , спàщимъ прохлáдно ,  
 Травки , цвѣшочки расшùшь .

*Первóй.*

Червь кровоглáвый тóчишь умérшихъ ,  
 Въ чéрепахъ жéлтыхъ жáбы гнёздàшся ,  
 Змѣи въ кропивѣ шипáшь .

*Вторóй.*

Крѣпокъ сонъ мérтвыхъ , слáдоспенъ , крóшокъ ;  
 Въ грóбѣ нѣшь бùри ; нѣжныя пшички  
 Пѣснь на могилѣ поюшь .

*Первóй.*

Тамъ обишáютъ чéрные вра́ны ,  
 Алчныя пшицы ; хѝщные звѣри  
 Съ рéвомъ копаюшь въ землѣ .

*Вторóй.*

Мáленькой крóликъ въ трáвкѣ зелéной  
 Съ мìлой подрùжкой шамъ отдыхáешь ,  
 Гóлубь на вѣшочкѣ спишь .

## THE CHURCH-YARD.

*First voice.*

How frightful the grave ! how deserted and drear!  
 With the howls of the storm-wind the creaks of the bier  
     And the white bones all clattering together !

*Second voice.*

How peaceful the grave ! its quiet how deep:  
 Its zephyrs breathe calmly, and soft is its sleep,  
     And flow'rets perfume it with ether.

*First voice.*

There riots the blood-crested worm on the dead,  
 And the yellow scull serves the foul toad for a bed,  
     And snakes in its nettle-weeds hiss.

*Second voice.*

How lovely , how sweet the repose of the tomb :  
 No tempests are there:—but the nightingales come  
     And chant their sweet chorus of bliss.

*First voice.*

The ravens of night flap ther wings o'er the grave:—  
 'Tis the vulture's abode:— tis the wolf's dreary cave  
     Where they tear up. the dead with their fangs.

*Second voice.*

There the coney at evening disports with his love,  
 Or rests on the sod; — while the turtles above ,  
     Repose on the bough that o'erhangs.

( 160 )

*Пéрвой.*

Сырость со мглою, густо мешаясь,  
Плавають тамо въ воздухъ душномъ;  
Древо безъ листьевъ стойшъ.

*Второ́й.*

Тамо спруи́шся въ воздухъ свѣшломъ  
Паръ благовонный синихъ фialокъ,  
Бѣлыхъ ясминовъ, лилѣй.

*Пéрвой.*

Спра́нникъ бойтся мѣртвой юдѣли;  
Ужасъ и трепетъ чувствуетъ въ сѣрдцѣ,  
Мимо кладбища спѣшишъ.

*Второ́й.*

Спра́нникъ успалый видитъ обитель  
Вѣчнаго мѣра — посохъ бросаешь,  
Тамъ осваѣшся навѣкъ.

*Карамзинъ.*



*First voice.*

Foul darkness and dampness with poisonous breath,  
 And loathsome decay fill the dwelling of death,  
 The trees are all barren and bare !

*Second voice.*

O soft are the breezes that play round the tomb.  
 And sweet with the violet's wasted perfume ,  
 With lilies and jessamine fair.

*First voice.*

The pilgrim who reaches this valley of tears  
 Would fain hurry by, and with trembling and fears,  
 He is launched on the wreck-covered river !

*Second voice.*

The traveller outworn with life's pilgrimage dreary  
 Lays down his rude staff, like one that is weary,  
 And sweetly reposes for ever.

*Translated by Bowring.*



## Н а р о д н а я П ъ с н я.

Пóверхъ дùбчика  
 Два голùбчика  
 Цѣловáлися ,  
 Миловáлися ,  
 Сìзы крыльями  
 Обнимáлися ;  
 Вдругъ напáль на нихъ  
 Младъ ясéнь сокóль ,  
 Онъ какъ разъ убíль  
 Сìза гóлубя ,  
 Сìза гóлубя ,  
 Мохнонóгова ,  
 Прóлиль кровь егó  
 По сырù дубù ,  
 Разметпàлъ перья  
 По чистù полю ,  
 И развѣялъ пухъ  
 По поднéбесью .  
 Ахъ расплáкалась ,  
 Разрыдалася  
 Тушь голùбушка  
 По голùбчикъ —  
 Ты не плачь , не плачь  
 Нéжна птàшечка !  
 Младъ ясéнь сокóль

## A NATIONAL SONG.

On an oak there sate  
 A turtle with his mate —  
 There in amorous meeting  
 One another greeting,  
 Each with flapping wing  
 All its joy repeating.  
 Swift a vulture sprung,  
 Eagle - eyed and young,  
 And he bore away  
 That poor turtle grey —  
 That poor turtle gray,  
 With his ruby feet,  
 On the oak-tree wood  
 Spilt the turtle's blood:  
 All the plumage soft  
 O'er the meadow driven;  
 All his down aloft  
 Borne by winds of heaven.  
 O! how desolate  
 Sat the mourning mate;  
 How she moan'd and sigh'd  
 While her turtle died.  
 'Weep not why complain,  
 Little turtle, love ?  
 Said the vulture then

Ей возговарилъ :  
 Я изъ-за моря  
 Изъ - за синяго  
 Пригоню къ тебѣ  
 Голубе́й спадо ;  
 Выбирай себѣ  
 Лучша голубя ,  
 Чиста , сизова ,  
 Мхоногова . —  
 Не лепій злодѣй  
 За синѣ море !  
 Говориши ему  
 Бѣдна пшашечка :  
 Не гони ко мнѣ  
 Голубе́й спадо ;  
 Охъ ! ушшиши ли  
 Меня голубь твой ,  
 Милымъ дѣлушкамъ  
 Не родной отецъ ?



To the widow'd dove,  
 O'er the azure sea,  
 I will bring to thee  
 Flocks of turtles, where  
 Thou shalt choose thy dear,  
 Choose thy lover sweet,  
 Choose the brightest best,  
 With a fair gray breast  
 And with ruby feet. »  
 « Fly not murderous bird!  
 O'er the azure sea  
 Thus the dove was heard  
 Answering mournfully :  
 Bring no flocks to me  
 O'er the azure sea ;  
 Can their presence be  
 Comfort to my breast ?  
 Will they bring to me  
 The father of my nest ?



## Д о б р а я н о ч ь.

« Просп̄й , просп̄й , мой край родн̄й ,  
 Ужь скрылся ты въ волнахъ !  
 Косатка вѣтшася , вѣтръ ночн̄й  
 Играешь въ парусахъ .  
 Ужь шонушъ огненны лучи  
 Въ бездѣнной синевѣ ,  
 Мой край родн̄й , просп̄й , просп̄й !  
 Ночь добрая тебѣ .

« Проснѣтся день , его краса  
 Утѣшишь Божій свѣтъ ,  
 Увижу море , небеса ;  
 А родины ужь нѣтъ .  
 Отцовскій домъ покинулъ я ,  
 Травої онъ заростѣтъ ,  
 Собака вѣрная моя  
 Выть станетъ у воротъ .

« Ко мнѣ , ко мнѣ , пажъ юный мой !  
 Но ты дрожишь какъ листъ ;  
 Иль спрашено ревъ волны морской ?  
 Иль вѣтра буйный свистъ ?  
 Не плачь ! корабль мой новъ ! плыву  
 Ужь я не въ первый разъ ,  
 И быстрый соколь на лешу  
 Не перегонитъ насъ .»

## G O O D N I G H T.

« Adieu, adieu ! my native shore  
 Fades o'er the waters blue ,  
 The night-winds sigh , the breakers roar ,  
 And shrieks the wild seamew.  
 Yon sun that sets upon the sea  
 We follow in his flight ;  
 Farewell awhile to him and thee ,  
 My native land — good night !

« A few short hours and he will rise .  
 To give the morrow birth ;  
 And I shall hail the main and skies ,  
 But not my mother earth .  
 Deserted is my own good hall ,  
 Its hearth is desolate ,  
 Wild weeds are gathering on the wall ;  
 My dog howls at the gate .

« Come hither, hither, my little page !  
 Why dost thou weep and wail ?  
 Or dost thou dread the billow's rage ,  
 Or tremble at the gale ?  
 But dash the tear - drop from thine eye ;  
 Our ship is swift and strong :  
 Our fleetest falcon scarce can fly  
 More merrily along .»

— Не буйный вѣтръ спрашішъ менѧ,  
 Не шумъ угрюмыхъ волнъ,  
 Но не дивись, Сиръ Чейльдъ, что я  
 Тоскѣ сердечной полнъ,  
 Прощáться грустно было мнѣ  
 Съ родимою, съ ощѣмъ.  
 Теперъ надѣжды всѣ въ тебѣ  
 И въ комъ-то не земномъ.

— Не скрылъ отѣцъ тоскѣ своїй  
 Какъ спалъ благословляшь,  
 Но доля матери моей  
 День плакать, ночь неспасть. —  
 Ты правъ, ты правъ, мой Пажъ младой,  
 Какъ смѣшъ винить тебѧ?  
 Съ твоей невѣнной прошошой,  
 Ахъ! плакаль бы и я.

« Но вотъ, и кормщикъ мой сидитъ  
 Весь полонъ чёрныхъ думъ.  
 Иль буйный вѣтръ тебѧ спрашитъ,  
 Иль моря грозный шумъ? »  
 — Сиръ Чейльдъ! не робокъ я душой,  
 Не умереть боюсь:  
 Но я съ дѣтми, но я съ женой  
 Въ первые разсашаюсь!

— Проснутся завтра, на зарѣ,  
 И дѣши и женѣ,

“ Let winds be shrill , let waves roll high ,  
 I fear not wave nor wind  
 Yet marvel not , Sir Childe , that I  
 Am sorrowful in mind ;  
 For I have from my father gone ,  
 A mother whom I love ,  
 And have no friend , save these alone ,  
 But thee — and one above .

“ My father blessed me fervently ,  
 Yet did not much complain ;  
 But sorely will my mother sigh  
 Till I come back again . » —  
 « Enough , enough , my little lad !  
 Such tears become thine eye ;  
 If I thy guileless bosom had  
 Mine own would not be dry .

“ Come hither , hither my staunch yeoman ,  
 Why dost thou look so pale ?  
 Or dost thou dread a French foeman ?  
 “ Or shiver at the gale ? » —  
 « Deem’st thou I tremble for my life ?  
 Sir Childe I’m not so weak ;  
 But thinking on an absent wife  
 Will blanch a faithful cheek .

“ My spouse and boys dwell near thy hall ,  
 Along the bordering lake ,

Малю́пки спросятъ обо мнѣ  
И всплачется она!  
« Ты правъ, ты правъ! и какъ пеялъ,  
Мой добрый удалѣцъ;  
Тебѣ, другъ, можно горевашъ!  
И мужъ ты и отпѣцъ!

« Но я! ахъ тру́дно вѣришь мнѣ  
Слезамъ прелестныхъ глазъ!  
Любовью новою онъ  
Осушатся безъ насы!  
Лишь тѣмъ однімъ терзаюсь я,  
Не въ силахъ то забыть,  
Что нѣсть на свѣтѣ у менѣ,  
О комъ бы потужить! —

« И вспѣ на тѣмныхъ я волнахъ  
Одінъ, одінъ съ тоской,  
И кто же, кто по мнѣ въ слезахъ  
Теперъ въ странѣ родной!  
Чтожъ рвашся мнѣ, жалѣть кого?  
Я сердцемъ опустѣль,  
И безъ надѣждъ и безъ всего,  
Что помнить я хотѣлъ!

« О мой корабль! съ тобою я радъ  
Носиться по волнамъ!  
Лишь не плыви со мной назадъ  
Къ родимымъ берегамъ!

And when they on their father call,  
 What answer shall she make? » —  
 « Enough, enough, my yeoman good,  
 Thy grief let none gainsay;  
 But I, who am of lighter mood,  
 Will laugh to flee away.

« For who would trust the seeming sighs  
 Of wife or paramour?  
 Fresh feres will dry the bright blue eyes  
 We late saw streaming o'er.  
 For pleasures past I do not grieve,  
 Nor perils gathering near;  
 My greatest grief is that I leave  
 Nothing that claims a tear.

« And now I'm in the world alone,  
 Upon the wide, wide sea:  
 But why should I for others groan,  
 When none will sigh for me?  
 Perchance my dog will whine in vain,  
 Till fed by stranger hands;  
 But long e'er I come back again,  
 He'd tear me where he stands.

« With thee my bark, I'll swiftly go  
 Athwart the foaming brine;  
 Nor care what land thou bear'st me to,  
 So not again to mine.

\*\*

Далéко на скалáхъ , въ степíй  
 Пріюшь сыщù себѣ :  
 А ты , о рóдина , прости !  
 Ночь дóбрая тебѣ !

Перевель И. Козловъ.



### Пустынникъ.

#### *Баллада.*

« Веди меня пустыни жищель !  
 Святой Анахорéпъ !  
 Близка желанная обищель ;  
 Привѣтный вижу свѣпъ !

« Успа́ль я : пьма кругомъ густая ;  
 Запа́ль въ глущи мой слѣдъ ;  
 Безбрéжий , мнишся , степь пушая ,  
 Чемъ да́лъ я въ перёдъ .

— Мой сынъ ! (въ отвѣтъ пустыни жищель)  
 Ты призракомъ прельщенъ ;  
 Опасенъ твой путеводищель —  
 Надъ бездной свѣшишъ онъ !

— Здѣсь чадамъ нищешы бездомныи  
 Ошвёрста дверь моя ,  
 И скудныхъ благъ удѣломъ скромныи  
 Дѣлюсь ошь сърдца я .

Welcome, welcome, ye dark-blue waves !  
 And when you fail my sight,  
 Welcome ye deserts, and ye caves ?  
 My native land—Good Night ! »

*Byron.*



#### THE HERMIT.

*A ballad.*

- « Turn, gentle hermit of the dale,
- « And guide my lonely way,
- « To where yon taper cheers the vale
- « With hospitable ray.
  
- « For here, forlorn and sad I tread,
- « With fainting steps and slow;
- « Where wilds immeasurably spread,
- « Seem lengthening as I go. »
  
- « Forbear, my son, » the hermit cries,
- « To tempt the dangerous gloom;
- « For yonder faithless phantom flies
- « To lure thee to thy doom.
  
- « Here to the houseless child of want,
- « My door is open still;
- « And tho my portion be but scant,
- « I give it with good will.

— Войді въ господріймну кѣлью ;  
 Мой сынъ, передъ шобої  
 И брашно съ жесшкою посшелью  
 И сладкій мой покой !

— Есть стадо .... но безвѣнныхъ кроўю  
 Рукі я не багрѣль ;  
 Меня Творецъ своєй любовью  
 Щадиши ихъ научильтъ.

— Обѣдь снимаю непорочный  
 Съ пригорковъ и полеи ;  
 Древа даютъ — плоды мнѣ сочны ;  
 А питіе — ручей.

— Войдіжъ въ мой домъ — забоить шамъ чужды !  
 Нѣшъ блага въ суешъ !  
 Намъ малья даны здѣсь нужды ;  
 На мальный мигъ и шѣ.

Какъ свѣжая роса деннѣцы  
 Быль сладокъ сей привѣшъ ,  
 И робкій гость, склоня зѣнѣцы ,  
 Идесть за старцемъ въ слѣдъ .

Въ дичій глухой, непроходимой  
 Его тайлся кровъ ,  
 Пріютъ для сироты гонимой ,  
 Для странника покровъ .

- “ Then turn to-night, and freely share  
“ Whate'er my cell bestows;
  - “ My rushy couch, and frugal fare,  
“ My blessing and repose.
  - “ No flocks that range the valley free,  
“ To slaughter I condemn:
  - “ Taught by that Power that pities me,  
“ I learn to pity them.
  - “ But from the mountain's grassy side,  
“ A guiltless feast I bring;
  - “ A scrip with herbs and fruits supply'd,  
“ And water from the spring.
  - “ Then, pilgrim turn, thy cares fore-go;  
“ All earth-born cares are wrong:
  - “ Man wants but little here below,  
“ Nor wants that little long. »
- Soft as the dew from heav'n descends,  
His gentle accents fell;  
The modest stranger lowly bends,  
And follows to the cell.
- Far in a wilderness obscure  
The lonely mansion lay,  
A refuge to the neighbouring poor  
And strangers led astray.

Непышны въ хижинѣ убóры :  
 Тамъ бѣдность и покой ;  
 И скрыпнули дверей расшибóры  
 Предъ мѣрною чешо́й.

Ошéльникъ зришъ госшепріймной ,  
 Что гость его унылъ ,  
 И свѣшлый огонекъ онъ въ дымной  
 Печуркѣ разложилъ .

Плоды и зéлень предлагаеши  
 Съ приправой добрыхъ словъ ;  
 Бесѣдой скуку озлащаеши  
 Медлительныхъ часо́въ .

Кружитса рѣзвый кошъ предъ ними ,  
 Въ углу кричашъ сверчокъ ;  
 Трешишъ межъ листьями сухими  
 Блесшащи огонекъ .

Но молчаливъ пришлиецъ угрюмый ;  
 Печаль въ его черпакъ ;  
 Душа полна прискорбной думы ;  
 И слезы на глазахъ .

Ему пустынникъ ошвѣчаеши  
 Сердечною тоской :  
 — О юный спрѣнникъ , что смущаеши  
 Такъ рано швой докой ?

No stores beneath its humble thatch  
 Requir'd a master's care;  
 The wicket opening, with a latch,  
 Receiv'd the harmless pair.

And now, when busy crowds retire  
 To take their evening rest,  
 The hermit trimm'd his little fire,  
 And cheer'd his pensive guest;

And spread his vegetable store,  
 And gaily prest, and smil'd,  
 And skill'd in legendary lore,  
 The lingering hours beguil'd.

Around in sympathetic mirth  
 Its tricks the kitten tries;  
 The cricket chirrups in the hearth;  
 The crackling faggot flies.

But nothing could a charm impart  
 To sooth the stranger's woe;  
 For grief was heavy at his heart;  
 And tears began to flow.

His rising cares the hermit spy'd.  
 With answering care opprest:  
 « And whence, unhappy youth, » he cry'd,  
 « The sorrows of thy breast?

— Иль бысть убогимъ и бездомнымъ  
 Творецъ тебѣ судиль ?  
 Иль прѣданъ дрѹгомъ вѣроломнымъ?  
 Или вонюще любилъ?

— Увы ! спокой себя : презрѣны  
 Упѣхи благъ земныхъ !  
 А тошь , кто плачешь , ихъ лишенный ,  
 Ещѣ презрѣній ихъ.

Приманчивъ дружбы взоръ лукавой ;  
 Но ахъ ! какъ шѣнь , во слѣдъ  
 Она за счастіемъ , за славой ,  
 И прочь отъ хлѣдныхъ бѣдъ !

— Любовь . . . любовь прелестъ игрю !  
 Ошѣва сладкихъ словъ ;  
 Незрима въ мірѣ ; лишь порою  
 Живѣшь у голубковъ.

— Но , другъ , шы робостию спыдливой  
 Свой нѣжный полъ открылъ !  
 И очи спрѣнникъ торопливой ,  
 Краснѣя , опустѣй .

Краса сквозь лѣгкій проникаешь  
 Спыдливости покровъ ;  
 Такъ ўпро шихое сіяешь  
 Сквозь завѣсъ облаковъ .

- « From better habitations spurn'd,  
 « Reluctant dost thou rove;  
 « Or grieve for friendship unreturn'd,  
 « Or unregarded love?  
  
 « Alas ! the joys that fortune brings,  
 « Are trifling and decay;  
 « And those who prize the paltry things,  
 « More trifling still than they.  
  
 « And what is friendship but a name,  
 « A charm that lulls to sleep;  
 « A shade that follows wealth or fame,  
 « But leaves the wretch to weep?  
  
 « And love is still an emptier sound,  
 « The modern fair one's jest:  
 « On earth unseen, or only found,  
 « To warm the turtle's nest.  
  
 « For shame, fond youth, thy sorrows hush,  
 « And spurn the sex, » he said:  
 But while he spoke, a rising blush  
 His love-lorn guest betray'd.  
  
 Surpriz'd, he sees new beauties rise  
 Swift mantling to the view,  
 Like colours o'er the morning skies,  
 As bright, as transient too.

Трепéщутъ пéрси : взоръ склонéнnyй;

Какъ рóза , цвéтъ ланипъ....

И дéву — прéлеспь изумлénnyй

Ошéльникъ въ гóспѣ зрипъ.

« Просшишь ли , сhарецъ , дерзивéнье ,  
Что рóбкою спопо́й

Вошлá въ швоé уединéнье ,

Гдѣ Богъ оди́нъ съ шобо́й !

• Любóвь надéждъ мойхъ губíшель ,  
Мойхъ винóвникъ бéдъ ;

Ищù покóя , но мучíшель

Тоскá за мнóю въ слéдъ .

• Отéцъ мой знáшноштю , слáвой  
И пышноштю гремéль ;

Я дней его былá забáвой ;

Онъ все во мнé имéль .

« И рýцари спеклись шолпою :

Мнé предлагáли въ дарь ,

Тъ чистый , сходный съ ихъ душою ,

А шъ пришвóрный жаръ .

• И кáждый лéсшю вéролóмной

Привлéчь менè мечшáль....

Но въ ихъ шолпè Эдвíнъ быль скрóмной ;

Эдвíнъ , любя , молчáль .

The bashful look, the rising breast,  
 Alternate spread alarms;  
 The lovely stranger stands confest  
 A maid in all her charms.

And « ah ! forgive a stranger rude  
 « A wretch forlorn, » she cry'd,  
 « Whose feet unhallow'd thus intrude  
 « Where heaven and you reside.

« But let a maid thy pity share,  
 « Whom love has taught to stray ;  
 « Who seeks for rest, but finds despair  
 « Companion of her way.

« My father lived beside the Tyne,  
 « A wealthy lord was he ;  
 « And all his wealth was mark'd as mine,  
 « He had but only me.

« To win me from his tender arms,  
 « Unnumber'd suitors came ;  
 « Who praised me for imputed charms ,  
 « And felt or feign'd a flame.

« Each hour a mercenary crowd  
 « With richest proffers strove :  
 « Among the rest young Edwin bow'd,  
 « But never talked of love.

Ему съ смиренной нищешою  
 Судьба одно дала :  
 Пленишь высокою душою —  
 И та моей была.

« Роза на розе, цветшь душесшой  
 Фиалки полевой,  
 Едва сравнишься могущь съ чистой  
 Эдиновой душой.

« Но цветшь, съ небесною росою  
 Живущь единый мигъ :  
 Онъ одаренъ быль ихъ красою,  
 Я легкостю ихъ.

• Я гордой, хладною казалась ;  
 Но милъ онъ въ шайнѣ быль ;  
 Увы ! любя, я восхищалась ,  
 Когда онъ слезы лиль.

« Несчастный ! онъ не снесъ презренья !  
 Въ пустынью онъ помчалъ ,  
 Свою любовь, свой мученья —  
 И тамъ въ слезахъ увялъ !

« Но я виновна ! мнѣ страданье !  
 Мнѣ увидать въ слезахъ !  
 Мнѣ будь пустыня та изгнанье ,  
 Гдѣ скрышь Эдвицовъ прахъ ,

- In humblest simplest habit clad,  
  “ No wealth nor power had he ;
- Wisdom and worth were all he had,  
  “ But these were all to me.
  
- The blossom opening to the day  
  “ The dews of heaven refind ,
- Could nought of purity display,  
  “ To emulate his mind.
  
- The dew , the blossom on the tree ,  
  “ With charms inconstant shine ;
- There charms were his , but woe to me !  
  “ Their constancy was mine.
  
- For still I try'd each fickle art ,  
  “ Importunate and vain ;
- And, while his passion touched my heart ,  
  “ I triumph'd in his pain.
  
- Till quite dejected with my scorn ,  
  “ He left me to my pride ;
- And sought a solitude forlorn ,  
  “ In secret where he died.
  
- But mine the sorrow , mine the fault ,  
  “ And well my life shall pay ,
- I'll seek the solitude he sought ,  
  “ And stretch me where he lay. —

« Надъ шихою его могилой  
 Конецъ свой всиричу я!  
 И приношёнемъ шеши милой  
 Пусть будетъ жизнь моя ! »

— Мальвина ! — спарецъ восклицаешь  
 И паль къ ея ногамъ !  
 О чудо ? ихъ Эдвинъ лобзаетъ ;  
 Эдвинъ предъ нею самъ !

— Другъ незабвенный ! другъ единой !  
 Опять на вѣкъ я твой !  
 Полна душа моя Мальвиной !  
 И здѣсь дышалъ тобою !

— Забудь о прошломъ ! нѣшь разлуки !  
 Самъ Богъ вѣщаешь намъ :  
 Все въ жиыни , радости и муки  
 Ошнынѣ пополамъ !

— Ахъ ! будь и самый часъ кончины  
 Для двухъ сердечъ одинъ :  
 Да съ милой жизнью Мальвина  
 Угаснешь и Эдвинъ.

Перевель Жуковскій.







Clarkson Johnson  
9 March 1862

**Dr. E. C. RASK'S**

# **DANISH GRAMMAR**

**EDITED BY**

**THORL. GUDM. REPP.**

---

**SECOND EDITION.**

---

**COPENHAGEN.**

**PUBLISHED BY J. H. SCHULTZ.**

---

**1846.**

---

**PRINTED BY J. H. SCHULTZ,**  
**PRINTER TO THE KING AND TO THE UNIVERSITY.**

TO

HIS MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY

KING CHRISTIAN THE EIGHTH.

SIRE,

It is to YOUR ROYAL Munificence that the second edition of the work, now laid at YOUR MAJESTY'S feet, owes its appearance. For, the first edition being out of print, and a great demand existing for a second, still the publisher could not adequately remunerate the labors of an editor; so

that the task of editing would not, in all probability, have been undertaken, had not YOUR MAJESTY been graciously pleased to supply the means required for its accomplishment. The Editor therefore most humbly hopes, that YOUR MAJESTY will graciously receive the following most humble statement, in respect to his share in the edition now offered to the public.

The full title of the first edition runs as follows: "A Grammar of the Danish Language for the Use of Englishmen, together with extracts in prose and verse. By Erasmus Rask, Professor and Librarian in the University of Copenhagen, and member of several learned societies. Copenhagen. 1830." In reediting this work, it appeared to me, that two objects must steadily be kept in view viz. that it should be rendered really useful to Englishmen, by exhibiting to them the structure of the Danish language in a plain and intelligible form: and that at the same time, no material part of Professor Rask's system should be sacrificed; but every respect paid to the memory of the great linguist, in the reproduction of his work.

Fourteen Years have now elapsed since his death, and still but a very small part of the improvements proposed and advocated by him — improvements which he professedly adopted from Peter Syv and Höjsgaard — has met with general reception. Nevertheless his arguments made a great impression, and that impression is not as yet by any means entirely obliterated. Under these circumstances it appeared, that in point of usefulness it would scarcely be advisable simply to reprint the learned author's work without any modification whatever; and this seemed the more evident since even in the original edition, Professor Rask himself had sacrificed some part of his own system and e. g. reinstated the *aa*, which in his other works he had discarded, adopting instead Höjsgaards *å*. I could therefore devise no better plan for the accomplishment of the twofold object stated above, than to preserve indeed Professor Rask's system in all essentials unaltered; but at the same time point out by means of notes inserted partly in, and partly under the text, where he differed from the general usage. In some instances

he had in fact done this himself, so that I felt the more justified in adopting this plan, in a far greater number of places, where he had omitted to notice his deviation. The *ā* I have expunged from the alphabet, for in retaining it there, he appeared scarcely consistent with himself, since he did not make use of it in any other part of the book except in the last extract. The *Q* I reinstated, for although even his adversaries, e. g. Mr. Molbech, agree with him in considering it as superfluous and useless, it still is in general use.

The English I have corrected in many places, though perhaps not in every place where this might have been done. The consideration that Mr. B. Thorpe M. A. of Cambridge had read the proofs of the first edition, made me cautious in rejecting idioms and phrases, which although sometimes appearing to me not quite correct, had been allowed to remain by a Graduate of an English University and a distinguished scholar. I accordingly confined my corrections to passages where either some obscurity in the expression, or a manifest error seemed to render them necessary.

And thus I lay before YOUR MAJESTY that work of Professor Rask which it has been my humble endeavour, without impairing in any part, to render more practically useful.

Some learned men among the Danes have lately expressed a great deal of apprehension lest their language should gradually become extinct. If this fear be well founded, one way — perhaps the chief way — of retarding such a consummation, is in my humble opinion, to propagate the knowledge of it, by means of Grammars and Dictionaries, among the great nations who take the lead in the progress of civilization. As Professor Borring has done much, in the way of disseminating the knowledge of Danish among the French as well as of the French language amongst his countrymen, so I have humbly endeavoured, in various ways, not only to promote the knowledge of English in Denmark, but also the knowledge of Danish in England; and if these very humble efforts meet, in some degree, with YOUR ROYAL MAJESTY'S most August as well as most competent approbation, they will receive indeed, a high and satisfactory reward.

How scanty and unsatisfactory and uncertain is our knowledge of most of the languages spoken in the ancient world, from the Indus westward to the Atlantic, because so few of them were known to the Greeks and the Romans! And why? — If they had through Greek and Latin Grammars and Dictionaries preserved any memorial of themselves, they would not have utterly perished; or left their identity doubtful.

That it may please the Almighty to preserve YOUR MAJESTY, together with YOUR MAJESTY'S AUGUST CONSORT, in the continual enjoyment of Health, Prosperity and Peace, is the fervent prayer of,

**SIRE,**

**YOUR MAJESTY'S**

most devoted,

most obedient

and most humble servant

**THORLEIFR GUDMUNDSON REPP.**

Copenhagen the 3d December 1846.

## **THE AUTHORS PREFACE.**

---

*Nearly 30 years have now elapsed, since Capt. Fr. Schneider published his Danish Grammar for the use of Englishmen, during which time no other attempt has been made in English, to describe the structure of the Danish in a more satisfactory way, or to assist the English learner in acquiring a more accurate knowledge of this language; although it has been very considerably enriched and improved, and its Literature greatly enlarged and cultivated during this period. But even for the time when it was composed, Capt. Schneider's Grammar was a very imperfect one; for besides the general inaccuracy of the rules, the carelessness of the spelling and translation of the Danish words, and the utter tastelessness in the arrangement and appearance of the text, it is totally devoid of system. Still, if the language itself follows a system, as in fact every language may*

be supposed to do, or it could not be spoken by a whole nation, that system should appear in the Grammar, or the Grammar must be acknowledged to be deficient in the most material point, its chief object being to exhibit a view of the system of speech adopted by the nation. This system, however, is seldom so evident in any language, that there may not be formed many different ideas of it, and consequently many different plans may be laid down for a Grammar of one and the same language. That which I have here adopted is, for the greatest part the same as that of the Icelandic, as also of the Frisic and the Anglosaxon Grammars which I have published. The internal structure of all these, and indeed also of the other languages of the Gothic stock, appears to be nearly the same, though less evident in the Danish than in the ancient idioms; and it may afford an assistance to the learned inquirer, to find them all exhibited from the same point of view. But even to those who merely study the language, in order to be able to read a book in it, or to use it in conversation, it will be convenient to find a true and tolerably complete system of inflection and formation of words in the Grammar; for although the study may appear easier, if the Grammar offer merely some loose or detached remarks, together

with a variety of examples; yet this is merely concealing the difficulty, making the knowledge thus acquired deficient, and, consequently, the road much longer, as it obliges the learner by dint of long experience and use to deduce the rules himself, for which he vainly seeks in his Grammar.

As to the nature of this system, I am happy to find it agree so closely with that of Mr. John Grant in his Grammar of the English language. In order, however, not to write a large and crabbed volume on an easy and elegant tongue, I have carefully omitted reasoning about the system and the terms of Grammar. In the syntax, I fear, I have been rather too short, but this defect may easily be supplied in a new edition, should this first essay in any way be so happy as to meet with the encouragement of the public. Mr. Hansen of Christiania has published a separate treatise on this head of Danish Grammar. Perhaps also an explanation of the old poetical forms may be missed; in the notes however the reader will find the most remarkable difficulties of this description explained. In order to be short in the notes, I have sometimes marked the grammatical property of the words by a fraction, of which the numerator is intended to indicate the declension, or conjugation, and the denominator the class, or sub-

*division, to which the word belongs; e. g. 'Tjeneste (1)' signifies that the noun Tjeneste, service, follows the first declension, common class, or is, in every respect, inflected like Dame, lady, p. 18; likewise befaler (1)' signifies that the verb jeg befaler, I command, belongs to the first conjugation, first class, and is inflected like jeg elsker, I love, p. 40, and so on.*

*With regard to the Literature, this place is much too limited to speak of it to any purpose; we have now translations of many celebrated works of English and American authors, as: Shakespeare, Fielding, Sir Walter Scott, Cooper, Washington Irving &c. which may afford an easy and agreeable introduction to the Danish Literature; though translations in general are scarcely to be recommended to learners. Those who wish for a thorough knowledge of the Danish and Norwegian\*)*

---

*\*) Throughout the kingdom of Norway, the Danish language, though pronounced with a peculiar accent, is used to this day, in speaking and writing, in the pulpit and in public affairs of every description. Several natives, however, since the union with Sweden, seem to pride themselves particularly on calling it Norwegian, nor is it to be denied that, even before the celebrated Holberg, the Norwegians had an honorable share in cultivating and improving it; but that its whole present form originated in Denmark is an historical fact beyond dispute. From hence it was propagated to Norway, especially about the time of Luther's Reformation, when Literature*

*authors till 1814, may find sufficient information in Nyerup's & Kraft's dansk-norske Literaturlexicon. But a book which presents a view of the best authors, in the elegant branches of Literature, together with copious specimens of their writings, and with which every learner of Danish should be provided, is K. L. Rahbek's danske Læsebog eller Exempelsamling in 2 voll. 8<sup>vo</sup>.*

*It may be proper still to add the names of the most celebrated authors of Danish Grammars. The Rev. P. Syv wrote several works on this subject with great skill, and considerably improved the orthography, though his opponents strove very hard to defend the ſlu instead of v (e. g. haffue for have) and the diphthongs, ia, ie, ay, ey &c. Höjsgård discovered the true system of the ten vowels, and proposed the method of denoting them with single characters now again adopted by those who care to distinguish them. He also wrote a Grammar and a Syntax in separate volumes.*

*and learning were in a very low state, and almost totally extinct in that country, and the old Norse greatly corrupted and dissolved into rustic dialects or provincialisms. Hence no attempt was ever made to translate the holy Scriptures into Norse, nor any polemical pamphlet either for or against the catholic party published, nor any sermons or works of instruction & education compiled, nor any law promulgated in Norwegian after that time.*

Still more celebrated are Prof. J. Baden's Forelesninger over det danske Sprog, of which four editions have appeared. This was the first regular and complete Grammar of the Danish Language, and is still perhaps one of the best existing. Capt. Abrahamson wrote a very elaborate Danish Grammar for Germans, also of great merit; and Dickman a treatise on Orthography and a Grammar perhaps in rather too philosophical a style. Prof. S. N. J. Bloch published a Grammar for schools together with a treatise on Orthography, in which he differs from his predecessors, admitting the diphthongs and many mute vowels and consonants, but the second vol. of his Grammar, intended for the syntax never appeared. Prof. L. Nissen wrote another Grammar for schools, as also Prof. F. H. Guldberg. Besides these there were many smaller works published for schools, amongst which Thonboe's and Benzien's are the most remarkable: the former has been reprinted several times; of the latter a second edition has recently appeared; this being the last, and containing also a syntax, is perhaps the best of the smaller works.

Finally, I have to apologize much for my English stile, I ought not, perhaps, to have hazarded writing a book in this language, nor was it

*my intention to do so, when I began the work. The bookseller, who was the owner of Capt. Schneider's Grammar, merely wished me to prepare a new edition of that work, which I thought might be undertaken without great presumption; but I was soon convinced of the utter faultiness\*) of the Grammar, and consequently of the necessity of almost writing a new one; I went on however cheerfully mending the old work, until the bookseller, when the printing of the new edition was to begin, gave up the idea, thinking my alterations much too many and too hazarded or unnecessary. In order therefore not to lose the time and labor spent in preparing the most difficult part of the manuscript, I found myself obliged to look out for another bookseller, to undertake the publication, as a book of my own, leaving at the same time Capt. Schneider's work entirely out of sight, as far as could be done without rewriting the manuscript. If, after all these changes, the text of*

---

*\*) As the reader may demand a proof of this hard censure, I shall merely quote the first line, where the author states that there are 28 letters in the Danish alphabet, though the large table immediately following contains only 27. The pronunciation of the first letter, A, is thus described: "Like the broad A in all, wall." The truth is the very reverse, for the broad English A is a sound never given to this letter in Danish.*

*the book still reads tolerably well, the reader will, in great measure, be indebted for it to the able and learned translator of my Anglosaxon Grammar, Mr. B. Thorpe, who kindly undertook the tedious business of correcting one of the proofsheets throughout the volume.*

---

## PART I.

# ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. The Danish alphabet consists of twenty seven letters, viz.

FIGURE	N A M E	P O W E R
A, a, or Ȧ, Ȧ, a,	A,	Ah, a in <i>father, part, far.</i>
B, b, — Ȣ, Ȣ, b,	Bé,	Bey,* b.
C, c, — Ȧ, Ȧ, c,	Cé,	Cey, s and k, as in English.
D, d, — Ȫ, Ȫ, d,	Dé,	Dey, d hard; and th flat, as in <i>thus.</i>
E, e, — Ȧ, Ȧ, e,	E,	French é fermé & è ouvert.
F, f, — Ȧ, Ȧ, f,	Eff,	Eff, f.
G, g, — Ȧ, Ȧ, g,	Gé,	Ghey, g in <i>go, give.</i>
H, h, — Ȧ, Ȧ, h,	Haa,	Haw, h aspirated.
I, i, — Ȧ, Ȧ, i,	I,	Ee in <i>bee, i in bill.</i>
J, j, — Ȧ, Ȧ, j,	Jod,	Yoth, y consonanth.
K, k, — Ȧ, Ȧ, k,	Kaa,	Kàw, k.
L, l, — Ȧ, Ȧ, l,	El,	El, L
M, m, — Ȧ, Ȧ, m,	Em,	Em, m.
N, n, — Ȧ, Ȧ, n,	En,	En, n.

\* ) In the names of the letters the Danes pronounce é like the French é (with the acute accent), or like English ey in the word *they*. The former of these two columns gives the names of the letters with the Danish spelling: the latter gives the same names spelled in the English way, so as to lead the English learner to the right Danish pronunciation of these names.

ED.

FIGURE	NAME	POWER
<i>Danice Anglice</i>		
O, o, or Ø, ø,	O,	O,     o in <i>more, for.</i>
P, p, — Þ, þ,	Pé,	Pey,    p.
Q, q, — Ø, ø,	Ku,	Koo,    q.
R, r, — Æ, æ,	Er,	Er,     r.
S, s, — ß, ß,	Es,	Es,     s hard.
T, t, — Ð, ð,	Té,	Tey,    t.
U, u, — Û, û,	U,	Oo,    oo in <i>fool, u in full.</i>
V, v, — ß, ß,	Vé,	Vey,    v in <i>vein, w in howl.</i>
X, x, — Þ, Þ,	Ex,	Ex,     x hard.
Y, y, — Ý, ÿ,	Y,	U, <sup>b)</sup> in <i>pur, nul.</i>
Z, z, — ß, ß,	Zet,	Set,    z.
Æ, æ, — Æ, æ,	Ã,	Ai,     a in <i>sale, ai in said.</i>
Ø, ø, } — Ø, ø,	Ø,	Eu, (French) <i>fermé</i> in <i>peu.</i>
Ö, ö, } — Ø, ø,	Ö,	Eu, (French) <i>ouvert</i> in <i>veuve,</i> œu in <i>cœur, œuf.</i>

## 2. Remarks on the alphabet.

Dr. Rask omitted the Q, and declared it to be "not merely superfluous and useless, but even prejudicial to a faithful representation of the language, by obscuring the origin and affinity of words, e. g. *Kvinde*, woman," he said, "is derived from *Kone*, wife; *bekvem*, convenient, from *komme*, to come, (Fr. *venir*); *Kvartér*, a quarter of an hour, is also called *Kortér*; *Kvæst*, tuft, is originally the same word as *Kóst*, broom; and *kvæle*, suffocate, the same as the Engl. *kill*." And he added: "The Q is therefore justly rejected by the celebrated Grammarian P. Syv, as also by the learned Prof. S. N. J. Bloch in his *Danske Sproglære*, Odense 1817. It is however still used by some, but always followed by v, never by u in any Danish book, as: *Qvinde, bekvem, Qvarter, &c.*" [Christian Molbech in his Danish dictionary has also declared Q to be "properly speaking a superfluous letter, but retains it nevertheless; and as it is still used by almost every Danish author except Rask it is here introduced again into the alphabet. ED.]

Z, z, (Zet, pron. *sett*) has crept from the German orthography into a few words, which should be written by s, according to the true pronunciation, as: *Zobel,*

sable; *zire*, to adorn, better *Sobel, sire*. [Dr. Rask omitted z in the alphabet but I have reinstated it, since it is indispensable not only in the words enumerated in Mr. Molbechs dictionary, but also in a great many nouns proper. ED.]

Q, Z, and W are used in names of foreign origin, as are also the German vowels ä, ü (for æ, y); hut these characters ought not to be inserted in the alphabet, never occurring in any Danish word.

Dr. Rask inserted Å which always has been used by the Swedes, as the twenty fourth letter, in his alphabet and justified the adoption of this character by the following remarks: "Å has been, till the beginning of this century, commonly represented by aa, according to the old Lowgerman orthography, but å is found in ancient Danish and Norwegian manuscripts: it's reintroduction, proposed by the celebrated Danish Grammarians Höjsgård 1743, later by Schlegel, Baden, Nyerup, Schrejber, Thonboe &c. has, in the last decennium, been realized in about thirty separate books or pamphlets by Prof. A. Gamborg, Mr. H. J. Hansen, Mr. N. M. Petersen, also by the author of these pages, and several anonymous writers. At all events the sound is simple, and continually interchanging with other simple vowels, (a, æ, o), in the inflection and derivation of words, e. g. *tæller*, to count, in the past tense *talde* or *tälde*, counted; *gå*, to go, *Gang*, gait, *gængse*, current, common: from *Får*, sheep, is derived *Færøerne*, the Faroe Islands. So also in kindred dialects, as *Vingård*, vineyard; *Tdrc*, tear, Germ. *Zähre*; *Mdned*, month, Germ. Monath; *aben*, open &c. Whereas aa is sometimes long a, sometimes even to be read in two syllables as: *Haarlem*, *Aaron*, *Kanaan*, *Knud Daaast*, the name of a Danish Prince. As the learner however will find aa for å in most printed books hitherto published, we think it convenient to preserve that orthography in the succeeding pages".

Æ, like Å, represents a simple vowel sound, and must never be separated or resolved into ae, which make distinct syllables, e. g. *bejae* (be-ya-e), affirm.

Ø and Ö are commonly confounded, so that Ø is used for both sounds in books printed in the Gothic type Ö in those in the Roman character. The distinction pro-

posed by Hösgård, shall be adopted here, as it will greatly assist the student's memory in recollecting the genuine pronunciation. [In the above alphabet Ø and Ö have been counted for one letter. ED.]

### 3. Of Pronunciation.

The double sound of some of the letters may create some difficulty.

The open e is exactly like the æ, but usually short, as *Herre*, gentleman, like *værre*, worse. The é fermé, or close e, is very frequent in Danish, but not of frequent occurrence in English; still it is found in such words as: *their*, *vein*, *veil*, which have a different sound from: *there*, *vain*.

In analogy with this, the open o sounds exactly like the aa, but is generally short as, *Kaag*, boiling, like *Bog*, book. The close o is often used, where the English has the open one, as: *Brøder*, brother, &c. [The Danish close o is more close than the English and has a sound more nearly approaching to Walker's 2<sup>d</sup> o, in *move*. ED.]

E, O, I, U, Y have in general their close sound at the end of syllables, whether long or short, e. g. *tre*, three; *lé-ve*, live; *Ko*, cow; *troværdig*, credible; *fri*, free; *Skri-ve-ri*, (continual) writing; *synes*, seems; *yder-mére*, moreover. There are however some few exceptions, as: *Sté-det*, the place; *Bø-gen*, the book; *vi*, we; *gudelig*, religious (book), have the open sound, most of these because the consonant originally belonged to the preceding syllable.

For cases in which the syllable terminates in a consonant, scarcely any certain rule can be given, although the open sound is perhaps the more frequent, e. g. *trende*, three (to each); *Konge*, king; *vinde*, to gain; *Guld*, gold; *gylden*, golden; especially before *ng*, *nd*, *lg*, *ld*. But in *Ord*, a word; *Norden*, the North, the ó is long. *Med*,

with, *for*, *for*, have the open short sound; in *ved*, *dy*, the *e* is close, although it be short; and in *stor*, great, the *o* is close.

Sometimes *e*, *i*, *u* are doubled when long or close before a consonant in the same syllable; unfortunately this rule applies only to the cases, where the consonant following is *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, or *s*, e. g. *Pil*, arrow, but *heid* (never *hvid*) white; and not even regularly to all the cases mentioned, e. g. *Vin*, wine, but *min*, mine, the pronunciation in both cases being exactly alike (viz *veen*, *meen*). As soon as a vowel is added in the inflection of the words, the doubling ceases, as: *Pilen*, the arrow, *Pile*, arrows; *Vinen*, the wine, *Vine* wines. As there is little danger, that the reader should divide these *ee*, *ii*, *uu*, into distinct syllables, we shall preserve this orthography, though very imperfect, as the most common; and in cases necessary, where it is not used, assist the learner, by placing accents over the vowels, (') for the close or long sound and (') for the open or slender, as in French,

There are no diphthongs in Danish, but *aj*, *ej*, *oj*, *uj*, *øj*, even though written by some *ai*, *ei*, *øi*, *ui*, *øi*, are pronounced with the open sound of the vowels and a distinct *y* consonant following, never like *ai*, *ei* French *oi*, *ui*, or the like, e. g. *ej*, not, sounds like Engl. *eye* or *I*; *Konvoy*, a convoy, like the verb *to convoy*, &c. Perhaps however the *j* is a little softer after the vowels than at the beginning of words. Even after *g* and *k* it is soft, e. g. *begjére*, desire; *kjédelig*, tedious; like the Engl. *guardian*, *cure*, &c.

In like manner *av*, *ev*, *iv*, *ov*, *æv*, *øv* are pronounced as clear vowels followed sometimes by a distinct *v* consonant, sometimes by a *w*; the *v* also is softer after the vowels than at the beginning, e. g. *tav*, was silent; *Brev*, letter; *stiv*, stiff; *Tøv*, cable; *Ræv*, fox; *døv*, deaf. The sound of *w* is particularly observable, when another consonant follows, e. g. *taws*, silent; *Europa*, Europe;

*stivne*, to stiffen; *hovne*, to swell; *Hævn*, revenge; *søvnig*, sleepy, drowsy.

Like *j* & *v* some other consonants have also a softer sound after the vowels than before them, thus *d* sounds like *dh*, Anglosaxon and Icel. *ð*, or Engl. flat *th* in *bath*, when it concludes the word, or is placed between two vowels, also when doubled, as *låd*, lazy, sluggish; *Fader*, father; *vædde*, lay a wager, &c. After *l*, *n*, *r*, it is scarcely perceptible in the common pronunciation, except as a peculiar emphasis on the vowel preceding, [e. g. *Stald*, *stable* is pronounced *stall*; *Mand*, *man* pron. *man*; *Bord*, *table* pron. *boor* (where *oo* sounds as in *floor*). ED]

*G* in similar cases has also a softer sound, which was formerly written *gh*, e. g. *Sag*, cause, affair, concern; *tage*, take. Sometimes after *e*, *ø* it is pronounced like *j* (or Engl. *y* cons.), e. g. *eg* in *jeg*, I, sounds quite like *ej*, in *Vej*, way; and *ög* in *Dögn*, a day and night, like *øj* in *højne*, to heighten.

[*H* is not aspirated in Danish before *j* (in stead of which Molbech always writes *i*), or *v*, e. g. *Hjelp*, help, aid, pron. *yelp*; *Hvalfish*, whale, pron. *Valfish*; *hvid*, white, pron. *veeth*. ED.]

The English sounds of *j*, *ch*, *sh*, *th* sharp are entirely foreign to the Danish language.

#### 4. Of accentuation.

In Danish there are six accents (*Tonehold*) or modes of pronouncing the vowels, three long and three short, four of them are easy to understand and to apply, but examples of the other two are not easily found in other languages :

- |                |                   |                        |
|----------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| the long are:  | 1) the trailing   | as: <i>oh!</i>         |
|                | 2) the advancing  | — <i>oral.</i>         |
|                | 3) the abrupt     | — ( <i>pro-noun?</i> ) |
| the short are: | 1) the rolling    | — <i>worthy, love.</i> |
|                | 2) the running    | — <i>torrent.</i>      |
|                | 3) the rebounding | —                      |

The rebounding is the abrupt shortened, but it must be learned by oral instruction; they are both very frequent in Danish, and very difficult to foreigners.

The abrupt takes place in almost all long monosyllables as: *Bárn*, child; *Been*, bone; *Bi*, bee; *Blód*, blood; *Ur* (Uhr), watch; *sky*, shun; *Træ*, tree; *dø*, die.

The rebounding in many short monosyllables, terminating in consonants, especially *nd*, *ng*, *ld*, *lg*, *rg*. Ex. *kán*, can; *Kám*, comb; *hén*, away, up to; *slém*, bad; *Skind*, skin; *ónd*, evil; *ung*, young; *Hyld*, eldertree; *Bælg*, husk, bellows; *Sorg*, sorrow. But many others have the running accent, as: *han*, he; *rank*, slim, tall; *Ven*, friend.

The advancing (or obtuse) is usual in pronouncing long vowels in dissyllables or polysyllables, as: *bärnagtig*, childish; *benig*, bony; *more*, divert; *Fure*, furrow; *lyde*, obey; *taale*, endure; *være*, be; *føre*, carry; *Hjörne*, corner.

The running (or sharp) is usual with short and sharp vowels in dissyllables, especially before double consonants, as: *Klasse*, class; *hellig*, holy; *ikke*, not; *begge*, both; *Odde*, point of land; *Fusker*, bungler; *hyg-gelig*, comfortable; *tækkelig*, neat; *Børste*, a brush; *Smørrebrød*, bread and butter.

The trailing and the rolling occur but rarely; the former mostly in interjections and contracted monosyllables, as: *a!* ah! *o!* oh! *Fa'r*, father, *Mo'r*, mother; the latter especially when a short vowel is followed by *rd*, as: *myrde*, to murder; *værdig*, worthy; sometimes *ld* produces the same effect, but never *v* as in English.

As to the position or place of the accent (*Tone-fald-et*), the Danish also differs widely from the English. In words of northern origin, the first radical syllable usually bears the emphasis, as: *væsentlig*, essential; *Gjér-righed*, avarice; *týdelig*, evident; *betýdelig*, considerable; *Ubetýdelighed*, insignificance; *Réntekammeret*, the Danish

board of revenue, or the exchequer; but we also find: *agtværdig*, worthy of esteem; *retfærdig*, just; *København*, Copenhagen; *Bornholm*, *Kristianestad*, *Frideriksddl*, *Helsingør*, &c.

Words derived from the southern languages have often the stress on the last, as: *Karavæn*, caravan, *Bibliothekær*, librarian; *Karakter*, character; *Filosofi*, philosophy; *Religion*, religion; *Sekretær*, secretary; *Direktor*, director; *Natur*, nature; *Matematik*, mathematics, &c. When the french *e* mute is preserved in Danish, it never receives any emphasis, but sounds like short *e* at the end of Danish words, *en Terrasse*, a terrace, not *Terrassé*; *Artikel*, article &c. But usually it is thrown away entirely, though sometimes written according to a false orthography, serving merely to confound the learner, by disguising the true pronunciation.

### 5. Of the spelling.

There is a great dispute among the Danish orthographers about the manner of spelling foreign words. As the Italians write *tesauro*, the Spaniards *accion*, the French *caractère*, *monarque*, the English *Bachelor*, *author*, *analogy* &c. entirely disregarding the Greek and Roman usage, so it seems but just that the Danes should be at liberty, to spell such words in their own writings according to their own pronunciation. In fact Prof. Bloch in his Dan. Gram. has adopted *f* for *ph*, as *Filosof*, philosopher; and it is pretty common to write, *Monárk*, *Mekánikus*, *Maskine* &c. We shall adopt also the *t* for *th*, though less frequent, the *th* being very apt to mislead the English student, e. g. *Matemætiker*, Mathematician. It is very common also to write *k* for *c*, whenever it has this sound, and only preserve *c* where, according to it's name, it sounds like *s*, e. g. *Akademi*, *Specier*.

As to the division of words into syllables, the learner must observe, that *j* is always referred to the pre-

ceding vowel, which is in these cases constantly pronounced short and sharp, e. g. *Vej-e*, ways, not *Ve-je*. The other consonants are usually referred to the vowel following, when single; or divided between the preceding and succeeding vowel, when more than one, no care being taken to distinguish the radical parts from the accessories, except in compound words, e. g. *Dage*, days, from *Dag*, day, but *for-ud-si-ge*, foretell from *for-ud*, beforehand, and *sige*, tell, say.

Though the Danish orthography is doubtful in many cases, yet the leading principle is evidently to express the sound as nearly as possible; and, where the sound may be expressed in two different ways, to adopt the spelling, that agrees the most with etymology, e. g. *skærpe*, to sharpen, from *skarp*, sharp, not *skjerpe*, although it would express the same sound; *skjenke*, to pour in, from Icel. *skenkja*, Germ. *schenken*, not *skænke*, because not derived from *Skank*, shank. *Saald* (*Såld*), a sieve, because the verb is *sælde*, to sift, not *Sold*, which is another word, meaning *wages*, or soldiers pay, from whence *Soldat*, a soldier.

Before *a*, *aa*, *o*, *u*, *e*, the consonants *k* and *g* are always hard, as in the English words *cow*, *gown*, and in order to produce the sound in *cure*, *guard*, a *j* must be inserted, as *en Skjald*, a bard; *en Kjole*, a coat; *skjule*, conceal; *gjaldt*, was worth, cost; *Gjéd*, goat; *gjórde*, made, but before *æ*, *ö*, *ø*, *y*, *i*, *k*, and *g* take always the softer sound, and no *j* should be inserted, as: *kær*, dear; (Lat. *carus*), *Kön*, sex, gender, (Lat. *genus*); *København*, Copenhagen; but many people, not being aware of this rule, will insert the *j* even in these cases, and write *kjær*, or *kjer*, *Kjön*, *Kjøbenhavn* &c. It is however acknowledged to be erroneous, to insert the *j*, when the primitive is a Danish word, which has *ka*, *ko*, *ku*, *ga*, *go*, *gu* without *j*; e. g. at *kjempe* or *kjæmpe* for *kæmpe*, to fight, combat, would be a fault, because the primitive is *Kamp*,

combat; in the same manner we write *kæmme*, to comb; from *Kam*, a comb; *sked*, shot, from *at skyde*, to shoot, and *et Skud*, a shot; *gød*, poured, from *gyde*, (Germ. *goss*), not *kjæmme*, *skjød*, *gjød*.

It is a great advantage in Danish orthography, that every noun substantive is written with a capital letter at the beginning, as numbers of words, else perfectly alike, are thereby easily distinguished at the first view.\* Ex.

(en) <i>Tale</i> , a speech,	(at) <i>tale</i> , to speak,
(en) <i>Bør</i> , a barrow,	(jeg) <i>bør</i> , I must, ought,
(en) <i>Tro</i> , faith,	<i>tro</i> , faithful,
(en) <i>Fløj</i> , weathercock,	<i>fløj</i> , flew,
(et) <i>Önske</i> , a wish,	(at) <i>önske</i> , to wish,
<i>Vande</i> , waters,	(at) <i>vande</i> , to water.

On the other hand adjectives of national names are usually written with small initials, contrary to the English usage, as: *dansk*, Danish; *norsk*, Norwegian; *svensk*, Swedish; *hollandsk*, Dutch; *engelsk*, English; *angelsak-sisk*, Anglosaxon.

Those who wish to see an analysis of the sounds of the Danish and of the principal points of its ortho-

\*) The advantage of this usage which the Danes and Norwegians have borrowed from the Germans is not felt or acknowledged by the rest of mankind: the English, the French, the Spaniards, the Portuguese, the Italiaus, the Greeks, the Arabs, the Persians, the Armenians, the Russians, the Polacks, the Bohemians and the other Slavonic nations, the Magyars, the Turks, the Swedes, the Finlanders and the Icelanders spell all words in the same way without distinguishing any by a capital letter excepting nouns proper. At one time it was attempted to introduce the German fashion in England, and in many English books printed in the reign of George I and George II the nouns often have capital initials; but this practice has now become quite obsolete. Thus it is evident that the Germans with their imitators the Danes und Norwegians have in this particular been left in a very small minority. The distinction between verbs and nouns alledged to be affected by this practice is of no great moment, since the context always shews plainly enough whether a given word is a noun or a verb, &c.

graphy, may consult the author's essay: "Forsøg til en videnskabelig dansk Retskrivningslære med Hensyn til Stamsproget og Nabosproget, København 1826", published as the first volume of *Tidsskrift for nordisk Oldkyndighed*.

---

## PART II.

# INFLECTION.

### 6. ARTICLES.

Properly speaking the articles, (*Kjendeord*) form no peculiar part of speech, being all originally pronouns, but as many nouns are never used without some article, a previous knowledge of them may be desirable. They are moreover sometimes combined with the nouns, and then have a considerable influence on the declension. Fortunately in Danish the articles also distinguish genders and numbers like adjectives; and it would greatly assist the student's memory in recollecting the puzzling distinction of gender, if he would make it a rule, never to pronounce nor even to think of a noun without its proper article.

The Danish admits but of two genders (*Kön*), viz. the neuter (*Intetkönnen*) and the common (*Fælleskönnen*); the latter including the masculine (*Hankönnen*) and the feminine (*Hunkönnen*); but even these two were formerly distinguished, there being three genders (neut. masc. & fem.) in the old mothertongue, the Icelandic, of which many traces are left in the structure of the modern language.

The numbers (*Talformerne*) are the usual two, the singular (*Entallet*) and the plural (*Flérlallet*).

There are three articles in Danish, one indefinite (*ubestemt*) and two definite (*bestemte*), the one for nouns substantive, the other for adjectives.

The *indefinite article* has merely two forms, viz. *et* before a noun of the neuter, and *en* before one of the common gender, it has no plural. Being derived from the numeral *eæt*, *een*, one, it is pronounced with é close, though short.

Ex. neutr.	com.
sing. <i>et Land</i> , a country,	<i>en Stol</i> , à chair
plur. <i>Lande</i> , countries,	<i>Stole</i> , chairs.

The *definite article of nouns substantive* is *et* in the neuter, *en* in the common gender, and *-ne (ene)* in the plur. of both genders; it is pronounced with open é in the sing., and always added as an affix to the nouns, as:

sing. *Land-et*, the country,      *Stol-en*, the chair,  
 plur. *Lande-ne*, the countries, *Stole-ne*, the chairs.

It is derived from the demonstrative pron. *hent* (Icel. *hitt*), *hin*, pl. *hine*, that, yon;

The *def. art. of adjectives* is *dét* in the neut. *dén* in the com. gend. and *dé* in the plur. of both genders; it is always placed before the adj. as a separate word, as:

sing. *dét skönne (Land)*,      the fine (country),  
 plur. *de skönne (Lande)*,      the fine (countries),  
 sing. *dén gamle (Stol)*,      the old (chair),  
 plur. *de gamle (Stole)*,      the old (chairs),

This last article is nothing but the demonstrative pronoun; but when used as an article it loses all emphasis.

## 7. NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

### Of Gender.

In Danish, as in most other languages, it is impossible to give perfectly satisfactory rules for the gender of nouns: the following observations may however be useful to the learner.

*Neuters* are 1) the names of countries and cities, metals and letters, as: *det frugtbare Danmark*,

fertile Denmark; *det smukke London*, fine London; *det ny Jerusalem*, the new Jerusalem; *Paris &c. Guld*, gold; *Sølv*, silver; *Jærn*, iron; *Bly*, lead; *et stort E*, a capital E; *at skrive En et X for et U*, literally: to write one an X for a U (meaning the Roman number V), or ten for five, i. e. to impose upon one, make him work or pay double.

2) Most monosyllabic nouns of action, formed of verhs, without any additional termination, as: *et Køb* (or *Kjøb*), a bargain, from *købe*, to buy; *et Salg*, a sale; *et Spring*, a leap; *et Tryk*, a thrust; *et Skud*, a shot.

Those in *ang* and *gt* are excepted, as *en Sang*, a song; *en Gang*, a going, a time; *en Agt*, intention; *en Tugt*, discipline, and a few others: *en Strid*, a contest, strife; *en Drik*, a drink; *en Hjælp*, a help, assistance, which are of the common gender.

3) Derivative nouns in *-eri*, as: *Bryderi*, trouble; *Frieri*, courtship; and those in *-skab* signifying a situation or relation, as: *Broderskab-et*, the fraternity; *Adelskab*, nobility, *Venskab*, friendship.

8. To the common gender belong 1) most names of persons and dignities, sciences, animals, trees and plants. Ex.

<i>en Mand</i> , a man,	<i>en Qvinde</i> , a woman,
<i>en Konge</i> , a king,	<i>en Dronning</i> , a queen,
<i>en Smed</i> , a smith,	<i>en Jórdemoder</i> , a midwife,
<i>en Theologi</i> , divinity,	<i>en Logik</i> , logic,
<i>en Hest</i> , a horse,	<i>en Gaas</i> , a goose,
<i>en Torsk</i> , a cod-fish,	<i>en Myre</i> , an ant,
<i>en Ko</i> , a cow,	<i>en Kalv</i> , a calf,
<i>en Slange</i> , a snake,	<i>en Firbeen</i> , a lizard,
<i>en Eeg</i> , an oak,	<i>en Bög</i> , a beech,
<i>en Tórn</i> , a thorn,	<i>en Rose</i> , a rose,
<i>en Tulipán</i> , a tulip,	<i>en Túsendskön</i> , amaranth.

There are however some exceptions to this rule, a) especially compound words, of which the last part is a

neuter; e. g. *et Mandfolk*, a man; *et Fruentimmer*, a woman; *et Daadyr*, a doe; *et Rensdyr*, a reindeer; *et Pæretræ*, a peartree.

b) Some Names of living beings which comprise both sexes, as: *et Menneske*; man (*homo*); *et Folk*, people; *et Barn*, a child; *et Asen*, *et Æsel*, an ass; *et Bæst*, a beast; *et Dyr*, an animal; *et Fæ*, a brute; *et Kvæg*, (a) cattle; *et Faar*, a sheep; *et Lam*, a lamb; *et Kid*, a kid; *et Nød*, a neat; *et Hors*, *et Øg*, a jade; *et Fel*, a colt; *et Sciin*, a swine; *et Egern*, a squirrel.

2) Derivative nouns in: *de*, *døm*, *héd*, *ing*, *ning*, *else*, *sel*, *t*, *st*, *en*, as: *Højde*, height; *Brèdde*, breadth; *en Guddom*, a godhead; *Trældom*, slavery; *Hvídhed*, whiteness; *Hurtighed*, swiftness; *Forandring*, change; *Læsning*, reading; *Slægtning*, a relation; *Begyndelse*, beginning; *Forkortelse*, abbreviation; *Indførsel*, importation; *Væxt*, growth; *Hugst*, cutting (of trees); *Skrigen*, a crying; *Løben*, a running, Also those in *-skab*, denoting qualities, as: *en Egenskab*, a quality; *en Ondskab*, malice.

3) Foreign words in *-ter*, *ist*, *án*, *ón*, *isme*, *tét*. Ex *Konduktør*, *Rigorist*, *Lutherán*, *Kujón* (coward), *Kalkón* (turkey), *Revisión*, *Terrorisme*, *Prioritét*, except *et Universitet*.

9. Compounds take the gender of the last part, as: *et Birketræ*, a birchtree; *et Mórbærtræ*, a mulberry-tree; *Mesterstykke*, a masterpiece; *en Sølvallerken*, a silverplate; *en Hovedpunkt*, a main point. Except *et Bogstav*, a letter; *et Maaltid*, a meal; *et Vidnesbyrd*, a testimony; from *en Stav*, *en Tid*, *en Byrd*.

It is to be observed that the following words change their significations with their genders:

*of the neuter gender*:                   *of the common gender*:

<i>et Ark</i> , a sheet (of paper),	<i>en Ark</i> , an ark,
<i>et Bid</i> , a bite,	<i>en Bid</i> , a morsel,

<i>et Brud</i> , a breach,	<i>en Brud</i> , a bride,
<i>et Buk</i> , a bow (inclination of the body),	<i>en Buk</i> , a He-goat,
<i>et Digt</i> , a poem,	<i>en Digt</i> , a fiction, tale,
<i>et Flør</i> , a gauze.	<i>en Flør</i> , prosperity,
<i>et Følge</i> , retinue, train,	<i>en Følge</i> , consequence*),
<i>et Gran</i> , a grain,	<i>en Gran</i> , a pine,
<i>et Leje</i> , a couch, bed,	<i>en Leje</i> , hire,
<i>et Læg</i> , a fold; dogsear (e.g. in a book),	<i>en Læg</i> , calf of the leg,
<i>et Lod</i> , half an ounce,	<i>en Lod</i> , a lot, share,
<i>et Mode</i> , an assembly,	<i>en Mode</i> , a fashion,
<i>et Nød</i> , a neat,	<i>en Nød</i> , need, distress,
	and <i>en Nød</i> , (sharp), a nut,
<i>et Raad</i> , an advice, council,	<i>en Raad</i> , a counsellor (title),
<i>et Skrift</i> , a book, work,	<i>en Skrift</i> , a handwriting,
<i>et Snært</i> , a stroke of a whip,	<i>en Snært</i> , the lash, cord,
<i>et Spand</i> , a team of horses; a span,	<i>en Spand</i> , a bucket,
<i>et Söm</i> , an (iron) nail,	<i>en Söm</i> , a seam,
<i>et Ting</i> , an assize,	<i>en Ting</i> , a thing,
<i>et Tryk</i> , a thrust,	<i>en Tryk</i> , print,
<i>et Værge</i> , a weapon,	<i>en Værge</i> , a trustee.

Several words are of doubtful gender, as: *en Punkt*, or *et Punkt*, a point; *en Trold*, or *et Trold*, a giant, goblin.\*\*)

The word *et Bogstav*, a letter, was formerly of the common gender, and is still used thus in some biblical and adverbial phrases, as: *Bogstaven ihjelslaer*, *men Aanden gjør levende*. *At tage noget efter Bogstaven*, to take something literally. *Et Sted*, a place, was likewise

\*) The verb *følge* is not only *to follow*, but also *to attend, accompany one*.

\*\*) Mr. Molbech makes *Trold* of the common gender (*en Trold*) and this has been adopted on his authority by Ferrall and Repp in their Danish-English Dictionary. In Icelandic, however, *Tröll* is neuter, and such, no doubt the gender ought to be also in Danish, when the word denotes a giant, or ogre; but when it is used as a term of abuse, of a clamorous scold, it probably is right, on the authority of several Danish poets to make it: *en Trold*.

of the common gender, and this is preserved in many adverbs, as: *isteden*, in the place (of), *andensteds*, elsewhere, *nogensteds*, anywhere, somewhere, *ingensteds*, nowhere. *En Taage*, a mist, is called *et Taag*, by the common people in the isle of Funen, hence in the cultivated language the phrase: *at gaa i Taaget*, literally: *to walk away in the mist*, i. e. to be thoughtless, heedless, absent, not to have ones wits about one.

### 10. Of the declension of nouns.

The Danish nouns (*Nævneord*) admit but of few inflections, viz. the two numbers (mentioned p. 11), and two cases (*Forholdsformer*) in each, viz. the nominative (*Nævneformen*) and the genitive (*Ejeformen*) just as in English; but the formation of these inflections is a good deal more varied.

In this respect the nouns are divided into two orders or declensions, the one more simple in its inflection, the other more complex. The simple order contains all nouns ending in short *e*; the complex comprises all the rest. The former follows one invariable rule in forming the numbers and cases, adding always *r* in the plural, and *s* in the genitive of each number, without distinction of gender; the latter is subdivided into three classes, originally distinguishing the three genders, the first forming the plur. like the sing.; the second by adding *-e*; the third by adding *-er*. The following table may serve as a synopsis of the whole system:

#### *Simple order.*

Sing. N.	<i>-e</i>
G.	<i>-s</i>
Plur. N.	<i>-r</i>
G.	<i>-rs</i>

#### *Complex order.*

class 1.	<i>=</i>	cl. 2.	<i>=</i>	cl. 3.	<i>=</i>
	<i>-s</i>	<i>-s</i>	<i>-s</i>	<i>-s</i>	<i>-s</i>
	<i>=</i>	<i>=</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-er</i>
	<i>-s</i>	<i>-s</i>	<i>-es</i>	<i>-es</i>	<i>-ers</i>

But when the definite article is added, the *s* which forms the genitive is removed from its place immediately behind

the noun and affixed to the article; some rules of euphony must also be observed, when a final *e* of the noun would be immediately followed by the *e* of the article. I shall therefore exhibit the paradigms in their compound or definite as well as in their simple or indefinite form, in order to give the reader a complete idea of all the inflections, of which they are susceptible.

### 11. *The simple order.*

Though this order forms only one declension, yet on account of the def. article it may be divided into two classes, the one for the neuter, the other for the common gender.

The nouns: *et Hjærtē* \*), a heart; *en Kongē*, a King; *en Dame*, a lady, shall be our paradigms:

#### *Indefinitely.*

neuter class		common class	
Sing. N.	<i>et Hjærtē</i> ,	<i>en Kongē</i> ,	<i>en Dame</i> ,
G.	<i>Hjærtēs</i> ,	<i>Kongēs</i> ,	<i>Dames</i> ,
Plur.	N. <i>Hjærter</i> ,	<i>Konger</i> ,	<i>Damer</i> ,
G.	<i>Hjærtērs</i> ,	<i>Kongers</i> ,	<i>Damers</i> ,

#### *Definitely.*

Sing. N.	<i>Hjærtē-t</i> ,	<i>Kongē-n</i> ,	<i>Dame-n</i> ,
G.	<i>Hjærtē-ts</i> ,	<i>Kongē-ns</i> ,	<i>Dame-ns</i> ,
Plur. N.	<i>Hjærter-ne</i> ,	<i>Konger-ne</i> ,	<i>Damer-ne</i> ,
G.	<i>Hjarter-nes</i> ,	<i>Konger-nes</i> ,	<i>Damer-nes</i> ,

In like manner are declined:

<i>et Rige</i> , a kingdom,	<i>en Löve</i> , a lion,	<i>en Lövinde</i> , a lioness,
<i>et Æble</i> , an apple,	<i>en Abe</i> , an ape,	<i>en Tudsē</i> , a toad,
<i>et Mærke</i> , a mark,	<i>en Hane</i> , a cock,	<i>en Höne</i> , a hen,
<i>et Löfte</i> , a promise,	<i>en Have</i> , a garden,	<i>en Pære</i> , a pear,
<i>et Möde</i> , a meeting,	<i>en Fjende</i> , an enemy,	<i>en Krone</i> , a crown,
<i>et Stykke</i> , a piece,	<i>en Herre</i> , a master,	<i>en Stavelse</i> , a syllable.

\*) Molbech following the German analogy writes *Hiertē* (from *Herz*). ED.

The final *e* receives the open sound (é), whenever a consonant is added.

The article loses its original *e* (before the *t* and *n*) everywhere in this declension.

*Bónde*, a farmer, peasant, changes the vowel in the plural, *Bónder*, *Bónderne*.

Words denoting dignity or rank, and ending in -*e*, lose this *e*, when prefixed to a name, as *Kong Frederik den sjette*, King Frederic the sixth; *Fyrst Edvard*, Prince Edward; *Grev Bernstorff*, Count Bernstorff; *Herr Möller*, Mr. Möller; *Fru Skibsted*, Mrs. Skibsted. There are however several exceptions to this rule, as the word *Kammerherre*, Chamberlain, and female titles in -*inde*, as *Grevinde*, countess, &c. which are never abbreviated.

The old form of the article in the neuter gen. sing. was -*ens* (not *ets*), \*) hence instead of *Hjærtets* we say *Hjærtens* in some old phrases, as: *min Hjærtens Ven*, the friend of my heart. Thus also of *Menneske*, man, instead of the usual gen. defin. *Menneskets*, we say *Menneskens*, in the biblical expressions *Menneskens Søn*, the son of man; *Menneskens Børn*, mankind. In the def. plur. we often say *Menneskene* instead of *Menneskerne*.

Derivative words in *dömme* likewise often reject the plural *r* before the defin. art.; e. g. *Hertugdömmene*, instead of *Hertugdömmerne*.

\*) It can not, surely, be established as a general rule, that the old form was -*ens*, instead of -*ets*: it occurs only in a few words. The old form, i. e. the Icelandic form, was -*ins*, and by contraction -*ns*, when the nominative of the noun terminated in *a*. *Hjærtens* and *Menneskens* may be considered as faint vestiges of the ancient form; but it certainly does not appear that the genitive in -*ens* ever was generally adopted; and this is the less likely to have been the case since the use of the definite article was much less frequent in old Danish e. g. in writings from the 14th and 15th centuries than in modern Danish.

*Tilfælde*, accident, case, and *Södskende*, brother and sister, do not admit any *-r* in the plural.

*Et Øje*, an eye, forms *Øjne*, (formerly *Øjen*) in the plur., gen. *Øjnes*, defin. *Øjnene*, *Øjnenes*.

*Et Øre*, an ear, forms *Øren*, or *Ører*, gen. *Ørens* or *Ørers*, defin. *Ørerne* (*Ørene*), *Ørernes* (*Ørenes*).

*En Oxen*, an ox, forms in the plur. *Oxer* (*Øxne*, *Øxen*).

Of the common gender there are two exceptions, viz. *en Penge*, a coin, medal, money, and *en Lige*, an equal; which receive no *r* in the plur., so that the indef. plur. of both is like the sing., and the def. form of *Penge*, *Penge-ne-s*; but *Lige* has no definitive plural, perhaps because it might be confounded with: *Lig-one*, from *Lig*, a corpse.

## 12. *The complex order.*

This order must be divided into three classes according to the three manners of forming the plural, though not agreeing exactly with the genders in the modern language. As examples let us take *et Dýr*, an animal, deer; *en Dag*, a day; *en Sag*, a thing.

### *Indefinitely.*

1st class	2d class	3d class
Sing. N. <i>et Dyr</i> ,	<i>en Dag</i> ,	<i>en Sag</i> ,
G. <i>et Dyrs</i> ,	<i>en Dags</i> ,	<i>en Sags</i> ,
Plur. N. <i>Dyr</i> ,	<i>Dage</i> ,	<i>Sager</i> ,
G. <i>Dyrs</i> ,	<i>Dages</i> ,	<i>Sagers</i> ,

### *Definitely.*

Sing. N. <i>Dyr-et</i> ,	<i>Dag-en</i> ,	<i>Sag-en</i> ,
G. <i>Dyr-ets</i> ,	<i>Dag-ens</i> ,	<i>Sag-ens</i> ,
Plur. N. <i>Dyr-ene</i> ,	<i>Dage-ne</i> ,	<i>Sager-ne</i> ,
G. <i>Dyr-enes</i> ,	<i>Dage-nes</i> ,	<i>Sager-nes</i> .

In like manner are declined:

<i>et Ark</i> , a sheet,	<i>en Fisk</i> , a fish,	<i>en Dyd</i> , a virtue,
<i>et Slag</i> , a blow,	<i>en Fugl</i> , a bird,	<i>en Frugt</i> , a fruit,
<i>et Baand</i> , a ribbon,	<i>en Vej</i> , a way,	<i>en Dronning</i> , a queen,
<i>et Aar</i> , a year,	<i>en Stav</i> , a staff,	<i>en Aand</i> , a spirit,
<i>et Rør</i> , a rudder,	<i>en Hest</i> , a horse,	<i>en Aa</i> , a brook,
<i>et Skridt</i> , a pace,	<i>en Hund</i> , a dog,	<i>en Sandhed</i> , truth.

### 13. General remarks.

In each of these classes there are some words, having a short vowel, followed by a single consonant, which double the final consonant, as soon as a termination beginning with a vowel is added. Ex. of the 1st class *et Kar*, a vessel, def. *Karr-et*, pl. *Karr-ene*; *et Lam*, a lamb, *Lamm-et*, &c.; *et Söm*, an iron nail, *Sömm-et*; *et Led*, a joint, *Ledd-et*; *et Lod*, half an ounce, *Lodd-et*; *et Æg*, an egg, *Ægg-et*. Of the 2d class *en Bæk*, a rivulet, plur. *Bække*, def. *Bækk-en*, pl. *Bække-ne*; *en Blok*, a block, pl. *Blokke*, &c.; *en Hat*, a hat, pl. *Hatte*; *en Top*, a top, pl. *Toppe*; *en Straf*, punishment, pl. *Straffe*; *en Rigdom*, riches, pl. *Rigdomme*; *en Træl*, a slave, pl. *Trælle*; *en Væg*, a wall, pl. *Vægge*. Of the 3d class *en Nød*, a nut, pl. *Nødder*; *en Almanak*, a calendar, pl. *Almanakker*; *en Fabrik*, a manufacture pl. *Fabrikker*; *en Ven*, a friend, pl. *Venner*.

When a word of the com. gend. belongs to the first class, it takes of course the com. art. *-en*, &c. instead of the neut. *-et* in the sing. def. & indef. as: *en Fejl*, a fault, *en Fejls*, *Fejl-en*, *Fejlens*, pl. *Fejl-ene*. Thus also *en Sild*, a herring; *en Kræbs*, a crayfish, *en Løg*, an onion; *en Lus*, a louse; *en Mus*, a mouse; *en Sko*, a shoe; *en Aal*, an eel; but *en ALEN*, an ell does scarcely admit the affixed definite article at all. Likewise, when a word of the neut. gend. belongs to the 2. or 3. class, which is still more frequently the case, it merely takes the neuter article without any further deviation. Ex. of the 2d cl. *et Land*, a country, *et Lands*, def.

*Land-et*, *Land-ets*, plur. *Lande-ne*; thus also *et Bord*, table, *Bordet*; *et Hus* (*Husus*), a house, *Hus-et*; *et Bjærg* a mountain, *Bjærget*; *et Hav*, a sea, ocean, *Havet*. Of the 3d cl. *et Beviis*, a proof, def. *Bevis-et*, pl. *Beviser-ne*; *et Begréb*, a conception, idea, *Begrébet*; *et Papir*, a paper, *Papíret*; *et Biblioték*, a library, *Bibliotéket*; *et Universitet*, a University, *Universitetet*; *et Venskab*, a friendship, *Venskabet*; *et Hoved*, a head, *Hovedet*; *et Hul*, a hole, def. *Hullet*, pl. *Huller-ne*.

For the other remarks that may be required we must consider each of these classes separately.

#### 14. *The first class.*

To this class belong, besides those already mentioned a number of primitive monosyllables of the neuter gender, as:

<i>et Been</i> , a bone,	<i>et Lav</i> ( <i>Laug</i> ), a guild,
<i>et Bind</i> , a cover; volume of a book.	<i>et Lys</i> , a candle,
<i>et Brød</i> , a loaf,	<i>et Laag</i> , a lid,
<i>et Folk</i> , a people,	<i>et Löv</i> , a leaf,
<i>et Frø</i> , a seed,	<i>et Ord</i> , a word,
<i>et Faar</i> , a sheep,	<i>et Pund</i> , a pound,
<i>et Fæ</i> , a brute,	<i>et Sejl</i> , a sail,
<i>et Gran</i> , a grain,	<i>et Skaar</i> , a sherd,
<i>et Grýn</i> , a grain of grits,	<i>et Sprog</i> , a language,
<i>et Hjul</i> , a wheel,	<i>et Straa</i> , a straw,
<i>et Hörn</i> , a horn,	<i>et Sværd</i> , a sword,
<i>et Jærn</i> , an iron,	<i>et Staab</i> , *) a cup,
<i>et Knæ</i> , a knee,	<i>et Saar</i> , a wound,
<i>et Körn</i> , a grain,	<i>et Tag</i> , a roof,
<i>et Krus</i> , a mug,	<i>et Taarn</i> , a tower,
<i>et Krae</i> , a creature,	<i>et Aag</i> , a yoke,
<i>et Kær</i> , a pool,	<i>et Ög</i> , a jade.

A considerable number of monosyllabic derivatives of the verbs, cf. p. 15, as: *et Brud*, a breach; *et Bud*, a commandment; *et Liv*, a life; *et Hik*, a

\*) Molbech writes *Stob*.

*hickup*, sob; *et Kys*, a kiss; *et Haab*, a hope; *et Knæk*, a crack; *et Tag*, a gripe; *et Trin*, a step; *et Slag*, a blow; *et Ridt*, a riding; from *bryde*, break; *byde*, command; *léve*, live; &c.

Some of the primitives change the vowel in the plural, as; *en Gaas*, a goose, pl. *Gæs*, pronounced sharp, whence the def. form sing. *Gaas-en*, pl. *Gæssene*; *en Mand*, a man, pl. *Mænd*; an irregular change takes place in *et Barn*, a child, plur. *Børn*.

### 15. *The second class.*

There are some primitive neuters of this class, as *et Brev*, a letter, pl. *Breve*; *et Blad*, a leaf, *Blade*; *et Skib*, a vessel, *Skibe*; *et Bad*, a bath, *Bade*; *et Vand*, water, *Vande*; *et Skab*, a cupboard, *Skabe*; but by far the greater number are original masculines, as; *en Baad*, a boat, (Icel. *bátr*), plur. *Baade*; *en Krop*, a body (Icel. *kroppr*), *Kroppe*; *en Skik*, a custom, *Skikke*; *en Dreng*, a boy, (Icel. *drengr*), *Drenge*; *en Dal*, a valley, (Icel. *dalr*), *Dale*; *en Bom*, a bar, *Bomme*; *en Steen*, a stone, (Icel. *steinn*), *Stene*, *en Stilk*, a stalk, *Stilke*; and some few original feminines, as *en Lov*, a law, pl. *Love*; *en Sol*, a sun, *Sole*.

Some dissyllables in *el*, *er*, suffer a contraction in the plur. as *et Kammer*, a chamber, closet, pl. *Kamre*, def. *Kammer-et*, pl. *Kamre-ne*; *et Offer*, a sacrifice, pl. *Offere* or *Ofre*; *en Ager*, a field, pl. *Agre*; *en Finger*, a finger, pl. *Fingre*; *en Hammer*, a hammer, pl. *Hamre*; *en Engel*, an angel, pl. *Engle*; *en Himmel*, heaven, sky, pl. *Himle*. The def. art. rarely requires this contraction in the sing. as: *Himlen*, in the acceptation *providence*, otherwise *Himmelen*, *Hammeren* &c.

Masc. derivatives in *-er* do not admit the contraction in the plur., but constantly reject the plural termination *-e*, when the art. is affixed, as *en Græker*, a greek, pl.

*Grækere*, def. sing. *Grækeren*, pl. *Grækerne*, thus also *Skræder*, taylor; *Væver*, weaver, &c.

Some few change the vowel in the pl.

<i>en Fader</i> , pl. <i>Fædre</i> ;	<i>en Moder</i> , pl. <i>Mødre</i> ;
<i>en Brøder</i> , pl. <i>Brødre</i> ;	<i>en Datter</i> ( <i>Dotter</i> ), pl. <i>Døttre</i> .

### 16. *The third class.*

contains some few primitive neuters, as *et Træ*, a tree, pl. *Træer*; *et Tøj*, a stuff, pl. *Tøjer*; *et Sted*, a place, pl. *Steder*; and all derivatives in *-i*, *eri*, as *et Parti*, a faction, party, pl. *Partier*; *et Bryggeri*, a brewhouse, pl. *Bryggerier*; *et Bogtrykkeri*, a printing-office, pl. *Bogtrykkерier*. Also some original masculines, as *Gud*, god, pl. *Guder*; *en Ret*, a court of justice; a dish, pl. *Retter*; *en Le*,<sup>\*)</sup> a scythe, pl. *Leer*; *en Sti*, a path, pl. *Stier*; *en By*, a town, a village, pl. *Byer*; *en Bekjendt*, an acquaintance, pl. *Bekjendter*.

But especially a great number of original feminines, as: *en Saga*, an old Icelandic history, pl. *Sagaer*; *en Bro*, a bridge, pl. *Broer*; *en Fre*, a frog, pl. *Froer*; *en Ø*,<sup>\*\*)</sup> an island, pl. *Øer*; *en Sky*, a cloud, pl. *Skyer*; *en Gjed*, a goat, pl. *Gjeder*; *en Bön*, a petition, pl. *Böner*; *en Plads*, a place, pl. *Pladser*; *en Art*, a kind, pl. *Arter*; *en Ært*; a pea, pl. *Ærter*; *en Mast*, a mast, pl. *Master*. Likewise all derivative nouns in *hed*, as: *en Godhed*, a favor, pl. *Godheder*.

In like manner most foreign words of the three genders, terminating in consonants, as: *et Patent*, a letter patent, pl. *Patenter*; (*en*) *Student*, pl. *Studenter*; (*en*)

<sup>\*)</sup> Professor Rask spells *Le*, pl. *Leer* which makes the word regular; still the anomalous spelling *Lee* (in the singular number) is most frequently used; but although it would be consistent with this practice to add a third *e* for the affixed def. article, and also for the plural, still this is never done.      ED.

<sup>\*\*) Ø</sup> is also frequently spelt *Öe*.    ED.

*Prest,*<sup>\*)</sup> a priest, pl. *Prester*; (*en*) *Kaptejn*, pl. *Kaptejner*, a captain (more frequently spelt *Capitain* pl. *Capitainer*); *Patron*, pl. *Patron-er*; *Religión*, pl. *Religión-er*; *Bastión-er*; (*en*) *Admirál*, pl. *Admirál-er*; *Linial-er*, ruler-s; *Veterán-er*; *Husár-er*, hussar-s; *Gouvernør-er* (*Gouverneur-er*), Governor-s; *Sekretærer*, Secretary; *Kollektør-er*, Collector; *Invalid-er*, Invalid; *Uniform-er*, Uniform-s.

Those in *or* from the Latin remove the tone; as *en Assessor*, judge in a court of justice, pl. *Assessórer*; *Revisor*, revisor, pl. *Revisórer*; those with a sharp vowel in the last syllable, double the consonant following, as: (*en*) *Brig*, a brig, pl. *Brig-ger*; (*et*) *Skaberak-ker*, saddle cloth, caparison-s; (*en*) *Supplik*, a petition, pl. *Supplik-ker*; (*en*) *Republik*, republic, pl. *Republik-ker*; (*en*) *Fregat*, a frigate, pl. *Fregat-ter*; (*en*) *Kadét*, a young man of a military academy, pl. *Kadét-ter* (also *Cadet*, *Cadet-ter*); (*en*) *Rekrút*, a recruit, pl. *Rekrút-ter*; (*et*) *Lexikon*, a dictionary, pl. *Lexikon-ner*.

Dissyllables in *el*, *en*, are contracted in the plural. Ex. *en Kjedel*, a kettle, pl. *Kjedler*; *en Nøgel*, a key, pl. *Nøgler*; *en Hassel*, a hazle, pl. *Hasler*; *en Artikkел*, an article, pl. *Artikler*; *en Titel*, a title, pl. *Titler*; *et Æsel*, an ass, pl. *Æsler*; *et Asen.*, an ass, pl. *Asner*; *et Væsen*, a being, pl. *Væsner*, or *Væsener*; *en Aften*, an evening, pl. *Aftner*, or *Aftener*. Even sometimes in the def. sing. as *Kjedlen*, *Nøglen*, *Asnet*, *Aftnen*. Those in *en* remain sometimes uncontracted, as: *Asener*, *Væsener*.

A number of words of this class change their vowel in the plural, as:

*en And*, a duck, pl. *Ænder*, *en Ko*, a cow, pl. *Köer*,  
*en Tand*, a tooth, *Tænder*; *en So*, a sow, *Söer*;  
*en Stand*, an estate, *Stænder*; *en Nat*, a night, *Nætter*;  
*en Stang*, a perch, *Stænger*; *en Fod*, a foot, *Födder*;

---

<sup>\*)</sup> Molbech and others spell *Præst* and follow in this instance no analogy whatever.

<i>en Tang</i> , tongs, <i>Tænger</i> ;	<i>en Rod</i> , a root, <i>Rødder</i> ;
<i>en Stad</i> , a city, <i>Stæder</i> ;	<i>en Taa</i> , a toe, <i>Tær</i> ;
<i>en Bød</i> , a fine, <i>Bøder</i> ;	<i>en Raa</i> , a yard, <i>Rær</i> ;
<i>en Bog</i> , a book, <i>Bøger</i> ;	<i>en Haand</i> , a hand, <i>Hænder</i> ;
<i>en Klo</i> , a claw, <i>Klöer</i> ;	<i>en Vaand</i> , a wand, <i>Vander</i> .

### 17. General remarks.

Some nouns, though possessing a plural in proper form, are used in the sing. collectively or nearly as plurals, e. g. *Mand*: speaking of soldiers, we say "*femten Tusind Mand*," not *Mænd*, fifteen thousand men; even *Fod*, feet, as a measure; *Fisk*; fish; *Lax*, salmon; *Steen*, stones; *Mursteen*, bricks, considered as materials.

Some nouns have no plural; such are the names of metals, earths, herbs, vegetables, virtues, vices, qualities, and several sorts of provision, as:

<i>Kobber-et</i> , copper ;	<i>Hø-et</i> , hay ;
<i>Bly-et</i> , lead ;	<i>Meel</i> , <i>Melet</i> , flower ;
<i>Tin-net</i> , pewter ;	<i>Honning-en</i> , honey ;
<i>Leer</i> , <i>Leret</i> , clay ;	<i>Vox-et</i> , wax ;
<i>Sand-et</i> , sand ;	<i>Klogskab-en</i> , prudence ;
<i>Stöv-et</i> , dust ;	<i>List-en</i> , cunning ;
<i>Hved-en</i> , wheat ;	<i>Ære-n</i> , honor ;
<i>Rug-en</i> , rye ;	<i>Skam-men</i> ; shame ;
<i>Havre-n</i> , oats ;	<i>Forfald-et</i> , hindrance, impediment, accident.

But in other significations some of them receive a plural, as: *Kobbere*, copper-plates; &c.

Some have no singular number, as: *Briller* or *Glarøjne*, spectacles; *Buxer*, breeches; *Pantalonger*, Pantaloons.

When the noun that is governed in the genitive, is expressed by more than one word, the *-s* is only added to the last of them, as: *Kongen af Danmarks Lande*, the king of Denmark's countries (possessions).

Nouns signifying inanimate substances generally form their gen. like the English by *af*, of, as: *Taget af Huset*, the roof of the house; *Masten af Skibet*, the mast of the ship.

Though there be no terminations for more cases than the nomin. and genit. in the declension of Danish nouns, yet not only the accusative, but even the dative is usually expressed without any preposition; these two cases being distinguished from the nominative by the position in which they are placed to the verb. The nominative usually precedes, the dative or respective case\*) follows next to the verb, and the accusative, expressing the object, takes the last place, as: *Forfatteren har til-egnet Dronningen sit Verk*, the author has dedicated his work to the queen. Here *Forfatteren* is the nomin. *Dronningen* the dat. and *Verk* the accusative, (according to the Latin terminology), though not distinguished by any particular termination or particle.

There are also in Danish some remains of old terminations of cases, especially of the dative, governed by some preposition, and used in certain adverbial phrases. Ex. *i Lave*, in order; *af Lave*, out of order, out of (ones) wits; from *Lav*, settled state, right order; *i Tide*, in due time, from *Tid*, time; *at have i Hænde*, to have in (ones) hands, i. e. in actual possession, from *Haand*, (the Icel. dat is *hendi*); &c. In such cases the prep. *til*, to, usually governs the genitive, as: *til Bords*, at table; *til Lands*, by land; *til Huse hos*, lodged with, (*húsa* is the Icel. gen. plur.)

## ADJECTIVES.

### 18. *Of their declension.*

The declension of the Danish adjectives (*Tillægsord*) is very simple. Like the nouns they have both a definite and an indefinite form: the former always terminates in *e*, and neither distinguishes genders nor numbers; the

\*) *Respective case* is Rask's technical term for the Dative: in Danish he calls it *Hensynsform*.

latter appears to be the original one, it distinguishes the two numbers and, in the singular, the two genders, neuter and common, in the plural it forms both genders alike, and always terminates in *e*; consequently it is here like the def. form, and thus all the terminations of a regular adjective amount but to three. As a paradigm let us take *hvid*, white, together with the nouns *Papir*, paper, and *Farve*, color:

### *Indefinite form*

Sing. Nom.	<i>hvidt Papir,</i>	<i>hvid Farve,</i>
Gen.	<i>hvidt Papirs,</i>	<i>hvid Farves,</i>
Plur. Nom.	<i>hvide Papirer,</i>	<i>Farver,</i>
Gen.	<i>hvide Papirers,</i>	<i>Farvers.</i>

### *Definite form*

Sing. Nom.	<i>det hvide Papir,</i>	<i>den hvide Farve,</i>
Gen.	<i>det hvide Papirs,</i>	<i>den hvide Farves,</i>
Plur. Nom.	<i>de hvide Papirer,</i>	<i>Farver,</i>
Gen.	<i>de hvide Papirers,</i>	<i>Farvers.</i>

The indefinite article has no influence on the inflection of the adjective as:

*et godt Barn*, a good child,  
*et godt Barns*, of a good child,  
*en god Mand*, an honest man;  
*en god Mands*, of an honest man;  
pl. *gode Børn*, good children &c.

In like manner are declined:

<i>sygt, syg-e</i> , sick;	<i>gålt, gál-e</i> , foolish;
<i>ærligt, ærlig-e</i> , honest;	<i>heelt, heel</i> , hele, whole;
<i>sandt, sand-e</i> , true;	<i>seent, seen, sene</i> , slow;
<i>dröjt, dröj-e</i> , lasting;	<i>trygt, tryg-ge</i> , sure, safe;
<i>fuldt, fuld-e</i> , full;	<i>smukt, smuk-ke</i> , fine;
<i>ungt, ung-e</i> , young;	<i>grönt, grön-ne</i> , green.

Adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, *er* form their plur. and definite form in *-le*, *-ne*, *-re*, with elision of the preceding *e*, as:

*ædelt, ædel, ædle, noble; gammelt, gammel, gammel, old;*  
*nøgent, nøgen, nøgne, naked; sikkert, sikker, sikre, safe;*

Participles in *-en*, reject the *-n* before the neuter *t*, as:  
*fundet, funden, fundne, found; revet, reven, røvne; torn;*

Some adjectives do not distinguish the plur. from the com. gend. sing. as:

*blaat, blaa, blaa, blue; frit, fri, fri, (frie), free;*  
*graat, graa, graa, grey; nyt, ny, ny, (nye), new;\**

Some others terminating in a radical *t* or *sk* do not distinguish the genders, as:

*kort, kort-e, short; engelsk, engelsk-e, English;*  
*dobbelt, dobbelt-e, double; bekjendt, bekjendt-e, known;*  
*dansk, dansk-e, Danish; glad, glad-e, glad;*

Dissyllabic participles in *et* of the 1st conjugation, change this termination to *ede* in the plural and def. form, as: *elsket, elsket, elskede, beloved.*

Several adj. terminating in vowels do not admit of any inflection as:

*ringe, ringe, ringe, insignificant, mean; ædru, ædru, ædru, sober;*  
*tro, tro, tro, faithful; bly, bly, bly, bashful;*

Adjectives when used absolutely, that is without or instead of nouns, receive the usual termination *-s* in the gen. especially in the definite form, as: *et hvidts, en hvids*, of a white (one, man &c.), pl. *hvides*, of white (ones); def. *det hvides, den hvides, de hvides* (of the white). Also *det ringes, den ringes, de ringes.*

Wholly irregular is: *lidet, liden* (or in both genders *lille,*) little, plur. *smaa*, def. *det, den lille*, pl. *de smaa.* *Meget, megen*, much, has neither a plur. nor a definite form.

\* ) It is however still a very common practice to give these a mute *e* in the plural. Mr. Molbech e. g. has in his dictionary *graa* pl. *graae*; *frie* and *nye* which Prof. Rask has put only in a parenthesis is, I think, always written in the plural of these adjectives.

### 19. Of the degrees of comparison.

The qualities denoted by the adjectives may be of different degrees, and these degrees are sometimes expressed by terminations.

The positive degree (*den förste Grad*) is the adjective itself, of which we have treated already. The comparative (*den höjere Grad*) is expressed in Danish by adding *ere*; the superlative (*den höjeste Grad*) by adding *-est*, as: *hvidere, hvidest, kortere, kortest*.

The comparative does not admit of any further inflection, being indeclinable, like the positives in *e* (as *ringe*, e. g., *et lerd-ere Fruentimmer*, a more learned woman, *en lerdere Mand, Dame &c.* a more learned man, lady &c., *lerdere Personer*, more learned persons; in like manner def. *det lerdere, den lerdere, de lerdere*. When absolute, it may however (like *ringe*) receive the *s* in the genit. case, as: *en lerdere, pl. lærderes, def. den lærderes, de lærderes*.

The superlative distinguishes the def. form from the indef. by adding *e*, but is otherwise indeclinable. The indef. form is rarely used except as an absolute predicate after the verb, as: *Sneen, er hvidest*, the snow is (the) whitest; *hvem var höjest*, who was (the) tallest; it never occurs in the plural. The def. form is like the def. positive, as: *det hvideste Papir, den hvideste Farve, de hvideste Vægge; det lærdeste Fruentimmer, den lærdeste Mand, de lærdeste Personer*; gen. absol. *det, den, de hvidestes*.

In like manner are regularly formed:

<i>syg-t, syg-ere, syg-est;</i>	<i>gäl-t, galere, galest;</i>
<i>sand-t, sandere, sandest;</i>	<i>seen-t, senere, senest;</i>
<i>dröj-t, dröjere, dröjest;</i>	<i>tryg t, tryggere, tryggest;</i>
<i>fuld-t, fuldere, fuldest;</i>	<i>smuk t, smukkere, smukkest;</i>
<i>kort, kortere, kortest;</i>	<i>fri-t, friere, friest;</i>
<i>glad, gladere, gladest;</i>	<i>ny-t, nyere, nyest.</i>

Those contracted in the positive degree are also contracted in the other degrees, as far as they admit these forms. Ex.

*ædel-t, ædlere, ædleste; sikker-t, sikrere, sikrest;*  
beskjeden-t,\*) beskjednere, beskjednest, modest; &c.

Derivative adjectives in *ig* and *lig*, admit only *-st* (not *est*) in the superlative, as:

*ærlig-t, ærligere, ærligst, honest; værdig-t, værdigere, værdigst, worthy; &c.*

The following are irregular in their degrees:

<i>lang-t, længere, længst, long;</i>	<i>mange plur., flere, fleest, many;</i>
<i>ung-t, yngre, yngst, young;</i>	<i>god-t, bedre, bedst, good;</i>
<i>stør-t, større, størst; great;</i>	<i>ond-t</i>
<i>lidet, -en, mindre, mindst, small;</i>	<i>værre, værst, evil, bad;</i>
<i>smaa, (plur.), smærre, (smærrest); gammel-t, ældre, ældst, old;</i>	
<i>faa, (plur.), færre, færrest, few;</i>	<i>(nær-t,) nærmere, nærmest, near;</i>
<i>meget, en, mere, meest, much;</i>	

National adjectives and several others are used only in the positive degree, as: *spansk* Spanish; *islandsk*, Icelandic; thus also:

*heel, whole; enkelt, simple;*  
*østre, eastern; sydre (søndre), southern;*  
*vestre, western; nørdre, nørre, northern.*

Some adjectives are defective in the positive degree, and some even in the compar. being originally adverbs or prepositions, as:

<i>(ned, down), nedre, nederst;</i>	<i>(for, fore) — forrest;</i>
<i>(over, over), øvre, överst;</i>	<i>(bag, behind) — bagerst;</i>
<i>(ud, out), ydre, yderst;</i>	<i>(för, before) — först;</i>
<i>(ind, in), indre, inderst;</i>	<i>(siden, afterwards) — sidst;</i>
<i>ene, alone — det eneste;</i>	<i>(mellem, between) — mellemst;</i>

Participles very rarely admit the inflection of degree, but in order to express the same ideas, they take before them *meer (mere)* more, in the comparative, and *meest*, most, in the superlative as:

\*) Molbech an others write *beskednen*.

*godgjørende*, charitable, *meer*, *meest godgjørende* ;  
*elshet*, beloved, *meer*, *meest elshet* ;  
*drukken*, drunk, *meer*, *meest drukken* ;  
*skjeløjet*, squinting, *meer*, *meest skjeløjet* ;

A diminution of degree, having no appropriate termination, is always expressed by prefixing the adverbs *mindre*, less, and *mindst*, least, as :

*mindre*, *mindst hvid-t*, less, least white ;  
*mindre*, *mindst syg-t*, less, least sick ;  
*mindre*, *mindst elshe-t*, less, least beloved ;  
*mindre*, *mindst drukken*, less, least drunk, &c.

## PRONOUNS.

20. The personal pronouns, (*personlige Stedord*), in Danish as in English, have also an objective case (accusative and dative), but are sometimes defective in the genitive, as :

1st person.	2d person.	3d person.	
		recipr.	masc. fem.
S. Nom. <i>jeg</i> , I,	<i>du</i> , thou,	=	<i>han</i> , he, <i>hun</i> she;
Object. <i>mig</i> , me,	<i>dig</i> , thee,	<i>sig</i> ,	<i>ham</i> , him, <i>hende</i> , her,
Gen. "	"	=	<i>hans</i> , his, <i>hendes</i> , her,
P. Nom. <i>vi</i> , we,	<i>I</i> , you,	=	=
Object. <i>os</i> , us,	<i>eder (jer)</i> , you,	<i>sig</i> ,	=
Gen. <i>vores</i> , ours,	<i>eders (jer)</i> . yours,	=	=

The plur. of *han*, *hun*, is supplied for both genders by *de*, *dem*, *deres*, being the plur. of the demonstr.

*Selv*, self, is used as in English to make the two 1st pers. reciprocal, as : *mig selv*, *os selv*, &c. it is also frequently added to the nominatives of all three personal pronouns and to the recip. in order to make them more expressive, as : *jeg selv*, I myself; *vi selv*, we ourselves; *sig selv*, himself, themselves. *Han selv* means also the master of the house, *hun selv*, the lady of the house, pl. *de selv*, master and mistress. But *selv* is never added to the genit.

21. The Genit. sing. of the two first persons and of the recipr. form of the third is supplied by the possessive pronouns (*Ejestedord*), which are declined like indef. adjectives, thus:

	neut. com. plur.
of the 1st pers.	<i>mit, min, mine, my, mine;</i>
— 2d pers.	<i>dit, din, dine, thy, thine;</i>
— recipr.	<i>sit, sin, sine, its, his, her own.</i>

Even from the plurals possessives are formed thus:

of the 1st pers.	<i>vort, vor, vore, our, ours;</i>
— 2d pers.	<i>(jért), jer, jere, your, yours;</i>
— recipr.	<i>sit, sin, sine, their own, theirs.</i>

The last however is much disputed, the Grammarians commonly limiting the use of *sit, sin* to those cases, where the nominative is singular; but being derived from *sig*, which is allowed to be used also of a plural, it appears to have just claims to the same right, and thus it is used in Icelandic and Swedish, and even oftentimes in Danish authors, especially the elder. Nay, the Latin use of the corresponding word *suum, suus, sua*, seems to justify the extension we have given it.

The Gen. *vores* is used absolutely, like the Engl. *ours*, but the possessive *vort, vor*, in connection with nouns substantive like *our*: but *eders* is commonly used in both cases by authors, so that *jért, jer*, rarely occurs but in common conversation.

*Eget, egen, égne, own*, is used as a sort of reciprocal possessive, corresponding to the personal recipr. *selv*, e. g. *mit eget*, my own, *vort eget*, our own, *hans egen*, his own, *hendes egne*, her own.

22. The neuter gender of the third person, as also its plural in all genders, are supplied by the demonstrative pronoun (*bestemmende Stedord*) *det, den*, which is thus declined.

	neut.	com.
Sing. Nom.	<i>det,</i>	<i>den,</i>
Obj.	<i>det,</i>	<i>den,</i>
Gen.	<i>dets,</i>	<i>dens,</i>
Plur. Nom.	<i>de,</i>	
Obj.	<i>dem,</i>	
Gen.	<i>deres.</i>	

The plur. of this word is used in common conversation to a single person, or to several, like the English *you*, and in this case it is always written with a capital letter for the sake of distinction \*): *De, Dem, Deres.*

But in connection with a substantive it is declined like the def. art. of the adjectives, from which it is distinguished merely by a peculiar stress or emphasis, when used demonstratively thus:

Sing. Nom.	<i>dét Börd,</i>	<i>dén Stöl,</i>
Gen.	<i>dét Börds,</i>	<i>dén Stöls,</i>
Plur. Nom.	<i>dé Börde,</i>	<i>dé Stôle,</i>
Gen.	<i>dé Bördes,</i>	<i>dé Stôles,</i>

The remaining demonstratives have no more than these three inflections, viz.

<i>dette,</i>	<i>denne,</i>	pl. <i>disse,</i>	this;
<i>hint,</i>	<i>hin,</i>	—	<i>hine,</i> that;
<i>saadant,</i>	<i>suadan,</i>	—	<i>saadanne,</i> such;
<i>sligt,</i>	<i>slig,</i>	—	<i>slige,</i> such;

*samme*, same, is indeclinable, being properly the def. form of and old demonstr. *sam-t*, though often used without the article. Only, like the other demons., it receives the genit. termination *-s*, when standing absolute, as *dettes, hins, saadannes, sammes &c.*

\*) The capital letter is considered as a mark of respect, and it would be held to be an insult to write this pronoun, when used in addressing another person, with a small letter. This fashion is originally German, for the Germans also write "*Sie*" and "*Ihnen*" with a capital.

23. Relative pronouns (*henvisende Stedord*) are:

*der*, who, that, used only in the nominative without distinction of gender and number;

*som*, who, whom, that, used both as nominative and object, but likewise without distinction of gender and number.

Both interrogative (*spørgende*) and relative, are:

*hvaad*, what, used of things, and *hvem*, (formerly in the nom. *hvo*), who, whom, of persons, the latter even sometimes as a plural;

*hvilket*, *hvilken*, pl. *hvilke*, which.

To all these relatives and interrogatives the only abs. genitive is *hvis* for both numbers;

*hvordant*, *hvordan*, *hvordanne*, how (Lat. *quale*, is) is scarcely ever used in the objective or genitive.

24. Indefinite pronouns (*ubestemte Stedord*) are:

*der*, it, or there, which expresses a perfectly indefinite subject\*), especially with passive verbs, as: *der siger at han kommer hertil*, it is said, or they say that he is coming hither; *der er næppe nogen som troer det*, there is scarcely anybody who believes it.

*man*, one, a person, (the French *on*), as: *man maa finde sig deri*, one must put up with it; *man taler meget*

\*) Professor Rask often uses the term "Subject" in the sense which it frequently has with the German grammarians; but which is little known in England. What Rask calls "Subject", the English Grammarians always call "nominative". A Dane asks: "Hvad er Subjectet i denne Sætning?" In English he must express the same question thus: "What is the nominative in this proposition?" English scholars are so little accustomed to the continental school term "*subjectum grammaticale*", that they would, I think, better understand the Greek term, *ὑποκείμενον*, than "subject", as expressive of that notion, which they use to call "nominative." ED.

*derom*, they speak much about it. This word is merely used as nominat. or subject; in the objective case we sometimes say *En*, one, instead of it, and in the gen. *Ens*, speaking of ourselves.

*noget, nogen*, pl. *nogle* or *nogen*, some; any;  
*(somi)* = pl. *somme*, some people;  
*intet, ingen*, pl. *ingen*, nothing, nobody, none;  
*alt, al*, pl. *alle*, all, every;  
*hvert, hver*, (without a pl.) every; also *ethvert, enhver*;  
*ingenting* (*ingen Ting*), nothing; *alting*, every thing;  
*et andet, en anden*, pl. *andre*; another, somebody else;

this last word is also used definitely without changing its form, as: *det andet Bord*, the other table, &c.

*Hinanden*, each other, speaking of two;

*hverandre*, one another, speaking of a greater number.

25. The numeral pronouns (*Talordene*) are of two sorts, viz.

a) cardinals ( <i>Mængdetal</i> );	b) ordinals ( <i>Ordenstal</i> ).
1. <i>eet, een</i> , one,	<i>det, den første</i> ,
2. <i>to</i> , two,	<i>det andet, den anden</i> ,
3. <i>tre</i> , three,	<i>det, den tredie</i> ,
4. <i>fire</i> , four,	— <i>fjerde</i> ,
5. <i>fem</i> , five,	— <i>femte</i> ,
6. <i>six</i> ,	— <i>sjette</i> ,
7. <i>syo</i> , seven,	— <i>syvende</i> ,
8. <i>aatte</i> ( <i>otte</i> ), <sup>*)</sup> eight,	— <i>attende, [ottende]</i> ,
9. <i>ni</i> , nine,	— <i>niende</i> ,
10. <i>ti</i> , ten,	— <i>tiende</i> ,
11. <i>elleve</i> , eleven,	— <i>elleste</i> ,
12. <i>tolv</i> , twelve,	— <i>tolte</i> ,
13. <i>tretten</i> , thirteen,	— <i>trettende</i> ,
14. <i>fjorten</i> , fourteen,	— <i>fjörtende</i> ,
15. <i>femten</i> , fifteen,	— <i>femtende</i> ,

\*) The usual spelling certainly is "*otte*" and Molbech has no other. Prof. Rasks spelling however is supported both by pronunciation and etymology, the Icelandic word being "*áttá*".

16. <i>sejsten</i> [commonly <i>sexten</i> ],	<i>den</i> , <i>det sjæstende</i> [commonly <i>sextende</i> ],
<i>sixteen,</i>	
17. <i>sytten</i> , seventeen,	— <i>sytende,</i>
18. <i>atten</i> , eighteen,	— <i>attende,</i>
19. <i>nitten</i> , nineteen,	— <i>nittende,</i>
20. <i>tyve</i> , twenty.	— <i>tyvende,</i>
21. <i>een og tyve</i> , twenty one &c.	— <i>een-og-tyvende,</i> twenty first,
30. <i>trædive</i> , thirty,	— <i>trædife</i> [commonly <i>tredivete</i> ], thirtieth,
40. <i>fyrretyve</i> , forty,	— <i>fyrgetyvende</i> , fortieth,
50. <i>halvtreds</i> , <i>halvtresinds-</i>	— <i>halvtresindstyvende</i> [commonly <i>halvtredsindstyvende</i> ], fiftieth,
<i>tyve</i> [commonly <i>halv-</i>	— <i>tresindstyvende</i> , sixtieth,
<i>tredsindstyve</i> ],	
60. <i>tres</i> , <i>tresindstyve</i> , [commonly	
<i>tredsindstyve</i> and <i>tredsinds-</i>	
<i>tyvende</i> ,] sixty,	
70. <i>halvfjørs</i> ,	— <i>halvfjersindstyvende,</i>
<i>halvfjersindstyve</i> ,	seventieth,
80. <i>firs</i> ,	— <i>firsindstyvende</i> , eightieth,
<i>firsindstyve</i>	
90. <i>halvfems</i>	— <i>halvfemsindstyvende</i> , nine-
<i>halvfemsindstyve</i>	tieth,
100. <i>hundrede</i> , hundred,	— <i>hundrede</i> , hundredth,
101. <i>hundrede og een</i> , een,	— <i>hundrede-og-første</i> , &c.
200. <i>to hundrede</i> , two hundred,	— <i>to hundrede</i> , two hundred,
1000. <i>tusinde</i> , thousand,	— <i>tusinde</i> , thousandth.

The abbreviated forms, *halvtrés*, *tré*s, *halvfjørs*, *firs*, *halvfems*, are used when the numeral stands absolute, or without a noun, consequently applied in counting; the longer forms, *halvtresindstyve* &c., in connection with nouns.

The words *hundrede*, *tusinde*, being originally nouns substantive, are sometimes written with a capital letter, and the indef. art. as: *et Hundrede*, *et Tusinde*, or abbreviated, *et Hundred*, *et Tusind*.

*En Millión*, a million, *Billión*, *Trillión*, &c. are also nouns substantive, and constantly used as such.

There are also some other numeral nouns, as:

- et Par*, a couple, a pair, a brace;  
*et Deger*, a dicher;                    *et Dosin*, a dozen;  
*en Snees*, a score;                    *en Skok*, three score.  
    *en Ol*, four score.

Some numeral adjectives are styled multiplicatives by the Latin Grammarians, viz.

- enkelt*, single, simple;                *dobbelt*, double;  
*tredobbelt*, triple;                    *firdobbelt*, quadruple, &c.

But there are no numeral adverbs in Danish like *once*, *twice*, *thrice*, instead of them we constantly use the noun *Gang*, time, with a cardinal or ordinal prefixed, as:

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <i>een Gang</i> , once,    | <i>förste Gang</i> , the first time;     |
| <i>to Gange</i> , twice,   | <i>anden Gang</i> , the second time;     |
| <i>tre Gange</i> , thrice. | <i>tredie Gang</i> , the third time, &c. |

We even say: *een ad Gangen*, one at a time; *to ad Gangen*, two at a time, &c.

The fractions are thus expressed:-

*halvt*, *halv*, *halve*, half, is a regular adj. indef. & def.  
but  $\frac{1}{2}$  is read *en halv*,

$1\frac{1}{2}$	—	<i>halvtandet</i> , <i>halvanden</i> ,
		or <i>eet og et halvt</i> , <i>een og en halv</i> ;
$2\frac{1}{2}$	—	<i>halvtredie</i> , or <i>to og en halv</i> ;
$3\frac{1}{2}$	—	<i>halvfjerde</i> , or <i>tre og en halv</i> ; &c.
$\frac{1}{3}$	—	<i>en Trediedeel</i> ,
$1\frac{1}{3}$	—	<i>een og en Trediedeel</i> ,
$\frac{2}{3}$	—	<i>to Trediedele</i> ,
$\frac{1}{4}$	—	<i>en Fjerdedeel</i> ,
$\frac{2}{4}$	—	<i>to Fjerdedele</i> ,
$\frac{3}{4}$	—	<i>tre Fjerdedele</i> , &c.

## VERBS.

### 26. *Introductory observations.*

The inflection of the Danish verbs (*Gjerningsord*) is very simple, and like that of the English; we distinguish however an active and a passive voice (*Hand-*

*leformen & Lideformen),* but the latter is always formed by merely adding the termination *s* or *es*.

The verb itself has, properly speaking, three modes viz. the indicative (*den fremsættende Maade*); the optative (*den ønskende*) and the imperative (*den bydende*); besides the derived forms: the infinitive (*Navneformen*), and the participles (*Tillægsformerne*), being two as in English, and of the same denominations. The indicative has two tenses (*Tidsformer*), viz. the present (*Nutiden*) and the past (*Datiden*), the other modes and forms have only one tense each. The present and past of the indicative and the passive partic. are the most important parts of the verbs.

With respect to the formation of these inflections, the verbs are divided into two great orders (*Hovedarter*), the one more simple and regular, the other more complex and irregular; each of them however is subdivided into different classes according to the formation of the past tense of the indic. active. The simple order forms only one conjugation, it always terminates the past in *de* or *te*, and has consequently more than one syllable; it has three sub-classes: the 1st trisyllabic in the past, & terminating in *-ede*; the 2d dissyllabic, and terminating in *te* (or *de*); the 3d also dissyllabic, and terminating in *de* (or *te*) but changing, besides, the vowel in the radical syllable. In the complex order the past tense is always monosyllabic having no termination, or affix, but ending in the last radical letter, and usually changing the vowel. It may be divided into two conjugations, the one usually preserving the original vowel of the present in the participle passive; the other changing the vowel not only in the past tense, but also in the participle. Each of these conjugations has also three sub-classes according to the vowels adopted in the past. The following synopsis may give the reader a view of the whole system:

*The simple order or 1st conjugation:*

	pres.	past.	part. pass.
cl. 1.	<i>jeg klager,</i> *	<i>klagede,</i>	<i>klaget</i> , complain;
cl. 2.	<i>jeg brænder,</i>	<i>brændte,</i>	<i>brændt</i> , burn;
cl. 3.	<i>jeg følger,</i>	<i>fulgte,*</i> )	<i>fulgt</i> , accompany;

*The complex order, 2d conjugation.*

cl. 1.	<i>jeg beder,</i>	<i>bad,</i>	<i>bedet</i> ( <i>bédt</i> ), pray;
cl. 2.	<i>jeg faar,</i>	<i>fik,</i> [commonly <i>faaer</i> ]	<i>faaet</i> , get;
cl. 3.	<i>jeg lader,</i>	<i>lod,</i>	<i>ladet</i> , let;

*The 3d conjugation.*

cl. 1.	<i>jeg slipper,</i>	<i>slap</i> (pl. <i>sluppe</i> ), <i>sluppet</i> , -en, escape;
cl. 2.	<i>jeg rører,</i>	<i>rev</i> (— <i>reve</i> ), <i>revet</i> , -en, tear;
cl. 3.	<i>jeg byder,</i>	<i>bød</i> (— <i>bude</i> ), <i>budet</i> , -en, invite.

The persons are only distinguished by the pronouns or other words added, never by peculiar terminations; even the two numbers are often formed alike, or confounded in common conversation, even when distinguished in the written language.

The imperative has no more than the second person in either number.

The passive voice admits of no distinction of numbers or persons, but merely of tenses and modes.

**27. *The first conjugation.***

As paradigms of this order let us take, *jeg elsker*, I love; *jeg hører*, I hear; *jeg lægger*, I lay, which are thus inflected.

\*) Rask and some other authors write "fulgte" which, no doubt, is etymologically correct, for the Icelandic has "*fylgdi*". Molbech however writes "fulgte" and such certainly is the usual spelling. Modern Danish looks much more to German analogies than to Icelandic etymology: the German has "folgte" in the past. hence Danish "fulgte".

## The active voice.

## Indicative mode.

	1st class	2d class	3d class
Pres. Sing.	<i>elsker,</i>	<i>hörer,</i>	<i>lägger,</i>
Plur.	<i>elske,</i>	<i>höre,</i>	<i>lägge,</i>
Past. Sing.	<i>elskede,</i>	<i>hörte,</i>	<i>lagde,</i>
Plur.	<i>elskede,</i>	<i>hörte,</i>	<i>lagde,</i>

## Optative mode.

Pres. Sing.	<i>elske !</i>	<i>höre !</i>	<i>lägge !</i>
Plur.	<i>elske !</i>	<i>höre !</i>	<i>lägge !</i>

## Imperative mode.

Pres. Sing. 2. <i>elsk (du)</i>	<i>hör,</i>	<i>läg,</i>
Plur. 2. <i>elsker (I)</i>	<i>hörer,</i>	<i>lägger,</i>

## Derived forms.

Infin.	<i>(at) elsker,</i>	<i>(at) höre,</i>	<i>(at) lägge,</i>
Partic.	<i>elskende,</i>	<i>hörende,</i>	<i>läggende,</i>

## The passive voice.

## Indicative mode.

Pres.	<i>elskes,</i>	<i>höres,</i>	<i>lägges,</i>
Past.	<i>elskedes,</i>	<i>hörtes,</i>	<i>lägdes,</i>

## Optative or Imperative mode.

Pres.	<i>elskes,</i>	<i>höres,</i>	<i>lägges,</i>
-------	----------------	---------------	----------------

## Derived forms.

Infin.	<i>(at) elskes,</i>	<i>(at) höres,</i>	<i>(at) lägges,</i>
Part. Sing.	<i>elsket,</i>	<i>hört,</i>	<i>lägt,</i>
Plur.	<i>elskede;</i>	<i>hörte;</i>	<i>lägte.</i>

## 28. Of the 1st class are:

<i>vander,</i>	<i>vandede,</i>	<i>vandet,</i>	water ;
<i>strander,</i>	<i>strandede,</i>	<i>strandet,</i>	strand ;
<i>vænter, *)</i>	<i>vantede,</i>	<i>væntet,</i>	expect ;
<i>henter,</i>	<i>hentede,</i>	<i>hentet,</i>	fetch ;
<i>agter,</i>	<i>agtede,</i>	<i>agtet,</i>	intend ;
<i>arbejder,</i>	<i>arbejdede,</i>	<i>arbejdet,</i>	work, &c.

\*) There is no doubt whatever that Rask is right in writing *vante* according to the Icelandic etymology *vænta*. The common spelling *vente* is barbarous.

Some verbs of this class having three consonants after the first vowel, preserve the final *e* in the sing. of the imperative, as: *handle som du vil behandles*, do as you will be done by; *forandre kun det*, you had better alter that, (not *handl*, *forandr*).

Verbs that have no consonant after the first vowel are of three sorts, viz. 1) those in *ier*, *uer* are wholly regular; 2) those in *yer*, throw away the *e* in the pl. of the pres. and in the infin. 3) the rest are monosyllabic in the pres. tense throughout, and in the infinit. thus:

<i>bier,</i>	<i>bie,</i>	<i>biede,</i>	<i>biet,</i>	wait;
<i>suer,</i>	<i>sue,</i>	<i>suede,</i>	<i>suet,</i>	suck;
<i>flyer,</i>	<i>fly, *)</i>	<i>flyede,</i>	<i>flyet,</i>	flee;
<i>skyer,</i>	<i>sky,</i>	<i>skyede,</i>	<i>skyet,</i>	shun;
<i>snér,</i>	<i>sne,</i>	<i>sneede,</i>	<i>sneet,</i>	snows;
<i>tér,</i>	<i>te,</i>	<i>teede,</i>	<i>teet,</i>	show;
<i>bór,</i>	<i>bo,</i>	<i>boede,</i>	<i>boet,</i>	dwell;
<i>trór,</i>	<i>tro,</i>	<i>troede,</i>	<i>troet,</i>	believe;
<i>naar,</i>	<i>naa,</i>	<i>naaede,</i>	<i>naaet,</i>	reach;
<i>saaer,</i>	<i>saa,</i>	<i>saaede,</i>	<i>saaet,</i>	sow;
<i>strör,</i>	<i>strö,</i>	<i>ströede,</i>	<i>ströet,</i>	strew.

## 29. Of the 2d class are:

<i>tænker,</i>	<i>tænkte,</i>	<i>tænkt,</i>	think;
<i>taber,</i>	<i>table,</i>	<i>tabt,</i>	lose;
<i>kjender,</i>	<i>kjendte,</i>	<i>kjendt,</i>	know;
<i>vender,</i>	<i>vendte,</i>	<i>vendt,</i>	turn;
<i>lærer,</i>	<i>lærte,</i>	<i>lært,</i>	learn, teach;
<i>volder,</i>	<i>voldte,</i>	<i>voldt,</i>	occasion;

Several verbs are inflected either according to this, or the 1st class; in such cases the contracted or shorter form of the past is the most usual, as: *jeg kalder*, I call, *kal-dede*, or *kaldte*, called; *hælder*, incline, or pour in, *hældede* or *hældte*; *taler*, speak, *talede*, or *talte*.

\*) Molbech writes *flye*, *skye*, *snee*, *tee*, *boe*, *troe*, *naae*, *saae*, *ströe*; but in all these the final *e* is mute.

Some authors give this class -de in the past, as : *hørde*, *følde*, *felt*, *tænkde*, *tabde*, &c., but this appears to be against the common pronunciation and the best usage.

Some irregular verbs have really -de in the past, viz. *har*, pl. *have*, *havde*, *haft*, *have*; *vil*, pl. *ville*, *vilde*, *villet*, *will*, *har*, being contracted for *haver*, forms in the passive *haves*; but *vil*, being a neuter verb, has no passive voice.

<i>döe, dö,</i>	<i>döde,</i>	<i>döet,</i>	<i>die,</i>
<i>skjér, skje, *)</i>	<i>skjede,</i>	<i>skjét,</i>	<i>happen.</i>

30. According to the rules for the 3d class are inflected :

<i>kæler,</i>	<i>kvalde,</i>	<i>kvalt,</i>	<i>suffocate;</i>
<i>tæller,</i>	<i>talde,</i>	<i>talt,</i>	<i>count;</i>
<i>vælger,</i>	<i>valgte,</i>	<i>valgt,</i>	<i>choose;</i>
<i>vænner,</i>	<i>vanded,</i>	<i>vant,</i>	<i>accustom;</i>
<i>siger,</i>	<i>sagde,</i>	<i>sagt,</i>	<i>say;</i>
<i>bringer,</i>	<i>bragde,</i>	<i>bragt,</i>	<i>bring;</i>
<i>sælger,</i>	<i>saalgde,</i>	<i>saalgt,</i>	<i>sell;</i>
<i>træder,</i>	<i>traadte,</i>	<i>traadt,</i>	<i>tread;</i>
<i>smører,</i>	<i>smurde,</i>	<i>smurt,</i>	<i>smear;</i>
<i>spørger,</i>	<i>spurgde,</i>	<i>spurgt,</i>	<i>ask;</i>
<i>fölger,</i>	<i>fulgde,</i>	<i>fulgt,</i>	<i>attend;</i>
<i>dölger,</i>	<i>dulgde,</i>	<i>dulgt,</i>	<i>conceal;</i>
<i>flækker,</i>	<i>flakte,</i>	<i>flakt,</i>	<i>cleave;</i>
<i>rækker,</i>	<i>rakte,</i>	<i>rakt,</i>	<i>reach;</i>
<i>strækker,</i>	<i>strakte,</i>	<i>strakt,</i>	<i>stretch;</i>
<i>tækker,</i>	<i>takte,</i>	<i>takt,</i>	<i>thatch;</i>
<i>vækker,</i>	<i>vakte,</i>	<i>vakt,</i>	<i>awake;</i>
<i>sætter,</i>	<i>satte,</i>	<i>sat,</i>	<i>set.</i>

[Molbech and the great majority of Danish authors certainly write

<i>quæler,</i>	<i>qualte,</i>
<i>vænner,</i>	<i>vante,</i>
<i>bringer,</i>	<i>bragte,</i>
<i>sælger,</i>	<i>solgte,</i>
<i>spørger,</i>	<i>spurgte,</i>
<i>fölger,</i>	<i>fulgte,</i>

\*) Commonly *skeer*, *skee*. ED.

<i>dölger,</i>	<i>dulgte,</i>
<i>tæller,</i>	<i>talte;</i>

but Rask, who endeavoured to establish a system of orthography founded on etymology, has Icelandic analogies always in remembrance: the Icelanders say *ven*, *vandi*; *sel*, *seldi*; *spyr*, *spurdi*; *fylgi*, *fylgdi*; *tel*, *taldi* &c. which no doubt led Rask to adopt *d* in preference to *t* in the past tenses of these verbs. ED.]

Some writers, not considering this as a regular class, prefer saying in the past: *kvælede*, *tællede*, *vænede*, *rækkede*, *strækkede*, *tækkede*, *vækkede*; but as this trailing formation cannot be extended to all cases, nobody saying *vælgede*, *sigede*, *spørgede*, *sættede*, nor to the participles, so as to say *kvælet*, *tællet*, &c. it appears rather to destroy the real regularity, than to introduce any.

Instead of *talde*, *talt*, we say also *taalde*, *taalt*, and this formation ought perhaps to be recommended, being analogous to *sælger*, *saalgde*, and distinguishing the word more clearly from *taler*, *talte*, *talt*; with the verb, *taaler*, *taalte*, *taalt*, endure, there is little fear of a confusion, these two words being used in totally different combinations.

There are however some real irregulars of this class, viz.

Sing.	Plur.	Past.	Part.	Infinit.
<i>gjør</i> ,	<i>gjøre</i> ,	<i>gjørde</i> ,	<i>gjört-e</i> ,	at <i>gjøre</i> , make, do ;
<i>tör</i> ,	<i>tör</i> ,	<i>tórde</i> ,	<i>tordet</i> ,	— <i>torde</i> , dare ;
<i>tör</i> ,	<i>tör</i> ,	<i>türde</i> ,	<i>türdet</i> ,	— <i>turde</i> , need ;*)
<i>bör</i> ,	<i>bör</i> ,	<i>bürde</i> ,	<i>bürdet</i> ,	— <i>burde</i> , ought ;

\*) This distinction between *tör*, *torde*, to dare, and *tör*, *turde*, to need, is not generally observed. Molbech in his dictionary has, no doubt, the various senses, but only one form of the verb: *tör*, *turde*, *turdet*. Of course, Rask derives his *tör*, *torde*, from the Icelandic *þori*, *þordi*; but *tör*, *turde*, from the German *dürfen*.

Sing.	Plur.	Past.	Part.	Infinit.
maa,	maa,	maatte,	maattet,	at maatte, must;
kan,	kunne,	kunde,	kunnet,	— kunne, can;
skal,	skulle,	skulde,	skullet,	— skulle, shall;
veed,	vide,	vidste,	vidst,	— vide, know.

The partic. *tordet*, *turdet*, *burdet*, are often, in common conversation, contracted to *tórdt*, *túrdt*, *búrdt*.

### 31. *The second conjugation.*

As paradigms may serve *giver*, give; *faar*, \*) get; *drager*, draw, pull; which are thus inflected.

#### The activ voice.

##### Indicative mode.

Pres. Sing.	<i>giver</i> ,	<i>faar</i> ,	<i>drager</i> ,
Plur.	<i>give</i> ,	<i>faa</i> ,	<i>drage</i> ,
Past. Sing.	<i>gav</i> ,	<i>fik</i> ,	<i>drog</i> ,
Plur.	<i>gave</i> ,	<i>fik</i> , ( <i>singe</i> ),	<i>droge</i> ,

##### Optative mode.

Pres.	<i>give</i> .	<i>faa</i> ,	<i>drage</i> ,
Imperative mode.			

Pres. Sing. 2.	<i>giv</i> , ( <i>du</i> ),	<i>faa</i> ,	<i>drag</i> ,
Plur. 2.	<i>giver</i> ( <i>I</i> ),	<i>faar</i> ,	<i>drager</i> ,

##### Derived forms.

Infin.	(at) <i>give</i> ,	(at) <i>faa</i> ,	(at) <i>drage</i> ,
Part.	<i>givende</i> ,	( <i>faaende</i> )	<i>dragende</i> ,

#### The passive voice.

##### Indicative mode.

Pres.	<i>gives</i> ,	<i>faas</i>	<i>drages</i> ,
Past.	<i>gaves</i> ,	( <i>fikkes</i> ),	<i>droges</i> ,

##### Optative or Imperative mode.

Pres.	<i>gives</i> ,	<i>faas</i> ,	<i>drages</i> ,
-------	----------------	---------------	-----------------

\*) This verb has with Molbech and other authors a mute e both in the active and the passive voice, viz. *faær*, *faaes* &c.

*Derived forms.*

Infin.	(at) <i>gives</i> ,	(at) <i>faas</i> ,	(at) <i>drages</i> .
Part. Sing.	<i>givel</i> , -en,	<i>faaet</i> ,	<i>draget</i> , -en,
Plur.	<i>givne</i> ;	<i>faaede</i> ;	<i>dragne</i> .

The participle passive creates some difficulty, being sometimes formed in *et* in the neut., *en* in the com., *-ne*, in the plur.; sometimes merely used as a supine (*Bi-form*) in the neuter sing. in *et*, sometimes the plur. is formed as in 1st conjug., in *-ede*, or *-te*.

32. To the first class belong the verbs enumerated in the following list, where also the plur. of the past, whenever it differs from the sing., shall be marked, as also the com. gend. and plur. of the partic. pass., whenever these forms occur.

<i>kvæder</i> ,	<i>kvad-e</i> ,	<i>kvædet</i> ,	sing ;
<i>beder</i> ,	<i>bad-e</i> ,	<i>bedet</i> , <i>bedt-e</i> ,	beg ;
<i>gider</i> ,	<i>gad-e</i> ,	<i>gidet</i> , ( <i>gidt</i> ),	like ;
<i>sidder</i> ,	<i>sad-e</i> ,	<i>siddet</i> ,	sit ; -
<i>stinker</i> ,	<i>stank</i> ,	<i>stinket</i> ,	stink ;
<i>klinger</i> ,	<i>klang</i> ,	<i>klinget</i> ,	sound ;
<i>hænger</i> ,	<i>hang</i> ,	<i>hængt-e</i> ,	hang ;
<i>gjælder</i> ,	<i>gjaldt</i> ,	<i>gjøldt</i> ,	is valid ;
<i>skjælver</i> ,	<i>skjalv</i> ,	<i>skjælvet</i> ,	tremble ;
<i>falder</i> ,	<i>faldt</i> ,	<i>faldet</i> , -en, -ne,	fall ;
<i>tier</i> ,	<i>tav</i> ,	<i>tiet</i> ,	am silent ;
<i>smækker</i> ,	<i>smak</i> ,	<i>smækket</i> , -de,	clap ;
<i>ligger</i> ,	<i>laa</i> ,	<i>ligget</i> , -de,	lie ;
<i>æder</i> ,	<i>aad</i> ,	<i>ædt-e</i> ,	eat (of beasts);
<i>sér</i> ,	<i>saae</i> ,	<i>sét-e</i> ,	see ;
<i>stjæler</i> ,	<i>stjal</i> (e),	<i>stjaale</i> t, -en, -ne,	steal ;
<i>skærer</i> ,	<i>skar-e</i> ,	<i>skaaret</i> , -en, -ne,	cut ;
<i>bærer</i> ,	<i>bar-e</i> ,	<i>baaret</i> , -en, -ne,	bear.

For *klang* some authors write *klingede*; for *gjaldt*, *gjøldte*; for *skjalv*, *skjælvede*; for *tav*, *taug* or *tiede*, partic. *taugt*.\*). In *saae* the *e* final is mute both in the

\*) The great majority of authors certainly write *taug* in the past, *tiet* in part. pass. *Taug* is undoubtedly right, for the past as it is

sing. and plur., and merely used in order to distinguish this tense from the conjunction *saa*, so, then.

The auxiliary *jeg er*, I am, is entirely irregular, and thus inflected:

	Indicative	Optative	Infin.
Pres. Sing.	<i>er</i> ,	<i>være!</i>	( <i>at</i> ) <i>være</i> ,
Plur.	<i>ere</i> ,		
		Imperat.	Partic.
Past. Sing.	<i>var</i> ,	<i>vær</i> ,	<i>værende</i> ,
Plur.	<i>vare</i> ,	<i>værer</i> ,	<i>været</i> ,

33. The second class contains merely three verbs besides the paradigm. viz.

<i>gaar,*)</i>	<i>gik</i> , ( <i>ginge</i> ),	<i>gaaet</i> ,	<i>go</i> ;
<i>hedder,</i>	<i>hed</i> ,	<i>hedi</i> ,	am called, [I am hight, or I hight];
<i>græder,</i>	<i>græd</i> ,	<i>grædt</i> ,	weep,

*Gaar*, *hedder* and *græder* have no passive at all, but the compound verb *begræder*, deplore, is regular, in the pass. *begrædes* &c. Of *gaaer* there is also a regular pass. compound, defective in the active voice, viz *omgaaes*, converse, am familiar with, *omgikkes*, sup. *omgaaedes*. The past is sometimes erroneously made *omgikkes*.

Some writers instead of *gaaet*, have begun to use *gaaen*, in the com. gend. and *gaane*, in the pl., but this innovation is entirely foreign to the cultivated language, and only sometimes used by the lowest classes of Copenhagen, with whom it has crept in from the Lowgerm. or

Dutch *gegaan*. It must be observed however, that, in the Dutch *gegaan*, the *n* is no mark of the com. gend., but the formative letter of the whole partic. in all genders and numbers like the Engl. *gone*.

*Pagdi* in Icel., *schwieg* in Germ., *zwieg* in Dutch, *craigtni* to be silent in Magyar. The *g* is not a servile letter that may be cast off at pleasure but a radical letter, as clearly appears from *Pegja schweigen*, *σιγάω*, *taceo* (tacui) &c.

ED.

\* ) The common spelling is *gaaer*, *omgaaes* &c. ED.

## 34. To the third class belong:

<i>graver,</i>	<i>grov-e, (gravede),</i>	<i>gravel, -de,</i>	<i>dig ;</i>
<i>væver,</i>	<i>vov-e, (vævede),</i>	<i>vævet, -de,</i>	<i>weave ;</i>
<i>lader,</i>	<i>lod-e,</i>	<i>ladet, ladt-e,</i>	<i>let, cause ;</i>
<i>galer,</i>	<i>göl, (galede),</i>	<i>galet,</i>	<i>crow ;</i>
<i>farer,</i>	<i>foer, fore,</i>	<i>faret, -en -ne,</i>	<i>go ;</i>
<i>erfarer,</i>	<i>erfoer-e (erfarede),</i>	<i>erfaret, -en, -ne,</i>	<i>experience ;</i>
<i>jager,</i>	<i>jog-e,</i>	<i>jaget, -de,</i>	<i>drive, chase ;</i>
<i>tager,</i>	<i>tog-e,</i>	<i>taget, -en -ne,</i>	<i>take ;</i>
<i>lér,</i>	<i>lo,</i>	<i>leet,</i>	<i>laugh ;</i>
<i>slaar,</i>	<i>slog-e,</i>	<i>slaact, -de,</i>	<i>beat ;</i>
<i>staar,*)</i>	<i>stod-e,</i>	<i>staat,</i>	<i>stand ;</i>
<i>sværger,</i>	<i>svor-e,</i>	<i>svoret -en, -ne,</i>	<i>sweat ;</i>
<i>sover,</i>	<i>sov,</i>	<i>sovet,</i>	<i>sleep ;</i>
<i>kommer,</i>	<i>kóm</i>	<i>kommet, -en -ne,</i>	<i>come ;</i>
<i>holder,</i>	<i>höldt,</i>	<i>holdt-e,</i>	<i>keep ;</i>
<i>hugger,</i>	<i>hug,</i>	<i>hugget, -de,</i>	<i>hew, cut ;</i>

But *begraver*, bury, *begrov*, makes the part. pass. *begravet*, *begraven*, *begravne*; from *slaar* there is an old partic. *slaget*, *slagen*, *slagne*; *forstaar*, understand, has in the part. pass. *forstaaet*, pl. *forstaaede*. The forms *slaan*, *gestaan*, contrary to the genius of the Danish. From *holder*, there is an old partic. *holdet*, *holdén*, *holdne*, used as an adj., and from *hugget*, is also sometimes formed *huggen*, pl. *hugne*.

35. *The third conjugation.*

As paradigms may serve: *finder*, find; *driver*, drive; *stryger*, rub, stroke.

## The active voice.

## Indicative mode.

Pres. Sing.	<i>finder,</i>	<i>driver,</i>	<i>stryger,</i>
Plur.	<i>finde,</i>	<i>drive,</i>	<i>stryge,</i>
Past. Sing.	<i>fandt,</i>	<i>drev,</i>	<i>strög,</i>
Plur.	<i>fandt, (funde),</i>	<i>dreve,</i>	<i>ströge,</i>

\* ) Commonly *staaer*; also *forstaaer* vid inf. ED.

*Optative mode.*

Pres.	<i>finde,</i>	<i>drive,</i>	<i>stryge,</i>
-------	---------------	---------------	----------------

*Imperative mode.*

Pres. Sing. 2.	<i>find,</i>	<i>driv,</i>	<i>stryg,</i>
Plur. 2.	<i>finder,</i>	<i>driver,</i>	<i>stryger,</i>

*Derived forms.*

Infin.	<i>(at) finde,</i>	<i>(at) drive,</i>	<i>(at) stryge,</i>
Part.	<i>findende,</i>	<i>drivende,</i>	<i>strygende.</i>

## The passive voice.

*Indicative mode.*

Pres.	<i>findes,</i>	<i>drives,</i>	<i>stryges,</i>
Past.	<i>fandest,</i>	<i>dreves,</i>	<i>ströges,</i>

*Imperative or Optative mode.*

Pres.	<i>findes,</i>	<i>drives,</i>	<i>stryges,</i>
-------	----------------	----------------	-----------------

*Derived forms.*

Infin.	<i>(at) findes,</i>	<i>(at) drives,</i>	<i>(at) stryges,</i>
Part. Sing.	<i>fundet, -en,</i>	<i>drevet, -en,</i>	<i>ströget, -en,</i>
Plur.	<i>fundne;</i>	<i>drévne;</i>	<i>strögne;</i>

As this conjugation also has many irregularities or varieties, it will be convenient to the learner to enumerate the most remarkable of the verbs of each class.

## 36. To the first class belong:

<i>drikker,</i>	<i>drak, (drukke),</i>	<i>drukket, -en, -ne,</i>	drink;
<i>stikker,</i>	<i>stak, (stunge),</i>	<i>stukket, -en -ne,</i>	sting;
<i>springer,</i>	<i>sprang, (sprunge),</i>	<i>sprunget, -en, -ne,</i>	leap;
<i>tringer,</i>	<i>tvang, (tvunge),</i>	<i>tvunget, -en, -ne,</i>	compel;
<i>synger,</i>	<i>sang, (sunge),</i>	<i>sunget, -en, -ne,</i>	sing;
<i>synker,</i>	<i>sank, (sunke),</i>	<i>sunket, -en, -ne,</i>	sink;
<i>binder,</i>	<i>bandt, (bunde),</i>	<i>bundet, -en, -ne,</i>	bind;
<i>svinder,</i>	<i>svandt, (svunde),</i>	<i>svündet, -en, -ne,</i>	pine; *)
<i>spinder,</i>	<i>spandt, (spunde),</i>	<i>spundet, -en, -ne,</i>	spin;
<i>slipper,</i>	<i>slap (sluppe),</i>	<i>sluppet, -en, -ne,</i>	escape;
<i>vinder,</i>	<i>vandt, (vunde),</i>	<i>vundet, -en, -ne,</i>	win;

\*) Am reduced, vanish. ED.

rinder,	randt, ( <i>runde</i> ),	rundet, -en, -ne,	flow;
brister,	brast, ( <i>bruste</i> ),	brustet, -en, -ne,	burst;
fornemner,	fornam, (-numme),	fornummet, -en,	perceive;
hjælper,	hjalp, ( <i>hjulpe</i> ),	hjulpet, -en, -ne,	help;
träffer,	traf, ( <i>trusse</i> ),	truffet, -en, -ne,	hit;
träkker,	trak, ( <i>trukke</i> ),	trukket, -en, -ne,	pull;
sprækker,	sprak, ( <i>sprukke</i> ),	sprukket, -en, -ne,	burst;
brækker,	brak,	brukket, -en, -ne,	break.

For *brak*, *brukket* we usually say *brækkede*, *brækket*, according to the 1st conj. 1st class. Perhaps *brak* should be used as a neuter verb, *träkkede* as an active one.

The difference between this class and the first of the 2d conj. is properly that this, in the past, has a short or sharp *a*, which, in the plur., is changed again to *u*, and this *u* is preserved in the partic. pass., whereas the 1st cl. of the 2d conj. has a long *a*, which is preserved in the plur. but in the partic. pass. is replaced by the original vowel of the verb in the present tense. This new change of vowel however being sometimes neglected in the plur. of the past, and in the part. pass., several verbs are transferred from this class to the other, in which consequently several words are found with a short vowel. Of this and the like changes, which the modern Danish has undergone, in the 18-15. centuries, the curious reader may find ample information in Mr. N. M. Petersen's *det danske, norske og svenske Sprogs Historie under deres Udvikling af Stamsproget*. 1ste Del, *det danske Sprog*. Kh. 1829. 8.

### 37. To the second class belong:

sliber,	sleb-e,	slebet, -en, -ne,	grind;
griber,	greb-e,	grebet, -en, -ne,	seize;
kniber,	kneb-e,	knebet, -en, -ne,	pinch;
piber,	peb-e,	pebet, -en, -ne,	pipe, whistle;
bliver,	blev-e,	blevet, -en, -ne,	become;
river,	rev-e,	revet, -en, -ne,	tear;
skriver,	skrev-e,	skrevet, -en, -ne,	write;
skriger,	skreg-e,	skreget, -en, -ne,	cry;
stiger,	steg-e,	steget, -en, -ne,	ascend;
sniger,	sneg-e,	sneget, -en, -ne,	sneak;
sviger,	sveg-e,	sveget, -en, -ne,	betray;
glider,	gled-e,	gledet, -en, -ne, ( <i>glidt</i> )	slide, glide;
viger,	veg-e,	veget, -en, -ne,	yield, cede;
gnider,	gned-e,	gnedet, -en, -ne,	rub;

<i>svider,</i>	<i>sved-e,</i>	<i>svedet, -en, -ne,</i>	<i>singe ;</i>
<i>rider,</i>	<i>red-e,</i>	<i>(ridt) redet, -en, -ne,</i>	<i>ride ;</i>
<i>strider,</i>	<i>stred-e,</i>	<i>(stridt), stredet,</i>	<i>fight, contend ;</i>
<i>skrider,</i>	<i>skred-e,</i>	<i>(skridt) skredet, -en, -ne,</i>	<i>proceed ;</i>
<i>vrider,</i>	<i>vred-e,</i>	<i>vredet, -en, -ne,</i>	<i>wring ;</i>
<i>bider,</i>	<i>bed-e,</i>	<i>bidt-e,</i>	<i>bite ;</i>
<i>lider,</i>	<i>led-e,</i>	<i>lidt-e,</i>	<i>suffer ;</i>
<i>slider,</i>	<i>sled-e,</i>	<i>slidt-e,</i>	<i>tear ;</i>
<i>smider,</i>	<i>smed-e,</i>	<i>smidt-e,</i>	<i>throw, cast, fling ;</i>
<i>triner,</i>	<i>treen,</i>	<i>trint-e,</i>	<i>step ;</i>
<i>hviner,</i>	<i>hveen *) ,</i>	<i>hvint,</i>	<i>whine, howl.</i>

38. The third class comprises the following:

<i>kryber,</i>	<i>kröb-e,</i>	<i>kröbet, -en, -ne,</i>	<i>creep ;</i>
<i>löber,</i>	<i>löb (-e),</i>	<i>löbet, -en, -ne,</i>	<i>run ;</i>
<i>ryger,</i>	<i>rög (-e),</i>	<i>röget, -ede,</i>	<i>smoke ;</i>
<i>lyver,</i>	<i>löj,</i>	<i>löjet,</i>	<i>lie (<i>mentor</i>) ;</i>
<i>flyver,</i>	<i>flöj,</i>	<i>flöjet, -en, -ne,</i>	<i>fly ;</i>
<i>byder,</i>	<i>böd-e,</i>	<i>budet, -en, -ne, budt,</i>	<i>invite, bid ;</i>
<i>bryder,</i>	<i>bröd-e,</i>	<i>brudt-e,</i>	<i>break ;</i>
<i>fortryder,</i>	<i>fortröd-e,</i>	<i>fortrudt,</i>	<i>repent ;</i>
<i>skyder,</i>	<i>sköd-e,</i>	<i>skudit-e,</i>	<i>shoot ;</i>
<i>skryder,</i>	<i>skröd-e,</i>	<i>skrydt,</i>	<i>bray ;</i>
<i>gyder,</i>	<i>göd-e,</i>	<i>gydt-e,</i>	<i>pour ;</i>
<i>lyder,</i>	<i>löd-e,</i>	<i>lydt-e,</i>	<i>obey ;</i>
<i>flyder,</i>	<i>flöd (-e),</i>	<i>flydt-e,</i>	<i>flow ;</i>
<i>nyder,</i>	<i>nöd-e,</i>	<i>nydt-e,</i>	<i>enjoy ;</i>
<i>snyder,</i>	<i>snöd-e,</i>	<i>snydt-e,</i>	<i>cheat ;</i>
<i>fryser,</i>	<i>frös (-e),</i>	<i>frusset, -en, -ne,</i>	<i>freeze ;</i>
<i>fnyser,</i>	<i>fnös (-e),</i>	<i>fnyst,</i>	<i>fret ;</i>
<i>gyser,</i>	<i>gös,</i>	<i>gyst,</i>	<i>shudder ;</i>
<i>kyser,</i>	<i>kös,</i>	<i>kýst,</i>	<i>frighten ;</i>
<i>nyser,</i>	<i>nös,</i>	<i>nyst,</i>	<i>sneeze.</i>

The four last are also in the past formed according to the 1st conjugation 2d class, for we say: *fnyste, gyste,*

\*) The two last words furnish a strong proof of the faultiness of the rules for doubling the vowels in Danish, making the perfectly regular words appear irregular. There are also some such verbs in the 2d conj. e. g. *foer* (*för*), *saae* (*sä'*).

*kýste, nýste.* There are also several variations of the partic. pass. as *brudet, -en, -ne*, instead of *brudt*; even in vulgar speech *fludt* for *flydt*, *snudt* for *snydt*, *frosset* for *frusset*, *kosset-en* for *kýst*.

### 39. Auxiliary verbs.

The verbs possessing but few inflections, in proportion to the many distinctions of tense and mode, which it is often necessary to indicate in speaking of actions with precision, auxiliary verbs (*Hjælpeord*) are applied nearly as in English, to form a number of additional tenses and modes by way of periphrasis.

The most remarkable auxiliary verbs in Danish are : *skal, vil, har, er, faar, \*) bliver*; having spoken of their inflection already under their respective classes, we have merely here to observe, to what part of the principal verb they are joined, and what modifications in its sense they are intended to express.

*Skal* and *vil* in the pres. tense denote futurity or intention, though not exactly as in English. *Skal* implies a duty and necessity on the part of the person; *vil* a mere futurity, without any personal volition a sort of prediction of what will happen, e. g. *jeg skal skrive*, I shall write, *jeg vil drukne*, I shall drown, (if...). In the past (*skulde, vilde*), they denote a futurity relative to some other time; they are prefixed to the infinitive, as: *jeg skal komme i Morgen tidlig*, I shall come (call) to morrow morning. *Han sagde jeg skulde komme*, he said (that) I should come ∵ told me to come, where I may add *i Gaar*, yesterday, the action "to come" being future merely with respect to "his orders," not with respect to my relation to time. The past of these auxiliaries also expresses the conditional future in French; e. g. *jeg skulde*

\*) Commonly *faaer*. ED.

*nok skrīee, hvis jeg havde noget at skrive om*, I would write (to him) indeed, if I had any thing to write about.

*Har* and *er* serve in the present to express the preterperfect, and in the past (*havde, var*), the pluperfect, when connected with the participle passivē of the principal verb, as: *jeg har hørt*, I have heard; *jeg havde læst*, I had read; *du (De) er kømmen for silde*, you are come too late; *han var ikke kommen*, he was not come (arrived). The difference is, that *har* is used with active verbs, *er* with some of the neuters,\* and with all the passives, e. g., *er fundet*, has been found; *var fundet*, had been found; it never, as in English, expresses the pres. of the indicative pass., so that *is found* must be rendered in Danish by *findes*, *was found* by *fandtes*.

*Faar*, get, united to the partic. pass. expresses the Engl. *shall have*, as: *naar jeg faaer skrevet*, when I shall have written, *naar han fik Bogen læst*, when he should have read (perused) the book; but *da han fik Bogen læst*, when he had got through the book.

*Har* and *faar* are sometimes combined with the infin., in order to express a duty or obligation in the person; as: *jeg har at sige Dem*, I have to say (must say) to you; *du faaer at sige mig*, you must say to (tell) me. *Er* is never used in this way, so that the Engl. I am to... must be translated, *jeg har at*, or *jeg skal, jeg maa*.

*Bliver*, am, is often used in a periphrasis of the passive, as: *bliver fundet*, is found, *blev fundet*, was found.

40. Two auxiliaries are often connected with one principal verb, as:

*har (skullet), villet sige*, has had (intended) to say;  
*havde (skullet) villet sige*, had had (intended) to say;

\*) But these are always to be considered as neutro passive verbs.

*skal, vil have sagt, shall, will have said* \*);  
*skulde, vilde have sagt, should, would have said;*  
*har haft skrevet, have had (it) written (once);*  
*havde haft skrevet, had had (it) written;*  
*skal, vil være skrevet, shall, will be written;*  
*skulde, vilde være skrevet, should, would be written;*  
*har været skrevet, has been written;*  
*havde været skrevet, had been written;*  
*skal, vil faa skrevet, shall get (it) written;*  
*skulde, vilde faa skrevet, should get (it) written;*  
*har faaet skrevet, has got written;*  
*havde faaet skrevet, had got written;*  
*skal, vil blive skrevet, shall, will be written;*  
*skulde, vilde blive skrevet, should, would be written;*  
*er blevet skrevet, has been written;*  
*var blevet skrevet, had been written;*  
*havde bleret skrevet, would have been written:*

Sometimes even three auxiliaries are added to one principal verb, as:

*det skal have været besluttet, it is said to have been resolved;*  
*det skulde have været gjort, it should have been done;*  
*det vilde have været gjort, it would have been done;*  
*det skal være blevet omtalt, it is reported that it was spoken of;*  
*det skulde have (være) blevet omtalt, it should have been spoken of;*  
*det vilde være blevet omtalt, it would have been spoken of;*  
*det skal have blevet gjort, it shall have been done;*  
*det skulde have\*\*) blevet gjort, it should have been done.*

The reader will observe, that there is a good deal more variety in the Danish than in the English circumlocutions; and that variety serves admirably to modify the sense, in a manner difficult to express in other languages; e. g. *det skulde have været gjort* signifies: it

\* ) The meaning of this phrase *jeg skal have sagt* usually is: *I am said or reported to have said*; but *han vil have sagt*, he shall have said (it, before you may warn him).

\*\*) I allow this *have*, in the two last phrases, to remain because Rask seems to have put it deliberately; but *være* ought undoubtedly to be put instead of "have." ED.

should have been previously done, and consequently then finished or completed; but *det skulde have blevet gjort* means: it should have been done after that time, implying moreover that the person would have done it, or caused it to be done. Thus also: *det skal være skrevet* means: it shall be (ready) written, or I shall have it written at a certain future time, but *det skal blive skrevet* expresses an assurance that it shall be written, or that I will write it; and *det skal skrives* expresses a command: it shall, must be written, or you have to write it. So that a master will say: *det skal gjøres i Dag*, it must be done to day: and the servant will answer: *det skal blive gjort*, it shall be done (viz. to-day); or *det skal være gjort inden Klokken sex*, it shall be done (finished) before six o'clock.

There are several other verbs used as auxiliaries, e. g. *maa*, may, must; *kan*, can, may; *tør*, dare, need; *lader*, let, cause to, &c. Besides the English student should observe, that these, as well as the auxiliaries proper, are more complete or less defective in Danish than in English, being used even in the infinitive, in the same capacity.

This great variety being modified still more by the conjunctions, *naar*, when, *da*, as, &c. it is a strange fault in some old Grammars to mistake these circumlocutions for real tenses or modes of the verbal inflection, and to admit them as such in the paradigms of the regular conjugation.

Several of the English modes of applying the auxiliaries are not used in Danish, e. g.

*I am writing*, jeg er i Færd med at skrive;  
*I was writing*, jeg var ved at skrive;  
*I am going to write*, jeg skal til at skrive;  
*I was going to write*, jeg skulde, vilde til at skrive;  
*I do not write*, jeg skriver ikke;  
*I did not write*, jeg skrev ikke, (har ikke skrevet);  
*do write*, skriv dog (endelig);  
*do not write*, skriv ikke, skriv dog ikke;  
*I have done writing*, jeg er færdig med at skrive;  
*I had done writing*, jeg var færdig med at skrive.

### 41. Different kinds of verbs.

In Danish, as in other languages which have a passive voice there is a peculiar sort of verbs with passive terminations but active signification. They are commonly called verbs deponent (*lideformede Gjerningsord*), and are regularly inflected as other passive verbs of the conj. and class, to which they belong; only the Supine, requiring also the addition of the passive *s*, creates some difficulty. Those of the first conj. 1st class form the sup. in *edes*, or *ets*, those of the 2d class in *tes*. Ex.

*fattes, fattedes* (*har fattedes*), want;  
*lykkes, lykkedes, har lykchedes* or *lykkets*, succeed, prosper;\*)  
*længes, længtes, har længtes*, long;  
*synes, syntes, har syntes*, seem;  
*slaaes, sloges, har slaaedes* or *slaaets*, fight;  
*bides, bedes, (har bidts)*, bite one another.

Some are entirely defective in the sup. as: *mindes, mindedes, recollect.*

Neuter verbs (*gjenstandsløse Gjo.*) on the contrary have no passive voice at all, as: *jeg staaer*, I stand; *jeg kommer*, I come; never *jeg staaes, jeg kommes.*

Reflective verbs (*tilbagerirkende Gjo.*) are followed by the objective cases of the pronouns, as:

*jeg smigrer mig*, I flatter myself,  
*du röber dig*, thou betrayest thyself,  
*han bader sig*, he bathes (himself,)  
*vi smigre os*, we flatter ourselves,  
*I röbe eder*, you betray yourselves,  
*de bade sig*, they bathe (themselves.)

In the 3. p. care must be taken, to distinguish the reflective pronoun *sig* from the personal (*ham, hende*, pl.

\*) When *Lykkes* is used as an impersonal verb *er* is used as its auxiliary and not *har*. A Dane certainly says: "det er sjælden lykkedes mig at faae saa god en Afstøbning. I have rarely succeeded in getting so good a cast. The Icelanders say: "pat hefr luckast."

*dem*), which after such verbs would indicate a fourth person, e. g. *han bader ham*, he bathes him, *de bade dem*, they bathe them, implies somebody beside the agent. From the reflective *sig*, must also be distinguished the reciprocal pronouns *hinanden*, each other, when speaking of two, and *hverandre*, one another, speaking of more persons, e. g.

*de elsker hinanden*, they love each other;  
*de elsker hverandre*, they love one another.

Several verbs have a reciprocal sense in the passive voice, and do not, in that case, admit any reciprocal pronoun e. g. *vi sés hver Dag*, we see each other every day. The reflective and reciprocal verbs quoted as examples hitherto may all be used as transitives, e. g. *jeg smigrer ingen*, I do not flatter anybody &c.; but some reflective verbs require in this case another expression in English, e. g. *jeg betænker mig*, I hesitate, but *jeg betænker*, I consider. \*)

Several verbs are only used as reflectives, e. g.

*jeg understaar mig*, I presume;  
*jeg skynder mig*, I hasten;

\*) This is not very clear, still I do not like to alter it. The meaning certainly is: that there are some reflective verbs in Danish which are not usually rendered by corresponding reflective verbs in English, but rather by some other absolute and intransitive verb, different from that by which the general sense of the Danish verb, when it is used absolutely, is commonly expressed, and of this Rask gives as an instance *jeg betænker mig*, which thus used as a verb reflective, must be translated "I hesitate"; although *jeg betænker*, used absolutely, must be Englished "I consider". But the example is not felicitously chosen, for the corresponding verb reflective, although perhaps rather obsolete certainly exists in this case, and is unquestionably English, since Shylock says in the Merchant of Venice: "I will bethink me": and on the other hand "I consider" or "I will consider" is also sometimes used to express the sense of the Danish *jeg betænker mig*. RD.

several others, require a preposition beside the objective pronoun, to combine them with another object, e. g.

*jeg forstaar mig paa*, I am skilled in;  
*jeg bestræber mig for*, I endeavour;  
*jeg forbinder mig til*, I engage;  
*jeg bryder mig ikke om*, I do not care about.

There are also, in Danish, as in English, many impersonal verbs (*upersonlige Gjo.*), thus called because merely used with an indefinite nominative in the 3d pers. sing. of the different tenses, though else formed regularly. Ex. *det regner*, *regnede*, (*har*) *regnet*, it rains; *det sneer*, \*) *sneede*, (*har*) *sneet*, it snows; *det lyner*, it lightens; *det tordner*, it thunders; *det tør*, *tøede*, *tøet*, it thaws. Many personal verbs can also be used impersonally, as: *jeg fryser*, it is cold to me, I shiver, but *det fryser*, it freezes; even so we say impersonally: *det blæser*, it blows; *det stormer*, it storms; *det gjør ondt*, it smarts: though *jeg blæser*, *jeg stormer*, are also used. — Likewise *man troer*, one believes o: they believe; *man siger*, they say. — Sometimes *der*, there, is prefixed as a sort of indefinite nominative, but then the real nominative is usually added afterwards, as: *der kommer en Tid*, a time will come; *der løber (gaaer) et Rygte*, there is a report; and the verb is even put in the plural, if the nominative be plur. as: *der ere de som mene*, there are (there be) those (people) who think. — Several impersonal verbs are, at the same time, deponent, though else active, when used personally. Ex. *der siges*, it is said, they say; *der skrives*, they write; *det dages*, it dawns; *det mørknes*, it grows dark. \*\*) — Several neutro-

\*) The common spelling is: *det sneer*, *det tør*, which also is supported by etymology since the Icelandic has *snjóar*, *þyðir* (*beyir*). ED.

\*\*) These are, indeed, not verbs deponent, but grammatically speaking, verbs passive or middle, just as *dicitur* and *scribitur* in

active verbs have no passive voice, except as impersonals. Ex. *der soves for meget*, they sleep too much; *der løbes idelig*, they run (up and down) continually.

It must still be remarked, before we leave the verbs, that the active participle in *-ende* is also sometimes used in a passive signification; f. i. *blæsende Instrumenter*, instruments to be blown, i. e. wind-instruments; *mit iboende Hus*, my house lived in, e. g. the house I live in; especially as a future part. pass. e. g. *den afholdende Aktion*, (Auction), the auction to be held; *den udgivende Bog*, the book about to be published; though several Grammarians of later times, not knowing the old Icelandic, nor the Swedish, have rejected these forms as spurious.

## 42. PARTICLES.

Under this denomination are generally comprehended; adverbs (*Biord*), prepositions (*Forholdsord*), conjunctions (*Bindeord*) and interjections (*Udraabsord*). Of all these parts of speech merely some of the adverbs admit a sort of inflection, viz. a comparative and a superlative degree, which are however usually similar to those of the corresponding adjectives; e. g. *smukt*, *smukkere*, *smukkest*, fine, pretty; *højt*, *højere*, *højest*, high; the latter is contracted in the superlative, when prefixed to other adv. or adj. e. g. *højst dannet* (*Aand*), highly cultivated (mind). For the positive degree of adverbs vid. p. 67.

Latin, and they do not change that character by being used impersonally. When the slave says to Pseudolus "Quid agitur?" and he replies: "statur" there is no doubt that these must be considered as verbs passive: on that their comicalness partly depends. *Det "mørkner"* and *det "mørknes"* are two Danish impersonal verbs which convey indeed only one meaning viz. "it grows dark" or "it is getting dark"; still the former is an active and the latter a passive verb.

ED.

Several are irregular as:

<i>ilde</i> ( <i>slemt</i> ),	<i>værre</i> ,	<i>verst</i> ,	ill, badly;
<i>vel</i> ( <i>godt</i> ),	<i>bedre</i> ,	<i>bedst</i> ,	well;
<i>tit</i> ( <i>tidt</i> ),	<i>tiere</i> ,	<i>tiest</i> ,	frequently;
<i>længe</i> ,	<i>længer</i> ,	<i>længst</i> ,	long, ( <i>diu</i> );
<i>meget</i> ,	<i>mér, *</i> )	<i>mést</i> ,	much;
<i>gjerne</i> ,	<i>heller</i> ,	<i>helst</i> ,	fain;
( <i>for</i> ),	<i>för</i> ,	<i>först</i> ,	prior.



## PART III.

### FORMATION.

#### 43. *Introductory remarks.*

All words are either simple (*enkelte*), as: *et Hoved*, a head, or compound (*sammensatte*), as *en Hovedpine*, a headach; the simple words are moreover either primitive (*Stamord*) as: *rödt*, red, or derivative (*Afledsord*), as: *en Rödme*, a blush, *hun rödmer*, she blushes.

The simple primitives are but few in every language, and their augmentation by the introduction of foreign words, which is the common resource of all mixed idioms, is a mere burthen to the memory, not affecting the understanding, and therefore prejudicial to the instruction of the common people; whereas it is the great excellency of original or less mixed tongues, that they have the means of enlarging the fundamental stock of expressions by derivation and composition, in such a manner, that the new word must create the idea in the mind, as soon as the sound reaches the ear. It will also be a considerable assistance to the student's memory in recollecting the immense

\*) Commonly *meer*. ED.

number of words, of which a cultivated language consists, if he pay some attention to the manner, in which this whole mass is formed from the few original primitives. In this view we shall here briefly consider the Danish derivation and composition. Those who wish more ample information may consult: *Dansk Orddannelseslære af N. Petersen.* Odense 1826.

## DERIVATION.

### 44. *Subdivision.*

When a general Idea, e. g. of negation, deterioration &c. is to be expressed, some prefixed are added to the words; but whenever a word is to be transferred from one part of speech to another, it is effected by terminations or change of vowel, sometimes even by transferring the words without any change, this last is however of much less frequent occurrence in Danish than in English, the grammatical qualities being in general more strongly marked on the words in the former, than in the latter of these languages.

### 45. *Prefixes.*

Of a negative or privative signification are:

*U-* Engl. *un-* [or *in-*] Ex. *Udyd*, vicious habit; *uvist*, uncertain; *uovervindelig*, invincible; *undsigelig-t*, unspeakable; *úgjört*, not done [undone]; *úgjerne*, unwillingly; *úmager*, or *ulejliger*, trouble (one);

*Van-* *Vånskabning*, monster, from *Skabning*, a creature; *vanartig*, depraved; *vånsirer*, disfigure;

*Mis-* *Misùndelse*, envy; *misundelig-t*, envious; *at misunde*, to envy; *miströster*, dishearten. Sometimes composed again with the negative *u*, as: *úmiskjèndelig*, evident; [not to be mistaken].

*For-* *fordømmer*, condemn; *forgiver*, poison; *for-skærer*, spoil in cutting (e. g. a gown or coat); *forsmaær*, slight; *en Forséelse*, an oversight; *Foragt*, contempt, *for-legen-t*, embarrassed, puzzled, at a loss. Sometimes it merely serves to form verbs of an active signification, as *forgylde*, gild; *fordansker*, do into Danish; or nouns of such verbs, as: *Forgylding*, gilding; *Fordanskning*, translation into Danish; *Forandring*, change; *Forstyrrelse*, devastation. This prefix appears to be different from the preposition *for*, which is also frequently used in composition; in general they may be distinguished by observing, that the prepos. has the emphasis of the word, the prefix not as: *Førklæder*, aprons; *forklæder*, disguise; there are however some exceptions to this rule, as; *et Fortrin*, a preference, preeminence; but *fortrīnlig-t*, preeminent.

*Und-* *Undskyldning*, excuse; *undskyldelig*, excusable; *at undskylde*, to excuse. Also composed with the negative *u-*, as; *uundskyldelig*, inexcusable;

*Veder-* *Vederlag*, compensation; *vedersares*, happen to; *vederstyggelig*, abominable.

#### 46. Of a positive signification are:

*Be-* *Begreb*, notion, conception; *betænklig-t*, doubtful; *betænsom*, considerate, *beklager*, bewail: from *klager*, complain, *betænker*, consider, [some of these also receive the negative *u* as *ubetænsom* inconsiderate *ubeviist*, unproved.]

*Bi-* *Bistand*, assistance; *Bihensigt*, secondary design; *biløbig*, [Germ. *beiläufig*] by the way, obiter; *bidrager*, contribute.

*Sam-* *Samtykke*, consent; *Såmklang*, harmony; *såmtidig*, contemporary, coeval; *at samtlykke*, to consent; *usamdrégtig*, disagreeing, discordant.

*Er-* *Erholder*, get, receive; *erkjénder*, acknowledge; *Erindring*, remembrance; *uerstatteligt*, irretrievable;

*An-*\*) *Ansigt*, face; *et Angreb*, an attack; *at angribe*, to attack; *uauvendelig-t*, inapplicable.

#### 47. Pronominal & adverbial prefixes are:

*h-* (demonstrative with respect to the 1st pers.), as; *hér*, here; *hid*, hither; the Lat. *hoc*, this, seems to be formed in this manner.

*d-* (demonstrative with respect to the 3d pers.), as; *det*, *den*, that; *der*, there; *did*, thither; *da*, then;

*hv-* (relative and interrogative) *hvad*, *hvem*, *hvilket*, *hvor*, where;

*i-* (placed before the *hv*, gives those words an indeterminate or general signification), as: *ihvad*, whatsoever; *ihvem*, whosoever; *ihvilket*, whichsoever; *ihvor*, wheresoever.

### AFFIXES.

#### 48. Formation of nouns, a) Affixes denoting the agent;

*-er*: *Dommer*, judge; *Læser*, reader; *Englænder*, Englishman; *Viser*, a hand of a watch; *Stægvender*, turnspit.

*-ner*: *Kunstner*, artist; *Falskner*, forger.

*-mager*: *Skomager*, shoemaker; *Urmager*, watchmaker; *Mager*, is never used separately in Danish, but merely adopted from the Germ. *macher*, in compound words.

*-ling*: *Lærling*, disciple; *Yndling*, favorite; *Yngling*, a youth; *Gæsling*, gosling.

*-inde*: *Hertuginde*, dutchess; *Grevinde*, countess; *Sangerinde*, songstress; *Veninde*, (female) friend; *Ulvinde*, a shewolf.

\*) Though *Bi-* and *An-* are no Danish words, yet they occur separately in several phrases adopted from the Teutonic tongues, as: *lägge bi*, lay by; *staa bi*, stand by; *det gaar an*, that will do, Germ. *Es geht an*; *at grieve sig an*, to exert one's self.

*ske*: *Væverske*, female weaver; *Forførerske*, seductress; *Giftblanderske*, (fem.) poisoner.

49. b) the *action*, as;

Monosyllabic nouns, formed of verbs, are mentioned p. 13, but there are many more of this sort Ex. *et Skrig*, a cry; *et Synk*, a draught; *et Sting*, a stitch; *et Stik*, a stab; *et Suk*, a sigh.

-en; *en Prædiken*, *Præken*, a sermon; *vor Gjøren og Laden*, our doing and omission i. e. our whole conduct.

-ende: (*mit*) *Vidende*, (my) knowledge; *Sigende*, saying; *Foretagende*, undertaking.

-ing: *Handling*, action; *Forandring*, change, alteration; *Landing*, landing; *Munding*, mouth (of a river); *Tinding*, temple (of the head); even of persons, as; *Arving*, heir; *Hövding*, chieftain, from *Hoved*;

-ning: *Skriining*, writing; *Læsning*, reading; *en Gjerning*, an act (action); *en Strækning*, a tract of land; *en Grönnung*, a green, a lawn; *en Slægtning*, a relation; *en Flygtning*, a fugitive; *en Dronning*, a queen, from *Drot*, a lord. [In Icelandic *Drotning*].

else: *Stýrelse*, moderation; *Beskrivelse*, description; *Udførelse*, execution; *Frembringelse*, production; *Fornøjelse*, pleasure; *Skrivelse*, letter; *Stiftelse*, establishment; *Hændelse*, accident; — *et Værelse*, a room.

-sel: *Födsel*, birth; *Kjörsel*, driving; *Udförsel*, exportation; *Trüsel*, threat; *Héngsel*, hinge; *Féngsel*, prison.

-t, d: *en Drift*, an instinct (from *driver*); *Dragt*, dress; *Indtægt*, revenue; *Blæst*, blowing, wind; *en Sæd*, a seed, (from *at saa*); *en Færd*, a journey, tour, (fare); *en Skyld*, debt, crime, (*skulle*); *Byrd*, extraction, descent, (*bære*); — *et Vidnesbyrd*, a testimony.

st: *Kunst*, art (from *kunne*); *Fangst*, a catch, a take, *Yndest*, *Günst*, favor; *Ankomst*, arrival; *Tjéneste*, service, but *tjenst-ågtig*, officious.

-eri: *Fiskeri*, fishery; *Praleri*, ostentation; *Tyveri*, theft.

## 50. c) Qualities, &amp;c. denote:

-e: *en Hede*, a heat; *Kulde*, cold; *Vréde*, anger; *Glæde*, joy; *Fylde*, fulness; *Styrke*, strenght; *Længe*, row (of houses); *Mitte (Midte)*, middle.

-de: *Dybde*, depth; *Længde*, lenght; *Vidde*, width; *Mængde*, multitude; *Tyngde*, gravity.

-hed: *Højhed*, highness, greatness; *Skévhed*, wryness; *Frihed*, freedom; *Kærlighed*, love; *Rettighed*, right, privilege.

-dom: *Vüsdom*, wisdom; *Ungdom*, youth; *Alderdom*, old age; *Lægedom*, medicine;

-dömmme (a province or district): *Hertugdömmme*, dutchy; *Fyrstendömmme*, principality; *Herredömmme*, dominion.

-skab: *et Grevskab*, a count's estate, also a county; *Fjendskab*; enmity; *Venskab*, friendskip; *Broderskab*, fraternity, brotherhood; *Svøgerskab*, affinity; — and of the com. gend. *Kløgskab-en*, prudence; *Mørskab-en*, diversion; *Kündskab*, knowledge; *Videnskab*, science; &c. cf. p. 13 & 14.

-me: *Fedme*, fatness; *Södme*, sweetness; *Rödme*, blush; *Kvalme*, qualm.

## 51. d) concrete things.

-e, (the definite neuter of the adj.), *et Onde*, an evil; *et Hele*, a whole; *et Mörke*, the dark; *et Rige*, dominion, kingdom, (reign, power), from the adj. *rig*, rich, formerly powerful.

-t, (the indef. neut. of the adj.): *Rödt*, red colour; *Grönt*, (*Grönsel*), vegetables; *Blyhvidt*, (*Bleghvidt*), white-lead; *Spansgrönt*, verdigris; *Berlinerblaat*, the Prussian Blue. (It is a germanism to say *Spansgrön*; *Berlinerblaas*).

- (the indef. com gend. of the adj.); *en Ret*, a court, a noun of very ancient formation; especially of persons, as: *en Sört*, a negro; *en Vild*, a savage; *en Gal*, a

madman; *en Lovkyndig*, a lawyer; *en Lærd*, a scholar, a learned man, and more frequently in the def. plur. *de Sorte, de Vilde, &c.*

*-el, l*, (denotes an implement); *en Nøgel*, a key; *en Sadel*, a saddle; *en Skovl*, a shovel.

There are many remnants of old forms of derivation, which existing only in some few words may be considered as irregular, as: *en Maan-ed*, a month; *et Lev-net*, life, conduct; *en Hav-n*, a haven; *et Sog-n*, a parish (from *søge*, seek); *en Tør-ke*, drought; *en Væd-ske*, a liquor; *et Löf-te*, a promise.

## 52. Formation of adjectives.

*-ig-t*: *módig-t*, courageous; *sövnig-t*, sleepy; *flit-tig-t*, industrious; *lydig-t*, obedient.

*-agtig-t*: *bondeagtig-t*, rustic; *krindegagtig-t*, effeminate; *skarnagtg-t*, vile, mean, malicious; *nöjagtig-t*, accurate; *blaagtg-t*, bluish; *langagtig-t*, longish.

*-lig-t*: *venlig-t*, friendly; *daglig-t*, daily; *lykkelig-t*, happy; *beviislig-t*, demonstrable; *mulig-t*, possible; *umulig-t*, impossible; *syrlig-t*, sourish. Sometimes *t* is inserted between this termination and the root, e. g. *mündtlig-t*, oral; *öffentlig-t*, public; *égentlig-t*, proper; (from *Mund*, mouth; Germ. *offen*, Dan. *aaben*, open; *égen*; own). Still more frequently an *e* precedes, especially in those formed from verbs, and denoting a passive possibility. Ex. *kostelig-t*, costly; *dödlig-t*, mortal; *tænkelig-t*, apt to be thought, i. e. imaginable, conceivable; *ubegribelig-t*, incomprehensible.

*-som-t*: *völdsom-t*, violent; *nöjsom-t*, content; *een-som-t*, lonely; *langsom-t*, slow; *arbeidsom-t*, assiduous.

*-sommelig-t*: *fredsömmelig-t*, peaceable; *möjsomme-lig-t*, laborious; *frugtsommelig-t*, pregnant; *kjedsomme-lig-t*, tedious.

*bar-t*: *frugtbar-t*, fertile; *ærbar-t*, modest, composed; *seilbar-t*, navigable; *ufeilbar-t*, infallible.

*-barlig-t*: *skinbårlig-t*, manifest; *ufejlbårligt*, that cannot fail.

*-sk*: *spodsk*, scornful, disdainful; *løbsk*, restive, starting (horse); *træsk*, cunning; *lumsk*, insidious. Many national or patronymic adj. get this termination, as: *tysk*, (tydsk), German; *pólsk*, Polish; *ungersk*, Hungarian; *græsk*, Greek, Grecian; *fransk*, French. Sometimes *i* precedes, as: *barbárisk*, barbarous; *politisk*, political; *filosófisk*, philosophical; *tyrkisk*, Turkish; *russisk*, Russian; *hebraisk*, Hebrew; *kaldaisk*, Chaldean.

When such epitheta gentilia are used as nouns, and consequently written with capitals, they denote the languages, as: *taler De Dansk?* do you speak Danish? *Har de studeret Kinesisk?* have you studied Chinese? *Han kan slet intet Portugisisk*, he knows nothing of Portuguese. These nouns are usually of the com. gend. as: *brød Dansk*, broad Danish; *Tysken er vanskelig*, the German is difficult.

*-et*: *hørnet*, horned; *büget*, bellied; *furet*, furrowed; *trekantet*, triangular; *firkantet*, *aattekantet* [ottekantet] &c.; *stribet*, striped; *smålstribet*, narrowstriped; *blaaaaret*, blueveined; *blaaøjet*, blueeyed; *hullet*, full of holes; *bekjærtet*, courageous; *haaret*, hairy.

*-laden-t*: *mörkladen-t*, *sortladen-t*, of a dark complexion, darkfaced; *rundladen-t*, round-faced; *ved-laden-t*, hot-headed.

*-vorren-t*, (*vorn-t*): *fjantevorren-t*, *tossevorren-t*, lsily; *kvaklevorren-t*, fickle.\*)

*-s*: *gøngs* (*gængse*), current; *taus*, silent; *eens* uniform, alike; *fælles*, sommon (not *fælle*s, being derived from *Fælle*, not from *Fælled*).

There are remnants of many more adjectival terminations, as: *vammel*, qvalmish; *gylden*, golden; *sölvern*,

\*) *Kvaklevorren*: the ordinary spelling would be *qvaklevorren*. I do not recollect ever having seen this word; possibly it is a misprint for *vaklevorren*, fickle: but even this word is little used.

silvern; *fædrene*, paternal; but these occur only in a few instances.

### 53. Formation of adverbs and prepositions.

*-e* (Icel. *-i*), indicates rest in a place, as: *ude*, without; *oppe*, up; *hjemme*, at home; *borte*, away; (from *ud*, out; *op*, up; *hem*, home; *bort*, away).

*-e* (Icel. *a*, forms some old adv. from adj.) *vide*, widely; *dyre*, dearly; *stille*, calmly; *næppe*, scarcely (from *knap*, scanty).

*-er* (motion to, or rest in a place): *öster* (*ud*), east, *vester* (*paa*), west; *atter*, again (back); *agter*, aft, abaft; *efter*, under, &c.

*-en* (Icel. *an*, originally motion from a place, now its signification is not easily defined): *östen for*, to the east of; *vesten fra*, from the west; *uden til*, on the outside; *inden* (en Time), within (an hour); *oven paa*, on the top of; *næsten*, almost; *sjælden*, rarely.

*-igen, ligen* (from adj. in *ig, lig*): *kraftigen*, strongly; *modigen*, courageously; *føleligen*, sensibly. But the adjectives are frequently used as adverbs, without the *-en*, as: *han blev ikke understøttet kraftigt nok*, he was not supported sufficiently (or strongly) enough; *han blev følelig straffet*, he was severely punished. Several modern authors would add the neuter *t* in these cases, but this is a Swedish form, contrary to the Danish usage; we constantly say: *de slog dygtig fra sig*, they defended themselves bravely; *hjærtelig gjerne*, with all my heart. The justness of this rule appears evident from the next adverbial termination.

*-lig, elig* (Engl. *ly, ely*), as: *nemlig, navnlig*, to wit, namely; *lydelig*, audibly; *snarlig*, soon; *visselig*, certainly; *fuldelig*, fully, (never *nemligt, fuldeligt*).

*-t* (The neuter form of the adj. of other terminations is often applied adverbially) as: *godt*, well; *vidt og bredit*, widely; *højt og dýrt*, with terrible oaths; but there

are many exceptions, as: *knap nok*, hardly enough; *heel vel*, very well; *fuldkommen fornöjet*, perfectly satisfied. — Those that have no *t* added in the neuter, never receive it in the adverbial form, as: *skjelmsk*, roguish, & roguishly.

*-s -es*: (originally the genitive *-s*): *allested*s, everywhere; *et Steds*, somewhere; *alskens*, of all sorts; *skraas over for*, on the other side, askaunce, nearly opposite; *paa tværs*, across; *langs med*, along; *udvortes*, externally; *indvortes*, internally; the two last are also used as adjectives.

#### 54. Formation of verbs.

*-er*, is sometimes merely added to nouns or adjectives, in order to make verbs of them, as: *Agt*, intention, *agter*, intend; *synd-er*, sin; *hed-er*, heat; *aabenbar-er*, reveal; *stiv-er*, starch. — Sometimes the radical vowel is changed, as: *virker*, act, work, from *Verk*; *yder*, pay (taxes) from *id*, out; *glæder*, gladden, from *glad*; *böder*, pay (as a fine or damage) from *Bód*; *hændes*, happens, comes to hand, from *Haand*.

Neuter verbs of the complex order are made transitive, and transferred to the simple order, by changing the vowel, and sometimes hardening the characteristic consonant of the past, thus:

<i>springer,</i>	<i>sprang,</i>	<i>— spranger,</i>	burst a thing;
<i>synker,</i>	<i>sank,</i>	<i>— sanker,</i>	sink something;
<i>sidder,</i>	<i>sad,</i>	<i>— sætter,</i>	set, put;
<i>ligger,</i>	<i>laa,</i>	<i>— lægger,</i>	lay;
<i>farer,</i>	<i>för,</i>	<i>— förer,</i>	carry;
<i>ryger,</i>	<i>rög,</i>	<i>— röger,</i>	smoke;
<i>bider,</i>	<i>séd,</i>	<i>— beder,</i>	bait, stop;

viz. let the hounds or the horses bate. Some few are formed from the present tense, as: *vaager*, watch, *vækker*, awaken; *knager - knækker*, crack; *nejer*, courtesey, bow; *nikker*, nod.

*-ter*: *gifter*, marry away, from *giver*; *svigter*, fail, from *sviger*; *vænter*, expect (from Icel. *ván*, hope;\*) *sigter*, aim at, from *see*; *sigter*, sift, from *si*; *nægter*, deny, from *nej*, no.

*-ner*: *ligner*, am like; *blegner*, turn pale; *stivner*, grow stiff; *vidner*, bear witness.

*-ker*, *-ger*: *dyrker*, worship (hold dear); *ynker*, pity, from *öm*, tender; *forsinker*, delay, from *seen*; *vrikker*, jog, from *vrider*; *skulker*, sculk, from *skjuler*; *spørger*, ask, from *Spór*; *hærger*, ravage, from *Hær*. Sometimes *i* is inserted before *ger*, as: *beskjæftiger*, keep busy, occupy; *fortrediger*, provoke; *afskjediger*, [with Molbech *afskediger*] discharge; *bemægtiger mig*, seize upon.

*-ser*: *standser*, stop; *renser*, cleanse; *hidser*, heat (the blood); *hilser*, salute.

*-sker*: *hersker*, sway; *husker*, remember; *formindsker*, lessen; *smasker*, smack with the lips.

*-rer*: *bævrer*, tremble; *kvidrer*, chirp; *ytrer*, [commonly *ytrrer*,] utter; *smulrer*, crumble; *valtrer*, waddle; *kantrer*, overturn, or upset (the boat).

*-ler*: *smugler*, smuggle; *bejler*, court, woo, (from *beder*); *besudler*, soil; *funkler*, sparkle.

These derivatives in *-ter*, *ner*, *ker*, *ger*, *ser*, *sker*, *rer*, *ler*, belong to the 1st conj. 1st class, and are all regularly inflected. But though all the examples quoted are in frequent use, and the derivation in most of them clear and indisputable, yet the language rarely admits of new formations through these means; but rather through the prefixes: *for*, *be* &c.

*-érer*, forms verbs from roots of the southern languages, as: *regulererer*, regulate; *reformererer*, reform; *dikterer*, dictate; *konstituerer*, constitute; *pulveriserer*, pulverize; and many more. They should properly belong

\*) But the erroneous spelling *venter* is most frequently used.

to the 1st conj. ist class, but are often contracted and referred to the 2d class, e. g. *Læther reformerte meget*, L. reformed much (many things). *Han er reformért*, he belongs to the reformed church.

## 55. COMPOSITION.

The composition of words is very free, and the chief source of the copiousness of the modern Danish; yet it is by no means illimitated or irregular, and ought not therefore to be passed by without notice in any good grammar of this tongue.

In general, the last part of the compound expresses the chief idea, which is described or defined by the preceding part, e. g. *en Bog*, a book, *en Skolebog*, a school-book, *en Lærebog*, a compendium; *Læsebog*, selections, extracts; *en Ordbog*, a dictionary; *en Flaske*, a bottle, *en Blækflaske*, an ink-bottle, *en Ølflaske*, a bottle for beer, or in which is, or has been beer; but *en Flaske Blæk*, means a bottle of ink; *en Flaske Øl*, a bottle of beer, *en Punsebolle*, is a bowl for punch, but *en Bolle Puns*, a bowl of punch; *en Sølvskje*, a silver spoon; *en Mørskje*,\* a trōwel; *Træsko*, wooden shoes. Thus even adjectives, e. g. *frivillig*, voluntary; *långvarig*, of long duration; *hūsvant*, familiar; *låndsforvist*, exiled, banished; likewise some verbs, as: *føder*, nourish, support, *brödföder*, afford, yield sufficient provision of corn for bread (to a family); *hugger*, cut; *hàlshugger*, behead; *iägttager*, observe; *islåndsætter*, repair; *löslander*, set free; *frätager*, exempt.

Sometimes the last part is a derivative, formed from a separate word, but not used separately itself. Ex. *Húsholder*, economist, housekeeper; *Vértshusholder*, inn-keeper; *Husholderske*, a female housekeeper; *húsholdersk*,

\*) Commonly written *Sølskee*, *Mn̄nskee*. ED.

economical, thrifty; from *holder*, keep; though *Holder*, *Holderske*, *holdersk*, are no words in the Language.

The first part is often a verb in the infinitive, as: *en Slibesteen*, a grindstone; *en Hvæssteen*, a whetstone; *en Spisesal*, a diningroom; *en Liggehöne*, a brood-hen; *et Kjendebogstav*, a characteristic letter; *en Byggeplads*, a ground to build upon; *en Bærebör*, a handbarrow; *Talekunst*, rhetoric; *Talestol*, pulpit; *Trykhefrihed*, the liberty of the press.

Even substantives are often compounded without any change, as: *Kongestad*, royal city; *Husmand*, peasant, cottager; *Raadstue*, townhall; likewise: *Storherre-n*, the grand-signior; *Alverden*, the universe; *Blaabær*, bilberries; *Lediggang*, idleness; *Hankön*, masculine gender; *Fémfingerurt*, cinquefoil; *hundredaarig*, centennial.

Sometimes the first part is slightly changed e. g. by throwing away a final *e*, as: *en Firskilling*, a penny; *Kvind-folk*, [commonly *Quindfolk*] woman; *Bettel-staven*, the beggar's staff i. e. beggary, from *bettle*; or by inserting an *e*, as: *en Lýsesax*, a pair of snuffers; *en Æggeblomme*, the yolk of an egg; *en Gulerod*, a carrot; *en Sygestue*, an infirmary; *et Foredrag*, elocution; *forebygge*, prevent. In many instances this *e* is a relick of the Icel. gen. plur in *a* ;\*)

\*) And such was the case with the examples given above: *Lysesax*, *Æggeblomme*, Iceland. *ljósasöx*, *eggablóm*. Rask perhaps thought: "the Iceland word must here be derived from the Danish, since the thing probably was imported into the country by the Danes?" But no matter; the pure Icelandic elements of the word, viz. the Gen. pl. *ljósa*, and the pl. *söx*, existed in the Icelandic language long before the Danes saw the first (Dutch or English) pair of snuffers. In all likelihood snuffers were also first introduced into Iceland from England or Holland. *Sygestue*, evidently belongs to that class of compounds which is mentioned in the preceding paragraph (from *Syge* disease, or *Syge* patients) and *Fore-in Foredrag* is purely English as in "foretell", "forehead", "fore-speak" &c. &c. and thus it may be doubted that the insertinon

e. g. *Landemærke*, frontiers; *Sædelære*, ethics; *Gjedeblad*, honeysuckle, Icel. *landa-mæri*, *siða-lærdómr*, &c. sometimes of an old gen. sing. in *-a*, *ar*, *ur*, e. g. *Pennekniv*, penknife; *Sængestolpe*, bedpost, Icel. *pennaknýfr*, *sængurstölp*. Still more frequently an *s* is inserted, or the first part is only the gen. sing. as: *en Handelsmand*, a tradesman, merchant; *en Landsmand*, a fellow countryman; but *en Landmand*, is a husbandman; *en Baadshage*, a boat-hook; *en Vinduesrude*, a pane or square of a window; *et Tidsrum*, a period. — In a few instances *-n*, is inserted, in words adopted from the German, as: *Fruentimmer*, woman, *Grækiland*, (better *Grækeland*), Greece, *Ærenpris*, speedwell, a plant, Germ. *Frauenzimmer*, *Griechenland*, *Ehrenpreis*. Thus even *Hekkenfelt*, a euphemism for Hell, is a Germ. depravation of Icel. *Heklufjall*, mount Hekla in Iceland.

A few compound words require both parts to be put in the plural, as: *Bondegåard*, a farm, farmer's house, plur. *Bøndergaarde*; *Barnebarn*, grandchild, plur. *Børnebørn*, grandchildren.

Prepositions and adverbs very frequently take the first place in compounds, as: *bortødsle*, squander away; *afhugge*, cut off; *udtale*, pronounce, *Udtale*, pronunciation; *Udtryk*, expression; *Indtryk*, impression; *indelukke*, shut up, lock up; *nedrive*, pull down; *opbrænde*, burn down.

Many of these compound verbs may also be resolved, and the particle placed separately behind, e. g. *ödsle bört*, *hugge af*; but this transposition oftentimes makes a great difference in the signification; the compounds being used figuratively or metaphorically, the resolved verbs literally or properly. Ex.

*indrykker*, insert,

*rykker ind*, march into;

*afstaar*, cede,

*stadr af*, dismount, alight;

*oversætte*, translate,

*sætter over*, cross, (as a ferry);

---

of an *e* is at all required to explain any phenomenon that occurs in Danish compounds.

ED.

<i>overgaar, excel,</i>	<i>gaaer over, pass (over);</i>
<i>udtrykker, express,</i>	<i>trykker ud, squeeze out;</i>
<i>igjenlöser, redeem,</i>	<i>lösar igjen, untie again.</i>

Prepositions and adverbs composed with the prep. *i* (in) generally lose this *i* in composition with nouns or verbs. Ex. *igjennem*, through, *gjennemborer*, pierce, *gjennemtrænger*, penetrate; *imod*, against, *Modstand*, resistance, *modvirker*, counteract; *imellem*, between, *Mellemgulv*, diaphragm; *igjen*, again, *gjentager*, repeat; *isteden*, instead, *Stedord*, pronoun, *Stedfader*, stepfather &c.

---

## PART IV.

### SYNTAX.

---

56. The Danish manner of constructing sentences, being pretty similar to the English, it is needless here to attempt any complete essay on the syntax. I shall therefore merely offer some remarks on the peculiarities of the Danish in this respect, following the order of the parts of speech, observed in the preceding pages.

#### 57. *The articles.*

The definite art. of the adj. may sometimes be left out, the definite form of the adj. or pronoun showing sufficiently that it is to be understood, e. g. *første Gang*, the first time; *samme Aften*, the same evening; *gamle Danmark*, old Denmark; especially in names as: *Ny-Holland*, *Lange-Bro*, *Runde-Taarn*, and in apostrophes, as: *Store Gud*, great God! *kære Ven*, dear friend; *Højstærede Herre*, Respected Sir, &c. In a few instances the def. art. of nouns is added, as: *hele Sagen*, the whole business; *for største Delen*, for the greatest part.

The def. art. is used with nouns expressing general notions, or things ideal, where the English has no article at all, e. g. *Natur-en*, nature; *Skæbne-n*, fate; *Død-en*, death; *Liv-et*, life; *Menneske-t*, man; *Forsyn-et*, providence; *Himlen*, heaven.

The noun which governs a genitive is usually without any article, e. g. *Verdens Alder*, the age of the world; *Aarets Længde*, the length of the year; *et Legems Tyngde*, the gravity of a body.

The genitives of nouns, as also the possessive and demonstr. pronouns, like the article, require the definite form of the adj. following, as: *min bedste Ven*, my best friend; *dit gamle Losi,\**) your old lodging; *hendes lange Haar*, her long hair; *denne evige Snak*, this endless twaddle.

### 57. *The nouns.*

Of the generel position of nouns we have spoken already (p. 26), and stated the rule that the nominative usually is placed before the verb. In consequent propositions, however, the verb is followed by the agent. Ex. *hvis De ikke vil tro mig, saa kan jeg ikke gjøre ved det*, if you won't believe me, I cannot help it. *Da Freden var sluttet, rejste han udenlands*, when the peace was concluded, he went abroad. Also in conditional propositions, as: *Skulde jeg endelig gjøre det*, should I absolutely do it; *maatte jeg være saa lykkelig*, if I might be so happy. Likewise in questions, as: *sér De Skibet, som seiler der*, do you see the vessel, that sails there? *Taler De med ham i Morgen?* do you speak with him (see him) to-morrow? *Sés vi saa i Aften?* shall we then meet to-night, or shall I have the pleasure of seeing you to-night. — There are several adverbs or particles of time

---

\* ) Commonly spelt *Logis.* ED.

which produce the same effect, when placed at the head of the proposition, e. g. *derefter rejste han*, after this he departed; *aldrig troer jeg det*, never shall I believe this.

The genit., when expressed by termination is always placed before the word governing it. e. g. *for Guds Skyld*, for God's sake, also: in the name of God. *Hans Metóde*, his method. *Rigets Forvaltning*, the administration of the kingdom. *Mange Vandes Lyd*, the sound of many waters. Likewise possessive pronouns, as: *gaa din Vej*, get you gone; *hun glemte sin Paraply*, she forgot (left) her umbrella.

But the gen. is also frequently expressed by means of prepositions, not only *af*, of, but also *til*, to. &c. Ex. *det er Biskoppens Sön*, or *en Sön af Biskoppen*, it (he) is a son of the bishop; *en Bróder til Biskoppen*, a brother of the bishop; *Dören paa Huset*, the door of the house. *Versebygningen i Kædmons Parafrás*, the versification of Cædmon's paraphrase.

The preposition is entirely omitted after nouns of measure and the like, as: *en Mængde Mennesker*, a crowd of people; *et Stykke Træ*, a piece of wood; *en Lap Papir*, a scrap of paper; *en Pægl (Pæ'l) Öl*, half a pint of beer; *en Tønde Sild*, a cask of herrings; likewise *en Tønde stærkt Öl*, a cask of strong beer; *en Skæppe ny Hvede*, a bushel of new wheat. But when the name of the thing measured is definite, the prep. *af* must be expressed, as: *en Skæppe af den ny Hvede*, a bushel of the new wheat.

### 58. *The adjectives.*

In Danish the adjective is always placed before the noun, to which it belongs, e. g. *et gammelt Ord (Ord-sprog)*, an old saying; *den ny Møde*, the new fashion; *fra umindelige Tider*, from times immemorial. Except

when applied as surnames, as: *George den fjerde*, George the fourth; *Knud den Store*, Canute the great.\*)

Many adjectives and participles may, without any intervening prep., govern the nouns sometimes as indirect sometimes as direct objects, (or, in the Latin phraseology sometimes in the dat., sometimes in the acc.), e. g. *det er ikke Uagen værd*, it is not worth the pains (or worth while); *er det Mennesket gavnligt?* is it useful to man? *Han er mig intet skyldig*, he owes me nothing. Sometimes they take the noun together with a prep. after them, as: *er det gavnligt for Mennesket?*

### 59. Pronouns.

The two genders of the pronoun for the third person (*han*, *hun*), when speaking of men, are usually applied according to the natural sex, not to the grammatical gender e. g. *Fruentimret viste meget Mod, da hun* (not *det*) *forsvarede sig imod saa mange Fjender*, the woman showed great courage, in defending herself against so many enemies. To *Mennesket* corresponds *han*, when it means a certain *man*, but *det*, when it means *mankind*, as: *Mennesket mærkede ikke, hvorlèdes han* (not *det*) *var stædt*, the man did not perceive how he was situated; *Mennesket og dets Medskabninger*, Man and his fellow creatures. In speaking of animals we use *det*, *den*, never *han*, or *hun*, except in poetical personifications and sometimes in vulgar speech.

The pronoun *De*, when applied to a single person (p. 33), is always construed with the sing. number of the verb, as: *Kommer De saa?* shall I expect you then? (not *Komme De*). *Gaar De paa Komédie?* do you go to the play?

\*) Except also in verse, as: *Christian Bygmester stor*, Christian the great architect. *Oehlenschlaeger*.

ED.

The numeral pronouns are placed before the nouns, as : *tó Huse*, two houses ; *det første Menneske*, the first man. When a numeral and an adjective are added, that which has the closest connection with the noun must be placed nearest to it, e. g. *tí hele Brød*, ten entire loaves, but *hele ti Brød*, means whole (not less than) ten loaves.

When speaking of the date of the year, we never apply the word *Tusind*, but merely count the *Hundrede*, e. g. 1829, *atten Hundrede og ni-og-tve*, not, *ét Tusind aatte Hundrede og ni-og-tve*.

## 60. Verbs.

In common conversation the plural form of the tenses is scarcely ever made use of, as : *vi rejser* (instead of *rejse*) *i Morgen*, we depart to morrow; *det er tidligt de Kongelige kommer* (for *komme*) *i Aften*, the royal family comes early to night; *de spiller dét Skuespil godt*, they perform that play well.

The active participles in *-ende*, are never used as gerunds, and rarely as parts of verbs, but more frequently as a sort of adjectives, as : ‘fading graces’, *falmende Yndigheder*; ‘falling leaves’, *faldende Löv*; ‘calling to one another, and endeavouring in vain to extricate themselves’, *raabende til hverænde og stræbende forgjæves at údrede sig*; but : ‘on entering this first enclosure’, must be rendered : *i det jeg traadte ind i dette første Aflukke*, not *i or paa indtrædende*, &c. ‘I was wandering’, *jeg vandrede*, not *jeg var vandrende*, (see p. 54). ‘The king being a hunting’, *da Kongen (just) var paa Jagt*. ‘The soldiers being afraid of the enemy’, *Soldaterne som vare bange for Fjenderne*. ‘In promising them some’, *ved at love dem nogle*.

The English participles [or gerunds] in *-ing* must often be rendered in Danish by the infinitives, as: it is scarcely worth seeing, *det er næppe værd at se*.

### 61. Particles.

Of prepositions it is worth while to observe, how they are used to determine time; *i* with the genitive denotes a past time, as: *i Søndags*, last sunday; the nouns ending in *en*, lose their *n* before the genitive *s*, in this sort of regimen, as: *i Gaar Aftes* last night, yesterday evening (from *Aften*, otherwise the usual genitive is *Aftens*); *i Morges*, this morning; *i Formiddags*, this forenoon; *i Forgaars*, the day before yesterday; *i Mandags Eftermiddags*, last Monday afternoon. — With the nominative it denotes the current time as: *i Aar*, this year; *i Dag*, to-day; or the time next following, as *i Aften*, this evening, which may be said both in the forenoon of the same day, and in the evening itself; *i Morgen*, tomorrow. But the word *Nat* not admitting the genitive *-s*, in the case just mentioned, when I say *i Nat*, it is entirely undecided, whether I mean the night preceding, or that succeeding this day; accordingly the real meaning of the phrase in each particular case can only be inferred from the context; e. g. *Regnede det i Nat*, did it rain last night? *faa vi Regn i Nat*, shall we have rain this night? The following days of the week are indicated by *paa*, on, as: *paa Søndag*, next Sunday; *paa Mandag Formiddag*, on Monday forenoon. For some few cases we have other prepositions or adverbial expressions, as: *ifjor* (*i Fjor*), last year; *ad Aare*, next year. *Om* with the noun in the definite form corresponds to the English *a*, *in*, as: *Tjeneren faar 10 Rbd. (Rigsbankdaler) om Maaneden*. The servant (footman) has 10 dollars a month.

Also *om Aaret*, a year; *om Dagen*, a day; '*om Morgen'en*, in the morning, &c.

Of the conjunctions there is scarcely any thing remarkable to be said in the syntax, there being absolutely no subjunctive mode in the verbs. It may be observed however, that in combined sentences several conjunctions correspond to each other, so that when the one precedes the other may be expected to follow, such are:

<i>baade — og,</i>	both — and;
<i>saavel — som,</i>	as well — as;
<i>saa (stor) — som,</i>	as (great) — as;
<i>ikke alene — men ogsaa,</i>	not only — but also;
<i>jo (meer) — des (bedre),</i>	the (more) — the (better);
<i>saa meget des — som,</i>	so much the — as;
<i>om — eller,</i>	whether — or;
<i>enten — eller,</i>	either — or;
<i>hverken — eller,</i> <i>ej heller,</i> }     }	neither — nor;
<i>vel — men ikke,</i> <i>men alligevel,</i> }	indeed — but not; — but nevertheless;
<i>vel ikke — men dog,</i> <i>— men vel,</i> }	not indeed — but still; — but for all that;
<i>deels — deels,</i>	partly — partly;
<i>da — saa (kan De),</i>	as — (you may);
<i>ihvorvel — (saa) dog,</i>	although — yet;
<i>skoent — (saa) dog ikke,</i>	though — still not.

## 62. Appendix.

Though the Roman character is daily gaining ground, being introduced into the Transactions of the Royal Academy of Copenhagen and of most other learned Societies in Denmark and Norway, as also used in many excellent works of private authors on Antiquity, History &c. yet the monkish or Gothic form of the letters is still preferred by many, and must be learned also.

[Here Professor Rask inserted the ordinary German alphabet, to which he always had great aversion, and which he in vain attempted to persuade his countrymen entirely to discard. I have placed it at the beginning of the book since it still is in much more general use than the Roman alphabet. As long as the Germans preserve "the monkish or Gothic form" of the letters there is but small chance of the Danes abandoning it; but as soon as the Germans adopt the character now used by all the civilized nations of Europe (except the Russians and the Greeks) there is no doubt that the Danes will follow their example. ED.]

### 63. *Remarks on the German letters.*

In this character the capital J is also commonly used for the ð e. g. in Israel and Jesuð; though different figures have been invented by P. Syv, R. Nyerup & Mr. J. Jetsmark, in order to distinguish them; in writing however they are usually distinguished the ð being prolonged beneath the line. Of the figures used in print that of Mr. Jetsmark, which I have here made use of, appears to have the preference.

The long ſ is constantly applied in the beginning of syllables, even in the combinations: ft, fl, fp, ft. Ex. ſlig, ſtal, ſtrider, ſparer.

For å, has also been proposed another figure, viz. œ, which has been adopted by the celebrated Capt. Abramson in his first edition of Lange's *Dänische Gramm. für Deutsche*, as also by the author of these pages, in the first edition of his Icelandic Grammer; that he has afterwards preferred the å, is not only from patriotic motives; this figure being found in old Danish MSS. down to 1555, but also because it is introduced into several other languages, as Swedish and Laplandic, and has even been used in the upper German dialects, e. g. in Büschings und von der Hagen's *Sammlung deutscher Volkslieder*, Berlin 1807 and in J. F. Castelli's *Gedichte in nieder-*

*österreichischer Mundart*, Wien 1828, 8vo. Also in the Bornholm dialect by Mr. Skougaard, in the Farroic by the revd. Mr. Lyngbye, and in the Acre (on the coast of Guinea) by Capt. Schöning, whereas *æ* is used nowhere else in the world.

The ü and ä are German forms of the vowels *y* and *æ*, usually preserved in writing German names, although the Germans never use the Danish *æ* or *ø*, in writing Danish names, nor even in quoting titles or passages of books. Some writers also apply the ü for French *u*, e. g. *Nüance*, *Büreaa*, pronounce *Nyanse*, *Byraa*.

The § is entirely a German combination, not used even by the Germans themselves in the Roman character, and pronounced like the Danish *s*.





**DIALOGUES  
AND  
EXTRACTS.**



## FAMILIAR DIALOGUES.

---

### Förste Samtale.

### Dialogue 1.

God Morgen!	<i>Good morning, sir</i> <sup>1).</sup>
Hvorlédes befinder De Dem <sup>2)</sup> ?	<i>How do you do?</i>
Hvorledes staar det til?	<i>How are you?</i>
Jeg takker, meget vel; ret	<i>Very well, pretty well, I thank you.</i>
bra'.	
Saa saa; ikke med det bed-	<i>So so; not very well.</i>
ste.	
Meget vel, til Tjéneste.	<i>Very well, at your service.</i>
Til Deres Tjéneste.	<i>At your service.</i>
Behág at sidde ned.	<i>Please to sit down.</i>
Vær saa ártig, og tag en	<i>Be so kind as to take a seat,</i>
Stol.	<i>a chair.</i>
Sid ned et Öjeblik.	<i>Sit down a moment.</i>
Jeg har et lille Besög at gjøre	<i>I must go to pay a visit in</i>
i Nabolauget.	<i>the neighbourhood.</i>
Hvad er Klokk'en?	<i>What is it o'clock?</i>
Hvad mener De?	<i>What do you think it is?</i>
Den er vel ikke aatte endnu.	<i>Scarce eight, I believe, yet.</i>

---

<sup>1)</sup> The Danish expression for *sir*, *Herre* or *min Herre*, is rarely used in conversation, except by servants.

<sup>2)</sup> The reciprocal forms, *sig*, *sit*, *sin*, *sine*, must be avoided, when the civil pronoun *De*, *you*, is the nominative; but if it were the usual plur. of the 3d person, it should be: *hvorledes befinde de sig?* how do they find themselves?

Hvad? aatte! den er slaaet *How? eight! it has struck ten.*

Er det muligt? er den saa *Is it possible? is it so late!*  
mange! saa maa jeg ogsaa *then I must go out also.*  
ud.

Hvor skal De hen? *Whither are you going?*

Jeg skal hen at spise Fró- *I am going to breakfast with*  
kost hos Hr. N. N. *Mr. N. N.*

Og jeg skal hen at se til *And I am going to call on*  
Fru N. N. *Mrs. N. N.*

A! det er nok saa godt, at *Ah, that is much better indeed,*  
besøge Damerne! *to visit the ladies!*

Men naar sees vi nu igjen? *But when shall we see each*  
*other again?*

Er De hjemme paa Tirsdag? *Shall you be at home on*  
*Tuesday?*

Ja hvad Tid Dágs? *At what hour?*

Aa, saadan Klokken sex eller *Why, about six or seven*  
syv. *o'clock.*

Ja, om Aftenen er jeg hjem- *Yes, sir! in the evening I*  
me, men kom saa ikke for *shall be at home, but don't*  
silde, saa vil vi drikke Te *come too late then, so that*  
nede i Haven. *we may drink tea in the*  
*garden.*

Godt! som De befaler. *Well, as you please.*

Farvel! (Adjö!) *Good bye! (Adieu).*

Farvel! Farvel! *Good bye!*

### Anden Samtale.

### Dialogue 2.

God Aften Hr. N. N. *Good evening Mr. N. N.*

Velkommen. Det fornöjer *Welcome, sir! I am very happy*  
mig meget at se Dem. *to see you.*

Hvorledes har De levet, siden *How have you been, since I*  
sådst, jeg havde den For- *had the pleasure of seeing*  
nøjelse at se Dem. *you last?*

Jeg er dem meget forbunden. *I am much obliged to you, sir. Excepting a little cold, that confined me to my room for a couple of days, I have been very well. But you are a foreigner, how do you find our climate agree with you?*

Naar jeg undtager en lille Forkølelse, som har holdt mig inde et par Dage, har jeg været meget vel. Men De er fremmed; hvorledes finder De vort Klima passer sig för Dem?

Det er lidt køldt og fugtigt, *It is somewhat cold and damp, at least the air is much warmer and dryer in my native country.*

i det mindste er Luftens langt varmere og tørrende i mit Fædreneland.

Det kan jeg tænke. *I dare say.*

Men man maa indrette sin Klædedragt og Levemaade efter den Himmellegn, man lever under, og saa ikke bryde sig ret meget om Vejret, især i min Alder. *But one must adapt one's clothing and diet to the climate one lives in, and then not care too much about the weather, especially at my age.*

Det har De Ret i; det var ogsaa min Grundsætning, da jeg var paa Rejser. — Men lad os nu gaa ned i Haven, og se om min Kone har noget Te til os. *You are very right; it was also my principle, when I was travelling. But come now let us go down into the garden, to see whether Mrs. N.<sup>1)</sup> has got some tea for us.*

Det vil ikke være af Vejen. *Well, it won't be amiss.*

<sup>1)</sup>) A husband never calls his wife by his own surname as in English, but always says: *min Kone*, my wife, or *Fruen*, *Madammen*, *Moder*, according to her rank. *Frue*, lady, is used of noblemen's as also of most civil and military officer's wives, and *Fröken* of their daughters; *Madamme* of merchants' and tradesmen's wives, as also of the country clergymen's and clerks'; *Jomfru* of their daughters; *Moder* (*Mo'r*) of a farmer's or common soldier's wife.

## Tredie Samtale.

## Dialogue 3.

Nu, hvad synes De om vort Well, what do you think of Spróg, kan De forstaa no- our language? do you un- get af det?

Det klinger ganske bra', at It sounds pretty well to the höre paa, men jeg maa ear, but I must confess, I tilstaa jeg forstaar næsten understand almost nothing slet intet af det. of it at all.

Men agter De ikke at lægge But don't you intend to study Dem efter det?

Jo, jeg har i Sinde at be- Yes, sir! I intend to take ad- nytte mig af den korte vantage of the short time, Tid, jeg kan opholde mig I can stay here, to learn her, til at lære at kjende the language, to know the Sproget og Folket, og se people, and to see every hvad mærkværdigt her er. thing remarkable.

Nu, det fornöjer mig at höre, I am very glad to hear it, og jeg er vis paa, De vil and I am sure you won't ikke finde Sprøget vanske- find the language difficult, ligt, og naar De har lært and when you have learned det, vil Literatüren rigelig it, the literature will amply belönne Deres Umage.

I denne Henséende stoler In this I entirely rely upon jeg ganske paa Deres gode your kind assistance, and I Hjælp, og haaber De har hope you have friendship Venskab nok for mig, til enough for me, to give me at beære mig med Deres the benefit of your advice Raad og Vøjledning. Men and instruction. But previously I must beg you to först maa jeg bøde Dem at oversætte mig følgende translate for me the following Ord, som jeg vil behöve words, which I shall hvert Øjeblik.

Méget vèl, Hr. B! vil De Very well, Mr. B. will you give mig Pen og Blæk, give me pen and ink, I will

skal jeg oversætte dem for Dem i et Øjeblik. Jeg kan vel skrive det paa det samme Papir.

Ja, jeg ønskede just at hæve de danske Udtryk lige over for de engelske, og helst foran, saa at Øjet kan træffe dem først, naar jeg seer paa Bladet.

En trékanet Hat, rúnd Hat. *A cocked hat, round hat.*

Pudder, Pomáde, Tåndpulver. *Powder, pomatum, toothpowder.*

Kam, Börste, Tandbörste. *Comb, brush, toothbrush.*

Nåtsjorte, Manskjètsjorte.<sup>1)</sup> *Nightshirt, frilled shirt.*

Nåttröje, Hålsklæde, Séler. *Underwaistcoat, neckcloth, braces.<sup>2)</sup>*

Vest, Kjóle, Frakke. *Waistcoat, coat, great coat.*

Beenklæder, Buxer. *Pantaloons, breeches.*

Uld-, Traad-Silke-strömper. *Woollen, thread-silk stockings,*

Stövler, Sko, Spænder. *Boots, shoes, buckles.*

Töfler, Nathue, Slaaprok. *Slippers, nightcap, nightgown.*

Handsker, Lommetörklæde, Stok. *Gloves, pocket-handkerchief, stick.*

Tobáksdaase, Ring, Ur. *Snuffbox, ring, watch.*

Tåndstikker, Kikkert, Öje-glas. *Toothpick, pocket-glass, eye-glass.*

Tégnebog, Pung, Blýant. *Pocketbook, purse, pencil.*

Bånkosèdler, Vexler, Smaå-penge. *Bank-notes, bills of exchange, change, or small coin.*

Visitkaart, Sæng, Sængeklæder. *Calling cards, bed, bedclothes.*

<sup>1)</sup> Commonly Natskjorte, Mansketskjorte.

ED.

<sup>2)</sup> The first Edition has *gallowses*, which certainly is never heard, either in shops, or in common conversation; still it is found in such dictionaries as abound in slang terms: it surely is rather vulgar. I have put the usual expression.

ED.

- Lágeneír, Púder, Sófa.      *Sheets, pillows, sofa.*<sup>1)</sup>
- Skriverpult, Spillebórd, Spi- Writing-desk, card table, din-  
sebórd.                                ning-table.
- Spejle, Stúeúr, Lampe.      Looking-glasses, chamber-clock,  
    lamp.
- Lýsekrone, Gardiner, Over- Lustre, curtains, cups.  
kopper.
- Underkopper, Ske-er, Kniv-e Saucers, spoons, knives and  
og Gafler, Dúge, Serviet- forks, table-clothes, napkins.  
ter.
- Haandklæder, Flasker, Glas. Towels, bottles, glasses.
- Tallérkener, Lýs, Lýsesax. Plates, candles, snuffers.
- Lýsestager, Snústobak. Candlesticks, snuff.
- Lák, Signét, Obláter. Sealing-wax, seal, wafers.
- Skrivpapir, Póstpapir, Maku- Writing-, post-, wastepaper.  
latúr.
- Ridehest, Vognhest, Vogn. Saddlehorse, [or riding horse]  
    coach horses, carriage.
- Karét, Kusk, Tjéner. Coach, coachman, servant, or  
    footman.
- Vært, Skräder, Skómager. Landlord, tailor, shoemaker.
- Barbér, Haarskærer, Bòg- Barber, hairdresser, bookseller.  
handler.
- Urmager, Hattemager, Hand- Watchmaker, hatter, glover.  
skemager.
- Se, her har De de forlangte Well, sir! here you have the  
Ord paa Dansk, men kan words required in Danish;  
De nu ogsaa læse dem? but now, shall you be able  
    to read them?
- Tilvisse, De har jo skrévet Surely, I see you have writ-  
dem med latinske Bògsta- ten them in the English cha-  
ver, de andre falde mig racter, the other indeed I

<sup>1)</sup> The first edition has *couch* which is a different piece of furniture like that which is called *choise longue*, or Canapee on the continent.

rigtig nok meget vanskelige at finde ud af. *find it very difficult to make out.*

Men de ere dog uundgaaelig nødvendige at kjende endnu. *As yet, however, it is indispensably necessary to know them.*

Ja, naar jeg først bliver lidt bekjendt med Sprøget, haa-ber jeg de gamle Bogsta-ver vil blive mindre vanskelige for mig. Mener De ikke ogsaa det? *Oh, when only I get a little acquainted with the language, I hope the old letters will be less difficult to me. Don't you think so too?*

Upaatvivlelig. *No doubt of it.*

## Fjerde Samtale.

## Dialogue 4.

Nu hvorledes gaar det med Deres Dansk? Har De gjort betydelig Frèmgang i den alleréde? *Well, how do you get on with your Danish? Have you made considerable progress.*

Langt frå, jeg forstaar næsten intet. *Far from it, I know nothing almost.*

Man siger døg, De taler ret bra'. *It is said however, you speak it very well.*

Gid det var sàndt! Men dé, der sige det, tage meget fejl. *Would it were true! but those who say so, are much mistaken.*

Jeg forsikrer (Dem), det har været mig sagt (ell. jeg har hört det). *I assure you, I was told so.*

Jeg kàn nogle faa (ènkelte) Ord, som jeg har lært udenad. Og hvad der er nødvendigt for at begynde at tale. *I can say a few words, which I have got by heart. And as much as is necessary to begin to speak.*

Vel begyndt er halv fuldèndt siger man; men Begyndel- . we say; however, the be-

sen er ikke nok alligevel; *ginning is not all, you must De maa ogsaa se til at also try to make an end.*  
naa Enden.

Har De ingen gode dansk- *Are there no good Danish and engelske Såmtaler at ànbefale mig.* *English Dialogues, which you can recommend me.*

Jo vi har en ganske brugbar Bearbèjdelse af J. Marstons Såmtaler, paa Engelsk og Dansk ved afgangne Kapt. Schneider, som er údkommen i Köbenhavn 1812.

*Yes, sir! we have a pretty good edition of J. M. Dialogues in English and Danish, edited by the late Cap. S., and printed in Copenhagen 1812.*

Er dèt en stôr Bòg? *Is it a large volume?*

Den údgjor omtrènt 15 Ark *It makes about 15 sheets in i Oktav.*

Og hvor faaes den (faaer man den)? *And where is it to be had?*

Hos Bòghandler Brummer, *At Mr. Brummer's, the bookseller No. 52 Eaststreet.* Nr. (Nummer) 52 paa Østergade. Der er ogsaa en anden kaldet *Lommebog for Samtalen i Fransk, Tydsk og Engelsk 1822,* som De kan faa paa samme Sted.

*There is also another, called Taschenbuch für die Conversation in fremden Sprachen, &c. which you may get in the same shop.*

Hvilken af dem er den bedste?

Den sidstanførte er den rigeste, og temmelig nöiægtig i Dansken, blot paa Retskrivningen nær; men saa er der baade fransk og tysk Oversættelse, som De vel ikke bryder Dem om.—

*The last mentioned is the richest, and pretty accurate in the Danish, except the orthography; but then there is a French and a German translation, which I suppose you don't care about. —*

**Men** De maa beständig tale *But you must always be speaking the language, whether well or ill.*

**Jeg** er bange for at begaa *I am afraid to commit blunders.*

**Frygt** aldrig for dèt; Dånsken er ikke vånskelig, men tværtimod nærmere ved Engelsk end Hølland-sken eller noget andet lævende Sprøg,

*Never fear; the Danish is not hard, but rather more nearly related to the English, than Dutch or any other living tongue.*

**Méner** De dèt? *Do you think so, sir!*

**Jeg** vil vise Dem nogle Ord, *Why, I will show you some words to prove it.*

Öje — *eye*; Arm — *arm*; Finger — *finger*; Negl — *nail*; Side — *side*; Taa — *toe*; jeg — *I*; de — *they*; dem — *them*; deres — *theirs*; vi ere — *we are*; have — *have*; give — *give*; tåge — *take*; saae — *sow*; Plov — *plough*; see — *see*; først — *first*; af — *of*; ad — *at &c.*

## ANEKDÓTER.

af A. Fr. Höstes Miniatúrbiblioték for  
Mórskabslæsning.

**E**n<sup>1)</sup> havde været paa Komédie. Man spùrgde ham, hvad Stykke<sup>2)</sup> de havde haft? — "Skam faa dèn, der veed det,"<sup>3)</sup> sagde han, „det règnede ösende Vande,<sup>4)</sup> den Gång<sup>5)</sup> jeg gik derhèn, og saa fik jeg ikke læst Plakáten."<sup>6)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> *One, a person.*   <sup>2)</sup> *piece, play.*   <sup>3)</sup> *A vulgar phrase, to which they sometimes add, om det er mig, literally: shame (confusion) to him who knows it (if I be it).*   <sup>4)</sup> *pouring (down) waters.*  
<sup>5)</sup> *the time, when.*   <sup>6)</sup> *the placard.*

En Månd fortalte i et Selskab, at hans Fáder en Gang, <sup>1)</sup> i en Alder <sup>2)</sup> af ti Aar, var faldet <sup>3)</sup> ud igjennem et Vindue i trédie Etásje <sup>4)</sup> ned paa Sténbróen. „Fra trédie Etásje!“ áfbröd <sup>5)</sup> en ung Herre <sup>6)</sup> ham, ”naa, <sup>7)</sup> han slap vist ikke <sup>8)</sup> derfrá <sup>9)</sup> med Livet.“

<sup>1)</sup> one time, a certain time. <sup>2)</sup> age. <sup>3)</sup> Should properly be falden but in the 2d conj. we often disregard the com. gend. of the partic. pass. e. g. hvor er den udgivet? where it is printed? <sup>4)</sup> story, also written in the French way, Etage; the Danish expression is Stökverk. <sup>5)</sup> interrupted, from áfbryder (p. 50). <sup>6)</sup> Gentleman. <sup>7)</sup> dear me; <sup>8)</sup> literally: he escaped certainly not, o: he surely did not escape. <sup>9)</sup> from it.

---

### Stjærneskytten.<sup>1)</sup>

En österrigske <sup>2)</sup> Rekrút stod om Natten Skildvagt <sup>3)</sup> ved et astronómisk Observatorium, og saae <sup>4)</sup> jáinkelös op til Taarnet <sup>5)</sup> og den skýfri <sup>6)</sup> Himmel. <sup>7)</sup> Då kom der nogen <sup>8)</sup> oppe paa <sup>9)</sup> Taarnet, efter <sup>10)</sup> Rekrüttens Méning, <sup>11)</sup> med en lang Flint, <sup>12)</sup> og sigtede <sup>13)</sup> dermed opad <sup>14)</sup> i Mörket. ”Men nú gad jeg dög vidst,” <sup>15)</sup> sagde Rekrütten foründret <sup>16)</sup> til sig selv, hvad dèn Kárl <sup>17)</sup> vil skýde nú om Natten,” og dèrhos <sup>18)</sup> fulgte han med Öjet den Rétning, <sup>19)</sup> som Observatørens Kikkert <sup>20)</sup> betegnede. <sup>21)</sup> Plüdselig <sup>22)</sup> skjéde <sup>23)</sup> der et Stjærneskud, <sup>24)</sup> og af Foründring tåbte Rekrütten Geværet, <sup>25)</sup> i dét han

<sup>1)</sup> The star-shooter. <sup>2)</sup> Austrian. <sup>3)</sup> centry. <sup>4)</sup> looked. <sup>5)</sup> the tower. <sup>6)</sup> cloudless, clear. <sup>7)</sup> sky. <sup>8)</sup> somebody. <sup>9)</sup> on the top of. <sup>10)</sup> according to. <sup>11)</sup> idea, according to his idea o: as he fancied, thought. <sup>12)</sup> musket. <sup>13)</sup> aimed. <sup>14)</sup> upwards. <sup>15)</sup> But now I should like to know. <sup>16)</sup> wondering. <sup>17)</sup> that fellow. <sup>18)</sup> at the same time. <sup>19)</sup> the direction. <sup>20)</sup> the telescope. <sup>21)</sup> pointed out. <sup>22)</sup> suddenly. <sup>23)</sup> there happened (to fall). <sup>24)</sup> a shooting star. <sup>25)</sup> his firelock.

raabte:<sup>26)</sup> „Naa!<sup>27)</sup> nú har jeg sét dét mèd!<sup>28)</sup> Han har riktig truffet den!”<sup>29)</sup>

<sup>26)</sup> crying out. <sup>27)</sup> dear me. <sup>28)</sup> well, I have seen that too! (i. e. Who did ever see the like o' that)? <sup>29)</sup> hit it, or hit his mark.

---

En Köbmand módtog<sup>1)</sup> en Fém-shillings-Mynt,<sup>2)</sup> der ikke sýntes ham at være ægte,<sup>3)</sup> og spúrgde dørfor en Ságfører,<sup>4)</sup> som gik forbi<sup>5)</sup> hans Butik,<sup>6)</sup> hvad han meente<sup>7)</sup> om den. Dénne besaae<sup>8)</sup> den opmærksomt;<sup>9)</sup> forsikrede<sup>10)</sup> den var góð, pùttede den til sig,<sup>11)</sup> og forlængte<sup>12)</sup> endnú<sup>13)</sup> 1 Shilling 8 Pence, da de éngelske Love have fástsat<sup>14)</sup> en Taxt af 6 Shilling 8 Pence for et hos en Ságfører indhentet Raad.<sup>15)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> got, received. <sup>2)</sup> five-shilling-piece. <sup>3)</sup> literally: which not seemed (to) him to be genuine (or good). <sup>4)</sup> attorney, or solicitor. <sup>5)</sup> passed by. <sup>6)</sup> shop, they write also *Boutik*, or even *Boutique*. <sup>7)</sup> meant, thought. <sup>8)</sup> viewed. <sup>9)</sup> attentively. <sup>10)</sup> assured (him, that). <sup>11)</sup> literally: to himself, i. e. in his pocket. <sup>12)</sup> demanded. <sup>13)</sup> still, besides. <sup>14)</sup> as the E. L. have fixed o: the E. L. having fixed. <sup>15)</sup> literally: for an, at (of) a solicitor received, advice.

---

## SMAAFORTÆLLINGER.<sup>1)</sup>

Af samme Bog.

### *Det fárige Hérberge.<sup>2)</sup>*

En simpelt<sup>3)</sup> klædt Mand, der rèjste til Fóds,<sup>4)</sup> tog en Aften, paa Vejen fra Condé til Lunze, et Øjeblik<sup>5)</sup> ind i<sup>6)</sup> et lille énsomt liggende<sup>7)</sup> Hús i Egnen<sup>8)</sup> af Peruwetz,

<sup>1)</sup> tales, stories. <sup>2)</sup> lodging. <sup>3)</sup> simply, poorly. <sup>4)</sup> on foot (p. 26). <sup>5)</sup> moment. <sup>6)</sup> tog ind i, entered into, stopt at. <sup>7)</sup> only situated. <sup>8)</sup> neighbourhood, environs.

hvor kun en Hùsmand <sup>9)</sup> og hans Kóne böede. Médens <sup>10)</sup> han údhvilede sig, <sup>11)</sup> fortalte han, <sup>12)</sup> hvorhén han gik, <sup>13)</sup> og strågs <sup>14)</sup> fattede <sup>15)</sup> Værten <sup>16)</sup> den Beslùtning, <sup>17)</sup> at ånsfalte <sup>18)</sup> ham paa Vejen.

Næppe var den Réjsende <sup>19)</sup> gaaet en Fjerdingsvèj <sup>20)</sup> videre, før en maskéret Mand, trúende <sup>21)</sup> at myrde ham, áffordrede ham <sup>22)</sup> hans Penge. Den Frèmmede <sup>23)</sup> býder <sup>24)</sup> ham tolvt Dukáter med den Forsikring, <sup>25)</sup> at han ikke hár flére hos sig, <sup>26)</sup> og faar dèrvæ Lov, <sup>27)</sup> til at drage videre; <sup>28)</sup> men strags falder det ham ind, <sup>29)</sup> at han, ved at fortsætte <sup>30)</sup> sin Rejse i en saa úsikker Egn, let <sup>31)</sup> kunde stöde paa <sup>32)</sup> andre ikke saa léttroende <sup>33)</sup> Rövere, og han beslütter <sup>34)</sup> derfor, at vende tilbage <sup>35)</sup> til det Hús, han nýlig <sup>36)</sup> har forlådt, <sup>37)</sup> og blive dér Natten óver. Han finder kun <sup>38)</sup> Kónen hjèmme, <sup>39)</sup> fortæller hende, hvad der er mödt ham, og til-lige <sup>40)</sup> at han har tolvtusende Dukáter hos sig. Værtinden <sup>41)</sup> ånviser ham, <sup>42)</sup> paa hans Forlængende, <sup>43)</sup> da hun ikke har anden Plads, et Leje <sup>44)</sup> paa et lidet Loft.

Næppe er han gaaet op, förend Værten, som havde gjort en Omvej, <sup>45)</sup> kommer hjem, og giver Kónen de

<sup>9)</sup> cottager. <sup>10)</sup> while. <sup>11)</sup> rested himself. <sup>12)</sup> told he <sup>9:</sup> he told (p. 74). <sup>13)</sup> went, i. e. was going. <sup>14)</sup> immediately, Some authors write *strax*, but contrary to the common rule for *x*, the adverb being derived from the adj. *strag*, and written in Germ, *stracks*, in Dutch *straks*. <sup>15)</sup> conceived, formed. <sup>16)</sup> the landlord. <sup>17)</sup> resolution. <sup>18)</sup> attack. <sup>19)</sup> traveller. <sup>20)</sup> a quarter of a Danish mile, about one Engl. mile. <sup>21)</sup> threatening. <sup>22)</sup> demanded of him (p. 72). <sup>23)</sup> stranger, foreigner, traveller. <sup>24)</sup> offers. <sup>25)</sup> with the assurance <sup>9:</sup> assuring him. <sup>26)</sup> about him. <sup>27)</sup> gets thereby permission. <sup>28)</sup> literally: draw farther, i. e. travel on. <sup>29)</sup> it strikes him. <sup>30)</sup> by continuing. <sup>31)</sup> easily. <sup>32)</sup> fall in with. <sup>33)</sup> credulous. <sup>34)</sup> resolves. <sup>35)</sup> turn back. <sup>36)</sup> even, just. <sup>37)</sup> left. <sup>38)</sup> only. <sup>39)</sup> at home (p. 67). <sup>40)</sup> also, even. <sup>41)</sup> the landlady (p. 62). <sup>42)</sup> assigns to him, shows him. <sup>43)</sup> request (p. 63). <sup>44)</sup> couch, bed. <sup>45)</sup> round-about way.

nýlig rövede tòlv Dukáter. „Dùmrían! <sup>46)</sup> (siger hun) du veed ikke, at Manden har tòlv túsende Dukáter; — dér er han.” <sup>47)</sup> Hvorhós hun péger <sup>48)</sup> op til Tágkammeret, <sup>49)</sup> hvor han, efter hendes Forméning, <sup>50)</sup> ligger og sover. <sup>51)</sup>

Imidlertid <sup>52)</sup> laa den Fremmede paa Luur <sup>53)</sup> med Öret, og hörte tydlig <sup>54)</sup> følgende Anslag <sup>55)</sup>: Manden skulde først gaa op paa Løftet, give ham et Slág i Hóvedet, og kaste <sup>56)</sup> ham úd af Vinduet. Hun selv skulde staa berédt nédensför, <sup>57)</sup> og med et Hug <sup>58)</sup> give ham sin Rést. <sup>59)</sup> Da den Frémmede hører dette, søger <sup>60)</sup> han først overålt <sup>61)</sup> en Udvej, <sup>62)</sup> for at undkomme; <sup>63)</sup> men Flügt var umúlig. <sup>64)</sup> Han léder nú rundt omkring, for i det mindste <sup>65)</sup> at finde et Instrumént til Försvar, <sup>66)</sup> og lykkeligvis faar han fat paa <sup>67)</sup> et stórt Stykke Træ, der kan tjéne <sup>68)</sup> til Kölle. <sup>69)</sup> Bevæbnet dèrmèd vænter han sin Fjènde, og ligesom <sup>70)</sup> denne træder ind, <sup>71)</sup> giver han ham et Slág i Hóvedet, der bédover <sup>72)</sup> ham, og kaster derpaa Lègemet <sup>73)</sup> úd igjennem Løftslügen <sup>74)</sup>. Kónen, der staar tilréde nédensför i Mörke, tvivler intet Öjeblik, <sup>75)</sup> at det er den Frémmede, der er nédkastet, styrter <sup>76)</sup> over Legemet, og húgger, med en skarp Öxe, sin Mands <sup>77)</sup> Hóved áf i eet Hug.

Kónen blév hæftet, <sup>78)</sup> og fik sin fortjente Lön. <sup>79)</sup>.

<sup>46)</sup> blockhead! <sup>47)</sup> — there he is. <sup>48)</sup> points. <sup>49)</sup> the garret.  
<sup>50)</sup> in her opinion. <sup>51)</sup> sleeps (p. 47). <sup>52)</sup> in the mean time.  
<sup>53)</sup> laa paa Luur, lay in wait, lurked, listened. <sup>54)</sup> distinctly. <sup>55)</sup> project, plan. <sup>56)</sup> throw ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>57)</sup> beneath. <sup>58)</sup> stroke, blow. <sup>59)</sup> his rest, what was farther required (to kill him). <sup>60)</sup> seeks ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ).  
<sup>61)</sup> every where. <sup>62)</sup> a passage. <sup>63)</sup> escape (p. 61). <sup>64)</sup> impossible, impracticable, from the old verb *mue*, i. e. *maatte* (p. 44).  
<sup>65)</sup> at least, must not be confounded with *i mindste Maade*, in the least. <sup>66)</sup> defence. <sup>67)</sup> he gets hold of. <sup>68)</sup> serve. <sup>69)</sup> club.  
<sup>70)</sup> just as, the moment. <sup>71)</sup> enters. <sup>72)</sup> stuns. <sup>73)</sup> the body.  
<sup>74)</sup> aperture. <sup>75)</sup> literally: doubts no moment, i. e. has not the slightest doubt. <sup>76)</sup> rushes or falls over. <sup>77)</sup> her husband's  
<sup>78)</sup> put into jail, <sup>79)</sup> her deserts.

### *Stòrmbrùden og Pàradisæblet.*

Hvò der <sup>1)</sup> den 17de April 1823 har staaet båg ved den ný Vèjrmølle <sup>2)</sup> ved Lagjewnike i det bròmbergske Distrik, vil, hvis <sup>3)</sup> han er kommen derfrá <sup>4)</sup> med Livet, kunne <sup>5)</sup> fortælle os følgende Sàmtale.

Lise, en fàttig forældrelös <sup>6)</sup> Pige <sup>7)</sup> og Prestens <sup>8)</sup> sèjstenaarige Bárnepige, <sup>9)</sup> omhýggeligen ópdraget <sup>10)</sup> i hans Hús, og med et rèt nýdeligt <sup>11)</sup> Ansigt, vilde i Dág som hvér Dág, siden <sup>12)</sup> Fòraaret <sup>13)</sup> begyndte, vandre paa den venlige Fòdsti <sup>14)</sup> forbi <sup>15)</sup> Möllen til sin Hùsbondes <sup>16)</sup> Jórdlod, <sup>17)</sup> da Möllersvenden <sup>18)</sup> Lùdvig, den rige Möllers muntre <sup>19)</sup> Sòn, stak Hòvedet ud <sup>20)</sup> igjennem Möllehullet, <sup>21)</sup> og raabte spögende; <sup>22)</sup> Ah, Lise, skòn Lise! <sup>23)</sup> — Halv uvillig <sup>24)</sup> og halv venlig blév hun rödmende staaende <sup>25)</sup> og spurgde: nù, hvad ér der da igjèn? <sup>26)</sup>

*Lùdvig.* Som <sup>27)</sup> jeg sagde dig i Gaar, skòn Lise! hár du ikke Lyst <sup>28)</sup> til at gifte dig? <sup>29)</sup>

*Lise.* Skòn Lùdvig! naar han <sup>30)</sup> kùn vil ærgre <sup>31)</sup> mig, saa lad mig hèller gaa min Vej i Rò! <sup>32)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> He who. <sup>2)</sup> behind the new windmill. <sup>3)</sup> if. <sup>4)</sup> has escaped. <sup>5)</sup> vil kunne, may. <sup>6)</sup> orphan. <sup>7)</sup> girl. <sup>8)</sup> the parson's. <sup>9)</sup> nursery maid 16 years old. [The common spelling is: *sex-tènaarig*. ED.] <sup>10)</sup> carefully educated; it should be *opdragen* (p. 45), but in the 2d conjugation we usually prefer the termination *-et* for *en* in the few participles, that may still admit the *-en* in the com. gend. <sup>11)</sup> right, or very pretty. <sup>12)</sup> to-day as every day, since. <sup>13)</sup> the spring. <sup>14)</sup> footpath. <sup>15)</sup> by, passing by. <sup>16)</sup> her master's. <sup>17)</sup> field, piece of ground. <sup>18)</sup> the young miller. <sup>19)</sup> sprightly. <sup>20)</sup> put out, forth his head. <sup>21)</sup> the hole in the mill. <sup>22)</sup> cried jestingly. <sup>23)</sup> fair Elisa! <sup>24)</sup> angry. <sup>25)</sup> blev staaende, stood still. <sup>26)</sup> what is the matter now again? <sup>27)</sup> as, the same as. <sup>28)</sup> a mind. <sup>29)</sup> marry. <sup>30)</sup> you, *han* *hun* are often used as terms of civility among the common people, or to persons of that class by those of higher rank; sometimes they express a slight displeasure: *du* is used much more in Danish than *thou* in English, but expresses a greater familiarity or superiority than *han*, *hun*. <sup>31)</sup> annoy. <sup>32)</sup> rest, peace.

Disse Ord sagde hun ganske müt,<sup>33)</sup> i dét hun vendte sig bort.<sup>34)</sup>

*Lüdvig.* Men hülde<sup>35)</sup> Lise, du skal jo ikke<sup>36)</sup> gifte dig med mig! Jeg veed vel, en Möller er for lidt<sup>37)</sup> for dig.

*Lise.* Som Kommissionær<sup>\*</sup>) vil jeg slèt ikke<sup>38)</sup> have mød ham at bestille.<sup>39)</sup> Adjö!

*Lüdvig.* Altsaa dog hèller<sup>40)</sup> som Fríer?<sup>41)</sup> O Lise, Möllehullet er desværre<sup>42)</sup> for lidet, men kunde jeg komme igjennem, saa styrtede jeg strags i dine Árme. Hör en Gang<sup>43)</sup> — húsker du vel endnú,<sup>44)</sup> for fire, fem Aar siden?<sup>45)</sup> — Du vilde dèn Gang endnú ikke<sup>46)</sup> gjælde for<sup>47)</sup> en vöxen Jòmfrau<sup>48)</sup> — da gav du mig vel endög<sup>49)</sup> et Kys, naar jeg om Söndagen<sup>50)</sup> tog dig paa Sködet,<sup>51)</sup> og gav dig en Péberkage.<sup>52)</sup> Nú har visselig Herr Påstoren<sup>53)</sup> forbüdet<sup>54)</sup> dig det; ikke sàndt,<sup>55)</sup> han præker dåglig för dig?

*Lise.* Ikke sàndt, han havde nu Rét,<sup>56)</sup> til at præke: "Lise! begív dig til dit Arbeide,<sup>57)</sup> og lad ikke Möller'en have dig til bédste?"<sup>59)</sup>

Lise var nú virkelig i Begréb med at gaa,<sup>59)</sup> hvor gjérne hun ènd<sup>60)</sup> gad<sup>61)</sup> höre den övermodige,<sup>62)</sup> men

<sup>33)</sup> in a pout. <sup>34)</sup> turning herself away. <sup>35)</sup> charming. <sup>36)</sup> *jo*, is a particle very difficult to translate, the purport of the whole context is: who says that you shall, or: nobody says that you shall. <sup>37)</sup> *lidt*, contracted of *lidet* (p. 28), is only used as adverb or noun. <sup>\*</sup> agent. <sup>38)</sup> not at all. <sup>39)</sup> have to do with. <sup>40)</sup> consequently rather. <sup>41)</sup> suitor. <sup>42)</sup> indeed, or I am sorry to say. <sup>43)</sup> hark a moment. <sup>44)</sup> do you still recollect. <sup>45)</sup> ago. <sup>46)</sup> then still you would not. <sup>47)</sup> pass for. <sup>48)</sup> fullgrown young lady (see the note p. 87). <sup>49)</sup> you would even give me. <sup>50)</sup> p. 79. <sup>51)</sup> on my lap, knees. <sup>52)</sup> gingerbread-cake. <sup>53)</sup> the parson. <sup>54)</sup> prohibited; as to the order of *dig det* see p. 26. <sup>55)</sup> is not it true that, or *does not he*, placed after the next proposition. <sup>56)</sup> a right, occasion to. <sup>57)</sup> go to your (thy) work. <sup>58)</sup> make a fool of you, take you in. <sup>59)</sup> was really about going away. <sup>60)</sup> *hvor...end*, however. <sup>61)</sup> would, liked. <sup>62)</sup> presumptuous.

ellers<sup>63)</sup> bråve Ynglings<sup>64)</sup> Spög,<sup>65)</sup> da dènne endnú en Gang<sup>66)</sup> raabte: Lise, skön Lise! — Og sé!<sup>67)</sup> Lise vendte sig rigtig nok<sup>68)</sup> endnú en Gang om<sup>69)</sup> og ló.

Hold Forklædet op, lille Hex!<sup>70)</sup> raabte Möllerens, dør hár du<sup>71)</sup> et splinternyt<sup>72)</sup> Æble fra Pàrdis. Förend hun havde fattet en Beslütning, om<sup>73)</sup> hun skulde holde Forklædet frém<sup>74)</sup> eller ikke, rullede Appelsinen<sup>75)</sup> hèn<sup>76)</sup> for hendes Födder, en Frugt, som hun aldrig<sup>77)</sup> havde seet för. Spis,<sup>78)</sup> min Eva! raabte Kårlen léende, spís det skönne Pàrdisæble!

Den lèttroende Pige fulgte Raadet, og trak Münden ganske skæv<sup>79)</sup> ved den bitre Smág<sup>80)</sup> af Skallen;<sup>81)</sup> men vél bemerkende, at en söd Säft<sup>82)</sup> flöd úd<sup>83)</sup> af Hullet, lób hun hùrtig<sup>84)</sup> bört med Appelsinen, imédens Lüdvig spöttende<sup>85)</sup> raabte efter hende: Lise, skön Lise; hvordan smáger Pàrdisæblet?

Pigen stód nu paa Préstens Mårk,<sup>86)</sup> og brugte Spáden paa det flittigste<sup>87)</sup> for at indhente<sup>88)</sup> det forsömte.<sup>89)</sup> For hendes Tanker svævede<sup>90)</sup> uden Ophör<sup>91)</sup> den müntri<sup>92)</sup> Lüdvig. Saaledes gjör han med alle Piger, sågde hun til sig selv, alle gjör han Löjer<sup>93)</sup> med, og tænker ikke — — o! og døg<sup>94)</sup> er han en góð, bråv Drèng,<sup>95)</sup> flittig, ördentlig, og hvor smukt klæder<sup>96)</sup> ikke hans ny blaau Klæder<sup>97)</sup> ham! — Er det da ikke ogsaa skikkeligt<sup>98)</sup> af ham, at han, om ogsaa<sup>99)</sup> af Övergivenhed,<sup>100)</sup>

<sup>63)</sup> otherwise. <sup>64)</sup> p. 62. <sup>65)</sup> jest. <sup>66)</sup> still another time. <sup>67)</sup> look! <sup>68)</sup> verily. <sup>69)</sup> om, about. <sup>70)</sup> witch, enchantress. <sup>71)</sup> there you have o: there is for you. <sup>72)</sup> a spick-span-new. <sup>73)</sup> om — eller, see p. 79. <sup>74)</sup> forth, up. <sup>75)</sup> the orange. <sup>76)</sup> up to. <sup>77)</sup> never. <sup>78)</sup> eat (ɔ). <sup>79)</sup> literally: drew the mouth eutirely awry. <sup>80)</sup> taste. <sup>81)</sup> shell, peel. <sup>82)</sup> sweet juice. <sup>83)</sup> ran out, came out (p. 44.) <sup>84)</sup> speedily. <sup>85)</sup> with raillery. <sup>86)</sup> field. <sup>87)</sup> very diligently. <sup>88)</sup> retrieve, make good. <sup>89)</sup> neglected. <sup>90)</sup> hovered, presented himself. <sup>91)</sup> incessantly. <sup>92)</sup> playful. <sup>93)</sup> fun. <sup>94)</sup> however. <sup>95)</sup> boy (ɔ). <sup>96)</sup> klæder ham smukt, becomes him well. <sup>97)</sup> clothes. <sup>98)</sup> kind or kindly done. <sup>99)</sup> although perhaps. <sup>100)</sup> frolick, wantonness.

gav mig den skönne Frugt? han méner det dög vel<sup>1)</sup>  
ikke saa meget slémt mèd mig.

Médens hun tænkte dette, nærmede en huul Lårmén<sup>2)</sup> sig meer og meer fra Låndsbyen. En sëlsom,<sup>3)</sup> kraftig<sup>4)</sup> Lüftströmning,<sup>5)</sup> kun indtagende<sup>6)</sup> en Brédde af omtrènt<sup>7)</sup> 200 Skridt,<sup>8)</sup> styrtede sig i dette Öjeblik hid fra Krùschwitz, og förte först Táge<sup>9)</sup> og Rúder, siden<sup>10)</sup> Skúre og Stálde<sup>11)</sup> bört mèd sig. Lusten, der stèdse blév mörkere, röbede<sup>12)</sup> den eensomme Pige en 'sig nærmende Orkán; hun ilede<sup>13)</sup> hèn bag et lévende Gærde,<sup>14)</sup> der riktig nòk<sup>15)</sup> endnu var uden Löv;<sup>16)</sup> men dog tæt<sup>17)</sup> nòk til nögenlunde<sup>18)</sup> at brýde Vindens Mågt. Nù fløj allerede Straaet fra hendes Hjéms Táge tætttere og tætttere hèn<sup>19)</sup> över hende; en stór Láde<sup>20)</sup> flågrede<sup>21)</sup> lig en Fjéder höjt oppe i Lusten, derpaa<sup>22)</sup> igjen skinnende Linned, der var fört bort fra Blégen.<sup>23)</sup> Men nú — frygtelig bráger og brúser<sup>24)</sup> og hviner det. Lise seer bævende<sup>25)</sup> ivèjret: ved Gud, det er den ný Véjr-mölle, der uimodstaälig grében<sup>26)</sup> af Lüftsströmningen, lig en Papirsdrage,<sup>27)</sup> súser hèn<sup>28)</sup> över hendes Hóved. Ved dette skräckelige Sýn tåber<sup>29)</sup> hun Bevidstheden.<sup>30)</sup> Dog snårt vækker en forfærdelig Knágen<sup>31)</sup> hende. Stör-

<sup>1)</sup> *vel*, is a particle difficult to translate, it expresses a probability, where there might still be some doubt; like: I should think, possibly. <sup>2)</sup> a hollow noise. <sup>3)</sup> strange. <sup>4)</sup> powerful. <sup>5)</sup> current of air. <sup>6)</sup> that only filled. <sup>7)</sup> about. <sup>8)</sup> paces ( $\frac{1}{4}$  p. 19). <sup>9)</sup> roofs <sup>10)</sup> afterwards. <sup>11)</sup> sheds & stables. <sup>12)</sup> betrayed, *röber* is betray, indicate, but *forraader* is betray perfidiously, like a traitor. <sup>13)</sup> hastened. <sup>14)</sup> a quickset hedge. <sup>15)</sup> indeed. <sup>16)</sup> leaves ( $\frac{1}{4}$  p. 21). <sup>17)</sup> tight, thick. <sup>18)</sup> in some degree. <sup>19)</sup> away. <sup>20)</sup> barn. <sup>21)</sup> fluttered. <sup>22)</sup> after that. <sup>23)</sup> bleaching-ground. <sup>24)</sup> roars. <sup>25)</sup> trembling. <sup>26)</sup> irresistibly seized. <sup>27)</sup> a kite. <sup>28)</sup> whistles away. <sup>29)</sup> loses, *tåbe* is to lose for a time, or something that may be found again, but *miste* is to lose entirely, or something most difficult to recover. <sup>30)</sup> consciousness. <sup>31)</sup> cracking noise.

men havde lådet sit Bytte<sup>32)</sup> fare,<sup>33)</sup> og kun faa<sup>34)</sup> Skridt fra hende laa Möllen nedstyrtet.<sup>35)</sup>

Ester dette tórdnende Fåld var det paa een Gang<sup>36)</sup> igjen blévet stille<sup>37)</sup>; men med unævnelig<sup>38)</sup> Forfærdelse<sup>39)</sup> begréb<sup>40)</sup> Lise at Lüdvig maatte være begrávet med<sup>41)</sup> under Möllens Ruiner. Véklagende<sup>42)</sup> irrede<sup>43)</sup> hun omkring den lette Bygning, og den sandeste Smertes<sup>44)</sup> Taarer strömmede ned ad hendes Ansigt. O, var Huset dog kun<sup>45)</sup> styrtet ned paa mig, raabte hun jamrende;<sup>46)</sup> ti<sup>47)</sup> hvorledes skal jeg óverleve<sup>48)</sup> hans Död? Aldrig har han ánet,<sup>49)</sup> hvorméget mit Hjærte tilhørte<sup>50)</sup> ham, hvor kært ethvert Blik,<sup>51)</sup> ethvert Órd af ham vår mig: aldrig, det vidste jeg væl, kunde jeg blive hans, men dög havde jeg ham kér,<sup>52)</sup> og var lykkelig ved kun at sé<sup>53)</sup> ham. Nu er han borte, den vénlige Yngling; knúst<sup>54)</sup> ligger han under sönderbrudte<sup>55)</sup> Bjaelker!<sup>56)</sup>

Imédens den skyldfrei<sup>57)</sup> Jómfrus héle Hjærte údgöd sig<sup>58)</sup> i saadanne Kláger, löd<sup>59)</sup> pludselig Ludvigs vélbe-

<sup>32)</sup> booty. <sup>33)</sup> go, (fall.) <sup>34)</sup> few. In order to distinguish this word from the verb *at faa*, to get, some authors write in the latter case *faae*, to make it analogous with the other verbs in *-e*, but this is in direct opposition to etymology, the pronoun being a dissyllable in the old tongues, Anglosaxon *seaca*, Icel. *faír*, Lat. *pauci*, the verb on the contrary a monosyllable, Anglos. *fón*, Icel. *fá*, Swed. *fd.* <sup>35)</sup> hurled down, thrown down. <sup>36)</sup> all at once, suddenly. <sup>37)</sup> calm. <sup>38)</sup> unspeakable. <sup>39)</sup> horror. <sup>40)</sup> understood, thought. <sup>41)</sup> with (the other things). <sup>42)</sup> lamenting. <sup>43)</sup> strayed. <sup>44)</sup> pain, grief. <sup>45)</sup> were but only! <sup>46)</sup> lamenting. <sup>47)</sup> for, also written *thi*, but improperly, it seems, the old *th* being in all cases changed to *t* or *d* in the modern Danish, even in this same word in the composition *fordi*, because, not *fordhi*. <sup>48)</sup> survive, live after. <sup>49)</sup> imagined, also written *ahnet*, according to the Germ. orthography. <sup>50)</sup> belonged to, was devoted to. <sup>51)</sup> look. <sup>52)</sup> I had him dear, i. e. he was dear to me. <sup>53)</sup> by merely seeing (p. 77). <sup>54)</sup> crushed: <sup>55)</sup> broken to pieces. <sup>56)</sup> beams. <sup>57)</sup> guiltless, harmless. <sup>58)</sup> poured forth itself, streamed forth (the heart i. e. feeling). <sup>59)</sup> sounded, was heard.

kjendte Stemmme:<sup>60)</sup> Lise, hylde Lise!" — Fn Skjælven<sup>61)</sup> lød over hende; médlös<sup>62)</sup> saae hun sig óm, og see! Ludvigs Hoved stak muntret úd af Møllehullet, der nú vendte op ad mod<sup>63)</sup> Himlen. Ogsaa i hans Øjne stóde Taarer. "Bedste Lise," sagde han forvirret,<sup>64)</sup> hjærtelig elsker "jeg dig: — hjælp mig kún úd af dèn fordömte Klémme;<sup>65)</sup> ti Døren ligger ned mod Jorden; — góde Bárn, "skal vi saaledes erføre<sup>66)</sup> at vi ère bestemte<sup>67)</sup> for hinanden? Brýd kún dette Brædt<sup>68)</sup> hér löst, Vinden har "alleréde<sup>69)</sup> løsnet Sömmene<sup>70)</sup> en Smúle.<sup>71)</sup> — Gúd, "hvilken Helvedfart!<sup>72)</sup> — men, Lise, hár du mig då saa kær? — Nu, Herren skje Tak,<sup>73)</sup> jeg er úde og i dine Arme!" Hér trykte han<sup>74)</sup> den glødende, af óvervældende<sup>75)</sup> Glædesfølelse sitrende<sup>76)</sup> Pige til sit Bryst. "Guds Stòrm selv har bragt mig til dig, — Stòrmbrúden er blèven en Jòmfubrúd — kom, kom til min Fáder, lad os sige ham det, og hente<sup>77)</sup> hans Tillådelse!<sup>78)</sup>

Arm i Arm, betrægtende<sup>79)</sup> hinanden med sålige<sup>80)</sup> Blikke, vandrede de Elskende til Låndbyen.<sup>81)</sup> Paa dén Plåds, hvor den ny Mølle havde staet, fandt de Ludvigs Húsfæller<sup>82)</sup> samlede med lydelige<sup>83)</sup> Véklager. Som en

<sup>60)</sup> well known voice. <sup>61)</sup> shivering. <sup>62)</sup> downcast. <sup>63)</sup> towards. <sup>64)</sup> perplexed. <sup>65)</sup> strait. <sup>66)</sup> learn. <sup>67)</sup> destined. <sup>68)</sup> board, also written *Bret*. <sup>69)</sup> already, in Danish it must be written with *ll*, being composed of *alle-rede*, Icel. *alla-reðu*, whereas neither *ale* nor *ere* afford any meaning whatever. But *alene*, should be written with one *l*, being compounded of *al-ene*, wholly-one, i. e. al-one, Icel. *aleinn*. <sup>70)</sup> the nails. <sup>71)</sup> a crum, bit. a little. <sup>72)</sup> hell-flight. <sup>73)</sup> literally: to the lord be praise (that). <sup>74)</sup> he pressed: *presser* is also a Danish verb, but used of squeezing violent compression, compulsion &c. <sup>75)</sup> overwhelming. <sup>76)</sup> trembling, sometimes, though erroneously, written *sittre*, or in the Germ. way *zittre*, but the Icel. *titra*, has but one *t* in the middle. <sup>77)</sup> fetch, get. <sup>78)</sup> permission. <sup>79)</sup> gazing upon. <sup>80)</sup> blissful. <sup>81)</sup> the village. <sup>82)</sup> house-fellows, inmates. <sup>83)</sup> loud.

Aand viste han sig midt i blåndt dem. Den gamle Fáders Hénrykkelse<sup>84)</sup> ved at gjénsee ham, óvergik<sup>85)</sup> ál Beskrivelse, og da Sönnen förestillede<sup>86)</sup> ham den undséelige<sup>87)</sup> Lise, som sin Brúd, saa blév den förste hèftige Glæde<sup>88)</sup> en blid Forénings Stifter.<sup>89)</sup> Snårt var den foréldrelöse<sup>90)</sup> og fattige Pige ómskabt<sup>91)</sup> til en Madam Möllermesterinde, og hun plejede<sup>92)</sup> siden ofte, i Fölelsen af sin Lykke, at sige: "Eva mistede Pàradiset, da hun spiste Frugten, for mig har Pàdisæblet betýdet<sup>93)</sup> Paradis selv."

Dén som iøvrigt,<sup>94)</sup> ikke vil trò<sup>95)</sup> denne sandfær-dige<sup>96)</sup> Històrie, der riktig nòk, formédelst Vejrmollen, der süssede igjennem Lusten med Möllerens, smáger stærkt<sup>97)</sup> af et Æventyr, han éfterlæse<sup>98)</sup> den paa graat<sup>99)</sup> Makulatúr<sup>100)</sup> trykte<sup>1)</sup> Haude- og Spenerske Tidende<sup>2)</sup> Nr. 57 for 13de Maj 1823, under blandede Bekjèndtgjörelser,<sup>3)</sup> hvor han vil óvertyde sig<sup>4)</sup> om, at Historien om denne Windmölle<sup>5)</sup> ikke er Vind.

<sup>84)</sup> rapture. <sup>85)</sup> passed. <sup>86)</sup> introduced, presented. <sup>87)</sup> bashful. <sup>88)</sup> excessive joy. <sup>89)</sup> founder. <sup>90)</sup> orphan. <sup>91)</sup> transformed. <sup>92)</sup> used. <sup>93)</sup> signified. <sup>94)</sup> as for the rest. <sup>95)</sup> believe. (p. 41). <sup>96)</sup> true. <sup>97)</sup> much. <sup>98)</sup> consult. <sup>99)</sup> grey. <sup>100)</sup> waste-paper. <sup>1)</sup> printed. <sup>2)</sup> Gazette. <sup>3)</sup> miscellaneous advertisements. <sup>4)</sup> convince himself. <sup>5)</sup> a Germanism for *Vejrmölle*, preserved here, to make a quibble with the following word *Vind*.

*Féodor og Evelina.*

en Fortælling,<sup>1)</sup> (af F. C. Hillerups *Italica*, 1. B. S. 85).

*Förste Capitel.*

Mig öpgaar nú min Morgenröde,<sup>2)</sup>  
jeg Sólen skúer<sup>3)</sup> i sin Glands;<sup>4)</sup>  
hvor túsind sváge Hjørter blöde,  
jeg vundet hár min Séjerskrands.<sup>5)</sup>

Jeg glemmer<sup>6)</sup> éder, svundne<sup>7)</sup> Dage!  
I skal ej någe<sup>8)</sup> meer mit Bryst.  
I kan ej komme meer tilbáge;  
Natürens Skönhed<sup>9)</sup> er min Tröst.

Omtrent tré danske Mile fra Róm hæver sig<sup>10)</sup> Albáner-bjergenes isolerede Gruppe. De ere ligesaa mærkværdige<sup>11)</sup> for Beskúeren<sup>12)</sup> med Hénsyn til den hènrivende<sup>13)</sup> Natúrskönhed<sup>14)</sup>, der prýder<sup>15)</sup> dem, som til de ærværdige<sup>16)</sup> Minder<sup>17)</sup> fra den klassiske Oldtid,<sup>18)</sup> der overålt frémbyde sig for Vandrerens Blik. Hvó har vel<sup>19)</sup> nogen-sinde<sup>20)</sup> tilbragt<sup>21)</sup> skönne Öjeblikke<sup>22)</sup> i de vénlige Smaåstæder<sup>23)</sup> Fraskáti, Marino, Kastel Gandólfo, Albáno, Némi, og mindes ikke<sup>24)</sup> med vémodblandet<sup>25)</sup> Glæde sit behágelige<sup>26)</sup> Ophold<sup>27)</sup> i Sködet<sup>28)</sup> af en fortryllende<sup>29)</sup> Natúr? Hvo vandrede vel<sup>30)</sup> ved Albánersöens<sup>31)</sup> og

<sup>1)</sup> tale, novel. <sup>2)</sup> aurora, dawn. <sup>3)</sup> behold (>). <sup>4)</sup> splendor. <sup>5)</sup> trophy, wreath of victory. <sup>6)</sup> forgot (>). <sup>7)</sup> gone, past (p. 48). <sup>8)</sup> not gnaw, torment, trouble. <sup>9)</sup> beauty. <sup>10)</sup> rises to the view. <sup>11)</sup> remarkable. <sup>12)</sup> spectator. <sup>13)</sup> ravishing. <sup>14)</sup> beauty of nature, beautiful nature. <sup>15)</sup> adorns (>). <sup>16)</sup> venerable. <sup>17)</sup> remembrances, monuments. <sup>18)</sup> antiquity. <sup>19)</sup> vel of this particle see p. 101 note 1; here it seems to answer to the Engl 'who shall have.' <sup>20)</sup> ever. <sup>21)</sup> spent. <sup>22)</sup> moments. <sup>23)</sup> small towns. <sup>24)</sup> does not call to mind. <sup>25)</sup> mixed with sa dness. <sup>26)</sup> agreeable. <sup>27)</sup> sojourn, stay. <sup>28)</sup> bosom. <sup>29)</sup> charming. <sup>30)</sup> shall have wandered, cf. note 19. <sup>31)</sup> of the lake of Albano.

Némisöens romántiske Brædder,<sup>33)</sup> og ønsker ikke ófste med et Længselssuk,<sup>33)</sup> at gjènsee disse uforglèmmelige<sup>34)</sup> Egne?

I længst<sup>35)</sup> hønsvundne Tíder, förend Històrien endnu lader sin Röst<sup>36)</sup> höre om Mènneskenes Færd<sup>37)</sup> i disse Bjerge, har en frygtelig<sup>38)</sup> Vulkán raset<sup>39)</sup> hér, og efterladt gigántiske Spór<sup>40)</sup> af sin Tilværelse<sup>41)</sup> ved<sup>42)</sup> tre stóre, i den fjærneste Oldtid únbrændte,<sup>43)</sup> Kråtere, som nu ère forvändlede til en yppig<sup>44)</sup> blòmstrende Dál, og tó máleriske,<sup>45)</sup> Indsöer,<sup>46)</sup> som de med höje tilbágetrædende<sup>47)</sup> Skraaninger,<sup>48)</sup> der ömgive<sup>49)</sup> dem, danne<sup>50)</sup> tre trågtformige<sup>51)</sup> Fordýbninger.<sup>52)</sup> Det störste af disse fördums<sup>53)</sup> Kråtere er Albánersöen, der fører Nåvn efter Stáden Albáno, og hár en æggeformig Skikkelse.<sup>54)</sup> Dybt néde, umiddelbart ved<sup>55)</sup> dens Brædder, slynger sig<sup>56)</sup> en Fódsti gjennem blòmstrende Frúghåver og smaa Viinplantninger,<sup>57)</sup> der ömgive det kláre Våndspejl<sup>58)</sup> lig en yndig Krands,<sup>59)</sup> fra hvilken Jórdsmonnet<sup>60)</sup> hæver sig flére<sup>61)</sup> Hündrede Fód<sup>62)</sup> i en temmelig stejl<sup>63)</sup> Skraaning, som beständig<sup>64)</sup> træder meer tilbáge, jo meer den fjærner sig fra Dýbet, og èndelig áfbrydes af den övre<sup>65)</sup> Bræd, som med den yppigste Vegetation danner Randen<sup>66)</sup>

<sup>33)</sup> shore, some authors write *Bredder*, but *Brædder* seems to be preferable: 1) on account of the pronunciation: 2) in order to distinguish it from *Bredde*, breadth, latitude, which is pronounced with, é; 3) to show its derivation from Icel. *barð*, and its analogy to Swed. *brädd*. <sup>34)</sup> sigh of longing. <sup>35)</sup> not to be forgotten. <sup>36)</sup> long ago. <sup>37)</sup> her voice. <sup>38)</sup> doing. <sup>39)</sup> terrible. <sup>40)</sup> raged. <sup>41)</sup> traces. <sup>42)</sup> existence. <sup>43)</sup> by or in, i. e. left as traces of its existence three great &c. <sup>44)</sup> burnt out. <sup>45)</sup> rich. <sup>46)</sup> picturesque. <sup>47)</sup> lakes. <sup>48)</sup> her voice. <sup>49)</sup> doing. <sup>50)</sup> terrible. <sup>51)</sup> retreated. <sup>52)</sup> her voice. <sup>53)</sup> form (†). <sup>54)</sup> her voice. <sup>55)</sup> form (†). <sup>56)</sup> her voice. <sup>57)</sup> vine-plantations. <sup>58)</sup> the ground. <sup>59)</sup> graceful wreath. <sup>60)</sup> the ground. <sup>61)</sup> more (than one) i. e. several. <sup>62)</sup> feet (p. 24). <sup>63)</sup> steep. <sup>64)</sup> always, continually. <sup>65)</sup> upper. <sup>66)</sup> the brim.

af den Tragt eller det Bæger,<sup>67)</sup> hvis BUND<sup>68)</sup> Söens Overflade<sup>69)</sup> er. En for det meste<sup>70)</sup> smål<sup>71)</sup> Vej löber langs om denne höje Kyst<sup>72)</sup> og frembyder paa en skön Dag höjst måleriske Udsigter<sup>73)</sup> óver den melancholske dýbe Sö og dens idylliske Omgivelser,<sup>74)</sup> hvor disse Bjerges höjeste Spidse,<sup>75)</sup> Monte caeo kåldet, næsten allevegne<sup>76)</sup> åfgiver<sup>77)</sup> en behågelig Hvilepunkt<sup>78)</sup> for Öjet. Fra Staden Albano selv kan man ikke öjne<sup>79)</sup> Söen, men maa, for at see den, gaa et Par Hundrede Skridt údaf Byen, og beständig opad. Da ständser<sup>80)</sup> man tilsidst<sup>81)</sup> paa en høj Brink, hvorfra man skúer den dunkle<sup>82)</sup> mystiske Våndflade<sup>83)</sup> dybt under sine Fodder. Til vänstre fører<sup>84)</sup> en Allee af gamle ærværdige Ege<sup>85)</sup> og andre Træer til den lille Bý Kastel Gandolfo, som med sin Kuppel og sit pávelige<sup>86)</sup> Sømmerslot<sup>87)</sup> hæver sig paa de ujævne<sup>88)</sup> Höjder. I Båggrunden taarne sig<sup>89)</sup> de fjærne Appenniner, blandt hvilke det taggede<sup>90)</sup> Sorakte nú tildags<sup>91)</sup> San Oreste, tróner<sup>92)</sup> i stille<sup>93)</sup> Majestät. Til höjre<sup>94)</sup> seer man Klösteret Pallazuola, som bebóes<sup>95)</sup> af smudsige<sup>96)</sup> Munke, der prale<sup>97)</sup> af at en portugíisk Prinds engang har lévet og döet som en ráget<sup>98)</sup> Bróder<sup>99)</sup> i deres Midte.<sup>100)</sup> Denne fromme Fyrste<sup>1)</sup> hedder endnu beständig i dette Klöster *il Portoghesino*, og hans

<sup>67)</sup> cup. <sup>68)</sup> bottom. <sup>69)</sup> surface. <sup>70)</sup> mostly. <sup>71)</sup> narrow.

<sup>72)</sup> coast. <sup>73)</sup> views. <sup>74)</sup> environs. <sup>75)</sup> point, top, peak. <sup>76)</sup>

every where. <sup>77)</sup> affords. <sup>78)</sup> point of rest. <sup>79)</sup> see, reach with

the eye. <sup>80)</sup> stops. <sup>81)</sup> at last. <sup>82)</sup> dark. <sup>83)</sup> sheet of water.

<sup>84)</sup> on the left hand leads. <sup>85)</sup> oaks. <sup>86)</sup> papal. <sup>87)</sup> summer-

seat. <sup>88)</sup> uneven, unequal. <sup>89)</sup> tower. <sup>90)</sup> jaggy. [Rask spells

*det taggede*; the common spelling is takkede ED.] <sup>91)</sup> now-a-days.

<sup>92)</sup> sits on the throne, stands. <sup>93)</sup> calm, unshaken. <sup>94)</sup> on the

right hand. <sup>95)</sup> is inhabited (p. 41). <sup>96)</sup> filthy. <sup>97)</sup> boast

<sup>98)</sup> shaved. <sup>99)</sup> brother, friar. <sup>100)</sup> In their middle, among them.

<sup>1)</sup> pious prince, *Fyrste* is generally said of a reigning prince, *Prins* of a young person of blood royal. It should be written without a *d*, as also: *Provins*, *Krans*, *Dans*, *Glans*, there being no *d* in these roots, but the orthography with *nds* (from the German *nz*) is still more common.

Billeder, som hænger paa en Væg i disse mørke Haller, er Gjènstand<sup>2)</sup> for Munkenes Beundring.<sup>3)</sup> Mere mærkværdigt for den fördomsfri<sup>4)</sup> Rejsende er en römersk<sup>5)</sup> Kønsuls Gravmæle,<sup>6)</sup> som findes i Kløsterhaven<sup>7)</sup>. Nøget fra<sup>8)</sup> dette Mysticemens og Sværmeriets<sup>9)</sup> eensomme Sæde hæver sig paa Bjergets Skraaning den ubele<sup>10)</sup> men højst romantiske Låndsbys, *Rocca di Papa*, der, paa den vildeste og selsomste<sup>11)</sup> Maade, ligesom<sup>12)</sup> hænger ned ad Klipperne,<sup>13)</sup> og i det fjérne<sup>14)</sup> ikke er ulyk en Svallerede.<sup>15)</sup> Naar Vandreren er kommen igjennem<sup>16)</sup> denne lille Bý, træder han ud<sup>17)</sup> paa en anséelig Slætte,<sup>18)</sup> der fører Nåvn af *Campo di Anibale*, énten fordi Hannibal dèr har haft sin Læjr mod Römerne, eller, som andre vel<sup>20)</sup> med mere Grund<sup>21)</sup> antage,<sup>22)</sup> fordi Römerhæren<sup>23)</sup> dèr havde sin Læjr, for at iægttage den kartaginënsiske Féltherre.<sup>24)</sup> Naar man nú har vandret et Stykke frèm paa denne Slette, staar man ved Foden af den Bjergtop,<sup>25)</sup> som fører Navn af *Monte cavo*, og hæver sig omtrænt trétusinde Fód over Middelhavets<sup>26)</sup> Overflade. Denne Spidse, som har Skikkelse af en afkortet<sup>27)</sup> Kegle,<sup>28)</sup> bestiger<sup>29)</sup> man med Mågelighed<sup>30)</sup> og Sikkerhed ved Hjælp af en antik brølagt<sup>31)</sup> Vej, der i Oldtiden førte op til et Jüpiter-Tempel, som dannede Bjergets højeste Punkt. Til dette ærværdige Sted, som nu har maattet<sup>32)</sup> vige<sup>33)</sup> for et Munkekloster, dróge<sup>34)</sup> i de hédenfarne<sup>35)</sup>

<sup>2)</sup> object. <sup>3)</sup> admiration. <sup>4)</sup> unprejudiced. <sup>5)</sup> Roman, pronounce *rommersk*. <sup>6)</sup> tomb. <sup>7)</sup> convent garden. <sup>8)</sup> A short way from. <sup>9)</sup> fanaticism. <sup>10)</sup> miserable. <sup>11)</sup> most strange. <sup>12)</sup> as it were. <sup>13)</sup> from the rocks. <sup>14)</sup> at a distance. <sup>15)</sup> swallow's nest. <sup>16)</sup> is come through, has passed through. <sup>17)</sup> comes out. <sup>18)</sup> considerable plain. <sup>19)</sup> camp. <sup>20)</sup> may here be rendered *perhaps*. <sup>21)</sup> reason. <sup>22)</sup> believe. <sup>23)</sup> the Roman army. <sup>24)</sup> General. <sup>25)</sup> summit. <sup>26)</sup> of the Mediterranean. <sup>27)</sup> shortened. <sup>28)</sup> cone. <sup>29)</sup> ascends. <sup>30)</sup> ease. <sup>31)</sup> paved. <sup>32)</sup> has been obliged to. <sup>33)</sup> give way. <sup>34)</sup> drew i. e. went, cf. p. 96 note 27, it p. 44. <sup>35)</sup> deceased, gone past.

klassiske Dáge de séjrende<sup>36)</sup> Féltherrer, før at bringe Gúernes Fader Ták og Prís, for den foründte<sup>37)</sup> Lykke i tiléndebragte Krige.<sup>38)</sup> Naar nu omsíder<sup>39)</sup> den Rejsende staar paa denne ophøjede<sup>40)</sup> Punkt, da lönnes<sup>41)</sup> den Möje, som Opgangen<sup>42)</sup> kan have foraarsåget ham, fuldkommen ved en vid og fortryllende Udsigt over de historiske Egne, som en Gang i hènsvundne Dage spil-lede<sup>43)</sup> en saa forbåvsende<sup>44)</sup> Rølle<sup>45)</sup> paa Jórdkloden.<sup>46)</sup> Mód Vèsten svæver Blikket úd<sup>47)</sup> over den úhyre Slette, i hvis Midte Vèrdens<sup>48)</sup> gamle Hóvedstad<sup>49)</sup> tróner med sin Péterskuppel, og úd over denne Slette tåber Öjet sig i Middelhavets umaalelige<sup>50)</sup> Sölvflade, som i den ýder-ste<sup>51)</sup> Horisont sýnes at smelte sammen<sup>52)</sup> med Lufsten. Mod Nòrd og Øst begrændses<sup>53)</sup> Sýnskredsen af Apen-ninernes höje Bjèrgmasser,<sup>54)</sup> blandt hvilke<sup>55)</sup> Soràkte hæver<sup>56)</sup> sit trùende Hóved; mod Sýden opdager<sup>57)</sup> man Öer og Förbjerge<sup>58)</sup> i Köngeriget<sup>59)</sup> Neápel. Vil man nu betrægte<sup>60)</sup> de nærmere Gjénstande, da óverskuer<sup>61)</sup> man Albånerbjergenes héle Masse med alle dércs yndige Skove<sup>62)</sup> og mange Smaastæder, og dybt néden under sig<sup>63)</sup> seer man de ömtalte<sup>64)</sup> Indsöer, der danne en Figúr ej úlig et Par Briller,<sup>65)</sup> som dog riktig nok blive<sup>66)</sup> lidt urègelrette, da Albånersöen er méget større end Nemisöen.

Herúd til dette Pàradis drage utållige Mennesker om Sommeren,<sup>67)</sup> for at ømbytte<sup>68)</sup> Hóvedstadens kvælende<sup>69)</sup>

<sup>36)</sup> victorious. <sup>37)</sup> allotted. <sup>38)</sup> wars (2). <sup>39)</sup> finally. <sup>40)</sup> ele-vated. <sup>41)</sup> will be repaid. <sup>42)</sup> ascent. <sup>43)</sup> played. <sup>44)</sup> asto-nishing. <sup>45)</sup> part. <sup>46)</sup> the globe. <sup>47)</sup> literally: the look hovers out, i. e. the view extends. <sup>48)</sup> of the world. <sup>49)</sup> capital <sup>50)</sup> immeasurable. <sup>51)</sup> farthest. <sup>52)</sup> mingle with. <sup>53)</sup> is bor-dered. <sup>54)</sup> mountain - masses. <sup>55)</sup> amongst which. <sup>56)</sup> raises (1). <sup>57)</sup> discovers, espies. <sup>58)</sup> promontories. <sup>59)</sup> the kingdom. <sup>60)</sup> view. <sup>61)</sup> overlooks. <sup>62)</sup> woods. <sup>63)</sup> far beneath oneself. <sup>64)</sup> mentioned. <sup>65)</sup> spectacles. <sup>66)</sup> are. <sup>67)</sup> see p. 78. <sup>68)</sup> ex-change. <sup>69)</sup> suffocating.

Atmosfære med Bjærgenes réne, forfriskende<sup>70)</sup> Luft. Især<sup>71)</sup> besøges disse Egne flittigen af de mange Rejsende, som gæste<sup>73)</sup> det skønne Italien, og frèmfor ålt<sup>74)</sup> af de fremmede Künstnere<sup>75)</sup> der op holdte sig i Röm for sine Studiers Skyld.<sup>76)</sup> Staden Albano, hvis Navn man údleder<sup>77)</sup> af det gamle *Alba longa*, som har ligget<sup>78)</sup> der i Nærheden, er hverken smuk eller stór. Déns Folke-mængde<sup>79)</sup> överstiger<sup>80)</sup> næppe halvtrédie Túsinde Ind-vaanere, og blandt dens Bygninger kunne vistnok<sup>81)</sup> kun faa gjøre Kráv paa<sup>82)</sup> arkitektónisk Skönhed. Nogle Ruiner fra Oldtiden, blandt hvilke det saakaldte Horátiernes og Curiátiernes Gråvmæle,<sup>83)</sup> som vel næppe nögensinde har været et Gråvmæle, ère det énesteste, som hér kan vække Opmárksomhed hos Kunstens og Històriens Venner. Men er Albano selv ikke i Stand<sup>84)</sup> til at fængsles<sup>85)</sup> den Rejsende, da formaar<sup>86)</sup> vel det smilende Låndskab hvori den ligger, at fylde Vandrerens Bryst med Glæde og Beündring over Hespériens hèrlige<sup>87)</sup> Natúrskönhed.

I denne lille Stad op holdt sig<sup>88)</sup> en Gang i de varme Sømmermaaneder en ung Rùsser,<sup>89)</sup> som vi ville kalde Fédor. Som Søn af en formuende<sup>90)</sup> Köbmand<sup>90)</sup> i St. Petersborg, vår han af sin Fáder bléven nødsaget<sup>92)</sup> til at lægge sig efter<sup>93)</sup> Handelen,<sup>94)</sup> men Merkúr var alt for tör<sup>95)</sup> en Guddom for den fantasírige<sup>96)</sup> Yngling, der med sin héle Sjæl tilbad<sup>97)</sup> Skönhedens élige Poesi. En Rejse, som den unge Håndelsmand en Gang i Forrétnin-

<sup>70)</sup> pure, refreshing. <sup>71)</sup> especially. <sup>72)</sup> are visited ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>73)</sup> go to see. <sup>74)</sup> most of all. <sup>75)</sup> artists (p. 62). <sup>76)</sup> on account of, because of. <sup>77)</sup> derives. <sup>78)</sup> been situated. <sup>79)</sup> amount, number of inhabitants. <sup>80)</sup> exceeds. <sup>81)</sup> certainly. <sup>82)</sup> make pretensions to. <sup>83)</sup> sepulchral monument. <sup>84)</sup> incapable, not able. <sup>85)</sup> captivate. <sup>86)</sup> can, has power. <sup>87)</sup> excellent, eminent. <sup>88)</sup> lived. <sup>89)</sup> Russian <sup>90)</sup> wealthy. <sup>91)</sup> merchant. <sup>92)</sup> obliged <sup>93)</sup> to apply himself to. <sup>94)</sup> commerce. <sup>95)</sup> dry. <sup>96)</sup> of a lively imagination. <sup>97)</sup> adored.

ger<sup>98)</sup> maatte gjøre til Frånkfurt am Mayn, opflammede<sup>99)</sup> hans Kærlighed til Låndskabsmaleriet,<sup>100)</sup> hvilket han alt<sup>1)</sup> længe havde yndet og dyrket<sup>2)</sup> i sine Fritimer,<sup>3)</sup> til den höjeste Gråd, og ned-sænkte<sup>4)</sup> ham i Fortvivlelse<sup>5)</sup> for nogen Tid. En ulykkelig Lídenskab<sup>6)</sup> for et Frúentim-mer, der var hans Hjærté uværdig, og spillede Gjek med<sup>7)</sup> hans Rólighed<sup>8)</sup> forøgede<sup>9)</sup> hans dýbe<sup>10)</sup> Misfornøjelse<sup>11)</sup> med sin Stilling,<sup>12)</sup> og gjórde ham Opholdet<sup>13)</sup> i Fædreneh-landet forhådt.<sup>14)</sup> Omsider indsaae<sup>15)</sup> Fáderen, at hans Són ikke var bestémt<sup>16)</sup> af Natúren, til at blive en stór Köbmmand, og indvilligede<sup>17)</sup> i, at Féodor ganske opofrede<sup>18)</sup> sig til Künsten. Den gamle, som aldrig gjórde nöget halvt, tilstod<sup>19)</sup> end mère<sup>20)</sup> den henrykte Yngling en betydelig Understöttelse, hvorved denne saae sig i Stånd til at úddanne<sup>21)</sup> sig i Künsten i fremmede Lande. Ef-terat have opholdt sig et Par Aar i Tyskland og Svejts,<sup>22)</sup> drög den unge Låndskabsmaler över Alperne ned i Künst-nernes forjættede Land,<sup>23)</sup> det af Natúren saa begunsti-gede<sup>24)</sup> og ved Historien saa ærværdige Hespérien. Med Hénrykkelse hilste<sup>23)</sup> Féodor Ráfaels og Michelangelos Fædreland, da han fra Bjergene förstø Gang öjnede Lombardiets yppige Sletter. Det herlige Miláno, Bologna med sine Arkáder og Medicáernes Ståd, som med Rette<sup>26)</sup> fører Navn af den skönne, tildroge sig<sup>27)</sup> i höj Gråd hans Opmærksomhed og Beundring; men alting maatte vige for det Indtryk, som den èvige Tiberstad gjórde

<sup>98)</sup> in (commercial) business. <sup>99)</sup> inflamed. <sup>100)</sup> landscape-painting. <sup>1)</sup> already. <sup>2)</sup> favored and cultivated. <sup>3)</sup> plur. leisure, also called *Fritid*. <sup>4)</sup> plunged. <sup>5)</sup> despair. <sup>6)</sup> passion. <sup>7)</sup> sported, mocked. <sup>8)</sup> peace of mind. <sup>9)</sup> increased. <sup>10)</sup> deep, i. e. high, great. <sup>11)</sup> discontent, disgust. <sup>12)</sup> situation. <sup>13)</sup> his stay. <sup>14)</sup> odious. <sup>15)</sup> perceived, saw. <sup>16)</sup> destined. <sup>17)</sup> consented. <sup>18)</sup> devoted. <sup>19)</sup> granted. <sup>20)</sup> more-over. <sup>21)</sup> perfect. <sup>22)</sup> Germany and Switzerland. <sup>23)</sup> the promised (i. e. holy) land, Canaan. <sup>24)</sup> favored. <sup>25)</sup> saluted. <sup>26)</sup> justly. <sup>27)</sup> attracted.

paa hans dybt bevægede<sup>28)</sup> Sjæl. Hér svælgede<sup>29)</sup> han i Nýdelsen<sup>30)</sup> af Kunstens og Natürens Skatte,<sup>31)</sup> og drömte sig ved Beskuelsen af Oldtidens Mindesmærker tilbage i de Tider, da<sup>32)</sup> Røm var dët, som det endnú viste og bürde være. Hér forglemte den unge Måler<sup>33)</sup> en uhældig<sup>34)</sup> Kærligheds bittre Kvæler,<sup>35)</sup> og lévede éne for sin skönne Kunst. For sit Födeland havde han paa Grund af det ömtalte forstyrrede Förhold en vis Rædsel,<sup>36)</sup> og ønskede at kunne forblive<sup>37)</sup> saa længe som muligt i det Land, hvor Skönheden og Històrien med Tryllekraft<sup>38)</sup> fængsle det følende Gemyt.<sup>39)</sup> Han kunde saa meget mere frit<sup>40)</sup> nære dette Önske, som han havde tvènde<sup>41)</sup> Brödre hjemme, der vare Faderen behjælpelige<sup>42)</sup> i hans Håndelsforretninger, og tillige ånsète<sup>43)</sup> for at være kyn-dige<sup>44)</sup> i deres Fág.<sup>45)</sup>

Det var en Löverdag Morgen og netop<sup>46)</sup> den förste Septembér, da den unge Rüsser meget tidlig<sup>47)</sup> rejste sig<sup>48)</sup> fra sit Leje, i den Hénsigt at gaa úd, for at öptage<sup>49)</sup> et Par Skidser<sup>50)</sup> af Albánersöens meest romantiske Partier. Den kläre Himmel öplivede hans Sjæl, og snart stod han færdig<sup>51)</sup> til sin Vandring. I en Överkjole<sup>52)</sup> af grönt Bòmuldstøj,<sup>53)</sup> med Vest og Pantalonger af graat Lærred,<sup>54)</sup> Skó af üifarvet<sup>55)</sup> Læder, og paa Hóvedet en lýsegúl<sup>56)</sup> Straahat, som var ömvunden med et rósenrødt Baand,<sup>57)</sup> traadte Kunstneren ud af sit Værelse. Om Skulderen hang en Taske,<sup>58)</sup> hvori hans

<sup>28)</sup> moved, touched. <sup>29)</sup> revelled, rioted. <sup>30)</sup> enjoyment. <sup>31)</sup> treasures ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ) p. 20. <sup>32)</sup> when. <sup>33)</sup> painter. <sup>34)</sup> unlucky. <sup>35)</sup> afflictions ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ). <sup>36)</sup> terror. <sup>37)</sup> and wished to be able to stay, or that he might stay, i. e. to stay. <sup>38)</sup> magic power, charm. <sup>39)</sup> mind. <sup>40)</sup> freely. <sup>41)</sup> two. <sup>42)</sup> vare behjælpelige, aided, assisted. <sup>43)</sup> (vare) ansete, were thought, passed for. <sup>44)</sup> skilled. <sup>45)</sup> profession. <sup>46)</sup> just. <sup>47)</sup> early. <sup>48)</sup> rose ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>49)</sup> make. <sup>50)</sup> sketches. <sup>51)</sup> ready. <sup>52)</sup> great-coat. <sup>53)</sup> cotton-stuff. <sup>54)</sup> linen. <sup>55)</sup> uncoloured. <sup>56)</sup> light-yellow. <sup>57)</sup> rose-coloured riband. <sup>58)</sup> bag, scrip.

Skidsebøger og Tègneredskaber<sup>59</sup>) laa. I Lommen<sup>60</sup>) havde han en lille Kùrveflaske<sup>61</sup>) med Viin og noget Bròd; i Haanden bár han en sammenrullet<sup>62</sup>) Sólskjerm<sup>63</sup>) paa en hing Stang<sup>64</sup>) der i Enden var forsýnet med en Jérnspiss, og hertil var endnu fastbunden<sup>65</sup>) en lille Feltstol<sup>66</sup>) af dèt Slàgs, som Kunstnerne betjéne sig áf<sup>67</sup>) paa deres Vandringer. Da han havde drukket sin Kaffe i Pòsthuset, befálede han sin Stòvlepudser<sup>68</sup>) Raimondo, at komme med et Æsel til Kastel Gandolfo Klokken ni, hvor Kunstneren selv vilde indtræffe til samme Tid. Derpaa gik Féodor igjennem Gaderne, hvor han af Almuen<sup>69</sup>) blév betrægtet<sup>70</sup>) med den gódmódige<sup>71</sup>) Nysgjerrighed,<sup>72</sup>) der er Sýdboerne<sup>73</sup>) saa ejendommelig.<sup>74</sup>) Saa méget mère var dette Tilfældet<sup>75</sup>) hér, som den unge Månds Udvortes<sup>76</sup>) i höj Grád var i Stånd til at gjöre et behageligt Indtryk paa enhver, som förste Gang saae ham. Fédors höje ranke<sup>77</sup>) Væxt,<sup>78</sup>) hans livfulde Bevægelser og råske Gang faldt paa en behagelig Maade i Öjet.<sup>79</sup>) Hans Ansigtsfarve<sup>80</sup>) var saa mörk og kräftig,<sup>81</sup>) at man gjérne<sup>82</sup>) kunde have åntaget ham for en Spánjer eller Neapolitáner. De tykke Lokker vare glindsende<sup>83</sup>) sorte, og hans Öjne vare, som Ariosto udtrykker sig, to lysende Sole; ti sjælden have to sorte Öjne funklet<sup>84</sup>) med et saa betydningsfuldt<sup>85</sup>) Liv og flammende Følelse som hans. Naar han betragtede nogen i Alvaar<sup>86</sup>) eller Vréde, da syntes hans Blikke, lig usynlige<sup>87</sup>) Dölke,<sup>88</sup>) at ville gjènnembore<sup>89</sup> Mènneskets Inderste,<sup>90</sup>) men naar hans Sjál var stèmt<sup>91</sup>) til Mildhed

<sup>59</sup>) drawing instruments. <sup>60</sup>) the pocket. <sup>61</sup>) basket-flask. <sup>62</sup>) rolled up. <sup>63</sup>) umbrella. <sup>64</sup>) staff. <sup>65</sup>) tied. <sup>66</sup>) field-chair. <sup>67</sup>) make use of. <sup>68</sup>) boot-cleanser. <sup>69</sup>) the vulgar, common people. <sup>70</sup>) gazed on. <sup>71</sup>) good natured. <sup>72</sup>) curiosity. <sup>73</sup>) the inhabitants of the southern countries of Europe. <sup>74</sup>) peculiar. <sup>75</sup>) the case. <sup>76</sup>) exterior. <sup>77</sup>) slender, by a germanism they say also slank. <sup>78</sup>) growth. <sup>79</sup>) faldt i Öjet, struck the eye. <sup>80</sup>) complexion. <sup>81</sup>) energetic. <sup>82</sup>) easily. <sup>83</sup>) glittering. <sup>84</sup>) sparkled. <sup>85</sup>) significant. <sup>86</sup>) earnest. <sup>87</sup>) invisible. <sup>88</sup>) daggers (‡). <sup>89</sup>) pierce through. <sup>90</sup>) the inmost, the very soul. <sup>91</sup>) disposed.

og Münterhed, da maatte den blide brændende Lue, som  
udstrømmede af hans Øje, fast<sup>92)</sup> være i Stånd til at kunne  
smælte det haardeste Hjerte, at trylle<sup>93)</sup> en Fjende til en  
Ven, og øpvakke Kærligedens almægtige Flamme i det  
køldeste Pígehjerte.<sup>94)</sup> Hans Næse var fin og veldanned,   
Munden liden og udtryksfuld,<sup>95)</sup> og de skønt formede  
Tænder af en blændende<sup>96)</sup> Hvídhed, som end mere forøge-  
des ved den dunkle Farve, der var údbredt<sup>97)</sup> over An-  
sigtets<sup>98)</sup> skönne Oval. I Örerne bár han smaa gyldne  
Ringe, som stak smukt áf<sup>99)</sup> mód det ravn sorte<sup>100)</sup> Haar  
og dunkle Skæg.<sup>1)</sup> Paa den höjre Haands Mèllemfin-  
ger<sup>2)</sup> sad en Ring, hvori der paa mörkeblaa Grund funk-  
lede Ordet *Amitié* i straalende<sup>3)</sup> Diamanter. Ved Afskje-  
den<sup>4)</sup> fra Hjemmet gáv hans Fáder ham den med disse  
Ord: "Min Són! Kærlighed forbítrede din Ungdom: maat-  
te<sup>5)</sup> et trófast<sup>6)</sup> Venskab, ægte som disse Diamanter, for-  
søde<sup>7)</sup> dig din Måndom!" Dén Gang tróede Féodor, at  
en Kunstner var öphöjet över Amors Paafund,<sup>8)</sup> og for-  
lód sit Fædreneland med det begejstrede Fórsæt,<sup>9)</sup> at  
léve gånske aléne for sin Kunst med Opofrelse af<sup>10)</sup> jór-  
diske Tilbøjeligheder.<sup>11)</sup> Hvorvidt det stod i hans Mågt,  
at udføre dette Fórsæt eller ej, vil det Følgende<sup>12)</sup>  
vise.<sup>13)</sup>

Da den unge Máler var kommen údaf Ståden Albá-  
nos snævre Gáder, og havde naaet Söens höje Kyst,  
drejede han om<sup>14)</sup> til venstre gjennem den herlige

<sup>92)</sup> almost. <sup>93)</sup> charm ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>94)</sup> maiden's heart. <sup>95)</sup> expressive.  
<sup>96)</sup> dazzling. <sup>97)</sup> spread. <sup>98)</sup> of the (his) face. <sup>99)</sup> set off  
well, made a fine contrast to. <sup>100)</sup> raven black. <sup>1)</sup> beard.  
<sup>2)</sup> middle-finger. <sup>3)</sup> radiant, sparkling. <sup>4)</sup> at the (his) leave, i.  
e. when he took leave. <sup>5)</sup> may, or would to God that. <sup>6)</sup> faith-  
ful. <sup>7)</sup> sweeten. <sup>8)</sup> devices, tricks. <sup>9)</sup> enthusiastic purpose.  
<sup>10)</sup> with sacrifice of, i. e. sacrificing. <sup>11)</sup> earthly propensities.  
<sup>12)</sup> the following, i. e. the succeeding pages. <sup>13)</sup> show ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ).  
<sup>14)</sup> he turned about.

Allé,<sup>15)</sup> som fører til Kastel Gandolfo. Omrent midt imellem disse to Smaastæder ligger der ved Vejen et Munkekloster, udenfor hvilket der findes en halvrund<sup>16)</sup> aaben Plads, ømgivet af Træer med mange fritstaaende Altere, hvor de Tróende forrétte<sup>17)</sup> deres Andagt.<sup>18)</sup> Nærnest ved Søen, næsten lige<sup>19)</sup> ved den nedgaaende<sup>20)</sup> Skraaning, staaer der et ældgammelt<sup>21)</sup> stort Træ, som med sine tætte vidtudstrakte skyggefulde Gréne, yder Vandreren et koldt Hvilested. Paa en Bænk<sup>22)</sup> under dette Træ satte Féodor sig, og tabte sig i Beskúelsen af det herlige Maleri, som laa údbredt for hans Øje. Den klare Mørgensol oplyste Søens skovrige<sup>23)</sup> Brædder, og Monte Cavos Top spejlede sig<sup>24)</sup> i den blanke,<sup>25)</sup> sölvblaue Våndflade.

Kunstneren tog en Tegnebog<sup>26)</sup> frem, og begyndte at skidsére,<sup>27)</sup> men under Arbejdet<sup>28)</sup> hensank han ofte i saa dýbe Tanker, at hans Haand blev liggende<sup>29)</sup> uvirk-som<sup>30)</sup> paa Papiret. Han gjennemløb i Tanken flére Begivenheder<sup>31)</sup> i sit Liv, og hans sjælfulde Ansigtstræk<sup>32)</sup> gjengáve,<sup>33)</sup> som et tró Spejl, ålt hvad der föregik<sup>34)</sup> i hans Indre.

„O! tænkte han, i det han med glædesdrukne<sup>35)</sup> Blikke skuede omkring sig, hvor herligt er ikke Italien? Med Rette skildre<sup>36)</sup> Rejsende og Digtere os dette Land saa skønt, og vistnok bør enhver, som er saa lykkelig at betræde<sup>37)</sup> dets hellige Jórdbund, takke Försynet for en saadan Gáve, hvoréfter saa mange Túsinde forgáves<sup>38)</sup> stræbe med brændende<sup>39)</sup> Længsel;<sup>40)</sup> uden<sup>41)</sup> nogen-

<sup>15)</sup> walk. <sup>16)</sup> semicircular. <sup>17)</sup> perform (f.). <sup>18)</sup> devotion.

<sup>19)</sup> directly, close. <sup>20)</sup> sloping. <sup>21)</sup> very old. <sup>22)</sup> bench, form.

<sup>23)</sup> woody. <sup>24)</sup> was reflected. <sup>25)</sup> bright. <sup>26)</sup> pocket-book, drawing-book. <sup>27)</sup> sketch. <sup>28)</sup> during the work. <sup>29)</sup> remained lying, lay a long while. <sup>30)</sup> inactive, idle. <sup>31)</sup> accidents. <sup>32)</sup> features.

<sup>33)</sup> reflected. <sup>34)</sup> passed. <sup>35)</sup> joy-drunken. <sup>36)</sup> paint, describe.

<sup>37)</sup> set foot upon. <sup>38)</sup> in vain. <sup>39)</sup> ardent. <sup>40)</sup> longing, desire.

<sup>41)</sup> without.

sinde at öpnaa<sup>42)</sup> deres Öjemed.<sup>43)</sup> Himmelske Fåder! jeg takker dig, fordi du lód det falde i min Lód, at betræde Històriens og Skönhedens Land, og gav mig Hjærtet til at føle Natùrens évige Herlighed, og Villie til at elske det góde hos Itáliens Indvaanere. — Ak, desværre, altfor ofte blive de grúsomt miskjendte,<sup>44)</sup> isér af Persóner, som aldrig have været udenfor deres Móders Kökkendör. Hvor faa Rejsende gives der dog i Grunden,<sup>45)</sup> som nýde det der tilbydes dem? Vel forsýnede med politiske og religiøse Fòrdomme, see de alting fra en falsk Sýnspunkt, miskjende Öjeblikkets Herlighed, og forbitre sig enhver Glæde ved ùtidige Såmmenligninger med Hjemmet. Men hvor ofte angre de<sup>46)</sup> deres daarlige Adfærd,<sup>47)</sup> naar den svundne<sup>48)</sup> Fryd<sup>49)</sup> for évig<sup>50)</sup> er tabt. Jeg veed mig selv, trøds<sup>51)</sup> alle mine andre Svagheder, dög fri for denne Fejl. Mit kære Fædreneland; Gud veed, at du er mit Hjærtet kær, men dèrfor<sup>52)</sup> er jeg ikke saa blind for andre Landes Förtrin,<sup>53)</sup> at jeg éne og aléne skulde söge det fortræffelige<sup>54)</sup> i dit Sköd.<sup>55)</sup> Tilgiv<sup>56)</sup> mig, at Albáñersöens yppige, smilende Brædder förekomme<sup>57)</sup> mig skönnere end Ilmensöens taagefulde<sup>58)</sup> Kyster. Sælsomme Forvildelse<sup>59)</sup> af den skábende<sup>60)</sup> Natùr! Hvorför<sup>61)</sup> skulde jèg, i hvis Aarer<sup>62)</sup> Sýdens héde Blód flammer i sin héle Lúe,<sup>63)</sup> just fôdes<sup>64)</sup> ved Névas iskolde Vande under den trésindstyvende Bréddegrad?<sup>65)</sup> Herre Gùd! Du kunde jo ligesaa gódt have ladet mig see Dågens Lýs ved det viinrige Astrachan eller paa det blomstrende<sup>66)</sup> Krimm. Der have vi jo ogsaa Viindruer,<sup>67)</sup> évig glødende Róser og duftende<sup>68)</sup> Melóner ligesom hér. Jeg havde da paa een

<sup>42)</sup> reaching. <sup>48)</sup> aim, end. <sup>44)</sup> misjudged. <sup>45)</sup> in fact ( $\frac{2}{2}$ ).

<sup>46)</sup> do they repent. <sup>47)</sup> foolish behaviour. <sup>48)</sup> gone past. <sup>49)</sup> joy.

<sup>50)</sup> eternally. <sup>51)</sup> in spite of, notwithstanding. <sup>52)</sup> for all that.

<sup>53)</sup> superiority ( $\frac{3}{3}$ ). <sup>54)</sup> the excellent, i. e. excellency. <sup>55)</sup> lap, bosom. <sup>56)</sup> forgive! <sup>57)</sup> appear. <sup>58)</sup> foggy. <sup>59)</sup> mistake. <sup>60)</sup> creating.

<sup>61)</sup> why? <sup>62)</sup> veins, also oars ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>63)</sup> flame. <sup>64)</sup> be born.

<sup>65)</sup> degree of latitude. <sup>66)</sup> florid. <sup>67)</sup> grapes. <sup>68)</sup> fragrant.

Gang været baade en Sydbo og en Russer, jeg havde da ikke frusset mellem Isklumper og Snedynger<sup>69)</sup> ved den finske Bugt.<sup>70)</sup> Dog hvortil dette? Låndskabsmaleren kan vel elske det pittoreske, det hénrykkende i fremmede Landes Natúrsköheder, og mindes det med vemödig Længsel, naar han ej mere har det for Øje, men Mènnesket maa finde sig i<sup>71)</sup> Skæbnens Tilskikkeler<sup>72)</sup> med Taalmódighed, og virke<sup>73)</sup> i den Kréds,<sup>74)</sup> hvor Himlen har hënsat<sup>75)</sup> ham. Unyttigt<sup>76)</sup> er det at spilde Tiden med tomme Kláger;<sup>77)</sup> dèrfor vil jeg ikke plåge<sup>78)</sup> mig med Bekymringer<sup>79)</sup> óver de svundne Dáge, ej heller grùble óver<sup>80)</sup> min Frémtids Skæbne, men nýde Öjeblikkets élskelige Lyst med Taknèmmelighed.<sup>81)</sup> Ja, dejlige<sup>82)</sup> Itálien, du èr en Bålsom<sup>83)</sup> for mit saarede<sup>84)</sup> Hjæerte, du stiller<sup>85)</sup> de Kváler, hvormèd den falske Natálias Tró-løshed<sup>86)</sup> sònderrev<sup>87)</sup> min Sjæl. Smèrtelige<sup>88)</sup> Minde<sup>89)</sup> om en fordærvelig<sup>90)</sup> Lidenskab, víg for Natürens trösterrige<sup>91)</sup> Skönhed. Ha! yndige, falske Slange,<sup>92)</sup> hvorlédes kunde du saa letsindig<sup>93)</sup> forglemme min Kærlighed, og lönne min várme Tróskab med Meenéd?<sup>94)</sup> I lange Aar tilbad jeg dig, lindrede<sup>95)</sup> din Fáders sòrgelige Stilling, og forskáffede<sup>96)</sup> dig ved hans Död et vénligt Lý<sup>97)</sup> under mine kære Forældres<sup>98)</sup> gæstfri<sup>99)</sup> Tág. Og saaledes gjèngjælder du mig! — O, Taknèmmelighed! var du da aldrig Kærligheds Móder? — Ak, nej! Kærlighed er Himlens Datter, og födes ej af jórdiske Drifter.<sup>100)</sup> Den

<sup>69)</sup> lumps, masses of ice & heaps of snow. <sup>70)</sup> the gulf of Finland. <sup>71)</sup> put up with, bear. <sup>72)</sup> decrees of fate. <sup>73)</sup> act ( $\{\}$ ). <sup>74)</sup> circle, cycle, sphere. <sup>75)</sup> placed. <sup>76)</sup> useless. <sup>77)</sup> empty complaints. <sup>78)</sup> torment. <sup>79)</sup> griefs, (plur.  $\frac{2}{3}$ ). <sup>80)</sup> muse upon. <sup>81)</sup> gratitude. <sup>82)</sup> fair. <sup>83)</sup> balm. <sup>84)</sup> wounded. <sup>85)</sup> soothest. <sup>86)</sup> faithlessness. <sup>87)</sup> tore to pieces, broke. <sup>88)</sup> sore, doleful. <sup>89)</sup> remembrance. <sup>90)</sup> pernicious. <sup>91)</sup> rich in comfort. <sup>92)</sup> snake, viper. <sup>93)</sup> fickly, inconsiderately. <sup>94)</sup> perjury. <sup>95)</sup> alleviated. <sup>96)</sup> furnished, afforded ( $\{\}$ ). <sup>97)</sup> shelter. <sup>98)</sup> parents. <sup>99)</sup> hospitable. <sup>100)</sup> instincts.

er fri som Luften paa Bjergene, og flygter for Lænker<sup>1)</sup> og Tvang.<sup>2)</sup> Ja! jeg føler det. Natália svór mig Tró-skab af Taknemmelighed, og dørfor hævnede den fornær-mede<sup>3)</sup> Natúr sig paa hende, da Ivan smelte den fal-skes Bryst. Dog hvorfor hykle<sup>4)</sup> Følelser, hun ikke nærede! Min grændseløse<sup>5)</sup> Hengivenhed, min prøvede<sup>6)</sup> Tróskab blév til Latter,<sup>7)</sup> da hun i Ivans Årme drèv Gjék med<sup>8)</sup> Tró og Love.<sup>9)</sup> O, Natália, vildt kastede du dig i hans Favn!<sup>10)</sup> er du da lykkelig ved hans Side? Er du det virkelig? Elsker han dig da? —

En Taare stód i Fédors Öje, da han mindedes sin Ungdoms Kærlighed, men snart fattede han sig,<sup>11)</sup> gréb<sup>12)</sup> sin Crayon, og tegnede atter.<sup>13)</sup> "Ak! tænkte han, hvi ånklinger<sup>14)</sup> jeg da hende? Kan en Marmorstøtte<sup>15)</sup> besjæles af Lidenskab, en Ístab<sup>16)</sup> gløde af brændende Følelse? — Nej, nej! jo méré<sup>17)</sup> jeg overtænker dette usålige<sup>18)</sup> Førhold, jo mere indseer jeg, at det ikke var Kærlighed, ihvorvél<sup>19)</sup> det har forbittret mig min Ungdoms skønneste Dage. Men bort<sup>20)</sup> med dette! Jeg opgiver<sup>21)</sup> for évig enhver Fórdring<sup>22)</sup> paa den Lykke at elske og elskes igjén, og glemmer mine Forvildelser.<sup>23)</sup> Kun<sup>24)</sup> i dit Tempel, Natúr! vil jeg knæle, og paa dit Alter, o hel-lige<sup>25)</sup> Kunst, ofrer jeg frivillig<sup>26)</sup> mit Hjærtes Følelser. Jeg er nu fem og týve Aar gammel, det er nú paa Ti-den<sup>27)</sup> at blive klög.<sup>28)</sup>

Saaledes filosoférede Kunstneren en rùm Tid,<sup>29)</sup> og arbejdede derhos flittigen. Men da han var lidt údmat-

<sup>1)</sup> chains ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>2)</sup> constraint. <sup>3)</sup> injured, offended. <sup>4)</sup> feign. <sup>5)</sup> unbounded. <sup>6)</sup> tried. <sup>7)</sup> was turned to ridicule. <sup>8)</sup> sported with. <sup>9)</sup> faith and promise, *Love*, is derived from the Germ. *Glaube*, belief, trust. <sup>10)</sup> fathom, embrace. <sup>11)</sup> recovered himself. <sup>12)</sup> took up. <sup>13)</sup> sketched on (again). <sup>14)</sup> complain of. <sup>15)</sup> marblestatue. <sup>16)</sup> icicle. <sup>17)</sup> the more. <sup>18)</sup> unhappy. <sup>19)</sup> although. <sup>20)</sup> away. <sup>21)</sup> renounce. <sup>22)</sup> claim. <sup>23)</sup> errors. <sup>24)</sup> only. <sup>25)</sup> sacred. <sup>26)</sup> voluntarily. <sup>27)</sup> high time. <sup>28)</sup> wise. <sup>29)</sup> a long while, they say also, but it is a Germanism, *en Tid lang*.

tet<sup>30</sup>) af den forrige<sup>31</sup>) Dags Arbejde , og nu desuden  
saa tidlig havde forlædt sit Leje, saa begyndte han at  
blive sövnig. Han satte sig derfor mere mågelig<sup>32</sup>) paa  
Bænken, lænede Ryggen<sup>33</sup>) mod Træets tykke Stamme,  
og lagde sin Tègnebog paa Sködet. Det vårede<sup>34</sup>) ikke  
længe, förend han begyndte at nikke<sup>35</sup>) med Hovedet, og  
snart faldt han i en dýb vederkvægende Slummer, hvor-  
ved hans Tègnebog gléd ned paa Jorden , og blév lig-  
gende öpslagen<sup>36</sup>) med en Skidse af den hálvrunde Plads,  
paa hvilken han sad. I Förstningen<sup>37</sup>) slumrede han  
rølig;<sup>38</sup>) men efterhaänden<sup>39</sup>) begyndte hans Fantasi at  
tumle sig<sup>40</sup>) i mængehaande selsomme<sup>41</sup>) Førestillinger og  
Billeder, der omsider ørdnede sig<sup>42</sup>) til en mærkelig  
Dröm, som vi hermed ville meddele<sup>43</sup>) vore Læsere.

Det forekom ham , som om<sup>44</sup>) uforudsete Omstæn-  
digheder nødte ham til plúdselig , at maatte forlade Ita-  
lien, og vende tilbage til sit Hjem. Med Rånselen<sup>45</sup>) paa  
Ryggen og en Vandringsstav i Haanden , stod han med  
eet<sup>46</sup>) foran en meget lang Bro,<sup>47</sup>) paa hvilken der bevæ-  
gede sig mange Túsende Mennesker i det daglige Lívs  
Sysler.<sup>48</sup>) Under den var det grændseløse<sup>49</sup>) Hav yderst<sup>50</sup>)  
klårt og gjennemsigtigt,<sup>51</sup>) paa hvis Bund det ligeledes  
vrimlede af<sup>52</sup>) utållige Mennesker , der vogtede<sup>53</sup>) deres  
Forrétninger , ligesaa frit og uhindret som Vandrerne  
paa Bróen. Op af Bólernes Overflade hævede sig et  
blændende hvidt Skelèt med glimrende Vinger og en gyl-  
den Lé.<sup>54</sup>) I dets Aasyn,<sup>55</sup>) skønt kun en Knókkelyg-  
ning,<sup>56</sup>) laa Mildhed og Frèd.<sup>57</sup>) Fé dor stùdsede<sup>58</sup>) ved

<sup>30</sup>) wearied. <sup>31</sup>) preceding. <sup>32</sup>) commodiously. <sup>33</sup>) back.

<sup>34</sup>) lasted, was. <sup>35</sup>) nod. <sup>36</sup>) open. <sup>37</sup>) the beginning.

<sup>38</sup>) quietly, softly. <sup>39</sup>) by little and little. <sup>40</sup>) ramble, rove.

<sup>41</sup>) wonderful. <sup>42</sup>) arranged themselves. <sup>43</sup>) communicate to.

<sup>44</sup>) as if. <sup>45</sup>) wallet. <sup>46</sup>) at once. <sup>47</sup>) bridge. <sup>48</sup>) occupations.

<sup>49</sup>) boundless. <sup>50</sup>) exceedingly. <sup>51</sup>) transparent. <sup>52</sup>) swarmed

with. <sup>53</sup>) attended to. <sup>54</sup>) scythe. <sup>55</sup>) countenance. <sup>56</sup>) struc-

ture of bones. <sup>57</sup>) peace. <sup>58</sup>) started at.

disse Sýner,<sup>59)</sup> og tænkte: „Dette er ikke den lille Vin-debro, som fører til min Fåders Landsted,<sup>60)</sup> og dög syntes mig før, at jeg saae Húset selv og Håven, som ømgiver det. I det han ånstillede disse Beträgtninger tilhviskede et ubekjøndt Væsen ham:<sup>61)</sup> „Dette er Vérdensbroen, som fører til Fuldkømmenhedens Børg.<sup>62)</sup> Du er Livets Génius og Skelèttet med den gyldne Lé er Dödens Génius.

Ved Lýden af disse Ord förekom det Féodor, at han forändredes<sup>63)</sup> i sit héle Væsen. Hans sædvánlige jör-diske Drægt<sup>64)</sup> sank ned, og han indhylledes<sup>65)</sup> i et straa-lende hvidt Klædebon.<sup>66)</sup> Der voxte hvide Vinger frém<sup>67)</sup> af hans Skuldre, og hans héle Légeme lütredes<sup>68)</sup> af æterisk Ild. Han gjennemskuede med Klárhed héle Jördlivets Færd, og følte sig i en uëndelig<sup>69)</sup> Grád öphöjet over det mènneskelige Kön. Han saae sig omkring med ædel öphöjet Anstand,<sup>71)</sup> og Vandrerne paa Bróen betrág-tede ham med Ærbödighed<sup>71)</sup> og Frygt. Skelettet saae smilende op til ham, og sagde: „Vær<sup>72)</sup> mig vélkommen min Bróder, og unddrag mig ikke<sup>73)</sup> mine Offere.”<sup>74)</sup> „Nei, svárede Féodor, Livets Fyrste kjender ingen Uret-færdighed.<sup>75)</sup> De sváge Dödelige elske mig og háde dig, og dög<sup>76)</sup> léve de hos dig som hos mig.” Med disse Ord vinkede<sup>77)</sup> han ad en Mand, som gik ham forbi. Denne nærmede sig skjælvende, men Féodor gréb ham med overnatürlig Kraft, og slyngede han ud i Bölgerne. Gaa! sagde han, du er móden<sup>78)</sup> til Döden. Forsvind af Livet, og gjör Plads for andre! Den ulyksálige sank med

<sup>59)</sup> visions ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ), but Syme without plur. is appearance, show.

<sup>60)</sup> country-seat <sup>61)</sup> tilhv. ham, whispered to him (p. 72).

<sup>62)</sup> the castle of perfection. <sup>63)</sup> was changed, transformed.

<sup>64)</sup> clothing. <sup>65)</sup> was covered. <sup>66)</sup> garment. <sup>67)</sup> voxte frem, grew forth, shot forth. <sup>68)</sup> was purified. <sup>69)</sup> infinite. <sup>70)</sup> digni-

nity. <sup>71)</sup> veneration. <sup>72)</sup> be! (p. 40). <sup>73)</sup> do not withdraw.

<sup>74)</sup> victims. <sup>75)</sup> injustice. <sup>76)</sup> nevertheless. <sup>77)</sup> beckoned.

<sup>78)</sup> ripe.

et Skrig ned i de klare Vande, men da Döden berörte ham sagte<sup>79)</sup> med sin Lé, bevægede han sig med fornýet Munterhed og Kraft paa Håvets Bund. Skelettet takkede Féodor med et venligt Nik, og sank derpaa ned i Bölgerne. Livets Génius skréd videre frem<sup>80)</sup> paa Bróen, og bragde sin Brøder Döden mangt et Offer. Omsider da Féodor var nær ved den módsatte Kyst, nærmede sig en dejlig Pige, som lignede hans fördums elskede Natália, og hviskede til ham: „Her er Fuldkommenhedens Børg paa denne Klippetinde.<sup>81)</sup> Jeg fører<sup>82)</sup> dig derhen.” Féodor betrægtede hende stúdsende<sup>83)</sup> og sagde: „Du èr dòg Natália, og stóler paa<sup>84)</sup> min jördiske Svághed. Men jeg siger dig for förste og sidste Gang; misbrug åldrig mit Vénskab, ti éllers bliver<sup>85)</sup> du straffet.<sup>86)</sup> Foran dem laa Borgen paa et trüende Fjeld,<sup>87)</sup> og Vejen derhen gik imèllem Tórne og Kråt ved Siden af umaalelige Afgrunde.<sup>88)</sup> Da gréb<sup>89)</sup> Natália en mödende Vandrer, og kastede ham fra Klippetinden ned i Bjergets dýbeste Klöster.<sup>90)</sup> Gy-sende<sup>91)</sup> bemærkede<sup>92)</sup> Féodor dette, og údbröd<sup>93)</sup> i dýb Bevægelse: „Det er forbi. Dit jördiske Liv er endt! Nú kommer Dödens Génius op af denne Brönd,<sup>94)</sup> og fører dig bort.” I det han frémförte<sup>95)</sup> disse Ord, stóde de begge i en mörk Hvælving<sup>96)</sup> i Borgen ved Siden af en ühyre<sup>97)</sup> dýb Brönd. Op af dens Svælg stég Döden, og lög Natália ved Haanden, for at léde hende derhén; men den fortvivlede<sup>98)</sup> Pige ömslyngede<sup>99)</sup> Féodor med Hæftighed, og bad om Skaansel.<sup>100)</sup> Da svárede denne med Taarer: „Jeg kan ikke redde<sup>1)</sup> dig! jeg maa selv en Gang nedstige<sup>2)</sup> i Brönden, naar Himlens Herre<sup>3)</sup>

<sup>79)</sup> softly, gently. <sup>80)</sup> advanced farther. <sup>81)</sup> summit of the rock. <sup>82)</sup> I will bring, lead. <sup>83)</sup> amazed. <sup>84)</sup> trust to. <sup>85)</sup> shall be. <sup>86)</sup> punished. <sup>87)</sup> mountain. <sup>88)</sup> abysses. <sup>89)</sup> seized. <sup>90)</sup> clefts. <sup>91)</sup> shuddering. <sup>92)</sup> perceived. <sup>93)</sup> broke forth, cried out. <sup>94)</sup> well. <sup>95)</sup> spoke. <sup>96)</sup> vault. <sup>97)</sup> excessively, terribly. <sup>98)</sup> desperate. <sup>99)</sup> wound herself about, cleaved to. <sup>100)</sup> indulgence, mercy. <sup>1)</sup> save. <sup>2)</sup> descend. <sup>3)</sup> the lord of heaven.

ømvælter<sup>4)</sup> denne Tingenes Orden." Med disse Ord slap<sup>5)</sup> Féodor den trøstesløse<sup>6)</sup> Mō,<sup>7)</sup> og Döden styrtede<sup>8)</sup> hende ned i Brönden. Jämmertóner<sup>9)</sup> löde fra det rædsomme<sup>10)</sup> Dyb. Nú vendte Féodor sig til Döden, og sagde: Min Bróder! ogsåaa jég maa en Gang<sup>11)</sup> nédstige i dit Rige. Módtag mig da vénligen. Mit Hjærte trænger til<sup>12)</sup> Kær-lighed. Da saae Döden med et himmelsk<sup>13)</sup> Smil paa ham, og trykte hans Haand med uændelig Várme mód<sup>14)</sup> sit Bryst. „Döden er Livet", sagde han, „I mit Rige bevæger Stövet<sup>15)</sup> sig som i dit; dit er en evig Omvex-ling<sup>16)</sup> af Tingene, og alt dette er kun Förberedelse.<sup>17)</sup> Vi tó vide intet. Over<sup>18)</sup> os ère der uændelige Gráder af fuldkomne Aander. Men vi ère Venner." Ved disse Ord foråndrede Skelettets héle Údvortes sig; dets Aasyn straalede<sup>19)</sup> i en uforkränelig<sup>20)</sup> Glórie,<sup>21)</sup> og dets héle Skábning<sup>22)</sup> åntog<sup>23)</sup> saa skönne og ædle Former, som det dödelige Øje aldrig skúer. Det hèrligste meest fuld-endte<sup>24)</sup> Vásen, med Salighedens<sup>25)</sup> rénesté Údtryk i sine Miner,<sup>26)</sup> stód for Féodor, som følte sig betåget<sup>27)</sup> af unáev-nelig héllig Fryd. Den skönne forædlede Génius sank til sin Bróders Hjærte, og en Ánelse<sup>28)</sup> af den himmel-ske Reenhed<sup>29)</sup> faldt i Fédors Sjæl. Han vilde tåle, men Læben nægtede<sup>30)</sup> ham sin Tièneste. Hans Hjærte nægtede ikke<sup>31)</sup> at bære denne øverjordiske Sálighed, og han — — — vaagnede.<sup>32)</sup>

<sup>4)</sup> destroys. <sup>5)</sup> let loose, let go. <sup>6)</sup> inconsolable. <sup>7)</sup> maid. <sup>8)</sup> precip-itated, hurled. <sup>9)</sup> tones of lamentation. <sup>10)</sup> dreadful. <sup>11)</sup> one day, at last. <sup>12)</sup> stands in need of. <sup>13)</sup> celestial, heavenly. <sup>14)</sup> to. <sup>15)</sup> the dust, mankind. <sup>16)</sup> transmutation. <sup>17)</sup> preparation. <sup>18)</sup> above. <sup>19)</sup> beamed. <sup>20)</sup> incorruptible, imperishable. <sup>21)</sup> ra-diance. <sup>22)</sup> shape, person. <sup>23)</sup> assumed. <sup>24)</sup> finished, perfect. <sup>25)</sup> beatitude. <sup>26)</sup> countenance. <sup>27)</sup> seized, stunned. <sup>28)</sup> per-ception, idea. <sup>29)</sup> purity. <sup>30)</sup> denied. <sup>31)</sup> was unable. <sup>32)</sup> awoke.

## KONG VALDEMARS DATTER OG ALKORS SÖN.

Et Æventyr af Nyerups *Idunna* for 1812.

**D**er vår en Konning<sup>1)</sup> ved Öster-Strand,<sup>2)</sup>  
Kong Väldemar hépte<sup>3)</sup> den bólde,<sup>4)</sup>  
han raadte<sup>5)</sup> ej over Riger og Land,  
og ej over grönne Völde;<sup>6)</sup>  
han aate<sup>7)</sup> en Borg saa brat<sup>8)</sup> og fast,  
og dertil vel tusinde Snækker<sup>9)</sup>  
med Silkesejl og forgylden Mast:  
saa vide hans Vælde<sup>10)</sup> sig strækker.<sup>11)</sup>

Om Vinteren sad han paa bratten Borg  
alt<sup>12)</sup> med sine Kæmper<sup>13)</sup> tilsammen;<sup>14)</sup>  
da drukke de Mjöden foruden Sorg,  
og Vinen den kláre med Gammen.

Naar Sólen skinned' i grönnen Vang<sup>16)</sup>  
og Gjögen<sup>17)</sup> mon gale<sup>18)</sup> i Lunde,<sup>19)</sup>  
da hejsed<sup>20)</sup> han Sejl med Spil<sup>21)</sup> og med Sang,  
at gæste<sup>22)</sup> de bretlandske<sup>23)</sup> Sunde.<sup>24)</sup>  
Om Hösten,<sup>25)</sup> naar Voven ej mere var huld,<sup>26)</sup>  
og Stormen begyndte at bjælte,<sup>27)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> poet. for *Konge*, king. <sup>2)</sup> for *Östersö-en*, the Baltic. <sup>3)</sup> for *hed*, p. 46. <sup>4)</sup> the brave, gallant (bold). <sup>5)</sup> reigned. <sup>6)</sup> poet. or Norwegian for *Mark*, field. Swed. *vall*, Icel. *völlr*. <sup>7)</sup> an old poet. form for *ejede* possessed. [It is the past tense *átti* of the Icelandic verb *eiga*, to possess. ED]. <sup>8)</sup> steep [it means lofty, beetling. ED]. <sup>9)</sup> vessels. <sup>10)</sup> power. <sup>11)</sup> extends. <sup>12)</sup> all, a poet. expletive. <sup>13)</sup> champions. <sup>14)</sup> together, an old Germanism. <sup>15)</sup> mirth, joy. <sup>16)</sup> field. <sup>17)</sup> the cuckoo. <sup>18)</sup> did crow, sing. <sup>19)</sup> groves, woods. <sup>20)</sup> hoisted. <sup>21)</sup> play, music. <sup>22)</sup> visit. <sup>23)</sup> British. <sup>24)</sup> sounds, strath. <sup>25)</sup> harvest, autumn. <sup>26)</sup> favorable. <sup>27)</sup> howl.

da dróg han tilbage med Sölv og med Guld,  
med kostelig Vin og med Trælle.  
Han var saa saare<sup>28)</sup> ríg paa Guld,  
paa Tærner<sup>29)</sup> og favre Svende,<sup>30)</sup>  
men al sin Klenód<sup>31)</sup> han agted som Muld  
mod Hilda hans Datter hin vænne.<sup>32)</sup>  
Hende gilled<sup>33)</sup> saa mangen Ridder skön,  
de dróge saa vide Véje,  
men hun havde kaaret<sup>34)</sup> Prins Rerik i Lön,<sup>35)</sup>  
ham maatte hun ikke éje.

Hans Fader var Alkor, den Stólkonge<sup>36)</sup> gram;  
af Hjærtet Kong Valdemar hadede ham.  
De våre Fostbrødre<sup>37)</sup> i Ungdommens Vaar;<sup>38)</sup>  
de bléve saa fjendske<sup>39)</sup> i Manddommens Aar.

Naar Valdemar drog paa Leding<sup>40)</sup> úd,  
blev hundrede Kæmper tilbage,  
som skulde forsvare den Mö<sup>41)</sup> saa prúd,<sup>42)</sup>  
og tage paa hende vel Vare.<sup>43)</sup>  
Da tórde<sup>44)</sup> hun aldrig af Buret<sup>45)</sup> gaa,  
dog blev hende Tiden ej lang:  
hun dansed med sine Tærner smaa,  
hun slog Guldharpen og sang;  
saa sömmede<sup>46)</sup> hun med röden Guld,  
og naar hendes Finger var vund,<sup>47)</sup>  
saa légte<sup>48)</sup> hnn med sin liden Hund,  
smaa Issegrim var baade væn og huld.  
Naar Solen gik ned bag Skovens Top,  
da trén hun saa tit i Höjenloft op,

<sup>28)</sup> so very. <sup>29)</sup> hand-maids, girls. <sup>30)</sup> fine lads. <sup>31)</sup> treasure, a Germanism for *Klenodie*. <sup>32)</sup> fair. <sup>33)</sup> approved, courted. <sup>34)</sup> chosen. <sup>35)</sup> privately, secretly. <sup>36)</sup> literally: *throne-king* i.e. great king. <sup>37)</sup> sworn friends. <sup>38)</sup> spring. <sup>39)</sup> hostile. <sup>40)</sup> naval expedition. <sup>41)</sup> maid. <sup>42)</sup> fine, elegant, excellent. <sup>43)</sup> tage Vare paa, attend, take care of. <sup>44)</sup> durst (p. 43). <sup>45)</sup> cage; small, separate dwellinghouse; a lady's bower. <sup>46)</sup> sowed, stitched. <sup>47)</sup> wounded (by the needle). <sup>48)</sup> played.

og saae hen ud over hviden Strand,<sup>49)</sup>  
hvor Havfruen<sup>50)</sup> légte i kláren Vand.

Da saae hun og tit til de gamle Linde,<sup>51)</sup>  
hvorunder hun légte med Rerik saa fró,  
alt förend de Fædre blev fjendske i Sinde,  
alt förend Prins Rerik i Leding uddróg.

Da kvad hun: „Prins Rerik! hvor est<sup>52)</sup> du min Ven?  
hvor svæver du nu paa Bólgen blaa?

Sju<sup>53)</sup> lange Vintre er rundne hen,  
siden dig mit Öje saae.

Ak! har du forgæt<sup>54)</sup> din Barndoms<sup>55)</sup> Mō,  
da<sup>56)</sup> Hilda af Kummer og Sorrig maa dō.”

En Kvæld<sup>57)</sup> som i Höjenloft hun sad,  
og saae, hvor de Havfruer légte saa glad,  
og hørte hvor Aftenens Vinde  
mon suse igjennem de Linde.

Fra Lindenes mörke Kroner<sup>58)</sup> klang<sup>59)</sup>  
saa yndelig<sup>60)</sup> saadan en Harpesang:  
„Jeg réd saa vide om Bjerg og Sō,  
gjennem mörken Skov og dybe Dale,  
men ingensteds fandt jeg den vænne Mō,  
der kunde mit Hjærte husvale.<sup>61)</sup>

Ak! Elskov klemmer<sup>62)</sup> saa saare;  
Naar Snækken gled over Bólgen blaa,  
klang Vovernes Pladsken som Hildas Sange;  
naar Gangeren traved<sup>63)</sup> over Heden graa,  
lød Gangerens Fódslag som Harpens Strenge,  
som Hilda slög under Linden.

<sup>49)</sup> sea or seashore. <sup>50)</sup> the mermaid. <sup>51)</sup> limetrees. <sup>52)</sup> art, poet. for er. <sup>53)</sup> seven, poet. for syv. <sup>54)</sup> forgot, an archaism for *forgættet*, poet. for *forglemt*. <sup>55)</sup> of thy childhood. <sup>56)</sup> then. <sup>57)</sup> night, late evening. <sup>58)</sup> crowns, tops. <sup>59)</sup> sounded. <sup>60)</sup> graceful, charming. <sup>61)</sup> comfort. <sup>62)</sup> presses, wrings. <sup>63)</sup> trotted, for *travede* (†) thus in the following e is frequently omitted in similar cases.

Jeg Hildas Billed' i Skyen saae,  
naar Öjet til Himlen jeg hæved,  
og stirred jeg dybt ned i Havets Blaa,  
hendes Billed imøde mig svæved,

ti Elskov klemmer saa saare !

Hvor est du, Hilda ! o lyt<sup>64)</sup> til min Sang,  
og il til mit bankende Hjærte !

i Bárdommens Vaar ved Harpens Klang  
du selv jo at elske mig lærte,<sup>65)</sup>  
naar Harpen du slög under Linden,

Ak ! Elskov klemmer saa saare!"

Nu tav den tonende Harpe brat,<sup>66)</sup>

Og Hilda lyttede længe ;  
men ingen Tóne i mørke Nat  
klang mere fra Haðpens Strenge.

Kun Vinden sused i Lindens Grene,  
og Bølgen pladsked mod Strandens Stene.

Da gréb hun Harpen og sågte rörte  
de gyldne Strenge, og Vinden förte  
igjennem Mörket de svåge Tóner  
hen til de gamle Lindekroner :

„I énsomt Bür, en Dúe<sup>67)</sup> lig,  
maa Hilda kvæde sörgelig;<sup>68)</sup>  
knap<sup>69)</sup> tör hun Harpens Strenge röre,  
at ej de Tårner deres Klang skal höre ;  
knap tör hun nynne saa sagtelig :  
min Hjærtens Ven ! jeg elsker dig.

Ak ! Elskov klemmer saa saare."

Nu sidder Hilda hver Kvæld saa glad,  
mens Rerik kvæder i Lunden ;  
skönt tykke Mure dem skiller ad,  
de have dog Sorgen forvunden.<sup>70)</sup>

<sup>64)</sup> the imperative from *jeg lytter*, I hearken, listen. <sup>65)</sup> taughtst.

<sup>66)</sup> suddenly. <sup>67)</sup> dove, pigeon. <sup>68)</sup> melancholy. <sup>69)</sup> scarcely, otherwise næppe. <sup>70)</sup> repaired, forgot.

Men hør mig, skön Jomfru, og mærk derpaa <sup>71)</sup>  
 Til Gammen <sup>72)</sup> til Sorg sig mon <sup>73)</sup> vende,  
 naar Sólen som klárest <sup>74)</sup> paa Himlen mon staa,  
 da kommer Uvejret <sup>75)</sup> behænde. <sup>76)</sup>

Det lakked nu alt ad <sup>77)</sup> Höstens Tid,  
 og Vinden fra Vesten mon stande, <sup>78)</sup>  
 de Vikinger <sup>79)</sup> ile fra Bretland hid  
 alt over de skummende <sup>80)</sup> Vande,  
 paa Voven danse de Snekker blaa,  
 i Skoven hvirvle de Blade smaa.

Det stormer saa hardt over Vesterhav, <sup>81)</sup>  
 de Bölger styrte som Bjerge mod Stranden.

„Ak! fandt du, kær Fader, i Bölingen din Grav,  
 da dör din Hilda, jeg siger for Sanden,  
 mit Hjælte da brister <sup>82)</sup> af Sorgen.”

Det tördner <sup>83)</sup> i Vesten, det lýner <sup>84)</sup> saa brat <sup>85)</sup>  
 den Taarnevægter <sup>86)</sup> blæser <sup>87)</sup> om mörken Nat,  
 det runger <sup>88)</sup> saa höjt udi Borgen;  
 fra Stranden höres som Vaabengny, <sup>89)</sup>  
 de Kæmper raabe i vilden Sky;  
 da kiger <sup>90)</sup> Maanen saa listelig <sup>91)</sup>  
 bag Skyen frém over hviden Bölge.  
 Det èr Kong Valdemar gæv <sup>92)</sup> og ríg,  
 fra Brétlands Tòg <sup>93)</sup> med ålt sit Fölge; <sup>94)</sup>  
 det er Kong Valdemar stolt og prud  
 alt med sine tusinde Snækker.

<sup>71)</sup> attend to it, think on. <sup>72)</sup> joy, mirth. <sup>73)</sup> will, may. <sup>74)</sup> at the clearest, brightest. <sup>75)</sup> bad weather, storm. <sup>76)</sup> nimbly, hastily. <sup>77)</sup> literally: it now already approached to. <sup>78)</sup> poet. for *staa*, stand. <sup>79)</sup> sea-champions, sea-heroes. <sup>80)</sup> foaming. <sup>81)</sup> the North-sea, or German ocean. <sup>82)</sup> will burst (<sup>3</sup> p. 49). <sup>83)</sup> thunders, <sup>84)</sup> lightens. <sup>85)</sup> frequently. <sup>86)</sup> tower-watchman. <sup>87)</sup> blows (his horn). <sup>88)</sup> resounds. <sup>89)</sup> noise of arms. <sup>90)</sup> peeps. <sup>91)</sup> roguishly, slyly. <sup>92)</sup> excellent. <sup>93)</sup> from (his) expedition to Britain. <sup>94)</sup> retinue.

Skön Hilda seer fra Höjenloft ud;  
de Silkesejl Stranden bedækker: <sup>95)</sup>  
"Nu Krist være lovet i Himmerig!  
kær Fader! jeg snart kan favne dig."

De Kæmper sidde ved breden Bord,  
de drikke baade Öl og Mjöd;  
de vexle <sup>96)</sup> saa mangt et skjemtsomt <sup>97)</sup> Ord,  
ti Vinen den småger saa söd.

I Höjsædet <sup>98)</sup> sidder den Konning god,  
ved Siden schön Hilda det Rosenblod. <sup>99)</sup>

I Hallen triner en Ridder ind, <sup>100)</sup>  
var klædt i Maar <sup>1)</sup> og Skarlagenskind. <sup>2)</sup>  
Först hilser <sup>3)</sup> han den Konning god,  
saa hilser han Hilda det Rosenblod.

"Hil <sup>4)</sup>-være eder, Kong Valdemar bold!  
Kong Alkor la'r <sup>5)</sup> eder hilse;  
I <sup>6)</sup> stréde <sup>7)</sup> saa ofte med Avindsskjold <sup>8)</sup>  
eder begge til liden Frelse; <sup>9)</sup>  
nu er til Forlig <sup>10)</sup> han og Vénskab beréd,  
han býder eder saa tryg <sup>11)</sup> en Fred,  
om I ham vil vide <sup>12)</sup> en Bön.

I haver en Datter, saa væn <sup>13)</sup> en Mö  
der findes vel næppe paa Verdens Ö,  
hende fæste <sup>14)</sup> I Rerik, Kong Alkors Sön."

"Nej!" skrèg Kong Valdemar, var saa gram, <sup>15)</sup>  
"ret aldrig min Datter skal fæste ham!"

<sup>95)</sup> cover. <sup>96)</sup> interchange. <sup>97)</sup> sportful. <sup>98)</sup> on the throne.  
<sup>99)</sup> Blod, blood, stands poetically for creature, maiden. <sup>100)</sup> triner ind, enters, ( $\frac{3}{2}$  p. 50). <sup>1)</sup> marten (-skin). <sup>2)</sup> Skind, skin, is here put poetically for cloak furred with skin. <sup>3)</sup> greets, salutes. <sup>4)</sup> hail. <sup>5)</sup> for lader, lets (you greet, i. e. sends you greeting). <sup>6)</sup> you (both). <sup>7)</sup> fought ( $\frac{3}{2}$  p. 50). <sup>8)</sup> shield or arms of envy, i. e. rancour. <sup>9)</sup> salvation, benefit, gain. <sup>10)</sup> reconciliation. <sup>11)</sup> safe, secure (p. 27). <sup>12)</sup> grant, a poet. expression Icel. vei·a. <sup>13)</sup> so fine, equally fine. <sup>14)</sup> betroth, optative ( $\frac{1}{1}$ ). <sup>15)</sup> (he) was so (very) angry or hateful.

ret aldrig min Datter en Nidding<sup>16)</sup> skal faa.  
 En Nidding er Alkor, hans Sön deslige:<sup>17)</sup>  
 för skal hun som Mö udi Kloster gaa  
 og fæste sig Brúdgom i Himmerige."

Den Ridder ham svarer sömmelig:<sup>18)</sup>  
 „Herre Konning! du ikke forivre Dig!”<sup>19)</sup>  
 han vidste at föje<sup>20)</sup> sin Tale saa godt,  
 „Kong Alkor er Rysalands mægtige Drot,<sup>21)</sup>  
 Prins Rerik en Ridder med Åre:  
 hvad han faar ej med Gode, han tager med Magt.  
 Ej Niddinger monne de være.”

„Spar<sup>22)</sup> du dine Ord, Ridder Uselig,<sup>23)</sup>  
 hvis mit Sværd ej Munden skal stoppe<sup>24)</sup> dig.”

Ud ganger<sup>25)</sup> den Ridder saa skyndelig,<sup>26)</sup>  
 det var ej ret sikkert at dvæle;  
 men Hilda sidder saa blég som et Lig,  
 for Sorrig hun kunde ei måle<sup>27).</sup>

Nu lider det<sup>28)</sup> Maaneder fire og fem,  
 de Húskarle drikke og kvæde;  
 men Hilda saa saare mon græde.<sup>29)</sup>  
 Nu lider det alt til Vaaren frem:  
 höjt Solen skinner paa klaren Vove,  
 og Gjögen galer i grönne Skove;  
 de Huskarle stunde til<sup>30)</sup> Ledingsfærd,  
 skön Hilda sig ønsker i sorten Jord.  
 Men Valdemar pönser<sup>31)</sup> saa mangelund,<sup>32)</sup>  
 han frygter for Alkors lumske Fund,<sup>33)</sup>

<sup>16)</sup> a scoundrel. [Nidding. Icel. *nīðingr* is not a plain scoundrel but a mean recreant, a vile traitor. Where the Icelandic *sagas* say "hvers manns *nīðingr*", the Italian poets use the expression *falsissimo traditore*, false traitor. ED.] <sup>17)</sup> also. <sup>18)</sup> decently. courteously. <sup>19)</sup> do not get into passion, optat (†). <sup>20)</sup> manage, dispose (†). <sup>21)</sup> lord, poet. <sup>22)</sup> spare, forbear. <sup>23)</sup> Sir Pitiful. <sup>24)</sup> stop, (bung the mouth, i. e. silence). <sup>25)</sup> goes, poet for *gaar*. <sup>26)</sup> hastily. <sup>27)</sup> speak. <sup>28)</sup> it goes i. e. there pass. <sup>29)</sup> did weep. <sup>30)</sup> think on, prepare. <sup>31)</sup> muses, meditates. <sup>32)</sup> many ways, poet. <sup>33)</sup> cunning devices.

han kalder nu for sig de Húskarle sju,  
de bedste i Gaarden <sup>34)</sup> mon være.

„I sværge en Ed, I sværge mig <sup>35)</sup> nu  
ved Krist og hans Móder kåre;  
I være mig tro, I tie kvær, <sup>35)</sup>  
I sige ej frá, hvad jeg býder jer.  
I følge mig nu med Öxe hver <sup>36)</sup>  
og hver med sin bréde Hakke <sup>37)</sup>  
til Mörkveds Skov; naar vi komme dér,  
saa ville vi videre snakke.”

Og dér de kom til Mörkveds Skov,  
begyndte de flúgs <sup>38)</sup> at grave; <sup>39)</sup>  
en Hule <sup>40)</sup> saa dyb i Jorden de grov,  
en Stúe <sup>41)</sup> saa <sup>42)</sup> vilde de lave: <sup>43)</sup>  
foroven bedækket med Stén <sup>44)</sup> og Muld,  
forinden behængt med Sölv og med Guld,  
Díd bragde Kong Valdemar alt sit Klenód,  
baade Guld og kostbare Vare,  
og dertil alsköns <sup>45)</sup> Fetalje <sup>46)</sup> god,  
baade Mjöd og Vinen klare.

Saa ledte <sup>47)</sup> han did kær Datter sin  
med hendes Tærner trende.

„Jeg haver berédt en Stúe fin  
med Sölv og med Guld behænde, <sup>48)</sup>  
den er saa kól <sup>49)</sup> mod Solens Brand:  
der vælder <sup>50)</sup> en Kilde <sup>51)</sup> af hviden Sand,  
som Perlen rén er dens klare Vand.

<sup>34)</sup> the house. <sup>35)</sup> tie, be silent, optat. (<sup>2</sup> p. 45), kvær, poet.  
adverb, still, silently, i. e. preserve the secret religiously. <sup>36)</sup> each.  
<sup>37)</sup> mattock. <sup>38)</sup> immediately. <sup>39)</sup> dig (<sup>2</sup> p. 47). <sup>40)</sup> cavern.  
<sup>41)</sup> room. <sup>42)</sup> an expletive particle. <sup>43)</sup> prepare, make. <sup>44)</sup> stones (p. 25). <sup>45)</sup> of every kind, i. e. divers. <sup>46)</sup> victuals [a low German corruption of the Latin word victualia. ED.] <sup>47)</sup> lead, conducted. <sup>48)</sup> dexterously, artificially. <sup>49)</sup> cool, a Germanism for kölig. <sup>50)</sup> springs forth. <sup>51)</sup> fountain.

I dvæle nu hør vel Maaneder fem,  
mens jeg paa Bölgen maa svæve,<sup>52)</sup>  
til Hösten<sup>53)</sup> komme vi glade hjem  
i Lyst og Gammen at leve."

„Dernéde den sørte Grav jeg seer,  
kær Fader! jeg siger for Sanden:  
kommer jeg dernéd, ret<sup>54)</sup> aldrig mér  
vi glade skué hinanden.

„Stig ned, stig ned, min Datter kær!  
det er saa lystigt at léve dér.

Trindtòm i Bögens<sup>55)</sup> Sále<sup>56)</sup>  
saa lisflig<sup>57)</sup> synge de Nattergále.<sup>58)</sup>  
Stig ned, stig ned, min Datter kær!  
der er saa hèrligt at léve.

For Hulder<sup>59)</sup> og Höjbo<sup>60)</sup> du frygte ej<sup>61)</sup> dér,  
vi Kors<sup>62)</sup> i Dörstölperne<sup>63)</sup> skrève.  
Du bède en Bön<sup>64)</sup> hver Morgenstund,  
hver Aften du ganger til Hvile,  
saa vogte<sup>65)</sup> Smaaëngle om din Blund,<sup>66)</sup>  
og bær' dig paa Ármene sine."

„Farvel da, kær Fader! du seer mig ej mér!  
det Löfte du maa mig dog give,  
at sende mit Hjæerte, naar död jeg èr,  
til Rerik; hans var jeg i Live,"

„Hold Mund,<sup>67)</sup> hold Mund, du lede Kvind,<sup>68)</sup>  
og pak dig<sup>69)</sup> nu strags i Hulen ind."

Nu dækked de Hulen med Kvist<sup>70)</sup> og med Grén,<sup>71)</sup>  
saa klagelig<sup>72)</sup> Hilda sig vinder;<sup>73)</sup>

<sup>52)</sup> must ramble. <sup>53)</sup> at, in the harvest. <sup>54)</sup> surely, certainly.  
<sup>55)</sup> of the beech. <sup>56)</sup> saloons, halls. <sup>57)</sup> sweetly. <sup>58)</sup> nightingales. <sup>59)</sup> elfs. <sup>60)</sup> spectres, ghosts. liter. the inhabitant of the barrow. [confer Repp on "Hogmanaye" in the *Archæologia Scotica*. ED.] <sup>61)</sup> fear not, optat (†). <sup>62)</sup> crosses (?). <sup>63)</sup> the posts of the door. <sup>64)</sup> beg (say) a prayer. optat. <sup>65)</sup> guard. <sup>66)</sup> slumber. <sup>67)</sup> mouth, your tongue. <sup>68)</sup> you ugly (lewd) woman! <sup>69)</sup> get you gone. <sup>70)</sup> twig, i. e. twigs. <sup>71)</sup> branch, bough. <sup>72)</sup> mournfully. <sup>73)</sup> winds, wrings herself.

men Faderens Hjærte er haardt som Stén,  
fast<sup>74)</sup> Kæmperne græde som Kvinder.

Hvi gjalder,<sup>75)</sup> saa höjt i vilden Sky  
den Ludurblaest<sup>76)</sup> og Vaabengny?  
Hvi bæve de Grane<sup>77)</sup> i Lunden?

Ak, hjælpe dig Gud, du Konning bold!  
dit Guld og dit Sølv er i Fjendens Vold,<sup>78)</sup>  
Din Borg Konning Alkor har vunden;<sup>79)</sup>  
Dine Kæmper er saar,<sup>80)</sup> Dine Svende<sup>81)</sup> er död':  
han<sup>82)</sup> sparer ej Barnet i Moderens Sköd,  
for Du ham for Nidding udskældte.<sup>83)</sup>  
Prinds Rerik i Höjenloft selv mon gaae,  
han söger skön Hilda i hver en Vraa,<sup>84)</sup>  
han vader i Blod til sit Bælte.

Da mælte Kong Valdemar gram i Hú:  
„ej Rerik har vundet sit Spil endnú;  
skön Hilda han aldrig skal finde.”  
Han axler<sup>85)</sup> saa brat sit Purpurkind,<sup>86)</sup>  
behænde sin Brynje<sup>87)</sup> mon binde;  
han rider sin Ganger<sup>88)</sup> ad Borgeled<sup>89)</sup> ind:  
„hil være dig Alkor, Fostbroderen min!  
vel var det, jeg hér dig kan finde,  
nu ville vi slikke<sup>90)</sup> hinandens Blod.”<sup>91)</sup>  
Da hùg<sup>92)</sup> han med baade<sup>93)</sup> Hænder;  
men Sværdet brast i Stykker to;

<sup>74)</sup> although, a Sved. idiom for *skönt*. <sup>75)</sup> sounds. <sup>76)</sup> the trumpet-sound *Ludur*, or *Lu'r* or even *Lu*, is the name of a sort af antique horn or trumpet used in war. <sup>77)</sup> the pines. <sup>78)</sup> power. <sup>79)</sup> a Germanism or archaism for *vundet*, won (p. 48). <sup>80)</sup> wounded, an old adj. usually expressed by the partic. *saaret*. <sup>81)</sup> young men. <sup>82)</sup> he, the enemy, viz. King Alkor. <sup>83)</sup> calledst, abusedst. <sup>84)</sup> corner. <sup>85)</sup> throws on his shoulder. <sup>86)</sup> purplecloak. <sup>87)</sup> cuirass. <sup>88)</sup> charger. <sup>89)</sup> the gate, poet. for *Pórt*. <sup>90)</sup> lick. <sup>91)</sup> alludes to the ancient custom in swearing one another intimate friendship (*Fostbrödrelag*). <sup>92)</sup> struck (§ p. 47), <sup>93)</sup> both, poet. for *begge*.

ham Alkor fra Sadelen render.<sup>94)</sup>

„Nu ligger du alt paa din Bag  
paa blöden<sup>95)</sup> Jord behænde,<sup>96)</sup>  
nu var det for mig en föje<sup>97)</sup> Sag,  
dit uselig Liv at ende.

Men aldrig jeg dræber<sup>98)</sup> Fostbroder min,  
fast du mig en Njdding mon kalde;  
min Sön du faeste skön Datter din,  
saa frier<sup>99)</sup> jeg dig Borgen med alle.<sup>100)</sup>

Men Valdemar drog sin hvasse Kniv:  
„da agter jeg ikke at spare dit Liv.”  
Han havde<sup>1)</sup> da vejet<sup>2)</sup> Kong Alkor brat,  
jeg vil det sige for Sande;  
men Tagstenen<sup>3)</sup> ned fra Taarnet drat,<sup>4)</sup>  
og Valdemar slog<sup>5)</sup> paa hans Pande.<sup>6)</sup>  
Da flygted<sup>7)</sup> Kong Valdemars Svende füs,<sup>8)</sup>  
men ingen af dem saae Dagens Ljús,<sup>9)</sup>  
som vidste, hvor Hilda mon blive.<sup>10)</sup>

„Hvor est du, Prins Rerik! hvor est du, min Sön?  
haver du skön Hilda funden?  
Kong Valdemar haver alt fangen<sup>11)</sup> sin Lön;  
og vi have Sejeren vunden.”

„Gud hjælpe mig arme uselig Svend!  
Jeg haver forlöret<sup>12)</sup> min Hjærtens Ven.  
Jeg sögte med Lampe, jeg sögte med Blüs,<sup>13)</sup>  
det var saa öde<sup>14)</sup> i Valdemars Hús,  
jeg ingensteds min Fæstemö<sup>15)</sup> saae  
og ingensteds hendes Tærner smaa.  
Gud hjælpe mig arme uselig Svend!  
jeg haver forloret min Hjærtens Ven.

<sup>94)</sup> runs, throws. <sup>95)</sup> the soft, a poet. form for *blöd* or *den blöde*.

<sup>96)</sup> finely. <sup>97)</sup> small. <sup>98)</sup> shall kill. <sup>99)</sup> deliver. <sup>100)</sup> altogether.

<sup>1)</sup>would, should have. <sup>2)</sup> killed, poet. <sup>3)</sup> the tile, a tile.

<sup>4)</sup> dropt. <sup>5)</sup> hit. <sup>6)</sup> forehead. <sup>7)</sup> fled. <sup>8)</sup> readily, precipitately.

<sup>9)</sup> light, poet. for *Lýs*. <sup>10)</sup> did stay. <sup>11)</sup> poet. for *fædet*, got.

<sup>12)</sup> lost. <sup>13)</sup> flambeau, torch. <sup>14)</sup> waste, emdty. <sup>15)</sup> betrothed maid.

„Du sörge ej saa, kær Sönnen min!  
 Din Mö jeg dig bringer til Hænde;  
 jeg lader nedbryde hver Stok og Stén,  
 jeg lader det Tavlegulv <sup>16)</sup> vende.”

Dè sögte i Dage, de sögte i fem,  
 men Hilda de fandt ej i alle dem.

Da kasted de Svende Fakler og Blüs  
 i Höjenloft med stor Gammen.

De gyldne Flöje <sup>17)</sup> sank ned i Grús,  
 i vilden Sky brasked <sup>18)</sup> Flammen.

Saa brændte de Valdemars stolte Borg;  
 men Rerik havde stor Hjærtesorg.

„Hvad have I gjort? Ak, hjælp mig Krist!  
 den Lue saa sörgelig brager;  
 min Fæstemö have I brændt forvist. <sup>19)</sup>  
 hør, hør, hvor det ynklig <sup>20)</sup> klager!” <sup>21)</sup>

Da blev Kong Rerik saa vild i Hú;  
 i Ilden da vilde han springe.

Det var stor Jammer, det var stor Gru <sup>22)</sup>  
 at see, hvor ham Sorgen mon tvinge.

Hans Svende ham bandt med Silkesnör, <sup>23)</sup>  
 de bandt ham de Hænder hvide.

Sex Dage og Nætter han mælte ej Ord,  
 hans Fader til megen Kvíde. <sup>24)</sup>

Den syvende Morgen, da Sól opstód,  
 gik Rerik ind for sin Fader gód  
 han var saa vee <sup>25)</sup> tilmode :

„I give mig Kaabe, I give mig Stav!  
 saa ganger jeg til den hellige Grav,  
 alt for mine Synder at böde.” <sup>26)</sup>

Den gamle Konning da blev saa mód, <sup>27)</sup>  
 han græd saa bitter en Taare:

<sup>16)</sup> checkered floor. [or tessellated pavement. ED.] <sup>17)</sup> weather-cocks. <sup>18)</sup> bragged, showed itself, arose. <sup>19)</sup> surely. <sup>20)</sup> woefully. <sup>21)</sup> laments. <sup>22)</sup> horror. <sup>23)</sup> silkcord. <sup>24)</sup> anguish, sorrow. <sup>25)</sup> woeful. <sup>26)</sup> repent. <sup>27)</sup> weary, sorry.

„Du altid varst<sup>28)</sup> mig en Sön saa god,  
nu lægger du mig paa Baare.<sup>29)</sup>

Hvad hjælper mig Sölv og røde Guld?  
hvad hjælper mig Lande og Borge?  
en bárnlös Fader i sörten Muld  
jeg ganger med bitre Sorge.  
Bliv hèr, min Sön! udi Rysaland,  
her trives saa favre Kvinder;  
selv rider jeg ud, jeg siger for Sand,  
den vænneste Mō jeg dig vinder.”

„Ak Fader! her er ingen Gammen mér,  
paa Jorden er mørkt kun og öde,  
I Himmelens Rige, hvor Hilda hun èr,  
der finder jeg Ró for min Kvidé.”

Da tog Prins Rerik den Stav i Haand,  
han gik saa brat for Sorgen.  
Da sukked Kong Alkor og opgav sin Aand,  
der var stor Jammer paa Borgen.

Tre Aar han vanked<sup>31)</sup> vide om Land,  
og fandt hverken Ró eller Lise;<sup>32)</sup>  
da saae han i Drömmen gammel Mand,  
han ligned Kong Alkor tilvisse.

„Vend òm, vend òm, du Ridder bøld!  
hvi spilder<sup>33)</sup> du Tiden saa ilde?  
dit Rige er i dine Svendes Vøld,  
de raade,<sup>34)</sup> alt som de ville.

Din Fader er lagt i sorten Muld;  
men Hilda hun er dig tro og huld.  
Vend om, yend om saa skyndelig,  
men mærk<sup>35)</sup> det Ord, jeg siger dig:

<sup>28)</sup> poet. for var. <sup>29)</sup> the bier. <sup>30)</sup> thrive, grow up. <sup>31)</sup> strayed, rambled. <sup>32)</sup> relief, comfort. <sup>33)</sup> loosest. <sup>34)</sup> rule, act. <sup>35)</sup> attend to.

den Jomfru, du möder paa Höjenlofts Bro,<sup>36)</sup>  
hende skal du kaare<sup>37)</sup> og give din Tro,  
men Hilda skal komme fra Graven brat,  
og sove saa södt i din Arm hver Nat.”  
„Saa Hilda er död!” raabte Rérik brat,  
Då vaagnede han i den mørke Nat.

Grév Hildebrand sidder paa Alkors Borg,  
der èr stór Frýd og Gammen:  
„Prins Rerik er död af Hjærtens Sorg,  
„nu ville vi glædes tilsammen.  
„I Dág, stolt Målfred! vort Bryllup<sup>38)</sup> skal staar  
„nu Mjöden hin klare ej spares maa.”

Ved Börgeled<sup>39)</sup> hviler en Pillegrim sig,  
vel indsvöbt<sup>40)</sup> udi sin Hætte;<sup>41)</sup>  
han er baade gammel og uselig,  
knap Foden fra Jorden kan lette.  
„Kom ind, kom ind du Pillegrimmand!  
„nu skalt<sup>42)</sup> du den Mjöd med os drikke!  
„Grev Hildebrand fæster sin Liljevand,<sup>43)</sup>  
„paa Gammen her skórter det ikke.”<sup>44)</sup>

Men Malfred ham möder paa Höjelofts Bro,  
hun er saa blég om Kinde;  
da Gubbens<sup>45)</sup> Ord sig til Minde han drog;<sup>46)</sup>  
han her sin Brud skulde finde.

I Höjensal træder den Pillegrim ind,  
han blev saa vee tilmode,<sup>47)</sup>  
her stande Kong Alkors gæve Mænd,  
her stande de Staldbrödre gode;

<sup>36)</sup> an old and obscure expression, liter. *the bridge of the high loft*, or *upper story*, perhaps *the stairs* are meant. <sup>37)</sup> choose. <sup>38)</sup> wedding. <sup>39)</sup> an old expression for *Pörten*, the gate. <sup>40)</sup> wrapt up. <sup>41)</sup> cowl. <sup>42)</sup> poet. for *skal*, shalt, by a coarse Germanism they write sometimes *skalst*. <sup>43)</sup> composed of *lily & wand*, otherwise *Vaand* (p. 25), an old circumlocution for a maiden. <sup>44)</sup> there is no lack. <sup>45)</sup> the old man's. <sup>46)</sup> he recollects. <sup>47)</sup> woeful in his mind.

i Höjsædet<sup>48)</sup> sidder Grev Hildebrand prud,  
hvor Alkor för plejed at hvile;  
ved Siden sidder hans unge Brúd,  
saa sörgelig monne hun.smile.

Den Pillegrim ydmyg til Grúen<sup>49)</sup> mon gaa,  
i Krøgen<sup>50)</sup> ved Asken han monne staa.

Det Hórn<sup>51)</sup> gik rundt med Öl og med Mjöd,  
de Kæmper det drabelig<sup>52)</sup> tömte;<sup>53)</sup>  
da tog den Greve Guldkronen röd,  
alt som sig en Kouning det sömte:<sup>54)</sup>

I fylde mig Hórnet til överste Rand,  
det er til Prins Reriks Minde.

Det er tre Aar,<sup>55)</sup> han drög ud af Land,  
den hellige Grav at finde,

da sagde han: „Hildebrand, Frænde kær!  
„hvis inden den tredie Sommer  
„I finde mig ej i Höjeloft her,  
„der aldrig tilbage jeg kommer,  
„da ligger jeg blég i sórten Muld:  
„men I skal Guldkronen bære.  
„I raade da for mit Sölv og mit Guld  
„og for mine Kæmper kære.

„Ti sværger mig nu, I Alkors Mænd!  
„medens Mjödehornet jeg drikker” — —  
Da faldt Guldkrónen paa Jorden hen,  
den brast vel i túsinde Stykker.

Fra Gruen rejste den Pillegrim sig,  
de Krykker<sup>56)</sup> han kasted<sup>57)</sup> saa skyndelig,  
han kasted den Kaabe og Hætte graa:  
da stod han saa faver i Brynje blaas.  
„Her seer du Prins Rerik, som du siger död!”  
Men Hildebrand blev baade bleg og röd;

<sup>48)</sup> the throne. <sup>49)</sup> the hearth. <sup>50)</sup> the corner. <sup>51)</sup> drinking-horn. <sup>52)</sup> bravely. <sup>53)</sup> emptied. <sup>54)</sup> became. <sup>55)</sup> viz. since. <sup>56)</sup> crutches. <sup>57)</sup> threw, viz. away.

han greb saa brat til sit brede Sværd,  
han vontes<sup>58)</sup> en sörgelig Brudefærd.  
Men Rerik ham Sværdet af Haanden slóg,  
og dybt sit Glavind<sup>59)</sup> i Hjærtet ham jóg.<sup>60)</sup>

Prins Rerik nu op i Höjeloft trén:  
„hvo sværger af eder at være min Mand?”  
da svore de alle, de svore som én,  
til Konning de Rerik da kaared paa Stand.

„I stander, stolt Malfred! saa blég og ræd,  
„I frygte<sup>61)</sup> ej for min Vrede;  
„jeg gjör ej værgelös<sup>62)</sup> Mö Fortræd,<sup>63)</sup>  
„til Mildhed jeg flugs<sup>64)</sup> er rede.

„I give mig eders snehvide Haand,  
„I mig eders Tro tilsige,<sup>65)</sup>  
„Skön Hilda er död den Liljevaand,  
„vi ere hinanden vel lige.”

„Naar Hilda ej lever paa grönnen Jord,  
„og Hildebrand hviler paa Baare,  
„saa giver jeg eder min Haand og mit Ord;  
„jeg gilled ej Hildebrand saare.”  
Da blev der i Borgen et Vaabengny,<sup>66)</sup>  
de Fryderaab<sup>67)</sup> stége til höjen Sky.

I al den Stund schön Hilda hun sad  
i Skovens den mørke Hule  
som Mos og Grén monne skjule.  
Jeg siger for sandt, han var ej glad.  
Hun saae ej Dagens klare Ljús  
og ej de Stjerner smaa;  
der altid var mörkt i det Jættehús,  
skönt Solen paa Himlen mon staa.

<sup>58)</sup> expected, a Norwegian expression for *væntede sig*. <sup>59)</sup> glaive.  
<sup>60)</sup> thrusted. <sup>61)</sup> do not fear! optat. <sup>62)</sup> defenceless. <sup>63)</sup> trouble, vexation. <sup>64)</sup> immediately. <sup>65)</sup> do promise, optat. <sup>66)</sup> here as a sign of consent and joy. <sup>67)</sup> shouts.

Paa Taget der var vel et Röghul<sup>68)</sup> gjórt,  
men listelig<sup>69)</sup> skjult<sup>70)</sup> med en Helle,<sup>71)</sup>  
som tóg hende Ljusets Straale bort,  
hun kunde ej Dagene tælle.<sup>72)</sup>

„De Uger henrinde,  
de Maaneder svinde :  
de Ulve tude;<sup>73)</sup>  
det fryser saa haardt i Skoven derude.  
Hvor est du, kær Fader ?  
Ak, vidste du, hvad jeg maa lide !”

„De Uger henrinde,  
de Maaneder svinde :  
i grönne Lunde<sup>74)</sup>  
hôjt galer Gögen ved Midsommers Stunde.  
Hvor est du min Rerik ?  
Ak, vidste du, hvad jeg maa lide !”

Saa gik et Aar, saa gik vel tre  
I Sorg og megen Kvide,  
da döde hendes Tærner tre,  
de Tærner döde af Hungers Nöd,  
de lævnede<sup>75)</sup> hende den sidste Bid<sup>76)</sup> Bröd.  
Skön Hilda sad ved de kolde Lig,<sup>77)</sup>  
hun kunde for Sorrig ej græde :

„Ak Herre Gud Fader i Himmerig !  
„ak skjenk dem din evige Glæde !”  
Men Hungeren hende saa saare drév,  
hun glemte at sukke og bede;<sup>78)</sup>  
sin liden Hund hun sönderrév,  
den vilde hun stege<sup>79)</sup> og æde.  
Liden Issegrim<sup>80)</sup> var hendes sidste Ven,  
den slikkede Haanden, der dræbte den.

<sup>68)</sup> aperture for the smoke. <sup>69)</sup> cunningly, artificially. <sup>70)</sup> hid, concealed. <sup>71)</sup> a flat stone [a slate]. <sup>72)</sup> count  $\frac{1}{3}$  p. 45. <sup>73)</sup> howl. <sup>74)</sup> groves. <sup>75)</sup> left. <sup>76)</sup> morsel. <sup>77)</sup> corpses. <sup>78)</sup> pray. <sup>79)</sup> roast, broil. <sup>80)</sup> the dog's name.

En sulten<sup>81)</sup> Ulv ved Röghullet gik,  
han tuded saa fælt og saa ilde;  
den Liglugt<sup>82)</sup> han i Næsen fik,  
den Bråd<sup>83)</sup> han smage<sup>84)</sup> vilde.  
Han snused og kradsede med stor Flid,<sup>85)</sup>  
og kasted de Stene behænde;  
han grov fra Morgen til Midnats Tid,  
da havde det Arbejde Ende.  
Han ned til skön Hilda i Hulen drat;<sup>86)</sup>  
det Möde<sup>87)</sup> ham ej mon behage,<sup>88)</sup>  
han vilde saa fus<sup>89)</sup> tilbage;  
men Hilda ham griber i Halen<sup>90)</sup> fat,  
af Hulen han hende maa drage  
sig selv til megen Umage.<sup>91)</sup>  
Til Skoven lakked den Ulv afsted,<sup>92)</sup>  
det bedste han kunde<sup>93)</sup> i mörken Nat,  
men Hilda laae saa syg og mat,<sup>94)</sup>  
sine Hænder vréd<sup>95)</sup> og bitterlig græd.  
Mod Himlen hun rakte<sup>96)</sup> de Hænder smaa,  
saa venlig de Stjerner ned til hende saae.  
„Ak Herre Gud Fader i Himmerig!  
Du over mig usle forbarme dig!<sup>97)</sup>  
Du hjalp mig ud af Huléns Nöd,<sup>98)</sup>  
du frelse mig nu fra Hungerens Död!” —  
Saa bad hun, og slumred saa södelig ind.  
Hunsov saa trygt foruden Fare,  
bevogted af Himmelens Engleskare,<sup>99)</sup>  
alt i det klare Maaneskin.

<sup>81)</sup> hungry. <sup>82)</sup> smell of the corpses. <sup>83)</sup> meat, properly roasted meat. <sup>84)</sup> taste. <sup>85)</sup> used both snout and claws very diligently. <sup>86)</sup> fell, tumbled. <sup>87)</sup> meeting. <sup>88)</sup> please, like. <sup>89)</sup> fain. <sup>90)</sup> the tail. <sup>91)</sup> pains, trouble. <sup>92)</sup> trotted off. <sup>93)</sup> as fast as he could. <sup>94)</sup> weary. <sup>95)</sup> wrung. <sup>96)</sup> stretched ( $\frac{1}{2}$  p. 42). <sup>97)</sup> have pity, mercy upon! optat. <sup>98)</sup> distress. <sup>99)</sup> host of angels.

Den næste Morgen, da det blev Dag,  
 hun vaagnede op med stor Behag.<sup>100)</sup>  
 Den blide <sup>1)</sup> Sol i Purpurglands <sup>2)</sup>  
 steg frem bag Skovens grønne Krands.  
 I klaren Luft den Lærke sang,  
 og kvidred <sup>3)</sup> Gud Fader sin Morgensang.  
 „Ak Herre Gud Fader i Himmerig!  
 hvor her paa Jorden er lystelig!”  
 Saa tænkte hun paa sin Fader grum <sup>4)</sup>  
 og Rerik sin Hjærtens kære.  
 „Hyor mon paa Jorden de vanke om?  
 Ak, mon i Live de ere?  
 Ak, kjendte jeg nu kun Sti og Vej,  
 og var jeg ej saa mat!  
 men fjærn og nær, jeg øjner ej  
 et Spór <sup>5)</sup> i vilden Krat.” <sup>6)</sup>  
 Da hørte hun en venlig Lyd  
 som af en Jægers <sup>7)</sup> Hórn;  
 hendes Hjærte slog saa höjt af Fryd,  
 hun ilte gjennem Krat og Tórn;  
 da glemte hun al sin Hjærtesorg.  
 Det var ung Hagbart fra Reriks Borg.  
 „Du Ungersvend, forbarme Dig!  
 Jeg er en fattig Mö,  
 jeg har i Skoven forvildet mig, <sup>8)</sup>  
 og maa af Hunger dö.  
 Jeg vanked om den ganske Nat,  
 jeg er saa syg, jeg er saa mat.” —  
 „Ej est du nogen ringe Kvind,  
 „du favre Blomme <sup>9)</sup> du Liljevand!”  
 Saa satte han hende paa Gangeren <sup>10)</sup> sín,  
 og réd derfra paa Stand. <sup>11)</sup>

<sup>100)</sup> delight, pleasure. <sup>1)</sup> cheerful bright. <sup>2)</sup> purple splendor.

<sup>3)</sup> warbled. <sup>4)</sup> cruel. <sup>5)</sup> trace, path. <sup>6)</sup> copse, briars. <sup>7)</sup> a

hunter's. <sup>8)</sup> lost my way. <sup>9)</sup> poet. for *Blomst*, flower. <sup>10)</sup> steed.

<sup>11)</sup> immediately.

Og alt som de red af Skoven ud,  
de talte saa mangehaande:  
„hvor agted du dig, skön Jomfru prud!  
„medens du kom i slig Vaande?”<sup>12)</sup>

„Jeg vilde til Valdemars gyldne Borg  
„at tjene som Tærne i Stegerset<sup>13)</sup> der.”

„Vilde du til Valdemars gyldne Borg,  
„da var du vist fremmed i Landet her.  
„Kong Valdemar hviler i sörten Jörd,  
„hans Borg er töm og öde,  
„Kong Alkor den vandt med Manddom<sup>14)</sup> stor,  
„men selver<sup>15)</sup> af Sorrig han döde;  
„ti Valdemars Datter, den vænneste Mö,  
„der fandtes saa vide paa Jordens Ö,  
„blev kvalt<sup>16)</sup> i Borgens Flammer;  
„det var stor Ynk<sup>17)</sup> og Jammer.  
„Prins Rerik, hendes Fæstemand,<sup>18)</sup>  
„han blev saa vee tilmode;  
„saa drog han bort til Jorsalaland<sup>19)</sup>  
„for Synderne sine at böde.

„Der monne han Tröst og Husvalelse<sup>20)</sup> faa  
„alt for sin bitre Sorg;  
„i Morgen han lader sit Bryllup staa  
„med Malfred paa sin Borg.” —

Da blegnede<sup>21)</sup> Hilda, og daanede<sup>22)</sup> brat.  
„Hvad fattes dig,<sup>23)</sup> væne Mö?”  
„Mig fattes slet intet, jeg er kuu saa mat,  
„ret<sup>24)</sup> som jeg skulde dö.”  
„Nu frisk tilmode!<sup>25)</sup> lad fare din Sorg!  
„Nu ride vi flugs til Reriks Borg;

<sup>12)</sup> distress. <sup>13)</sup> kitchen. <sup>14)</sup> valour. <sup>15)</sup> the old nom. sing. masc. for *selv*. <sup>16)</sup> suffocated ( $\frac{1}{3}$  p. 42). <sup>17)</sup> pity. <sup>18)</sup> betrothed man. <sup>19)</sup> an old name of Palestine. <sup>20)</sup> comfort and consolation. <sup>21)</sup> turned pale ( $\ddot{\text{i}}$ ). <sup>22)</sup> fainted ( $\ddot{\text{i}}$ ). <sup>23)</sup> what ails thee. <sup>24)</sup> just. <sup>25)</sup> cheer up.

„der har jeg to Söstre kære,  
 „hos Malfred tjene de Tærner smaa,  
 „de vil dig undfange<sup>26)</sup> med Åre.”<sup>27)</sup> —

„O ! hvis jeg hos Malfred tjene maa!  
 „Jeg kan baade sy og sömme,  
 „dertil jeg kan Guldharpen slaa  
 „alt som sig en Tærne mon sömme.”

Nu ride de af Borgeled ind,  
 der möder hun Ven og Frænde ;  
 da svöber hun sit Hoved i Skind,<sup>28)</sup>  
 at ingen maa hende kjende.

Ind traadte ung Hagbart for Malfred at staa :  
 „hvor mon det med eder, stolt Malfred! gaa?”  
 „I Nat<sup>29)</sup> jeg har födt<sup>30)</sup> dig saa faver en Sön,  
 „dine Söstre ham svöbte,<sup>31)</sup> og fostre i Lön,<sup>32)</sup>  
 „mig arme<sup>33)</sup> til Angest og Kvide.

„I Morgen mit Bryllup med Rerik skal staa,  
 „jeg kan det ej længer forhale.<sup>34)</sup>  
 „Krist give i sorten Muld jeg laa !  
 „Den Vej til Kirken at ride er lang,  
 „og lang at höre den Messesang ;  
 „Gud hjælpe mig arme Kvinde !”.

Da svarede Hagbart : „kær Malfred min !  
 „jeg veed vel Raad<sup>35)</sup> at finde.  
 „I Borgegaard<sup>36)</sup> stander en Mö saa fin,  
 „liden Gunver monne hun hede ;<sup>37)</sup>  
 „jeg fandt i Skoven den Liljevand.  
 „For eder til Kirke hun ride kän,  
 „naar hende derom I mon bede.  
 „Hun svöbe sig vel i Guldkaaben ind,  
 „hun skjule sit Hoved i hviden Lin,  
 „og tale kun lidt med Fæstemand dín,

<sup>26)</sup> receive. <sup>27)</sup> honorably. <sup>28)</sup> furred cloak, mantle. <sup>29)</sup> last night. <sup>30)</sup> born, brought forth. <sup>31)</sup> swaddled. <sup>32)</sup> secretly. <sup>33)</sup> poor, wretched. <sup>34)</sup> retard. <sup>35)</sup> counsel, advice, help. <sup>36)</sup> an old expression for courtyard. <sup>37)</sup> is called, is her name.

„alt som for en Brúd sig mon skikke,<sup>38)</sup>  
 „saa mærker<sup>39)</sup> Kong Rerik det ikke.  
 „Og, naar fra Kirke de komme hjem,  
 „da skifte<sup>40)</sup> I Klæder, og du træde frem.  
 „Ved Bordet du sidde saa hövisk en Brúd,  
 „og bære med Ære Guldkronen prud;  
 „men, naar det lakker ad<sup>41)</sup> Sengetide,<sup>42)</sup>  
 „kan Gunver sove ved Kongens Side.” — — —

„Hör du, liden Gunver! jeg siger dig,  
 om du est tro og uden Svig,<sup>43)</sup>  
 jeg giver dig Kaabe af Skarlagen röd,  
 jeg giver dig Kjórtel af Silke blöd;<sup>44)</sup>  
 jeg giver dig Hælsten<sup>45)</sup> af alt mit Guld,  
 om du vil være mig tro og huld.”<sup>46)</sup>

Nu skinner Solen paa Höjelofts Glar,<sup>47)</sup>  
 Saa hellig den Söndagsmorgen var.  
 De Riddere axle det Purpurkind,  
 og gange for stolten Kong Rerik ind.  
 Men Rerik husker<sup>48)</sup> saa mangt tilbage,  
 han tænker paa Hilda og fordums Dage.

Nu skinner Solen i Jomfrubur,  
 der stande de Tærner med Ære,  
 de fæste paa Hilda Guldkronen pur,  
 saa stoltelig mon hun den bære.

„Liden Gunver, liden Gunver, du röbe mig ej!  
 „Du mæle ej Ord paa den Kirkevej!”  
 Men Hilda hun sukker<sup>49)</sup> saa saare i Lön,  
 hun tænker saa ofte paa Alkors Sön.

Nu rider schön Hilda paa Gangeren graa,  
 Kong Rerik alt ved hendes Side;  
 da synge i Skoven de Fugle smaa,  
 det var nu ved Midsommers Tide.

<sup>38)</sup> it becomes. <sup>39)</sup> observes. <sup>40)</sup> exchange. <sup>41)</sup> approaches to. <sup>42)</sup> bedtime. <sup>43)</sup> fraud. <sup>44)</sup> soft. <sup>45)</sup> one half. <sup>46)</sup> affectionate. <sup>47)</sup> an old form for *Glas*, i. e. windows. [Icel. *gler*.]  
<sup>48)</sup> remembers, thinks. <sup>49)</sup> sighs.

„Ak,” sukkede Hilda, „den Dag var schön,  
 „da Valdemars Datter og Alkors Sön  
 „de gave hinanden deres Tro udi Lön!” —  
 „Hvi sukker I saa, liden Malfred fin?” —  
 „Jeg talede kun til Gangeren min.”

Nu ride de atter en Stund<sup>50)</sup> tilsammen:  
 „Den Vej, stolt Malfred! er ond og lang,  
 „vi ville den korte med Spög og Gammen,  
 „vi ville os kvæde en lystig Sang.” —

„Tre Aar jeg i Jórdens Hule sad,  
 „alle lystige Viser jeg forgad!<sup>51)</sup>  
 „min liden Hund jeg stegte og aad,  
 „graa Ulven haver jeg reden.”

„Hvad siger I dér, schön Jomfru fin?”  
 „Jeg talede kun til Gangeren min.”

Ved Vejen stod Valdemars gyldne Borg,  
 nu var der kun Stene og Gruus<sup>52)</sup> tilbage;  
 da blegned schön Hilda saa brat af Sorg,  
 hun tænkte paa fordums favre Dage.

„Her hoppe Duer,  
 hvor för har danset Fruer;  
 her rode<sup>53)</sup> Svin,  
 hvor Kæmper før drak Mjöd og Vin.”

„Hvad kvæder I nú, liden Fæstemö fin?”  
 „Jeg talede kun til Gangeren min.”

Ved Vejen stande de gamle Linde;  
 Kong Rerik rider forbi saa tyst;<sup>54)</sup>  
 dog sukked han dybt,<sup>55)</sup> og droges til Minde  
 i Ungdoms Dage sin Elskovs Lyst.  
 Men Hilda griber de Tømmer<sup>56)</sup> smaa,  
 den Ganger i Lindenes Skygge mon staa.

<sup>50)</sup> a while. <sup>51)</sup> forgot. an old impf. of *forgætter*, now we say *glemmer*, *glemte*. <sup>52)</sup> rubbish. <sup>53)</sup> root. <sup>54)</sup> silently. <sup>55)</sup> heavy. <sup>56)</sup> the reins, i. e. *Tøjle*, bridle.

„Her stander Du Lind  
baade faver og fin;  
din Skygge er èndnu saa kòlig og skòn,  
din Krone er endnu saa frisk og gròn;  
Smaafuglene kvidre endnu saa glade  
og lege imellem de tætte Blade,  
som fordum da i din Skygge  
vi slogue Guldharpen trygge,  
som fordum da Alkors Sòn  
gav Hilda sin Tro i Lön.”

Det blev Kong Rerik saa underlig ved,  
en Taare ham randt paa Kinden<sup>57)</sup> ned:  
„Stolt Malfred, stolt Malfred, hvi kvæder I saa?”  
„Jeg kvad kun, fordi min Hest vilde staa.”

Nu er den Kirke flugs derhos,  
der stige de ned af höjen Rös,<sup>58)</sup>  
tòlv Riddere følge den Konning prùd,  
tòlv Tærner følge den ùnge Brùd.  
De Munke dem möde i Kirkedör  
med Bòn og Sang, som det sig bör.<sup>59)</sup>  
Nu staa de for Alteret sömmelig.<sup>60)</sup>  
„Skòn Jomfru! I skifte nu Ring med mig.”  
Da fik han den samme Ring tilbage,  
som Hilda han gav i fordums Dage  
alt under de gamle Linde;  
den Ring han sig kunde vel minde.

„Stolt Malfred! I sige mig uden Svig,  
hvor fik I den Ring, som I gav mig?” —

„Min Tærne den fandt mellem Stene og Grus  
i Asken af Valdemars gyldne Hus.”

„Gud hjælpe mig arme, uselig Svend!<sup>61)</sup>  
Da Hilda döde, da bar hun den.  
Tag Ringen tilbage, min Fæstemö kære!  
jeg kan den ret aldrig paa Fingeren bære;

---

<sup>57)</sup> the cheek. <sup>58)</sup> horse, poet. [the Icel. form. is *ross*, or *ross*,  
ED.] <sup>59)</sup> ought to be. <sup>60)</sup> becomingly. <sup>61)</sup> swain, youth.

tag Ringen tilbage, kær Malfred fin !  
og aldrig den komme af Fingeren din !”

Nu monne de hjem til Borgens ride.  
Den Brudgom han var saa sorrigfuld ;  
men Hilda har glemt al Sorg og Kvide,  
for Rerik er hende tro og huld.

De Kæmper sidde ved bréden Bórd,  
de drikke baade Öl og Mjöd  
de vexle saa mangt et skjemtsomt Ord ;  
ti Mjödcn den smager saa söd.

Kong Rerik sidder saa tankefuld <sup>62)</sup>  
alt ved stolt Malfreds Side ;  
hun bærer saa höjt den Krone af Guld,  
det maa ung Hagbart vel lide. <sup>63)</sup>

Men Hilda i Stégerset drúd <sup>64)</sup> mon gaa  
alt med de Kokketærner <sup>65)</sup> smaa.

Kong Rerik taler til Bruden sin :  
„I sige mig nu, stolt Malfred fin !  
hvi sukkes I, da ved Middags Tide  
vi gjennem mörken Skov mon ride ?”

„Hvi jeg sukkes, det haver jeg plat <sup>66)</sup> forgjet,  
jeg bad min Tærne at gjemme <sup>67)</sup> det.”

Stolt Malfred til Stegerset ganger sig.  
„Liden Gunver ! nu hayer du sveget <sup>68)</sup> mig !  
hvi sukkes du, da ved Middags Tide  
du gjennem Skoven med Kongen mon ride ?”

„Jeg har dig ei sveget, min Frue fin !  
jeg snakkede <sup>69)</sup> kun til Gangeren min.”

Kong Rerik taler til ungen Brúd ;  
„I sige mig nu, stolt Malfred prud !  
hvad sagde I, da for Spög og Gammen  
vi vilde kvæde en Vise <sup>70)</sup> tilsammen ?”

<sup>62)</sup> pensive. <sup>63)</sup> it is a delight for him. <sup>64)</sup> sad, poet. [Icel. þrútin used of a countenance swollen from weeping. ED.]

<sup>65)</sup> cookmaids. <sup>66)</sup> entirely. <sup>67)</sup> keep, remember. <sup>68)</sup> betrayed. <sup>69)</sup> chattered. <sup>70)</sup> lay.

„Hvad jeg sagde, det haver jeg plat forgjet,  
jeg bad min Tærne at gjemme det.”

Skön Malfred til Stegerset ganger sig.  
„Liden Gunver; nu har du dog sveget mig;  
I vilde kvæde en Vise tilsammen?”

„Jeg har dig ei sveget, min Frue fin!  
jeg talede kun til Gangeren min.”

Kong Rerik han sidder saa tankefuld,  
i Hú saa vréd han var:  
„jeg seer nok, skjön Malfred! I er mig ej huld,  
jeg faaer kun saa korte Svar.<sup>71)</sup>  
Nu sig mig — I drages det sikkert til Minde —  
hvad var det I kvad ved de gamle Linde?”

„Hvad jeg kvad det haver jeg plat forgjet,  
jeg bad min Tærne at gjemme det,”

Stolt Malfred ganger i Stegerset ind:  
„Du har dog bedraget<sup>72)</sup> mig, listige Kvind!  
hvad var det, du kvad ved de gamle Linde!”

„Jeg har ei bedraget dig, Malfred fin!  
jeg talede kun til Gangeren min;  
alt, hvad jeg kvad ved de gamle Linde,  
det kvad jeg kun til min Ganger graa,  
fordi han ej vilde ad Vejen gaa.”

Kong Rerik han sidder saa vréd i Hú:  
„stolt Malfred, stolt Malfred! I vise mig nu  
den Ring, jeg eder i Kirken gav.” —

„Den Ring, I mig i Kirken gav,  
den gav jeg til min Tærne;  
jeg bærer de Ringe ej gjerne.”

„Du husker jeg bad dig, stolt Malfred fin!  
den aldrig at lægge af Fingeren din.”

Stolt Malfred hun ganger i Stegerset ned,  
da var hun i Hu saa vréd;

<sup>71)</sup> answers (?). <sup>72)</sup> deceived.

„og hör, liden Gunyer! om föje Stund <sup>73)</sup>  
jeg straffe skal dine lumske Fund; <sup>74)</sup>  
giv hid den Ring, dig Rerik gav!”

„Den Ring mig Rerik i Kirken gav,  
den svór jeg at bære til min Grav,  
den kommer ret aldrig af Fingeren min,  
den kan jeg ej give dig, Malfred fin!”

„Giv Ringen hid, du lede <sup>75)</sup> Kvind!  
eller jeg dig kaster i Ormegaard <sup>76)</sup> ind;  
Kong Rerik vil see den nu paa Stand.”

„Den Ring ret aldrig, stolt Malfred! du faar,  
om du mig end <sup>77)</sup> kaster i Ormegaard.  
Men vil Kong Rerik den see paa Stand,  
da skjule du mig under Kaaben din,  
og vise ham Ringen paa Fingeren min!”

Stolt Malfred hun var vel i Hu saa vred,  
dog vendte hun Talen saa fage:  
„jeg giver dig, Gunver, Guldkæden bred,  
om du mig ej vil bedrage.”

Nu svöbte de sig i Kaaben fin,  
og ginge saa listig i Höjeloft ind  
dem begge til megen Umage.

Liden Hilda fremrakte sin Haand saa hvid  
alt under den Kaabe behænde.

„Stolt Malfred! I stige kun <sup>78)</sup> nærmere hid,  
at Ringen jeg rigtig <sup>79)</sup> maa kjende!”

Da griber Kong Rerik om Haanden fat,  
og kaster til Side <sup>80)</sup> den Kaabe saa brat;  
der stander stolt Malfred bleg og rød,  
af skogrende <sup>81)</sup> Latter <sup>82)</sup> den Höjsal gjenlöd; <sup>83)</sup>  
men Rerik han blev saa vel tilmode.

<sup>73)</sup> in a short time. <sup>74)</sup> thy insidious devices. <sup>75)</sup> abominable.

<sup>76)</sup> prison filled with venomous serpents. <sup>77)</sup> om end, although.

<sup>78)</sup> but. <sup>79)</sup> duly. <sup>80)</sup> throws open. <sup>81)</sup> chuckling. <sup>82)</sup> laughter.

<sup>83)</sup> resounded.

„Ak!” raabte han „ak er det dig!”  
 og slynged omkring hende Armene baade,  
 „ak Hilda! ak, er det tilvisse dig?  
 est du ej et Gjenfærd,<sup>84)</sup> som skuffer<sup>85)</sup> mig,  
 da skalt du mig aldrig forlade.”<sup>86)</sup>  
 Der blev stor Fryd i den Kongeborg;<sup>87)</sup>  
 ti Rerik han havde forvundet sin Sorg;  
 men Malfred og Hagbart i Ormegaard  
 skulde lide for Falskhed en Straf saa haard.  
 Da bad skjön Hilda: „ak Konning god!  
 om I mig en Bön vilde vide,  
 da spare I Hagbarts unge Blod,  
 han frelste mig fra stor Kvide;  
 I spare og stolt Malfreds Liv,  
 hendes Falskhed jo var mig til Baade;  
 I give ung Hagbart hende til Viv,  
 I skjenke mig denne Naade!”<sup>88)</sup>

Da svarede Rerik den Konning bold:  
 „mit Hjærte, skjön Hilda! er i din Vold,  
 ret aldrig en Bön jeg kan nægte<sup>89)</sup> dig.  
 Gudfader skee Lov i Himmerig!  
 min Ungdoms Mö jeg har funden,  
 nu har jeg al Sorrig forvunden;  
 nu ville vi leve i Fryd og Gammen,  
 til Graven os begge mon skjule.” Amen!

<sup>84)</sup> spectre. <sup>85)</sup> deludes. <sup>86)</sup> quit. <sup>87)</sup> royal palace. <sup>88)</sup> grace.  
<sup>89)</sup> deny, refuse.



## TRYMSKVIDE, ELLER HAMMERENS HENTELSE,

en eddisk Sang, oversat i Originalens Versemål  
ved denne Bogs Forfatter.

(Af samme Bog.)

*The purport of this very old song is, that the chief Giant had purloined Thor's mallet, the great palladium of the Gods, Loke is dispatched to discover it, and returns with the account, that the Giant Thrym has it indeed in his possession, but will by no means restore it, unless the Goddess Freya will become his wife; the Ases however contrive to deceive him, Thor recovers his mallet, and immediately destroys the Giant, together with all the guests assembled for the supposed wedding. — Those who wish a farther illustration af this song may consult Prof. Finn Magnussen's den ældre Edda, 2d vol. Copenhagen, 1822.*

Bred blev da Vingtor <sup>1)</sup>	„hverken paa Jordens
der han vågnede,	„eller udi Himmel:
og han sin Hammer	„As <sup>7)</sup> er Hamren ranet!” <sup>8)</sup>
hos sig savnede; <sup>2)</sup>	De gif til Freyas
Skægget han rysted <sup>3)</sup>	fagre Gårde, <sup>9)</sup>
rev han og sit Hår	og han det Ord
længe Jordens Søn <sup>4)</sup>	allerførst kvad:
ledte rundten om. <sup>5)</sup>	„vil du mig, Freya!
Og han det Ord	„Fjederhammen <sup>10)</sup> låne <sup>11)</sup>
allerførst kvad:	„om jeg min Hammer
„her du nu, Loke!	„opspore <sup>12)</sup> måtte?”
„lad mig dig berette, <sup>6)</sup>	„Låne dig den vilde jeg
„hvad ingen ved	„var den end af Selv,

<sup>1)</sup> the god Thor. <sup>2)</sup> missed. <sup>3)</sup> shook. <sup>4)</sup> the earth was the mother of Thor. <sup>5)</sup> searched round about. <sup>6)</sup> tell. <sup>7)</sup> The Ases is a name common to the deities, like the Olympians, a sort of national name. The As means here the god Thor himself. <sup>8)</sup> robbed. <sup>9)</sup> houses, dwellings. <sup>10)</sup> the feather-covering, a set of wings. <sup>11)</sup> lend. <sup>12)</sup> trace, find out.

„få den skulde du,  
„skønt den var af Guld.  
Fløj da Loke,  
Fjederhammen suste,  
indtil han kom uden  
Asernes Stad,  
og han kom inden  
Jotnernes Land.

Trym sad paa Höjen,  
Tussernes Fyrste,  
ghylde Halsbånd<sup>13)</sup>)  
Hundene<sup>14)</sup> han fletted,<sup>15)</sup>  
selv han og jævnede<sup>16)</sup>  
Sadelhyrets<sup>17)</sup> Man.  
„Hvor går det Aser?  
„hvor går det Alfer?  
„hvi kom du ene  
„til Jotnernes Land?”

„Ilde går det Aser,  
„ilde går det Alfer,  
„har du ikke Lorrides  
„Hammer bortgjemt?<sup>18)</sup>  
„Lorrides Hammer  
„haver jeg bortgjemt,  
„åtte Mile  
„under Jorden;  
„ingen skal få den  
„atter tilbage,  
„uden han fører mig  
„Freha til Brud!”

Fløj da Loke,  
Fjederhammen suste,  
indtil han kom uden  
Jotnernes Land,  
og han kom inden  
Asernes Stad.  
Mødte ham der Thor  
midt i Staden,  
og han det Ord  
allersørst kvald:  
„Gik du noget  
„for din Möje?<sup>19)</sup>  
„sig mig i Lusten  
„en lang Beretning;  
„tit for den siddende  
„Sagnet forvildes,<sup>20)</sup>  
„og den liggende  
„lyver en Hob.<sup>21)</sup>  
„Noget<sup>22)</sup> fil jeg  
„for min Möje:  
„Tussernes Fyrste  
„Trym har din Hammer;  
„ingen skal få den  
„atter tilbage,  
„uden han fører ham  
„Freha til Brud!  
De gif med sagre  
Freha at tale,  
og han det Ord  
allersørst kvald:

<sup>13)</sup> collars (?). <sup>14)</sup> for the dogs, Dative. <sup>15)</sup> braided. <sup>16)</sup> evened.  
<sup>17)</sup> the saddle-animal i. e. the horse. <sup>18)</sup> put aside, a euphemism for robbed. <sup>19)</sup> did you get (gain) any thing by the trouble you have taken. <sup>20)</sup> the tale is troubled. <sup>21)</sup> a (good) deal.  
<sup>22)</sup> something.

„Bind om dig, Freya!

„Brudelinet<sup>23)</sup>

„age<sup>24)</sup> skal vi sammen  
„til Jotnernes Land!”

Bred blev da Freya,  
og knytte føre,<sup>25)</sup>

Hele Asa-salen  
under hende skælv,

bræst og det store

Brisinge Halsbånd:

„Skal mig den kådeste<sup>26)</sup>

„blandt Kvinder alle,

„om jeg ager med dig

„til Jotnernes Land!”

Strægs varer Aser  
alle på Ting  
og Alsynier  
alle på Tale:  
monne derom rådslå<sup>27)</sup>  
de mægtige Guber,  
hur<sup>28)</sup> de skulle hente  
Hammeren for Tor.

Det kvar da Hejmdal  
den hideste Ase,  
vel forudvidende<sup>29)</sup>  
som Vaner<sup>30)</sup> alle:  
„Binde vi om Tor da  
Brudelinet,  
„hære han det store  
Brisinge Halsbånd;

„Klingrende Nøgler

„knytte vi til Bæltet,

„lade om hans Knæ

„Kvindeklaerer falde,

„men paa Brystet

„brede Ædelstene,<sup>31)</sup>

„kunstigen med Sat<sup>32)</sup>

„fri<sup>33)</sup> vi hans Hoved!

Det kvar da Tor

den tapre Herre:

„Aserne skulle

„mig stælde for fej,<sup>34)</sup>

„hvis jeg lod mig binde

„med Brudelinet.”

Det kvar da Eole

Løvøs Arbing:

„Tor, med dig Tale

„ti du kun skulle;

„snart skulle Jotner

„Asgård bebo,

„uden<sup>35)</sup> du din Hammer

„henter dig igjen.”

Bandt de da om Tor

Brudelinet,

bar han og det store

Brisinge Halsbånd,

Klingrende Nøgler

Knyttede de til Bæltet,

Lode om hans Knæ

Kvindeklaerer falde,

<sup>23)</sup> bridal attire. <sup>24)</sup> drive, ride. <sup>25)</sup> fumed terribly. <sup>26)</sup> the most lascivious, wanton. <sup>27)</sup> deliberate. <sup>28)</sup> an obsolete expression for hvor, or hvorledes, how. <sup>29)</sup> foreseeing. <sup>30)</sup> a gentile name like Ases, perhaps a Slavonian tribe, to which Hejmdal belonged. <sup>31)</sup> gems. <sup>32)</sup> coif. <sup>33)</sup> let us adorn. <sup>34)</sup> reproach me with effeminacy. <sup>35)</sup> if not.

men på Ørystet  
brede Edelstein,  
kunstigen med Sæt  
stred de hans Hoved.

Det kvald da Loke  
Løvøs Urving:  
„vist vil jeg med dig,  
„være din Terne,  
„age skal vi sammen  
„til Jøtnernes Land.”

Strags bleve begge  
Bukke<sup>36)</sup> drevne hjem,  
satte for Skaglerne,<sup>37)</sup>  
skulde hurtig løbe:  
mangen Klippe brast,  
brændte Jord i Lue;  
Odins Søn agede  
til Jøtnernes Land.

Det kvald da Trhm  
Tussernes Fyrste:<sup>38)</sup>  
„Rejser eder Jøtner,  
„reder<sup>39)</sup> os Vænke,  
„fører mig nu da  
„Freha til Brud,  
„Njords fagre Dotter  
„fra Noatune!

„Gange her til Gården  
„guldhorned' Rør,  
„kulsorte Øksne  
„Jøtnen til Gammen;

„nok har jeg Skatte,  
„nok har jeg Guldbånd,  
„Freha alene  
„fattedes jeg end!”<sup>40)</sup>

Tidlig om Kvælde  
kom der mange Gæster,  
og for Jøtnerne  
Øl blev håret frem,  
åb da Tor en Øfse,  
atte Lakse,  
alle de Kræse,<sup>41)</sup>  
Krinderne skulb' have;  
Lørsten slukked<sup>42)</sup> Tor  
med trenende Boller Mjøb.

Det kvald da Trhm  
Tussernes Fyrste:  
„hvor få' man Brude  
„bedre tage til sig?  
„Albrig få' jeg Brude  
„bedre at få' Mad,<sup>43)</sup>  
„albrig nogen Ms  
„mere Mjøb at drifte.

Den snilde<sup>44)</sup> Tærne  
hun sad verhos,  
og udsandt Svar  
på Jøtnens Tale:  
„Freha Mad ei sik  
„fire sidste Døgn,<sup>45)</sup>  
„så rased hun af Længsel  
„efter Rejsen hid.

<sup>36)</sup> both the he-goats (viz. that used to draw his chariot). <sup>37)</sup> the trace. <sup>38)</sup> viz. as he saw them coming with the supposed bride. <sup>39)</sup> spread, cover. <sup>40)</sup> I was wanting as yet. <sup>41)</sup> sweetmeats, pastry-work [dainties ~~en~~]. <sup>42)</sup> quenched. <sup>43)</sup> cat. <sup>44)</sup> ingenious. <sup>45)</sup> days and nights (?).

Han<sup>46)</sup> ludeb under Lin,<sup>47)</sup>  
 Hysted at høse,  
 men bort forførret  
 for han gjennem Galen:  
 „hvi er så starpe  
 der Skjønnes Blitke  
 „Ild mig synes  
 „af Hjene brenne.”

Den snilbe Tærne  
 hun sad vedhos,  
 og udfant Svar  
 på Istnens Tale:  
 „Freha Sovn ej sit  
 „fire skæste Døgn,  
 „så rased hun af Længsel  
 „efter Reisen hid.”

Ind kom den arme<sup>48)</sup>  
 Istne-Søster,  
 og voved at bede<sup>49)</sup>  
 om Brudepenge.<sup>50)</sup>  
 „Ræk mig de røde  
 „Minge af din Hånd,  
 „hvis du vil vinde  
 „mit Veneskab helt,  
 „mit hele Veneskab  
 „min Hyldest<sup>51)</sup> tilfulde!”.

Det kvald da Trhm  
 Tussernes Ærste,  
 „Bærer ind Hammeren  
 „Bruden at vie,  
 „lægger Mjølner<sup>52)</sup>  
 „i Moens Skjæb,  
 „efter Vørs<sup>53)</sup> Stifte<sup>54)</sup>  
 „vier<sup>55)</sup> os nu sammen.”

Lorrides Hu  
 lo i hans Bryst,  
 da hårdmødig Helt  
 Hammeren kændte;  
 Trolbenes Ærste,  
 Trhm, slog han først,  
 og hele Tættens  
 Et han knuste.

Draebtes og den usle  
 Istne-Søster,  
 som bedet havde  
 om Brubegave:  
 hun sit Skrub  
 for Skillinger,<sup>56)</sup>  
 og Hammer-Hug  
 for hele Penge;<sup>57)</sup>  
 så kom Obins Søn  
 etter til sin Hammer.

<sup>46)</sup> He, the Giant. <sup>47)</sup> ducked with his head under the veil. <sup>48)</sup> sorry, miserable. <sup>49)</sup> dared to beg. <sup>50)</sup> bride-gifts. <sup>51)</sup> affection. <sup>52)</sup> the crusher, the name of the mallet. <sup>53)</sup> the Goddess of marriage. <sup>54)</sup> the ceremonies, manners. <sup>55)</sup> consecrate, especially join in wedlock. <sup>56)</sup> cuffs for coins; Skrub is here a collective noun, we say also en Skrub, a blow. <sup>57)</sup> hele Penge, liter. whole money, i. e. large silver or gold-coins, of which Skillinger are considered as fractions or fragments.

156

End

65







UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA

wils  
491.75 H35

Heard, James.

A practical grammar of the Russian langu



3 1951 002 438 295 2

**WILSON  
ANNEX  
 AISLE 37**